

**SOUTH AFRICAN LAW COMMISSION**

**PROJECT 110**

**REVIEW OF THE CHILD CARE ACT**

**REPORT**

**December 2002**

To Dr P M Maduna, Minister for Justice and Constitutional Development

I have the honour to submit to you in terms of section 7(1) of the South African Law Commission Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973), for your consideration the Commission's report on the **Review of the Child Care Act**.

**Madam Justice Y Mokgoro**

**Chairperson: South African Law Commission**

**December 2002**

## INTRODUCTION

The South African Law Commission was established by the South African Law Commission Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973).

The members of the Commission are:

The Honourable Madam Justice Y Mokgoro (Chairperson)  
The Honourable Madam Justice L Mailula (Vice-Chairperson)  
Adv J J Gauntlett SC  
Prof C E Hoexter (additional member)  
The Honourable Mr Justice C T Howie  
Prof I P Maithufi (Full Time Member)  
Ms Z Seedat  
Dr W L Seriti

The members of the Review of the Child Care Act Project Committee are:

Professor Noel Zaal (Chairperson and project leader)  
Dr Jacky Loffell  
Mr Vusi Madonsela  
Dr Carmel Matthias  
Ms Buyi Mbambo  
Ms Agnes Muller  
Ms Zubeda Seedat  
Ms Lulu Siwisa-Pemba  
Ms Ann Skelton  
Professor Julia Sloth-Nielsen  
Mr Ashley Theron

The researchers responsible for the investigation are Mr G Hollamby, Ms L Stuurman and Ms R van Zyl.

The Secretary is Mr W Henegan. The Commission's offices are on the 12<sup>th</sup> floor, Sanlam Centre, corner of Andries and Pretorius Street, Pretoria. Correspondence should be addressed to:

The Secretary  
South African Law Commission  
Private Bag X668  
PRETORIA  
0001

Telephone : (012) 322-6440  
Telefax : (012) 320-0936  
E-mail : lawcom@salawcom.org.za

This report is available on the Internet: <http://www.law.wits.ac.za/salc/salc.html>

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	iii
LIST OF SOURCES	xxi
TABLE OF CASES	xxvi
SELECT LEGISLATION	
xxviii	

## CHAPTER 1

### INTRODUCTION

1.1	Background	1
1.2	The Commission's mandate	3
1.3	Consultation	3
1.4	The way forward	4
1.5	A word of thanks	7
1.6	A guide to reading this report	7

## CHAPTER 2

### THE SCOPE OF THE INVESTIGATION

2.1	Introduction	9
2.2	Comments received	9
2.3	Evaluation and recommendations	10

## CHAPTER 3

### THE CONSTITUTIONAL IMPERATIVES RELATING TO CHILDREN

3.1	Introduction	12
3.2	Principles underpinning the new Children's Bill	12
3.3	The 'best interests of the child' standard	14
3.4	The rights of children	16
3.4.1	Comments received	16
3.4.2	Evaluation and recommendations	20
3.5	The responsibilities of children	21
3.5.1	Comments received	21
3.5.2	Evaluation and recommendation	22

## **CHAPTER 4**

### **CHILDHOOD – ITS BEGINNING AND END**

4.1	Introduction	23
4.2	Comments received	24
4.3	Evaluation and recommendations	25

## **CHAPTER 5**

### **THE CHILD CARE ACT 74 OF 1983**

5.1	Introduction	29
5.2	The children's court assistant	29
5.2.1	Comments received	29
5.2.2	Evaluation and recommendations	30
5.3	Legal representation for children	31
5.3.1	Comments received	32
5.3.2	Evaluation and recommendations	34
5.4	The right of children to self-expression	37
5.4.1	Comments received	38
5.4.2	Evaluation and recommendations	38
5.5	Removals in terms of section 11	38
5.6	Removals in terms of section 12	39
5.6.1	Comments received	39
5.6.2	Evaluation and recommendations	41
5.7	Bringing children before the children's court	42
5.7.1	Comments received	42
5.7.2	Evaluation and recommendations	43
5.8	Finding a child in need of care (section 14(4))	43
5.8.1	Comments received	44
5.8.2	Evaluation and recommendations	45
5.9	Children placed with persons other than their parents or custodian	47

5.10	Ill-treated and abandoned children; children whose parents fail to maintain them properly	48
5.11	Deadlines	49
5.11.1	Comments received	49
5.11.2	Evaluation and recommendations	49
5.12	Contribution orders	50

## **CHAPTER 6**

### **ESTABLISHING PARENTHOOD AND THE STATUS OF CHILDREN**

6.1	Introduction	51
6.2	Legitimacy of children	51
6.3	Artificial insemination	53
6.4	Surrogate motherhood	55

## **CHAPTER 7**

### **THE PARENT – CHILD RELATIONSHIP**

7.1	Introduction	58
7.2	The diversity of family forms	58
7.2.1	Comments received	59
7.2.2	Evaluation and recommendations	59
7.3	The shift from 'parental power' to 'parental responsibility' and changes in terminology	60
7.3.1	Comments received	63
7.3.2	Evaluation and recommendations	63
7.4	The acquisition of parental rights and responsibilities	64
7.4.1	Comments received	67
7.4.2	Evaluation and recommendations	70
7.5	Parental responsibility and rights agreements	72
7.6	The management of parental rights and responsibilities where several persons (parents or otherwise) simultaneously have parental rights and	

responsibilities or components thereof in respect of a child

73

7.6.1	Comments received	74
7.6.2	Evaluation and recommendations	75
7.7	Parent-substitutes	75
7.7.1	Comments received	76
7.7.2	Evaluation and recommendations	76
7.8	Parenting plans	77
7.8.1	Comments received	78
7.8.2	Evaluation and recommendations	79
7.9	Termination of parental rights and responsibilities	79
7.9.1	Comments received	80
7.9.2	Evaluation and recommendation	81

## **CHAPTER 8**

### **PREVENTION AND EARLY INTERVENTION SERVICES FOR CHILDREN AND THEIR FAMILIES**

8.1	Introduction	82
8.2	Defining prevention and early intervention services	82
8.3	Promotion, prevention and early intervention: An inter-sectoral responsibility	85
8.3.1	Evaluation and recommendations	88
8.4	The role of local government	89
8.4.1	Comments received	90
8.4.2	Evaluation and recommendation	94
8.5	The role of traditional leaders in the delivery of prevention and early intervention and in safeguarding and promoting the welfare of children	96
8.6	Court-instigated services	96

## **CHAPTER 9**

### **CHILD PROTECTION**



9.1	Introduction	98
9.2	Circumstances in which protective intervention may be required	98
9.2.1	Comments received	98
9.2.2	Evaluation and recommendation	99
9.3	The Commission's broad approach to the protection of children	99
9.4	Existing situation in South Africa	102
9.5	Setting broad principles for child protection measures	107
9.5.1	Comments received	110
9.5.2	Evaluation and recommendations	111
9.6	Harmful cultural practices	115
9.7	Corporal punishment (physical punishment of children by their parents or caregivers)	115
9.7.1	Comments received	116
9.7.2	Evaluation and recommendation	118
9.8	Assessment and treatment / therapeutic services	121
9.9	Permanency planning	123
9.9.1	Comments received	126
9.9.2	Evaluation and recommendations	126
9.10	Reporting and registration of reported cases	127
9.10.1	Comments received	132
9.10.2	Evaluation and recommendations	134
 <b>CHAPTER 10</b>		
<b>THE PROTECTION OF THE HEALTH RIGHTS OF CHILDREN</b>		
10.1	Introduction	138
10.2	Children's right to basic health care services	138
10.2.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	138
10.2.2	Comments received	139

10.2.3	Evaluation and recommendations	139
10.3	Consent to medical treatment and / or surgical intervention	139
10.3.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	139
10.3.2	Comments received	140
10.3.3	Evaluation and recommendations	142
10.4	HIV testing in relation to placement of children in need of care	144
10.4.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	144
10.4.2	Comments received	145
10.4.3	Evaluation and recommendations	146
10.5	Confidentiality of information relating to the HIV status of children	148
10.5.1	Overview of the proposal in Discussion Paper 103	148
10.5.2	Comments received	149
10.5.3	Evaluation and recommendations	149
10.6	Access to contraceptives	150
10.6.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	150
10.6.2	Comments received	150
10.6.3	Evaluation and recommendations	152
10.7	Access to termination of pregnancy services	154
10.7.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	154
10.7.2	Comments received	154
10.7.3	Evaluation and recommendations	155
10.8	Right to refuse medical treatment	156
10.8.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	156
10.8.2	Comments received	156
10.8.3	Evaluation and recommendations	157
<b>CHAPTER 11</b>		
<b>THE PROTECTION OF CHILDREN AS CONSUMERS</b>		
11.1	Introduction	158
11.2	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	158

11.2.1	Protecting and informing children as consumers	158
11.2.2	The sale of dangerous goods to children and safety standards	158
11.2.3	The sale of solvents and other harmful substances to children	159
11.2.4	Safety at places of entertainment	160
11.2.5	Media regulation	162
11.2.5.1	Television broadcast	162
11.2.5.2	Radio broadcast	162
11.2.5.3	On-line services	162
11.2.5.4	Printed material	162
11.2.5.6	Advertising	164
11.3	Comments received	164
11.4	Evaluation and recommendations	164
 <b>CHAPTER 12</b>		
<b>CHILDREN IN ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT CIRCUMSTANCES</b>		
12.1	Introduction	166
12.2	Children affected by HIV/AIDS, including orphaned children	167
12.2.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	167
12.2.2	Comments received	170
12.2.3	Evaluation and recommendations	172
12.3	Children with disabilities	174
12.3.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	174
12.3.2	Comments received	176
12.3.3	Evaluation and recommendations	177
12.4	Child labour	177
12.4.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	177
12.4.2	Comments received	180
12.4.3	Evaluation and recommendations	180
12.5	Children living or working on the streets	181
12.5.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	181
12.5.2	Comments received	184

12.5.3 Evaluation and recommendations	185
12.6 Commercial sexual exploitation of children	186
12.6.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	186
12.6.2 Comments received	188
12.6.3 Evaluation and recommendations	190

## **CHAPTER 13**

### **THE PROTECTION OF CHILDREN CAUGHT UP IN THE DIVORCE / SEPARATION OF THEIR PARENTS**

13.1 Introduction	192
13.2 Improving outcomes for children	192
13.2.1 Hearing children's voices	192
13.2.2 Reducing conflict	195
13.2.3 Parenting education	196
13.2.4 Joint custody	197
13.3 The 'maternal preference' or 'tender years' rule	200
13.4 Other comments received	200
13.5 Conclusion	202

## **CHAPTER 14**

### **EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT**

14.1 Introduction	203
14.2 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	203
14.2.1 Defining ECD	203
14.2.2 Responsibility for providing ECD services	204
14.2.3 Minimum standards for ECD services	204
14.2.4 Registration of ECD services	204
14.2.5 Lines and levels of Government responsibility	205
14.2.6 Monitoring, inspection and closure of ECD services	206
14.3 Comments received	206
14.4 Evaluation and recommendations	208

**CHAPTER 15****PARTIAL CARE**

15.1	Introduction	210
15.2	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	210
15.2.1	Defining partial care	210
15.2.2	Licensing of partial care facilities	211
15.2.3	Minimum building standards for partial care facilities (places of care)	211
15.2.4	Assistance to providers of partial care services	212
15.2.5	Partial care not provided at partial care facilities (places of care)	212
15.2.6	Monitoring and inspection	213
15.3	Evaluation and recommendations	213

**CHAPTER 16****FOSTER CARE**

16.1	Introduction	215
16.2	Conceptualising foster care	215
16.2.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	215
16.2.2	Comments received	216
16.2.3	Evaluation and recommendations	217
16.3	Cluster foster care	217
16.3.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	217
16.3.2	Comments received	218
16.3.3	Evaluation and recommendations	218
16.4	Specialist or professional foster care	218
16.4.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	218
16.4.2	Comments received	219
16.4.3	Evaluation and recommendations	219
16.5	Selection criteria for prospective foster parents	220
16.5.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	220
16.5.2	Comments received	220
16.5.3	Evaluation and recommendations	220

16.6	Social and cultural issues when placing children in foster care	220
16.6.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	220
16.6.2	Comments received	221
16.6.3	Evaluation and recommendations	221
16.7	Parental rights and responsibilities for foster parents	222
16.7.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	222
16.7.2	Comments received	223
16.7.3	Evaluation and recommendations	223
16.8	Termination of parental rights and responsibilities over certain children in foster care	224
16.8.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	224
16.8.2	Comments received	224
16.8.3	Evaluation and recommendations	225
16.9	Reunification services and statutory supervision	225
16.9.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	225
16.9.2	Comments received	226
16.9.3	Evaluation and recommendations	227
16.10	Duration and extension of foster care order	228
16.10.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	228
16.10.2	Comments received	229
16.10.3	Evaluation and recommendations	229
16.11	Rights of non-South African children to foster care grants	230
16.11.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	230
16.11.2	Comments received	230
16.11.3	Evaluation and recommendations	230
16.12	Social security	231
16.12.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	231
16.12.2	Comments received	232
16.12.3	Evaluation and recommendations	232

**CHAPTER 17****ADOPTION AS A FORM OF SUBSTITUTE FAMILY CARE**

17.1	Introduction	233
17.2	Overview of the current law and the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	233
17.3	Who may be adopted and by whom?	233
17.3.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	235
17.3.2	Comments received	237
17.3.3	Evaluation and recommendation	237
17.4	Consent to adoption	239
17.4.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	243
17.4.2	Comments received	244
17.4.3	Evaluation and recommendations	245
17.5	Effect of an adoption	247
17.5.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	248
17.5.2	Comments received	248
17.5.3	Evaluation and recommendation	249
17.6	Giving or receiving considerations for adoption	249
17.7	Subsidised adoption	250
17.8	Access to information	251
17.9	Facilitating open adoptions	251
17.10	Adoption services	253

**CHAPTER 18****RESIDENTIAL CARE**

18.1	Introduction	254
18.1.1	Comments received	254
18.1.2	Evaluation of comments	255
18.2	Forms of residential care	255
18.2.1	Comments received	255
18.2.2	Evaluation and recommendations	256
18.3	Regulation of residential care	257

18.3.1	Comments received	257
18.3.2	Evaluation and recommendations	258
18.4	Human resources	258
18.4.1	Comments received	259
18.4.2	Evaluation and recommendations	259
18.5	Registration and classification	261
18.5.1	Comments received	261
18.5.2	Evaluation and recommendations	261
18.6	Programmes	264
18.6.1	Comments received	264
18.6.2	Evaluation and recommendations	265
18.7	Geographical location and size	265
18.7.1	Evaluation and recommendations	265
18.8	Procedures	266
18.8.1	Designation	266
18.8.1.1	Comments received	266
18.8.1.2	Evaluation and recommendations	267
18.8.2	Duration of orders	267
18.8.2.1	Comments received	267
18.8.2.2	Evaluation and recommendations	268
18.8.3	Appeals from the children's court	270
18.8.3.1	Comments received	270
18.8.3.2	Evaluation and recommendations	270
18.8.4	Release of a child at the age of 18 years	271
18.8.4.1	Evaluation and recommendations	271
18.8.5	Discharge	271
18.8.5.1	Comments received	272
18.8.5.2	Evaluation and recommendations	272



18.8.6	Children who abscond	272
18.8.6.1	Comments received	272
18.8.6.2	Evaluation and recommendations	273
18.8.7	Administrative transfers	273
18.8.7.1	Comments received	273
18.8.7.2	Evaluation and recommendations	274
18.9	Right to care and protection in residential care facilities	274
18.9.1	Evaluation and recommendations	275
18.10	Minimum standards and quality assurance in residential care	275
18.10.1	Comments received	276
18.10.2	Evaluation and recommendations	278
18.11	Funding of residential care	279
18.11.1	Comments received	279
18.11.2	Evaluation and recommendations	279
<b>CHAPTER 19</b>		
<b>RELIGIOUS LAWS AFFECTING CHILDREN</b>		
19.1	Introduction	281
19.2	Comments received	281
19.3	Evaluation and recommendations	281
<b>CHAPTER 20</b>		
<b>CUSTOMARY LAW AFFECTING CHILDREN</b>		
20.1	Introduction	283
20.2	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	283
20.3	Comments received	285
20.4	Evaluation and recommendations	285
<b>CHAPTER 21</b>		
<b>CHILDREN – THE INTERNATIONAL DIMENSIONS</b>		
21.1	Introduction	287

21.2	Inter-country adoptions	287
21.2.1	Comments received	288
21.2.2	Evaluation and recommendations	288
21.3	International child abduction	289
21.3.1	Comments received	290
21.3.2	Evaluation and recommendations	290
21.4	Refugee and undocumented immigrant children	292
21.4.1	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	292
21.4.2	Comments received	293
21.4.3	Evaluation and recommendations	293
21.5	Trafficking of children across borders	294
21.5.1	Comments received	294
21.5.2	Evaluation and recommendations	294

## **CHAPTER 22**

### **A NEW COURT STRUCTURE FOR SERVING THE NEEDS OF CHILDREN**

22.1	Introduction	296
22.2	Comments received	296
22.3	Evaluation and recommendations	303

## **CHAPTER 23**

### **MONITORING THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE NEW CHILD CARE LEGISLATION**

23.1	Introduction	311
23.2	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	311
23.3	Comments received	313
23.4	Evaluation and recommendations	314

## **CHAPTER 24**

### **GRANTS AND SOCIAL SECURITY FOR CHILDREN**

24.1	Introduction	316
24.2	Overview of the current law	316
24.3	Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103	318
24.4	Comments received	320

24.5	The report of the Committee of Inquiry into a Comprehensive System of Social Security for Children (the Taylor Committee report)	
	324	
24.6	Evaluation and recommendations	332

<b>ANNEXURE A:</b>	<b>LIST OF RESPONDENTS TO DISCUSSION PAPER 103</b>	
<b>ANNEXURE B:</b>	<b>LIST OF WORKSHOPS HELD AND CONFERENCES ATTENDED</b>	
<b>ANNEXURE C:</b>	<b>BILL</b>	

## LIST OF SOURCES

Australian Law Reform Commission, Report 84 **Seen and heard: priority for children in the legal process** 1997.

Barnard, Cronjé and Olivier **South African Law of Persons and Family Law** (3rd edition) Durban: Butterworths 1994.

Barnes–September Rose, Mayne Anne and Brown-Adam Ingrid (eds) **The National Consultative Conference against the Sexual Exploitation of children** 16 – 18 March 1999, section III.

Bartholdson \_rjan **Corporal punishment of children and change of attitudes – a cross cultural study** 2001.

Baumrind D, Larzelere R E and Cowan P A 'Ordinary physical punishment: Is it harmful? Comment on Gershoff (2002)' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 580 – 589.

Bitensky SH 'Spare the rod, embrace our humanity: Toward a new legal regime prohibiting corporal punishment of children' (1998) 31 **University of Michigan Journal of Law Reform** 353 – 474.

Children's Institute, UCT 'Policy summary of the Report of the Committee of Inquiry into a Comprehensive Social Security System for South Africa' June 2002, compiled for ACCESS.

Cooper, DM and Ball, D **Social Work and Child Abuse** London: BASW 1987.

Copeland P 'Recommendation: Ban on solvents to minors' Legal Resource Centre.

Corby >Alternative Theory Bases in Child Abuse and Neglect= in Stainton Rogers et al (ed) **Child Abuse and Neglect - Facing the Challenge** London: Open University 1989.

'Corporal punishment, physical abuse, and the burden of proof: Reply to Baumrind, Larzelere, and Cowan (2002), Holden (2002), and Parke (2002)' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 602 – 611.

Davel C J and Jordaan R A 'Het die kind se belange uiteindelik geseëvier?' 1997 **De Jure** 330.

Deisz et al 'Reasonable cause: a qualitative study of mandated reporting' 1996 20(4) **Child Abuse and Neglect** 276.

Department of Education **White Paper 6 on Special Needs Education** July 2001.

Department of Health **National Policy on testing for HIV** (unpublished – latest draft received from the Department of Health on 2 July 2001).

Department of Social Development inputs to yearbook 2001/2002: Internet [www.welfare.gov.za](http://www.welfare.gov.za)

Department of Social Welfare **Strategic Directions** (post-election briefing paper) 1996.

Department of Welfare **Financing Policy: Developmental Social Welfare Services** March 1999.

Department of Welfare **Project Go - Programme of Action** December, 1998.

Department of Welfare **Report of the Lund Committee on Child and Family Support** 1996.

Dickey Anthony **Family Law** (third edition) Sydney: LBC Information Services 1997.

Dingwall >Labelling children as abused or neglected' in Stainton Rogers et al (ed) **Child Abuse and Neglect - Facing the Challenge** London: Open University 1989.

Durrant J E 'Evaluating the success of Sweden's corporal punishment ban' (1999) 23 **Child Abuse and Neglect** 435 – 448.

Durrant J E 'Trends in youth crime and well-being since the abolition of corporal punishment in Sweden' (1999) 31 **Youth and Society** 437 – 455.

Eekelaar John and Nhlapo Thandabantu (eds) **The Changing Family: International Perspectives on the Family and Family Law** Oxford, England: Hart Publishing 1998.

EPOCH-USA **Legal reforms: Corporal punishment of children in the family** 2000, Internet <http://www.stophitting.com/legalreform.php> .

Fairall Shirley 'Who's the boss?' **Fair Lady** 25 April 2001, p. 71

Faller K **Child Sexual Abuse - an Interdisciplinary Manual for Diagnosis, Case Management and Treatment** London: Macmillan 1989.

'Family Courts: A Cinderella condemned to cinders?' (2002) 1:7 **Bulletin**, Centre for Applied Legal Studies.

**Final Report (1994) of the Goldstone Commission of inquiry regarding the prevention of public violence and intimidation.**

**Final Report (1997) of the Royal Commission on Human Relationships** (Vol 4, par2, p. 98), quoted by Dickey **Family Law** (third edition) Sydney: LBC Information Services 1997.

Gershoff E T 'Corporal punishment by parents and associated child behaviors and experiences: A meta-analytical and theoretical review' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 539 -579.

Gorenberg Carol A 'Fathers' rights vs. children's best interests: Establishing a predictable standard for California adoption disputes' (1997) Vol. 31 No. 2 **Family Law Quarterly** 169.

Guide to Adoption Practice.

Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction, 1980.

Hague Convention on Protection of Children and Cooperation in respect of Inter-country Adoptions, 1993.

Hahlo and Kahn **The Union of South Africa: The Development of its Laws and Constitution** Cape Town: Stevens 1960.

Heaton J 'The relevance of race and classification in terms of the Population Registration Act 30 of 1950 for adoption in South Africa' (1989) 106 **South African Law Journal** 713.

Holden G W 'Perspectives on the effects of corporal punishment: Comment on Gershoff (2002)' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 590 – 595.

Human Sciences Research Council **Key findings of Nelson Mandela/HSRC study on HIV/AIDS** 2002.

Hutchison E D 'Mandatory reporting laws: Child protective case finding gone awry?' (January 1993) Vol.38 No.1 **Social Work** 57.

IMC **Minimum Standards: South African Child and Youth Care System** May 1998.

John B 'Prejudice passed off as screening' (February / March 2000) **ChildrenFIRST** 9.

Jordaan R A and Davel C J 'Die Fraser trilogie' 1997 **De Jure** 394.

Joubert D J 'Interracial adoptions: Can we learn from the Americans?' (1993) 110 **South African Law Journal** 726.

Lind Graig >Sexual orientation, family law and the transitional Constitution= (1995) 112 **South African Law Journal** 481.

Litchman Lori 'Pennsylvania High Court OKs Second-Parent Adoption' (21 August 2002)  
<http://www.law.com/servlet/C.../View&c=LawArticle&cid=1029689036632&t=LawArticl>  
 Accessed on 26 August 2002.

Loney M >Child Abuse in a Social Context' in Stainton Rogers et al (ed) **Child Abuse and Neglect -Facing the Challenge** London: Open University 1989.

Lynch M, 2000: Keynote address, ISPCAN Congress, Durban.

Matshekga J 'Toothless bulldogs? The Human Rights Commissions of Uganda and South Africa: A comparative study of their independence' (2002) **African Human Rights Law Journal** 68.

Ministry of Health and Social Affairs **Sweden Ending corporal punishment: Swedish experience of efforts to prevent all forms of violence against children – and the results** 2001.

Mohamed Paleker 'Mountains promised, molehills delivered – mediation in the Family Court' (2002) Vol. 10(1) **Juta's Business Law** 13.

Molo Songololo **The trafficking of Children for Purposes of Sexual Exploitation – South Africa** August 2000.

Mosikatsana Tshepo 'Comment on The Adoption by K and B, Re (1995) 31 CRR (2D) 151 (Ont Prov Div)' (1996) 12 **South African Journal on Human Rights** 582.

Motsikatsana T 'Examining class and racial bias in the adoption process and the viability of transracial adoptions as a policy preference: A further reply to Professors Joubert, Pakati and Zaal' (1997) 13 **South African Journal on Human Rights** 602.

Motsikatsana T 'Transracial adoptions: Are we learning the right lessons from the Americans and Canadians? - A reply to Professors Joubert and Zaal' (1995) 112 **South African Law Journal** 606.

Motsikatsana T L 'Is papa a rolling stone? The unwed father and his child in South African law - A comment on Fraser v Naudé' (1996) 29 **Comparative and International Law Journal of South Africa** 154.

Muller and Rencken-Wentzel **Suggested changes to the laws affecting children: Separation and Divorce** February 2002.

National Coalition for Child Protection Reform, 2000: Issue Paper 6 - **Child Abuse and Poverty**: <http://www.ncccpr/org/newissues.html>.

National Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect **Proposed National Strategy on Child Abuse and Neglect** Pretoria: Department of Welfare, 1996.

New Zealand Law Commission **Preliminary Paper 47: Family Court Dispute Resolution** (2002).

Parke R D 'Punishment revisited – Science, values, and the right question: Comment on Gershoff (2002)' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 596 – 601.

Parton N **The Politics of Child Abuse** London: MacMillan 1985.

Porteus K, Vally S and Ruth T 'Alternatives to corporal punishment – Growing discipline and respect in our classrooms' **Wits Education Policy Unit** 2001.

**Report on Children's Rights (2002)**, Community Law Centre, University of the Western Cape.

**Report on the Access Child Participation Process (2002)**, Alliance for Children's Entitlement to Social Security.

**Research highlights of the latest MRC Annual Report (19 September 2002)**, Medical Research Council of South Africa.

Robinson J A 'An introduction to the international law on the rights of the child relating to the parent-child relationship' (2002) Vol. 13(2) **Stellenbosch LR** 309.

Save the Children **Sweden Ending corporal punishment of children – Making it**

happen 2001.

Singh Divya 'Adoption of children born out of wedlock' (1996) 29 **De Jure** 305.

Sloth-Nielsen J and Van Heerden B 'The constitutional family: developments in South African Family Law jurisprudence under the 1996 Constitution' (2002), (unpublished).

South African Law Commission **Report on Surrogate Motherhood** (Project 65) 1993.

South African Law Commission **Report on the Investigation into the Legal Position of Illegitimate Children** Project 38 October 1985.

**Transforming the present – Protecting the future: Draft Consolidated Report of the Committee of Inquiry into a comprehensive system of Social Security for South Africa** March 2002, Internet: [www.socdev.gov.za](http://www.socdev.gov.za)

UN Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Especially Women and Children, Supplementing the UN Convention against Trans-national Organised Crime, 2000.

Van der Linde A and Labuschagne J M T 'Strafregtelike aanspreeklikheid weens die skending van 'n omgangsreg van 'n ouer met sy / haar kind deur die ander ouer' (2001) Vol. 22(1) **Obiter** 153.

Van der Vyver and Joubert **Persone- en Familiereg** (2nd edition) Cape Town: Juta 1985.

Van Heerden et al **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** (2nd edition) Kenwyn: Juta and Co. 1999.

Warner J and Hansen D 'The identification and reporting of physical abuse by physicians: a review and implications for research' (1994)18 **Child Abuse and Neglect** 11-25.

Zaal N 'Avoiding the best interests of the child: Race-matching and the Child Care Act 74 of 1983' (1994) 10 **South African Journal on Human Rights** 372.

Zaal N and Matthias C 'Local government and the provision of child care services: An essential area for legislative reform' (2002) 119:1 **South African Law Journal** 138.



## TABLE OF CASES

**C v Commissioner of Child Welfare, Wynberg** 1970 2 SA 76 (C).

**Canadian Foundation for Children, Youth and the Law and the Attorney General v The Canadian Teachers' Federation, the Coalition for Family Autonomy and the Ontario Association of Children's Aid Societies** case no C34794/2002.

**Christian Lawyers Association of S A v Minister of Health** 1998 4 SA 1113 (T).

**Cohen v Minister for the Interior** 1942 TPD 151.

**Constantia Versekeringsmaatskappy v Victor** 1986 1 SA 601 (A).

**Dawood and another v Minister of Home Affairs and others; Shalabi and another v Minister of Home Affairs and others; Thomas and another v Minister of Home Affairs and others** 2000 3 SA 936 (CC); 2000 (8) BCLR 837 (CC).

**De Vos** case, Case no. 23704/2001, judgment delivered on 09/2001 (TPD).

**Dunsterville v Dunsterville** 1946 NDP 594.

**Fortune v Fortune** 1995 3 SA 348 (A).

**Fraser v Children's Court, Pretoria North** 1997 2 SA 261 (CC).

**Government of the Republic of South Africa v Grootboom and others** 2000 (11) BCLR 1169 (CC); 2001 1 SA 46 (CC).

**Kemp v Kemp** 1958 3 SA 736 (D).

**Minister for Welfare and Population Development v Fitzpatrick and others** 2000 (3) SA 422 (CC).

**Mohaud v Mohaud** 1964 4 SA 348 (T).

**Napolitano v Commissioner of Child Welfare, Johannesburg** 1965 1 SA 742 (A).

**National Coalition for Gay and Lesbian Equality and others v Minister of Home Affairs and others** 2000 2 SA 1 (CC); 2000 (1) BCLR 39 (CC).

**Re J (an infant)** 1981 2 SA 330 (Z).

**Satchwell** case Case CCT 45/01, decided on 25 July 2002.

**Schwartz v Schwartz** 1984 4 SA 467 (A).

**Sonderup v Tondelli and another** 2001 1 SA 1171 (CC).

**SW v F** 1997 1 SA 796 (O).

**Tabb v Tabb** 1909 TS 1033.

**V v V** 1998 4 SA 169 (C).

**Van der Linde v Van der Linde** 1996 3 SA 509 (O).

**Van Rooyen v Van Staden** 1984 1 SA 800 (T).

**Venter v Die Meester** 1971 4 SA 482 (T).

**Y v Acting Commissioner of Child Welfare, Roodepoort** 1982 4 SA 112 (T).

## **SELECT LEGISLATION**

Adoption Matters Amendment Act, Act No. 56 of 1998.

Age of Majority Act, Act No.57 of 1972.

Application of Health Standards in Traditional Circumcision Act, 2001 (Eastern Cape).

Basic Conditions of Employment Act, Act No.75 of 1997.

Births and Deaths Registration Act, Act No.51 of 1992.

Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Bill 53 of 2001.

Broadcasting Act, Act No.4 of 1999.

Child Care Act, Act No.74 of 1983.

Child Care Amendment Act, Act No.86 of 1991.

Children's Status Act, Act No. 82 of 1987.

Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, Act No.92 of 1996.

Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act No.108 of 1996.

Criminal Procedure Act, Act No.51 of 1977.

Divorce Act, Act No.70 of 1979.

Domestic Violence Act, Act No.116 of 1998.

Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act, Act No. 140 of 1992.

Film and Publications Act, Act No. 65 of 1996.

General Law Further Amendment Act, Act No. 93 of 1962.

Ghana: The Children's Act, Act No.560 of 1998.

Guardianship Act, Act No.192 of 1993.

Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction Act, Act No. 72 of 1996.

Immigration Bill 2000.

Independent Broadcasting Authority Act, Act No.153 of 1993.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa Act, Act No.13 of 2000.

India: Children's Code Bill of 2000.

Ireland Children Bill of 1999.

Kenya: Children Bill of 1998.

Law of Evidence Amendment Act, Act No. 45 of 1988.

Lesotho Children's Protection Act, Act No.6 of 1980.

Liquor Act, Act No.27 of 1989.

Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, Act No.117 of 1998.

Maintenance Act, Act No.99 of 1998.

Matrimonial Affairs Act, Act No. 37 of 1953.

Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act, Act No. 24 of 1987.

Namibia: Draft Children's Act of 1996.

Natural Fathers of Children born out of Wedlock Act, Act No. 86 of 1997.

Northern Province Initiation Schools Act, Act No.6 of 1996.

Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, Act No.20 of 1992.

Prevention of Family Violence Act, Act No.133 of 1993.

Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, Act No.4 of 2000

Recognition of Customary Marriages Act, Act No. 120 of 1998.

Refugees Act, Act No.130 of 1998.

Sexual Offences Act, Act No.23 of 1957.

Social Assistance Act, Act No. 59 of 1992.

Social Service Professions Act, Act No.110 of 1978.

Social Work Act, Act No.110 of 1978.

South African Law Commission Act, Act No.19 of 1973.

South African Schools Act, Act No.84 of 1996.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act No.108 of 1996.

Tobacco Products Control Act, Act No.83 of 1993

UK: Children Act of 1989.

Wills Act, Act No.7 of 1953.

## **CHAPTER 1**

### **INTRODUCTION**

#### **1.1 Background**

The South African Law Commission was requested to investigate and review the Child Care Act, 1983 and to make recommendations to the Minister for Social Development for the reform of this particular branch of the law in 1997. A project committee was appointed and an issue paper was published for general information and comment in May 1998. The issue paper was workshopped extensively.

After the issue paper stage, and in order to expedite the investigation, the Commission prepared a series of research papers. These papers covered specific focus areas and formed the basis for discussion at specially convened expert meetings. Research papers were prepared on aspects such as the parent-child relationship, children living with HIV/AIDS, children living on the street, children in residential care, and child protection.

The Commission considered it important to take the views of children into consideration in this investigation and originally intended to submit a separate children's report alongside the Commission's report to the Minister. The idea of a separate children's report was abandoned in the light of comments received from children who stated that their submissions should be accorded the same weight as that of adults. The input received from children was therefore reflected in the discussion paper. Given the time frames imposed, it was not possible to repeat the child participation process with the discussion paper or Children's Bill as basis.

The Commission has been fortunate in that the Portfolio Committee on Social Development has maintained close ties with the Commission throughout this investigation and the Committee was briefed on several occasions on progress made with the investigation. Prior to the finalisation of the discussion paper, a dedicated workshop with members of the Portfolio Committee was held on content in Gordon's Bay.<sup>1</sup> The fruitful interaction with this Committee is appreciated.

---

<sup>1</sup> 5 – 7 October 2001. The title of the workshop was 'Towards drafting a new Child Care Act'.

A discussion paper was released for comment in December 2001. It contained the Commission's **preliminary** recommendations and findings. The discussion paper is a voluminous document of close to 1300 pages published in five volumes. It did not contain a draft Bill as is customary in our discussion papers. However, the drafting of the Bill was conducted as a parallel process to the report writing and it was informed by the public consultation process conducted after the release of the discussion paper.

At the Gordon's Bay workshop, the Minister for Social Development, through the Chairperson of the Portfolio Committee, Mr Cas Saloojee, registered some concerns relating to the time it might take to complete the investigation. It was then agreed that the Commission would submit to the Minister and the Portfolio Committee the draft legislation at the end of June 2002 in order to allow the Minister the opportunity to introduce the legislation in the second half of 2002. The Commission did submit the seventh draft of the Children's Bill to the Minister and the Chairperson of the Portfolio Committee on 28 June 2002. As the imposition of such a deadline may have compromised the quality and extent of the Commission's consultation processes, the Commission and the Department for Social Development agreed to a joint consultation process with the draft Bill as basis.

This report contains the Commission's **final** recommendations and findings. It includes a new draft Children's Bill, which embodies the Commission's recommendations. The report does not include draft regulations, a costing analysis or an implementation strategy. These aspects will be attended to by the Department for Social Development.

In the report, the Commission proposes consequential amendments to several other pieces of legislation not falling under the administration of the Minister for Social Development. The Commission recommends, should the Minister for Social Development agree, that the need for such amendments be brought to the attention of the relevant Minister in order to present a holistic child protection framework for South Africa. The Commission also makes some recommendations of a non-legislative nature. Where appropriate, the Commission indicates what action needs to be undertaken by which role player.

This report is submitted to the Minister for Social Development<sup>2</sup> who may implement the

---

<sup>2</sup> Section 7(1) of the South African Law Commission Act 19 of 1973.

Commission's recommendations by introducing the draft Children's Bill in Parliament.

## **1.2 The Commission's mandate**

From the very beginning the Commission saw its mandate as going beyond the confines of the present Child Care Act, 1983 to include all statutory, common, customary and religious law affecting children. In the light of this broad mandate, the Commission formulated as its vision a single comprehensive children's statute for South Africa's children. This vision is based not only on the constitutional protection accorded to children's rights in the South African Constitution, the effect and interpretation given thereto by our courts, and the impact of HIV/AIDS on children, but also flows from South Africa's international obligations *inter alia* in terms of the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child and the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child.

In the consultation processes, it was repeatedly stated that any proposals made for law reform must be accompanied and supported by the necessary human and financial resources. A difficulty faced by the Commission was whether to make recommendations within the current resource framework which all accept to be wholly inadequate, even for present purposes, or to make proposals in the belief that additional resources simply will have to be found. In the end the Commission decided on a pragmatic approach where it attempted to strike a balance between the available current resources, their optimal use and application, and the realisation that social welfare and other services for children in South Africa will continue to need massive injections of resources in the foreseeable future in order to fulfil the basic needs of the most vulnerable members of our society.

## **1.3 Consultation**

The report is the product of a long consultative process. We would like to record our sincere appreciation to all those dedicated and concerned individuals, officials and organisations which made submissions, participated in the various workshops, or contributed to this process.

While every attempt was made to have as inclusive a consultation process as possible, the Commission acknowledges that the consultation process on the discussion paper itself was not adequate. We would have liked to have done more to include children in

the consultative process.<sup>3</sup> We appreciate the urgency attached to completing this investigation in the shortest possible period of time, but remain concerned that we were unable to ensure a wider debate. Following the release of the discussion paper in December 2001, the Commission embarked on a consultation process where individuals, organisations, and institutions were invited to make submissions on the preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper. Numerous submissions were received.<sup>4</sup> In addition to keen media interest, several workshops were held and conferences attended where these preliminary recommendations were discussed.<sup>5</sup> A workshop on the content on the 8<sup>th</sup> draft of the Bill was also held in Gordon's Bay on 29 and 30 October. The purpose of this workshop was to give other departments and civil society structures an opportunity to comment on the Commission's preliminary recommendations. Several briefing sessions on the content of the Bill were also held.<sup>6</sup> Submissions received were incorporated in the Bill, where appropriate. The Commission would like to record its appreciation to all those who made submissions.

As mentioned earlier, the Commission has been debating progress and content issues relating to this investigation with the Portfolio Committee on Social Development on an ongoing basis.

Also, as stated above, time did not allow a repeat of the child participation process or an extensive consultation on the Bill.

#### 1.4 The way forward

It has been pointed out that this report is submitted to the Minister for Social Development. The Minister, as advised by his Department, and in consultation with the MEC's at provincial level and local government structures, is at liberty to implement the recommendations contained in this report by introducing the draft Bill in Parliament.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> See also the **Report on Children's Rights (2002)**, Community Law Centre, University of the Western Cape; **Report on the Access Child Participation Process (2002)**, Alliance for Children's Entitlement to Social Security.

<sup>4</sup> See Annexure A for a list of respondents to the discussion paper.

<sup>5</sup> See Annexure B for details.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid.

<sup>7</sup> As 'welfare services' fall within the functional areas of concurrent national and provincial legislative competence listed in Schedule 4, Part A of the Constitution, the Bill will have to be introduced as a section 76 Bill.



However, before this can happen, a number of processes must first be adopted.

Firstly, the Minister, MEC's and senior departmental officials must be acquainted with the Commission's final recommendations as contained in this report.

Secondly, the Department must advise the Minister (as the provincial Departments must advise their MEC's) whether the final recommendations contained in this report adhere to Government and Departmental policy. While all attempts were made to ensure that the recommendations made do match stated policy, this was not possible in all cases. For one thing, some departmental policies are still in draft form. In other instances, policies still need to be developed. As the recommendations made in the report have an impact on most, if not all, directorates within the (national) Department such process should ideally be led by the Director-General: Social Development. Obviously the Directorate: Legal Affairs will play a critical role in evaluating the adequacy of the draft Bill from a legal perspective.

Thirdly, the Department will have to consult with its provincial counterparts and local government structures on the recommendations made and the draft Bill. Once clarity has been obtained from a social developmental perspective, the Department needs to engage in serious dialogue with other departments, NGO's, CBO's, and the organised professions. Prior consultation within the social development cluster at cabinet level with other Departments, and especially Treasury and Finance, can decisively influence the Minister's decision to proceed with the draft Bill as proposed by the Commission. In this regard, it is worth emphasising that the Commission is recommending, in this report, that certain consequential amendments be affected to existing legislation not administered by the Minister for Social Development in order to provide for a holistic approach to child protection. Obviously, this requires consultation with the relevant Minister(s). In addition, the Commission also makes recommendations of a non-legislative nature, especially where it relates to inter-sectoral cooperation and training. Once again, consultation with all stakeholders would be required.

Should the Minister decide to proceed and introduce the legislation, a critical fourth step would be to cost the draft legislation. As stated in the Background section above, the Commission adopted a pragmatic approach where it attempted to strike a balance between the available current resources, their optimal use and application, and the realisation that social welfare and other services for children in South Africa will continue

to need massive injections of resources in the foreseeable future. Thus, there is an urgent need to determine what it would cost to implement the new legislation. However, the challenges surrounding such a costing exercise are compounded by the lack of information as to what the existing system costs and what it would cost, not only in rands and cents, but also in human potential, if the current system is not radically improved. Ideally the costing exercise should form part of the consultations at government level.

Determining the financial implications (to the State) of the proposed legislation is a precondition for obtaining Cabinet approval to introduce the draft legislation in Parliament. Such Cabinet approval is sought on the basis of a memorandum setting out the purpose and object of the intended legislation, and importantly, whether the legislation envisaged would have a cost implication and if so, what that would be. It is the responsibility of the Department to prepare such Cabinet memorandum.

In the Commission's deliberations and consultative processes, the importance of proper communication not only as to content but also process was repeatedly stressed. It is therefore recommended that the Department of Social Development develop an implementation and communication strategy surrounding the proposed legislation. Proper (financial) planning will also ensure smooth implementation of the legislation once adopted by Parliament.

The draft Bill proposed by the Commission in this report would need a comprehensive set of regulations for its effective operation. Practically, the drafting of regulations usually starts when the draft legislation is in its final form: To do so otherwise, would require drafting in a vacuum. However, given the need for regulations and the historic, practical usage thereof in the child care sphere, it is suggested that the new regulations be drafted parallel to the Parliamentary process – otherwise, the implementation of the legislation would be delayed by the absence of the supporting regulations.

Lastly, it must be pointed out that in the light of the fact that the draft Bill will affect the status, institutions, powers or functions of local government, it must be published for public comment before it can be introduced in Parliament 'in a manner that allows organised local government, municipalities and other interested persons an opportunity to make representations with regard to the draft legislation'.<sup>8</sup> Rule 241 of the Rules of

---

<sup>8</sup> Section 154(2) of the Constitution.

Parliament (National Assembly) further requires the Minister to publish notice of his intention to introduce such a Bill in the Government Gazette. Such a notice must contain either an explanatory memorandum or a copy of the draft Bill. As this Bill clearly impacts on local government, it must therefore be published in draft form for public comment before it can be introduced in Parliament.

### **1.5 A word of thanks**

In this investigation, the Commission was fortunate that it could rely on the dedication and commitment to children and children's rights in particular by a broad range of persons and organisations. These include the Portfolio Committee on Social Development,<sup>9</sup> the Project Committee,<sup>10</sup> the respondents who submitted input, the participants at all the workshops, the legal drafters employed,<sup>11</sup> the researchers involved,<sup>12</sup> and the secretariat of the Commission. The Commission would like to record its appreciation for these services and thank sincerely all those who contributed to the process of drafting a new Children's Bill for South Africa. In this regard, we would in particular like to recognise the contribution of children in the consultative phases of the investigation.

### **1.6 A guide to reading this report**

This report builds on the discussion paper and closely follows its structure. With the exception of chapter 5 of the discussion paper, which has been incorporated in Chapter 3 of the report, all the chapters in the report follow on the corresponding chapters of the discussion paper. The discussion paper therefore forms an integral part of the report and the two documents should ideally be read together. This caveat applies in particular to those seeking extensive legal comparative analysis in the report.

For ease of reference, however, the Commission's preliminary recommendations as set out in the discussion paper are again presented in summary form in this report. This

---

<sup>9</sup> Under the chairmanship of Mr Cas Saloojee, MP.

<sup>10</sup> See page (iii) above for the list of persons who were members of the Project Committee at the time of the writing of this report.

<sup>11</sup> Mr Gideon Smit and Adv Gerhard Grove, SC.

<sup>12</sup> See page (iii) above for the names of the researchers who were responsible for the investigation at the time of the writing of this report.

exposition is then followed by a summation of the submissions received on the particular set of preliminary recommendations, whereafter an evaluation and recommendation section follow. This evaluation section is linked directly to the draft Children's Bill annexed to this report. In the evaluation process particular emphasis was placed on divergence from the Commission's preliminary position as per the discussion paper to the final recommendations as per this report.

Please note that while it is technically incorrect to refer to clauses of the draft Children's Bill as sections, this approach was adopted given the fact that a large percentage of the audience of this report is not legally qualified.

## CHAPTER 2

### THE SCOPE OF THE INVESTIGATION

#### 2.1 Introduction

Inherent in the Commission's vision of a new children's statute are the twin principles of enabling a child's growth and development within a family environment and protecting children in vulnerable situations. As pointed out in the discussion paper the vision of the Commission received overwhelming support, particularly because of its holistic, all-inclusive and child-friendly approach, which emphasises the best interests of the child. However, it was conceded by respondents that one single comprehensive children's statute might not be sufficiently accessible and user-friendly precisely because of its sheer scope and size.

#### 2.2 Comments received

The **Consortium**<sup>1</sup> supported the approach that the new child care legislation should focus equally on primary prevention strategies that will enable children to develop within their family environment. It submitted that the child care legislation should contain legislative provisions to ensure that the necessary resources are allocated for the purposes of primary prevention. The Consortium stated that although the new child care legislation cannot be all-encompassing, it can set minimum standards and create co-ordinating and reporting mechanisms to ensure that children's well-being is given appropriate attention in all government departments. The Consortium thus proposed that the legislation should contain a list of each sector's responsibilities in respect of the rights of children. Departments should then be required to amend national legislation, e.g. the National Health Act, for purposes of incorporating the rights of children in such legislation. Furthermore, each department should be obliged to report to the Minister for Social Development and the proposed Office of the Children's Protector (see chapter 24 of the discussion paper) on its plans to promote and protect children's well-being, and must submit annual reports on progress made on the implementation of these plans.

---

<sup>1</sup> Joint submission by the Children's Institute (UCT), the AIDS Law Project (University of Witwatersrand), the Alliance for Children's Entitlement to Social Security (ACCESS) – endorsed by the AIDS Consortium and the AIDS Legal Network.

**Children in Legal Disputes (CHILDS)** agreed with the Commission's recommendation that the Divorce Act, 1979, the Maintenance Act, 1998, and the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 should not be repealed. However, the respondent recommended that these Acts should be revisited in order to bring them in line with internationally accepted legal and normative standards. Furthermore, these Acts should be integrated into an 'umbrella Act' that should be named the Divorce Family Care Act.

### **2.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission remains committed to the concept of a single comprehensive children's statute. It is accordingly recommended that the new Children's Bill should go beyond the scope of the existing Child Care Act, 1983 specifically to include provisions on parental rights and responsibilities, children in especially difficult circumstances; international adoption, the age of majority, prevention and early intervention, child trafficking, the rights of children as consumers, and social security for children, to name but a few of the new areas. This implies that some areas of our existing private family law will be codified.

After scrutinising the regulations issued in terms of the current Child Care Act, 1983, the Commission has proposed the inclusion of some of the present regulations in the principal Act – the details are still left to regulations.

Further, in line with the Commission's vision and for the reasons stated in the discussion paper,<sup>2</sup> the Commission recommends the repeal and incorporation into the new Children's Bill of the following statutory provisions:<sup>3</sup>

- X The Age of Majority Act 57 of 1972;
- X The Children's Status Act 82 of 1987;
- X The Guardianship Act 192 of 1993;
- X The Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction Act 72 of 1996;
- X The Natural Fathers of Children born out of Wedlock Act 86 of 1997.

---

<sup>2</sup> Par. 2.6.

<sup>3</sup> Section 360 of the Bill.

However, the Commission does not recommend that the following pieces of legislation be repealed and summarily incorporated in the new Children's Bill:

- X the Divorce Act 70 of 1979;
- X the South African Schools Act 84 of 1996;
- X the Maintenance Act 99 of 1998;
- X the Domestic Violence Act 116 of 1998.

However, as pointed out in the discussion paper and highlighted by some of the respondents, some of these Acts do require amendment as is proposed further in this report. The amendments suggested to the Divorce Act, 1979 in particular, could address the difficulties children caught up in divorce proceedings face. However, as the administration of this Act and the other Acts resort under other Departments, the Commission recommends that the Minister for Social Development should request his relevant colleagues at Cabinet level to effect the necessary amendments. In that way functional areas are not trespassed upon, nor legislative time-tables of other Departments affected.

The Commission has addressed the issue of surrogate motherhood in the discussion paper.<sup>4</sup> A Bill on the issue of surrogacy has been drafted and is awaiting introduction into Cabinet. However, given the delay in passing this Bill, the Commission has decided to include a mirror provision on the status of children born of surrogacy in the Children's Bill.

As for other areas of the law, the Commission does not recommend, save for cross-referencing to the relevant legislation or where a specific aspect relating to children needs to be addressed, the incorporation in the new children's statute of legislation on children in trouble with the law, sexual offences by and against children, measures aimed at making it easier for children to give evidence in court, education and access to health. The effect of this recommendation is that these aspects will remain (or will in future be) in the primary education, health, sexual offences or child justice legislation.

---

<sup>4</sup> See Chapter 7 of the discussion paper. See also Chapter 6 below.

## CHAPTER 3

### THE CONSTITUTIONAL IMPERATIVES RELATING TO CHILDREN

#### 3.1 Introduction

Protection of children's rights leads to a corresponding improvement in the lives of other sections of the community, because it is neither desirable nor possible to protect children's rights in isolation from their families and communities. In this regard, South Africa is rather fortunate in that it does accord constitutional protection to children's rights in section 28 of the Constitution.

A thorough exposition of the case law on section 28 of the Constitution, 1996 was provided in Chapter 3 of the discussion paper and there is no need to restate it here. This exposition included an analysis of the Constitutional Court decision in the groundbreaking case of *Government of the Republic of South Africa v Grootboom and others*.<sup>1</sup>

#### 3.2 Principles underpinning the new Children's Bill

The Child Care Act 74 of 1983 does not contain a list of principles to guide decision-makers in the implementation of its provisions. This has been seen as one of the major shortcomings of the present Act. In the discussion paper, the Commission has therefore provisionally recommended that an objects and general principles clause be incorporated in the new Children's Bill.<sup>2</sup>

All those respondents who commented upon this section of the discussion paper approved of the Commission's preliminary position to include a general principles section in the new Children's Bill.<sup>3</sup> Some suggestions were made for refinement of the draft provision contained in the discussion paper. For instance, with reference to the Commission's recommendation that 'it is the duty of everyone who performs any function

---

<sup>1</sup> 2000 (11) BCLR 1169 (CC); 2001 (1) SA 46 (CC).

<sup>2</sup> See Par. 5.2 of the discussion paper.

<sup>3</sup> SWEAT; CHILDS; Pro-life; The Right to Life Campaign; Durban's Children's Society; the Consortium; Ms Julie Todd; Ms R van Zyl.



in respect of a child or takes any decision affecting a child ... to protect the child from unfair discrimination on any ground ...',<sup>4</sup> **Pro-life** submitted that not even fair discrimination against children should be permitted. The respondent therefore suggested that the words 'unfair discrimination' be replaced with the word 'discrimination' throughout the discussion paper.

This suggestion was endorsed by **The Right to Live Campaign**, KwaZulu-Natal. Referring to section (2), the **Durban Children's Society** questioned the feasibility of developing community structures which would provide care and protection for children. The respondent argued that owing to the lack of funds and manpower, the establishment of such structures would be difficult. Furthermore, basic causes of poverty need to be addressed to improve existing structures. In its submission, the **Consortium** stated that the promotion of substantive equality and a clear focus on primary prevention need to come through more strongly as a primary principle of the child care legislation.

As is pointed out in the discussion paper, the trend in modern child care legislation is increasingly towards the inclusion of central principles underpinning how decisions should be made in regard to children in domestic legislation. From the submissions made, strong support is evidenced for the inclusion of such principles. The Commission therefore endorses its preliminary view and proposes the inclusion in the new Children's Bill of a set of general principles to guide decision-makers in the implementation of its provisions.<sup>5</sup>

These principles are derived from international law such as the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child, from policy documents (such as the IMC's Interim Recommendations for the Transformation of the Child and Youth Care System), from South African common law and case law, as well as from accepted social work practice. The escalating numbers of reported cases of child abuse and neglect in recent times, as well as the crisis faced by South Africa as regards the HIV/AIDS pandemic, also provide cogent reasons why clearly formulated principles are desirable in future child protection legislation. Not only can they serve to further the best interests of children, but, in addition, principles can guide decision-makers and encourage them to focus on the appropriate allocation of scarce social resources and services to those children who are

---

<sup>4</sup> Discussion paper, p. 77.

<sup>5</sup> Section 9 of the Bill.

most at risk of suffering harm, and to ensure that the needs of the most vulnerable groups of children are taken into account.

### 3.3 The ‘best interests of the child’ standard

Section 28(2) of the Constitution, article 3(1) of the Convention on the Rights of the Child, article 4 of the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child, and articles 16(1)(d) and (f) of the UN Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination against Women enshrine the ‘best interests of the child’ standard as ‘paramount’ or ‘primary’ consideration in all matters concerning children. However, it has been argued that the ‘best interests’ standard is problematic in that, *inter alia*, (i) it is ‘indeterminate’; (ii) the different professionals involved with matters relating to children have different perspectives on the concept; and (iii) the way in which the criterion is interpreted and applied by different countries (and indeed, by different courts and other decision-makers within the same country) is influenced to a large extent by the historical background to and the cultural, social, political and economic conditions of the country concerned, as also by the value system of the relevant decision-maker.

While most respondents to the discussion paper supported the inclusion of criteria to give content to the ‘best interests of the child’ standard, some respondents had difficulty with the concept and or the listed criteria. **CHILDS**, for instance, submitted that the Commission’s proposed list of criteria to determine the best interests of the child is unhelpful for the following reasons:

- (i) The starting-point of the list of criteria is negative rather than positive. The respondent recommended that the best interests of the child-standard should begin with a positive description of the environment that is best suited for the healthy growth and development of a child. Furthermore, the format of such description should be similar to the one used in the Preamble to the Convention on the Rights of the Child.
- (ii) No distinction is made between parental vulnerabilities and limitations versus parental inadequacy versus parental abuse. The respondent believed that all parents have vulnerabilities and/or limitations that may impact negatively on their parental functioning. Further, that the Commission’s list of criteria for determining what is in the best interests of a child focus on the vulnerabilities and limitations of

parents. However, these acts do not threaten the child and therefore should not be the focus of the criteria on which decisions are made to exclude and/or limit the extent of the involvement of the parent or caregiver in the life of a child. The respondent thus recommended that the following three lists of criteria be outlined: (a) parental limitations, e.g. a parent spending insufficient time with his/her child, (b) parental inadequacies, and (c) parental abuse. Furthermore, these lists should include consequences and remedial possibilities to be undertaken by the parent(s) or caregiver(s).

- (iii) The criteria proposed by the Commission do not accommodate the changing realities of life. For example, the needs of children, the circumstances of parents and caregivers and the bonds between children and their parents / caregivers may change over time. The respondent thus recommended that the decision-making structures be sufficiently flexible to accommodate these changing realities.
- (iv) The Commission has paid insufficient attention to the abuse of children by parents and caregivers seeking to gain advantage over the other parent or caregiver. As a case in point, the respondent cites as examples false allegations of sexual abuse being made or denying the other party contact with the child. The respondent proposed that such acts be criminalised.

On the other hand, the **Consortium** recommended that, owing to its indeterminate nature and the inevitable subjective interpretation by different decision-makers and service providers, the best interests of the child standard should be further defined to promote its use and to promote equity in its application. It said that the general list to determine what is in the best interests of a child as recommended by the Commission appears to be based on case law surrounding judicial proceedings on custody, adoption, access and children's court proceedings. It is not user-friendly for service providers making out-of-court decisions. It therefore recommended the inclusion of a general list that is applicable to all decision-making situations, and the development of specialised guidelines for applying the test in each situation. The Consortium identified the following situations that would require specialised guidelines and training:

- deciding whether to test a child for HIV;
- deciding whether to appoint a caregiver as a foster parent;

- deciding whether to place a child in an institution;
- custody / care decisions;
- adoption decisions;
- deciding whether to disclose a child's HIV status to his or her parents;
- deciding whether to provide a child with certain medical treatment;
- administering a child's property;
- deciding whether a parenting agreement between a mother and an unmarried father is in the best interests of a child, before registering such agreement; and
- deciding whether to grant an unmarried father parenting rights.

Furthermore, all persons required to administer the new child care legislation should be sensitised continuously and trained on the issue of the general list and the specialised situation guidelines.

While the Commission accepts that the application of the 'best-interests' standard does create problems in practice, it is of the opinion that decision makers, including parents and judicial officers, will benefit greatly from having regard to a list of criteria in determining the best interests of a child. Such a list of criteria should be included in the new Children's Bill.<sup>6</sup> The Commission accordingly affirms its preliminary position in this regard.

### **3.4 The rights of children**

While children are afforded constitutional rights, the Commission considers it necessary to formulate for inclusion in the Children's Bill certain additional rights for children. In this regard, the Commission took care not to repeat or duplicate the existing provisions of Chapter 2 of the Constitution, 1996, but to include only supplementary rights in the Children's Bill. This confirms the preliminary position taken by the Commission in the discussion paper.

#### **3.4.1 Comments received**

The **Consortium** made several suggestions for improvement of the children's rights

---

<sup>6</sup> Section 10.

chapter in the discussion paper.<sup>7</sup> With regard to the right to ‘family relationship’, the Consortium submitted that, given the fact that many children are in the *de facto* care of other family members such as grandmothers, the right of children not to be arbitrarily removed from their primary caregivers (not only from their parents) should also be protected. Concerning children’s right to ‘property’, the Consortium mentioned that orphaned children often struggle to hold on to property, which property is often tied up for years in the administration process with the result that the children’s basic needs are not being provided. It therefore recommended the inclusion of the following provisions:

- “6(2) Property which a child is legally entitled to inherit, must be administered promptly and without delay and the administration system must ensure that children have access to financial means to provide for their basic needs.
- 6(3) The property concerned must be administered for the benefit of the child in both the present and the future.”

With regard to the right of children to be ‘protected from maltreatment, abuse, neglect, exploitation and other harmful practices’, the Consortium expressed concern over the use of the wording in section 7(1)(b)(i) which stipulates that ‘Every child has a right to be protected ... from encouragement to engage in ... any form of sexual activity’. It submitted that this provision could be misinterpreted to imply that some LoveLife publications should be prohibited. It said that some of these publications are aimed at encouraging youth to live ‘sex positive’ lives which can have the effect of encouraging forms of sexual activity, in an effort to remove the silence and taboo surrounding sex that fuels the HIV/AIDS pandemic. The Consortium therefore recommended that an appropriate adjective be inserted before the phrase ‘sexual activity’ to confine the prohibition to circumstances that are illegal or otherwise not in the interests of the child. Furthermore, it was suggested that section 7(2) should be improved by including the right to have access to counselling and not just medical treatment.

With regard to children’s right to protection from harmful social and cultural practices, the Consortium proposed that virginity testing of girl children be prohibited in section 8(3). It asserted that virginity testing is a cultural practice which harms the girl child. Furthermore, the Consortium said virginity testing, while intended to encourage certain values, exposes the child to further abuse as:

---

<sup>7</sup> Par. 5.4 of the discussion paper.

- it discriminates against the girl child;
- it publicly shames and isolates young people who do have sex, making them feel that they have done something wrong;
- it infringes the child's privacy and dignity;
- it publicly identifies virgins, thereby potentially exposing them to further abuse owing to the myth surrounding HIV and having sex with a virgin; and
- the public exposure of a girl's 'lack of virginity' shames young people who may also have been sexually abused or raped, thereby adding secondary trauma to their abuse.

With regard to the right of children to protection from exploitative labour practices, the Consortium suggested that this provision should incorporate the rights of children who have jobs that do not qualify as 'exploitative'. It submitted that these children must be supported by the state to enable them to continue their schooling. For example, it could be negotiated with their employers to allow some time off to do homework.

With regard to children's right to education, the Consortium mentioned that many children are being refused admission to school based on their inability to pay school fees, to buy school uniform, shoes or stationery. It therefore recommended the inclusion of the following provision: 'Every child has the right to receive an education, without discrimination, regardless of their inability to pay school fees or to afford a school uniform, shoes or stationery'.

With regard to the rights of children with disabilities, the Consortium stated that the wording in section 12(2) does not improve the current disadvantaged position of children with disabilities as the phrase 'for which he or she may qualify' does not set a principle, but allow another body to decide whether a child with a disability qualifies for financial assistance. It therefore proposed the following wording: 'Every child with a physical or mental disability has the right to receive special care and such financial assistance as is necessary to ensure a standard of living adequate for his or her development and equal enjoyment of his or her constitutional rights'.

The Consortium recommended that the following additional children's rights be included in the list:

- *The right to health care*

- *The right to social security*
- *The right to food*
- *The right to water and sanitation services*
- *The right to be heard and to participate in decisions*
- *The right to an environment that is not harmful to the child's safety or wellbeing.*

The Consortium supported the recommendation in chapter 11 of the discussion paper that a list of health rights be included in the National Health Bill. It suggested that a list of health rights should also be included under chapter 4 (dealing with children's rights) of the new child care legislation. The inclusion of the following provision was proposed: '(1) Every child has the right to basic health care services'. The Consortium suggested that 'basic health care' be defined as care that promotes the child's health, adequately treats acute and certain chronic health conditions, prevents acute and chronic health conditions, and which as a minimum includes (a list of essential health care services or programmes to be listed). Furthermore, it said the following provisions should also be included:

- "(2) Every child has the right to have access to health care services.
- (3) Every child has the right to have confidential access to contraceptives and health related information on sexuality, reproduction, STDs and HIV, regardless of age.
- (4) Every child has the right to be treated with dignity regardless of his or her health status, HIV/AIDS status, age, disability, socio-economic status, sexual orientation, or nationality, or any other ground.
- (5) Every child has the right to request and receive information on health promotion and the prevention of ill-health and disease.'

The Consortium also recommends the inclusion of the following provisions:

- '(1) Parents are primarily responsible for ensuring that a child's basic needs are provided for. However, if parents are unable to provide for the child's basic needs, the State is obliged to provide support and material assistance to the child and his or her caregiver, with an emphasis on facilitating the child's or caregiver's ability to provide the child with nutrition, shelter, clothing and health care.
- (2) Every child has the right to have access to social security, including social assistance if their parents are unable to provide for their basic needs in order to

ensure their survival and a standard of living adequate for their development.

- (3) A child suffering from malnutrition, or living in a situation of crisis, has the right to emergency social assistance from the state without undue delay.
- (4) A child with a disability or chronic illness that renders him or her in need of special care and medical treatment is entitled to social assistance in order to ensure his or her survival or development.'

As far as the right to water and sanitation services is concerned, the Consortium recommended the inclusion of the following provisions:

- '(1) Every child has the right to have access to clean water, within a reasonable distance from his or her home.
- (2) Every child has the right to have access to sanitation services aimed at promoting their health and preventing infections and diseases.'

The Consortium recommended that the proposed list of rights should include a child's right to be consulted and heard before decisions affecting his or her well-being are made. Also, the right to participate in policy and legislative drafting processes that affect children could be incorporated under this provision.

The **Department of Correctional Services** in turn suggested the inclusion of the following children's rights:

- Every child has the right to have access to psychological, social, educational, and spiritual services when necessary with the aim to improve social, spiritual and physical well-being;
- Every child has the right to privacy, confidentiality, self-determination and autonomy.

### **3.4.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

There is considerable merit in the recommendations made by the Consortium and most of these suggestions have been incorporated in the draft Children's Bill.<sup>8</sup> However, it must be pointed out that children do enjoy the full protection afforded by the rights set

---

<sup>8</sup> Sections 16(1), 17, 22, 23 and 25.



out in the Bill of Rights<sup>9</sup> in the Constitution and these rights do not need to be restated.

It is further important to point out that infringement of any of the rights enumerated in this chapter of the Children's Bill will not constitute a criminal offence in terms of this Bill, as the rights are framed as protective measures similar to their constitutional counterparts. This is not to say that unfair discrimination against children or maltreatment and abuse of children will be allowed or even tolerated: Unfair discrimination constitutes a criminal offence in terms of the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act 4 of 2000 while ill-treatment of children is specifically made a criminal offence in another provision in the Bill.<sup>10</sup>

### 3.5 The responsibilities of children

As stated in the discussion paper, the Commission hesitantly proposed the inclusion of a provision on the responsibilities of children in the new Children's Bill. This reluctance was in part attributed to the fact that the corollary of any right is the responsibility or duty to respect the rights of others and the absence of any similar obligation on adults. In the end, however, a provision on the responsibilities of children was proposed in the discussion paper on the strength of the commitment to the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child, from which the responsibility provision originates.

#### 3.5.1 Comments received

In general, respondents to the discussion paper were opposed to the concept of formulating a responsibility clause for children. **Africa Christian Action** is one of those respondents. The respondent posed the question whether children will be obliged to spy on their parents for the state as children in former communist countries were subject to such an obligation. **The Consortium** was of the same view. It argued that the proposed clause is vague and generalised and thus has no effect. Furthermore, the Consortium was of the view that inclusion of a responsibility on the child 'to support family life' with no comparative proposed insertion of a parent's (or the state's) duty to support family life is not desirable.

---

<sup>9</sup> Chapter 2 of the Constitution, 1996.

<sup>10</sup> Section 353.

The **Department of Correctional Services** suggested that the responsibilities of children be expanded to include the duty to be aware of their own belief systems, values, needs and limitations and the effect of these on others bearing in mind the child's age, maturity and level of understanding.

### **3.5.2 Evaluation and recommendation**

The Commission proposes the inclusion of a responsibility clause in the new Children's Bill.<sup>11</sup> This is done on the strength of our commitment to the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child.

---

<sup>11</sup>

Section 28.

## CHAPTER 4

### CHILDHOOD - ITS BEGINNING AND END

#### 4.1 Introduction

International law and our Constitution define a child as a person below the age of eighteen years. Therefore only persons below the age of eighteen years of age are entitled to the protection afforded by section 28 of the Constitution and those listed in the relevant international instruments. The Child Care Act, 1983 also defines a child as any person under the age of eighteen years. In the discussion paper, the Commission therefore recommended that a child be defined for the purposes of the children's statute as any *person* under the age of 18 years of age.<sup>1</sup> The consequence of limiting the protection accorded to 'persons' was that the children's statute would not apply to unborn children: childhood will begin at birth.

In terms of the Age of Majority Act 57 of 1972, South Africans of both sexes attain majority on reaching the age of 21 years (the age of majority). A minor can also attain majority status by concluding a valid marriage, or in terms of the Age of Majority Act through a High Court process allowing for express emancipation. In the discussion paper, the Commission recommended that the age of majority be 18 years, with a proviso that parental responsibility and/or State support, where appropriate, in respect of such a person may be extended by the court beyond that person's eighteenth birthday in special circumstances.<sup>2</sup> In terms of this preliminary proposal, an application for extension of parental responsibility and State support may be made before the child's eighteenth birthday by -

- (a) the parent or primary care-giver of the child;
- (b) any person with parental responsibility for the child;
- (c) the Director-General: Social Development; or
- (d) the child himself or herself.

The Commission further noted that if the age of majority is advanced to 18 years, then

---

<sup>1</sup> Par. 4.2.

<sup>2</sup> Par. 4.5.

little justification for the retention of the Age of Majority Act 57 of 1972 remains, and the Act can be repealed.

#### 4.2 Comments received

- *The beginning of childhood*

A substantial number of respondents to the discussion paper argued that the new child care legislation should be extended to unborn children. This is linked to the view that no woman should be allowed to terminate a pregnancy. The majority of the submissions in this regard were made from a Biblical point of view.<sup>3</sup> It seems that most of these respondents are unaware of the fact that abortion has been legalized by the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act 92 of 1996. They also seem unaware of the High Court decision in ***Christian Lawyers Association of S A v Minister of Health***<sup>4</sup> in which it was held that an unborn child is not a legal person.

- *The end of childhood / the age of majority*

The **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** recommended, from a protective and supportive perspective, that the age of majority should remain 21. The respondent argued that it is difficult for a minor of 18 to negotiate his / her maintenance with a parent. Furthermore, the Society argued that lowering the age of majority to 18 may discourage minors from furthering their tertiary education.

**Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** submitted that majority should still be attained at the age of 21. The respondent argued that when the law considers a vulnerable group such as children, the protection should be broadened not narrowed. Furthermore, that access to the courts will be easy for a child who alleges that the protection has become a restriction that should be removed. The respondent identified the following difficulties should the age of majority be lowered to 18:

---

<sup>3</sup> Chapel of Our Lady and St Michael, Father Eldred Leslie; N G Gemeente, Secunda – Goedeheoop, Dr A W Knoetze; East Claremont Congregational Church; Leon Vosloo; Marnus Roodbol; M Rautenbach; Brian Drury; Wolfie Wolfaardt. The following respondents recommended that the definition of 'a child' should include unborn children: Doctors For Life, Pro-life, The Right To Live Campaign and Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa.

<sup>4</sup> 1998 (4) SA 1113 (T).

(i) *Prescription*

Prescription has normally been interrupted until a child is no longer a minor. Should the age of majority be lowered to 18, children will be required to institute action before they reach the age of 21. Failing to do this will result in the prescription of their claims when they reach the age of 21 years.

(ii) *Contractual liability*

Children who leave school are often vulnerable to persons in the commercial world. Thus, the three-year period (after 18) during which the child is still protected by the law in respect of the ability to contract, constitute a valuable time for training children as they become active in the commercial world. Furthermore, when persons know that children need the assistance of their parents, they are more careful when contracting with minors.

The **Department of Social Development, Free State**, suggested that the age of majority should remain 21 years. The respondent stated that it is not clear how children will be informed of their right to apply for the extension of parental responsibility before they attain the age of 18 years.

The **Consortium** supported the Commission's recommendations that (a) a child be defined as any person under the age of 18, (b) the age of majority be reduced to 18, and (c) the Age of Majority Act 57 of 1972 be repealed. **Ms R van Zyl** also supported the Commission's recommendation that the age of majority be lowered to 18 years.

#### 4.3 Evaluation and recommendations

As pointed out earlier, the relevant international instruments, the Constitution, 1996, and our case law militate against extending the protection *afforded by this Children's Bill* to unborn children. This is not to deny the continued use of other common law provisions such as the *nasciturus* fiction to protect the rights of unborn children or to prevent the adoption of legislation or policies to, for instance, provide nevirapine to pregnant mothers. By recognising unborn children as persons, the Commission would also enter the debates surrounding abortion and the rights to reproduction and wrongful life, which deserve attention in their own right.

The Commission further confirms its preliminary position as stated in the discussion paper to lower the age of majority to 18 years of age, for the reasons advanced in the discussion paper.<sup>5</sup> We note the objections of the Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope and the Christian Lawyers Association to such a step, but point out that the limits on the contractual capacity especially have tended to work rather in favour of business interests than to protect persons in that age category from 'unwise' business decisions.<sup>6</sup>

It is worth pointing out that the definition of 'major' or 'person of age' as defined in the Births and Deaths Registration Act 51 of 1992 is in the process of being amended.<sup>7</sup> In terms of the new definition of 'major' or 'person of age' the age is lowered from 21 years to 18 years of age. For the purposes of the Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1992 then, minority (childhood) would end once a person attains 18 years of age.

It is worth recalling that in the discussion paper the Commission did state that should the Age of Majority Act 57 of 1972 not be repealed, then the Act should be amended to provide express guidance to the courts to assist them in making a decision whether or not to grant an order for advancement of majority. In amending the Act, provision should also be made for the inclusion of a provision allowing the court discretion to grant a qualified or conditional order (for the advancement of majority). Should the Commission's recommendation that the age of majority be lowered to 18 years not be accepted, then the Commission would recommend that the Minister request the Department<sup>8</sup> responsible for the administration of the Age of Majority Act 57 of 1972 to at least have these amendments affected.

In the discussion paper provision was made for the extension of parental responsibility and or State support in special circumstances in respect of persons in the 18 -21 age category.<sup>9</sup> This was done part in response to submissions received and in order to counter any negative effects the lowering of the age of majority might have for children in the formal care and protection system still attending school or completing their tertiary

---

<sup>5</sup> Section 29 of the Bill.

<sup>6</sup> Banks and business enterprises are more concerned about collateral for their debts and would in all likelihood continue to demand surety from the parents or caregivers of such person concerned.

<sup>7</sup> See section 1 of the Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Bill 53 of 2001.

<sup>8</sup> It could not be established which Department is responsible for administering the Age of Majority Act, 1972.

<sup>9</sup> For the formulation, see Par 4.5 of the discussion paper.

education. The idea seems to be that because some persons in the age category 18 – 21 years still live with and are financially dependent upon their parents, they are entitled to such support. However, it must be pointed out that a reciprocal duty of support exists in terms of which parents and children are obliged, within their respective means, to care for and maintain each other. Such a duty has no age limit or cut-off; often the position is inverted later in life when the now adult children take care of their aged parents. Indeed, some persons see this mutual support obligation as one of the cornerstones of healthy family life.

As is pointed out by Van Heerden *et al*,<sup>10</sup> the attainment of majority does not *per se* terminate the parental duty of support: it is the child's ability to maintain himself or herself that is important. Thus the obligation to maintain a severely handicapped child persists throughout the child's life.<sup>11</sup> Similarly, a duty which ceased when a son started work or a daughter married may revive when the child faces financial difficulties.<sup>12</sup> By the same token, the duty to maintain children ceases when they become self-supporting. After reconsidering the issue, the Commission is therefore of the opinion that lowering the age of majority to 18 years of age would not adversely affect the parental duty of support.

In line with the Commission's preliminary recommendations in the discussion paper, it is therefore recommended that provision be made in the Children's Bill for the possibility to extend parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a particular child after that child has turned 18 years of age.<sup>13</sup> Such an extension would be made on application in special circumstances. The Commission further recommends that a person placed as a child in alternative care on application to the MEC be allowed to remain in that care until the end of the year in which that person reaches the age of 21 years.<sup>14</sup> A similar recommendation in respect of a person placed in foster care as a child is made.<sup>15</sup> This should allow persons placed as children in alternative and foster care arrangements to finish their education and training. Obviously the extension of the placement must be

---

<sup>10</sup> **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 247.

<sup>11</sup> Per Jansen J in **Kemp v Kemp** 1958 (3) SA 736 (D) at 737.

<sup>12</sup> Van Heerden et al **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 247, footnote 76.

<sup>13</sup> Section 40 of the Bill.

<sup>14</sup> Section 196(2) of the Bill.

<sup>15</sup> Section 196(2) of the Bill.

accompanied by the necessary state support, such as the foster care grant.

Provision is also made for a child placed in alternative care to continue staying in that care until the end of the year in which that person reached 18 years of age.<sup>16</sup> This would allow a person who turned 18 in the beginning of the year, to finish at least that year's schooling or training should he or she so wishes. Such placement should also be accompanied by the necessary State support.

---

<sup>16</sup> Section 196(1) of the Bill.



## **CHAPTER 5**

### **THE CHILD CARE ACT 74 OF 1983**

#### **5.1 Introduction**

Even a cursory overview will reveal that the draft Bill proposed by the Commission in this report goes far beyond the confines of the Child Care Act, 1983. However, despite the deficiencies and limited scope of the Child Care Act, the Act and the regulations issued in terms of the Act nevertheless served as a workable basis for a review of children's legislation. All the provisions of the current Act (and regulations) were carefully considered and it is recommended that certain provisions should be retained. Given the purpose of the overview of the Child Care Act, 1983 in the discussion paper<sup>1</sup> and the fact that the current provisions of the Act (and regulations) are considered throughout this report, only certain provisions of the Act are discussed here.

#### **5.2 The children's court assistant**

As pointed out in the discussion paper,<sup>2</sup> children's court assistants as envisaged under section 7 and regulation 2 of the Child Care Act used to provide at least some child advocacy services. In 1992, however, the Department of Justice ended the practice of having full-time, professionally qualified assistants, and so ended even this limited resource for children. The removal of children's court assistants also left Children's Court Commissioners in the ethically difficult position of having to serve both as the adjudicator and as the person who conducts each case. This had not been to the advantage of the children who appear before them.

##### **5.2.1 Comments received**

The respondents to the discussion paper welcomed the Commission's recommendation that the position of the children's court assistant be reactivated.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Chapter 6 of the discussion paper was a 'foundational and introductory chapter'.

<sup>2</sup> Par. 6.3.2.

<sup>3</sup> Ms R van Zyl, H Gerryts and the Dutch Reformed Church.

### 5.2.2 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission confirms its initial recommendation that the position of children's court assistant be reactivated and given an expanded role. The designation of this position has been changed to 'child and family court registrar'.<sup>4</sup> The Bill makes specific provision for the appointment of child and family court registrars and support staff<sup>5</sup> and sets out the required qualifications, duties and functions of child and family court registrars.<sup>6</sup>

The Commission further recommends that the registrar must screen all matters brought to or referred to the child and family court.<sup>7</sup> In this process, the registrar must determine if a matter –

- may be brought before court;
- require a pre-hearing conference or further investigation;
- needs referral to a lay forum for an attempt to settle the matter out of court; or
- needs referral to the presiding officer in chambers.<sup>8</sup>

On referral of a matter to court, the registrar will also determine whether a matter is to be heard at district or regional court level.<sup>9</sup> The registrar may hold pre-hearing conferences<sup>10</sup> and may cause family group conferences to be arranged.<sup>11</sup> In addition, the Commission recommends that the registrar must attend all child and family court hearings, may present evidence and information at such hearings; with the permission of the court, question or cross-examine any party or witness before the court; must arrange legal representation for a child when necessary and may assist an unrepresented party in the proceedings before the court.<sup>12</sup> Seen from this perspective, it should be clear that

---

<sup>4</sup> Section 1 of the Bill: definition of child and family court registrar.

<sup>5</sup> Section 92(1) of the Bill.

<sup>6</sup> Sections 93 to 101 of the Bill.

<sup>7</sup> Section 94 of the Bill.

<sup>8</sup> Section 94(1)(b)(iv) of the Bill.

<sup>9</sup> Section 95 of the Bill.

<sup>10</sup> The registrar may conduct a pre-hearing conference with the parties in order to mediate and settle the disputes and to define the issues to be heard by the court (section 96(1)). The registrar will preside at such conferences (section 96(4)(a)).

<sup>11</sup> Section 97 of the Bill.

<sup>12</sup> Section 101 of the Bill.

the child and family court registrar is imbued with far more responsibility and can play a far more active role than even the children's court assistant could in terms of the existing legislation.

### **5.3 Legal representation for children**

In the discussion paper<sup>13</sup> the Commission recommended putting into operation section 8A of the Child Care Act, 1983. This section was inserted by the 1996 amendment and provides that a child may have legal representation at any stage of a proceeding under the Child Care Act, 1983. It is obligatory for the children's court to inform a child "who is capable of understanding, at the commencement of any proceeding, that he or she has the right to request legal representation at any stage of the proceeding".<sup>14</sup>

However, in order to provide greater guidance on the question of when children should have an enforceable right to legal representation in care proceedings, the Commission recommended in the discussion paper that legal representation, at State expense, must be provided automatically for a child involved in any proceedings under the new children's statute, in the following circumstances:

- (a) Where it is requested by the child;
- (b) Where it is recommended in a report by a social worker or an accredited social worker;
- (c) Where it appears or is alleged that the child has been sexually, physically or emotionally abused;
- (d) Where the child, a parent or guardian, a parent-surrogate or would-be adoptive or foster parent contests the placement recommendation of a social worker who has investigated the current circumstances of the child;
- (e) Where two or more adults are applying in separate applications for the placement of the child with him, her or them;
- (f) Where any other party besides the child will be legally represented at the hearing;
- (g) Where it is proposed that a child be trans-racially placed with adoptive parents

---

<sup>13</sup> Par. 6.3.1.

<sup>14</sup> Section 8A(2) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

- who differ noticeably from the child in ethnic appearance;
- (h) In any other situation where it appears that the child will benefit substantially from representation either in regard to the proceedings themselves or in regard to achieving the best possible outcome for the child.

### 5.3.1 Comments received

**Durban Children's Society** supported the following recommendations of the Commission:

- That a child be provided with legal representation when trans-racially placed with adoptive parents.
- That social workers in private practice be excluded from the definition of "authorised officer" in section 1 of the Child Care Act, 1983.

**Africa Christian Action** questioned the ability of the state to provide legal representation for children given the limited resources. The respondent submitted that care should be taken that the absence of legal representation does not become a barrier to trans-racial adoptions.

The **Dutch Reformed Church, Pretoria**, welcomed the Commission's recommendations with regard to legal representation for children. The respondent, however, questioned the ability of the system to implement these recommendations given the lack of funds and human resources and in view of the duration of children's court cases.

**Mr D S Rothman**, Commissioner of Child Welfare in Durban, made the following submissions in respect of the above recommendations:

With regard to recommendation (b), Mr Rothman submitted that it is generally known that many social workers fear the presence of legal representatives and feel intimidated by them to the extent that social workers have requested legal representation for themselves in his court. In his view, social workers are not qualified to assess the need for legal representation for a child. On the other hand, the **Department for**

**Correctional Services** suggested that the categories of persons on whose recommendation legal representation should be appointed be broadened to include psychologists.

With regard to recommendation (c), Mr Rothman stated that abuse of this nature may form part of the removal criteria for the child as provided for in section 14(4)(aB)(vi) of the current Child Care Act. This will mean that legal representation for the child must be arranged in all section 14(4)(aB)(vi) cases. Mr Rothman is of the opinion that the guidelines should not refer to events as these may be too broad, but should rather focus on the section 14(4) categories.

With regard to recommendation (d), Mr Rothman mentioned that in most cases social workers produce their reports for the first time when they appear in court on the day of the hearing. Thus, the nature of the recommendations may only become known to the parties on the day of the hearing. He added that the social worker's report is a court document which has yet to be tendered as evidence and consequently remains privileged until this stage. Furthermore, the courts usually only become aware of the dispute during the hearing and the adjournment of the proceedings will then become inevitable.

With regard to recommendation (e), Mr Rothman presumed that the recommendation refers to adoption applications as the current Child Care Act does not provide for contested applications for the placement of children involved in a children's court enquiry. This instance is thus irrelevant.

With regard to recommendation (g), Mr Rothman submitted that the court will be inclined to assess the matter on the physical attributes (colour) of people. This could be discriminatory, especially if the court must provide its own interpretation of whether the differences in appearance are sufficient to justify legal representation.

With reference to chapter 6 paragraph (b) of the executive summary, **CHILDS** proposed that point (c) should also refer to a report by a psychologist, and that point (d) should also refer to a placement recommendation by a psychologist. The respondent further recommended that legal representation must be provided at State expense or in cases

where the parent(s) can afford it, at the cost of the parent(s). This would imply some form of means testing.

**CHILDS** proposed that an “intake process” be implemented to determine the needs of a child and his/her family as well as all legal and social welfare and related actions undertaken prior to any legal process being instituted. The respondent proposed that a process of mediation followed by an assessment procedure should precede litigation. Furthermore, it recommends that in the event of urgent applications as well as removals, a process of mediation followed by an assessment procedure should precede litigation.

**Ms R van Zyl** stated that legal representation is important for children who are to be placed trans-racially.

**The Children’s Rights Project and Local Government Project** (Community Law Centre, UWC) submitted that although section 8A of the Child Care Amendment Act, 1996 (Act No. 96 of 1996) goes a long way to afford children the right to be heard in children’s court proceedings, it does not go far enough. The respondents added that a further problem relates to the qualification in sections 8A (3) and (4) requiring legal representation only if it is in the best interests of the child. It is argued that this qualification is as broad as the constitutional rider of “substantial injustice”. The respondents mentioned that the Child Care Regulations (in Regulation 4A(1)) provide detailed situations where a child should be provided with legal representation at state expense. Notwithstanding these developments in providing children the right to be heard in child care proceedings, provisions for legal representation for children in the Child Care Act are still not in operation. The respondents supported the Commission’s recommendations with regard to legal representation for children.

### **5.3.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

Legal representation in children’s court enquiries is rather the exception than the rule. If a legal representative does appear in the children’s court, it is usually at the behest of one or both of the parents. There is seldom legal representation for the children themselves. The Commission is concerned about the fact that section 8A of the Child Care Act, 1983, is not yet in operation. The failure to put this protective measure into

operation after more than five years is apparently due to the inability of the Departments of Social Development and Justice and Constitutional Development to agree as to who should pay for these services. One would have thought that the budgetary issues would have been addressed in the drafting process or at least by now. Unfortunately, it seems that while the principle of legal representation for children attracted virtual unqualified parliamentary support, it is not backed up with the necessary financial means. Several of the respondents also questioned the viability of the system to give effect to the right of a child to legal representation given the budgetary and structural challenges.

The failure to put into operation section 8A of the Child Care Act, 1983 is particularly worrying given the constitutional provision that states that every child has the right to legal representation 'assigned to the child by the state, and at state expense, in civil proceedings affecting the child, if substantial injustice would otherwise result'.<sup>15</sup> Given the focus of children's court enquiries (i.e. to determine whether a particular child is in need of care and protection), the above constitutional provision, and the failure to put into operation section 8A, the Commission at one point seriously entertained the idea of excluding all legal representation, except that for the child, in the child and family court.

However, as in the discussion paper,<sup>16</sup> the Commission opines that a child involved in a matter before the child and family court is entitled to legal representation.<sup>17</sup> The Commission states that a child may appoint a legal representative of own choice and at own expense.<sup>18</sup> Should such legal representative not serve the interests of the child in the matter, the court must terminate the appointment.<sup>19</sup> A duty is also imposed on the court to inform the child or the person exercising parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the child of the child's right to legal representation.<sup>20</sup>

The Commission further recommends that the court must order that legal representation be provided for the child at State expense if it is requested by the child; recommended

---

<sup>15</sup> Section 28(1)(h) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

<sup>16</sup> Par. 6.3.1.

<sup>17</sup> Section 78(1) of the Bill.

<sup>18</sup> Section 78(2) of the Bill.

<sup>19</sup> Section 78(2)(b) of the Bill.

<sup>20</sup> Section 78(3) of the Bill.

by a social worker; where it appears or is alleged that a child has been abused or deliberately neglected; where placement recommendations are contested; where other parties besides the child are to be legally represented; or broadly if substantial injustice would otherwise result.<sup>21</sup> Should the court deny a child the right to such legal representation, the court must record its reasons for declining to issue such an order.<sup>22</sup>

The Commission recommends that a child who must be represented at state expense must be represented by a family advocate, a child and family law practitioner whose name appears on the family law roster, or the child and family court registrar, in urgent matters.<sup>23</sup>

It is true that many social workers do feel intimidated by the presence of legal representatives in the children's court, as was pointed out by Mr Rothman. In their defence, however, the same could be said about some commissioners of child welfare. While Mr Rothman argues that social workers are not qualified to assess the need for legal representation for a child, and given the perceived opposition of social workers to legal representatives being involved in the process, it must be pointed out that in our opinion social workers have no incentive to recommend in their report that a legal representative for the child be appointed. Indeed, if social workers are intimidated by legal representatives to the extent suggested, then it is not in their self-interest to make the recommendation that a child be legally represented. However, the Commission is of the opinion that social workers should be entitled to make a recommendation to the court in their reports that legal representation for the child is called for.<sup>24</sup> The social worker has worked with the family, has investigated the circumstances of the child, and should have a very good idea of the dynamics involved in the family once the case is before the child and family court.

The general thrust of Mr Rothman's submission that the Commission's preliminary recommendations in respect of mandated legal representation for children are not useful

---

<sup>21</sup> Section 78(5).

<sup>22</sup> Section 78(6).

<sup>23</sup> Section 78(7).

<sup>24</sup> Section 78(5)(b).



is far more serious. As framed presently,<sup>25</sup> the court will have no discretion to refuse legal representation for a child, at the expense of the state, under the circumstances listed.

The Commission takes note of Mr Rothman's comment that it is difficult to know whether the placement recommendation of a social worker will be contested by the parties before the hearing, as the social worker's report will be produce for the first time on the day of the hearing. However, a social worker usually knows whether the placement recommendation would be contested by one or some of the parties and should therefore inform the court beforehand in order to avoid unnecessary delays.

The Commissions has no desire to impede trans-racial adoptions. We take note of the submissions in this regard and no longer recommend that legal representation be provided to children when adopted trans-racially.

The Commission maintains its original recommendation with regard to Regulation 4A(1)(g). As explained, Regulation 4A(1)(g) provides that where a child is capable of understanding the nature and content of the proceedings, but differences in languages used by the court and the child prevent direct communication between the court and the child, a legal representative who speaks both the languages must be provided. As indicated in the discussion paper, the Commission regards such a provision as unworkable in practice as it could lead to confusion between the role of legal representative and that of interpreter.

#### **5.4 The right of children to self-expression**

The recent amendments to the regulations to the Child Care Act allowing a child to express his or her views at a children's court enquiry<sup>26</sup> do not go far enough to give effect to a child's right to self-expression. It is also a matter of concern that a child's right to express his or her views if able to do so, is not reflected in the principle Act.<sup>27</sup>

---

<sup>25</sup> Section 78(5).

<sup>26</sup> Regulation 4(1) and Regulation 4(2).

<sup>27</sup> Mr Rothman also drew the Commission's attention to the fact that Regulation 4(1) and Regulation 9(2)(d), as amended in 1998, do provide a child with a right to express his or her views. He adds that a child's right to self-expression has been recognised by the children's court.

#### 5.4.1 Comments received

**CHILDS** recommended that the circumstances under which children give evidence should be child-friendly and in a child-friendly environment. Furthermore, it is recommended that such a process should be inquisitorial in nature.

The **Consortium** supported the recommendation that the new child care legislation should explicitly allow children to give evidence, if capable of doing so, in any proceedings in terms thereof. The Consortium proposed that structures and standards be established that prepare and protect the child in the process of giving evidence.

#### 5.4.2 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission confirms its recommendation that the new children's statute should explicitly allow children to give evidence, if capable of doing so, in any proceedings under this Act. Where the court decides not to allow a child to so testify, the court must record the reasons for its decision not to allow such child to give evidence in the minutes of the court proceedings.<sup>28</sup>

### 5.5 Removals in terms of section 11

In terms of section 11 of the Child Care Act, 1983 a children's court may effect the removal of a child to a place of safety where such child has no parent or guardian or where it is in the interests of the safety and welfare of the child that he or she be taken to a place of safety. The children's court enjoys a wide discretion in this regard. The Commission recommends that this section be retained and that the child and family court should have the same powers.<sup>29</sup>

In its submission, the **Department of Correctional Services** posed the question whether prisons or correctional facilities are also regarded as places of safety. In this regard, the Commission wishes to point out that the Child Justice Bill and not the Children's Bill would regulate the position of children in trouble with the law. The

---

<sup>28</sup> Section 84 of the Bill.

<sup>29</sup> Section 169 of the Bill.

Commission is, however, of the view that prisons or police cells should not be regarded as places of safety for children.

## **5.6 Removals in terms of section 12**

In terms of section 12 of the Child Care Act, 1983, a police officer, a social worker or an authorised person may, without a warrant from the commissioner, remove a child to a place of safety if such official has reason to believe that the child is in need of care and that the delay in obtaining a warrant could be prejudicial to the safety and welfare of the child. Where the police, social worker or authorised person removes a child without warrant, such official must grant authority, in the form of Form 4, to the place of safety for the detention of the child.

### **5.6.1 Comments received**

**Mr Rothman** pointed out that the removal procedures relating to the use of the Form 4 as provided for in regulation 9 are far clearer since the 1998 amendments to the Child Care Act. He stated that these procedures are specifically designed to eliminate abuse and that the new Form 4A and Form 4 documents are user-friendly and transparent. Mr Rothman submitted that training and education in the use of these documents are required and not legislation. Mr Rothman pointed out that notwithstanding ample legislation and improved forms to assist role-players in the proper handling of removals, there is still a need for court staff to constantly assist social workers, and police officers in particular, to properly complete forms and to adhere to the rules. In his opinion, apart from intense training, there is a need for the SAPS to introduce a national policy with accountability undertakings (similar to domestic violence matters) to cause police to have better regard for their roles in the removal of children.

Mr Rothman stated that the warrant referred to in section 12(1) of the current Child Care Act is the warrant described in section 11(2) of the same Act. He argued that section 12(1) implies that a warrant should accompany each removal. He, however, is of the view that a warrant should be required only in certain circumstances. The reason for this is that the section 11(2) warrant refers to the “safety and welfare” of a child, which is a more restrictive removal criterion than the removal criteria relating to the categories

describing a “child in need of care”. Mr Rothman asserted that if section 12(1) is to be strictly applied in each case, it will become child-unfriendly, fetter social workers in their initiatives and consequently expose children to further risk. He added that issuing a warrant is a time-consuming exercise requiring two rather than one hearing.

The Commission has recommended that section 12 of the Child Care Act, 1983 be amended to spell out clearly that removals without a warrant are only to take place in emergency situations. Responding to this, **H Gerryts** stated that “emergency situations” must be clearly defined.

**The Criminal Justice Initiative, Open Society Foundation for South Africa** supported the recommendation that officials who do remove children without a warrant be held accountable. The respondent is of the opinion that more thought should be given to the job specifications of persons allowed to remove children. Qualifications, training and level of experience should be considered in particular.

The **Department of Social Development, Free State** stated that in some areas police officers and social workers are not aware of Form 4 procedures and that greater awareness of the Form 4 procedure is required.

The Commission recommended in the discussion paper that “a police officer, a social worker or an authorized person may, without a warrant from the commissioner remove a child to a place of safety”. Responding to this, **CHILDS** proposed that the words “a police officer” be replaced with the words “two police officers” and that the words “from different stations, practices, or organizations” should be inserted after the words “authorized person”. The Commission also recommended that officials who do remove children without a warrant should be held accountable to the court (and the court should report them to their professional organizations or superiors where appropriate) where children are removed in non-emergency situations. Responding to this, **CHILDS** proposed that the words “who should act speedily and without unnecessary delay and take a dim view of any irregularity” be inserted after the word “superiors”. The respondent suggested that the circumstances surrounding the removal of a child should also be spelt out in detail in a written report to avoid any misunderstanding and/or misinterpretation should queries arise in future. The respondent added that a supervisor

should be informed of the circumstances of a particular case and the intentions of the party removing the child and should be jointly liable for any misconduct, if any. Furthermore, teams working together should be investigated regularly and reorganised to prevent a perception of fraudulent activity.

**The SA Council for Social Service Professions** supported the Commission's recommendation that social workers in private practice be specifically excluded from the definition of "authorised officer" in section 1 of the Child Care Act, 1983. The Council thus agrees with the view that it would be improper for a social worker in private practice being paid by an interested party to remove a child to a place of safety. In addition, the Council recommended that steps be taken against commissioners of child welfare who condone such acts by private social workers.

**Ms R van Zyl** and the **Sinodale Kommissie vir die Diens van Barmhartigheid** also felt that social workers in private practice should be excluded from the definition of "authorised officer".

### 5.6.2 Evaluation and recommendations

It is clear that the present Form 4 procedure is being abused in that a tendency has developed to use the Form 4 procedure in all cases, even in non-emergencies. The Commission therefore confirms its proposal regarding this procedure as made in the discussion paper, and recommends that the legislation on this provision should set out clearly that removals without a warrant are only to take place in emergency situations.<sup>30</sup> The Commission further recommends that misuse by social workers in the service of a designated child protection organisation of the power to remove children without a warrant, is a ground for the withdrawal of that organisation's designation.<sup>31</sup>

The Commission also recommends that police officers, designated social workers and authorised persons should be the only persons who may remove a child without a warrant to a place of safety in terms of the Children's Bill. While there are certainly situations where the court could authorise an interested third party such as a relative to

---

<sup>30</sup> Section 170(1) of the Bill.

<sup>31</sup> Section 170(3) of the Bill.

remove a child to a place of safety, the Commission is of the opinion that it would be improper for a social worker in private practice being paid by an interested party to be so authorised. If this practice is continued, any person could simply pay a social worker in private practice to remove, without a warrant, a child to a place of safety. The Commission therefore recommends that the definition of “authorised person” should indicate that the person authorised by a child and family magistrate to perform an act must have no financial interest in the performance of that act.<sup>32</sup>

## **5.7 Bringing children before the children’s court**

The Child Care Act, 1983 provides for three ways in which a child may be brought before a children’s court. However, regardless of how the child was brought before the children’s court, in all cases the court is required to conduct an inquiry to determine whether the child is in need of care. The Commission also points out that there is often a time lag between the initial appearance and the date set down for the inquiry. In some instances, this causes delays in finalising children’s court inquiries.

In the discussion paper the Commission recommended that there should always be a formal “opening” of an enquiry, even in the absence of Form 4. It is further recommended that the children’s court, at this initial hearing, should have the power to order the provision of certain services (such as family group conferencing) to the child and its family, as interim measures.

### **5.7.1 Comments received**

**Mr Rothman** supported the Commission’s recommendations. He suggested that the recommendations should be extended to endorse the need for a formal “opening” of an enquiry, including when children are referred from criminal courts and when enquiries are referred from other districts, to ensure that the child does not get lost within the system. Mr Rothman argued that the child should be brought before the court hearing the enquiry at least once, and can thereafter be excused if circumstances justify this. He further agreed that the powers of the children’s court should be extended beyond that already provided for in section 14(1), which deals with an examination by a medical

<sup>32</sup> Definition of ‘authorised person’ in section 1 of the Bill.

officer or psychologist.

**H Gerryts** welcomed the Commission's recommendation that there should always be a formal "opening" of an enquiry.

**CHILDS** pointed out that there is a lack of co-ordination and integration between the courts and the professionals involved in a case, which is often the reason for postponements and the subsequent delays. The respondent recommended that a list of accredited service providers, services and programmes be compiled to assist the children's court when making referrals. Furthermore, these practitioners and organisations should undertake to work at a pre-published tariff and according to a sliding scale.

#### **5.7.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends that the child and family court must be authorised to order the carrying out of an inquiry or further investigation before it decides a matter.<sup>33</sup> It is further recommended that the child and family court should have the power to order the provision of certain services (such as family group conferencing) to the child and its family.<sup>34</sup>

### **5.8 Finding a child to be in need of care (section 14(4))**

In terms of the Child Care Amendment Act, No. 96 of 1996, the primary ground for compulsory removal has been changed to the child being "in need of care", rather than the previous ground which required that the parents be found "unfit" or "unable" to care for the child. With this amendment, the legislature moved care proceedings from a predominantly fault or parent-based approach to a predominantly child-centred approach. This change is also in line with section 28(2) of the Constitution in terms of which a child's best interest is of paramount importance in every matter concerning a child.

---

<sup>33</sup> Section 67 of the Bill.

<sup>34</sup> Section 59 of the Bill sets out the orders that a child and family court may make.

### 5.8.1 Comments received

**Mr Rothman** pointed out that the Commission's assertion that the current Child Care Act provides for the compulsory removal of the child based on the "child in need of care" criteria is incorrect. He explained that the grounds set out in section 14(4) of the Act must be reasonable to justify removal. Thus, the Act makes the removal discretionary. Mr Rothman mentioned that currently a social worker or a police officer or authorised officer has discretion whether or not to remove a child. He recommended the extension of the grounds under section 14(4)(aB) to cater for those instances where, currently, one *can only rely* on section 14(4)(aB)(i), which stipulates that a child is in need of care if he or she "has been abandoned or is without visible means of support". He identified the following instances that need to be covered in order to ensure that certain children who are desperately in need of help do not fall through the net: Where the child has not been abandoned but –

- X the parent is very ill, physically or mentally (and sometimes even terminally);
- X the parent is unemployed or not gainfully employed;
- X the parent is serving a prison sentence while the child is being cared for by others, and the child is being supported by those who do not have a legal obligation to support the child and who need assistance to do so;
- X the child has lived with family or friends, apart from the parent, for long periods of time for whatever reason; and support is being provided by those who do not have a legal obligation to do so and are financially stressed, and maintenance from the parents is not possible or meagre.

Mr Rothman explained that, although support in the above-mentioned circumstances is visible, this is limited. Furthermore, these circumstances do not strictly fall within the ambit of section 14(4)(aB)(i). Mr Rothman also proposed the inclusion of a further ground which relates to the situation where a child has been well cared for by someone other than the parent in circumstances where an enquiry might be in the interests of the child, but the child does not fall within the ambit of the provisions of section 14(4). For example, the mother may have never had the child in her care since birth. Potential adoptive parents have cared for the child with the mother's verbal consent to adoption, but after a few months the mother, a prostitute and drug addict, wishes to have the child



back. It cannot be said that the child has lived in or has been exposed to circumstances which may be detrimental to him/her. Mr Rothman therefore recommended the following provision for inclusion in the new child care legislation:

“The child is in need of care in that the child –

may be at risk if returned to the custody of the parent, guardian or lawful custodian of the child as there is reason to believe that he or she will live in or be exposed to circumstances which may seriously injure the physical, mental or social well-being of the child”.

Having taken cognisance of the Commission’s recommendations with regard to the terms “care”, “custody” and “guardianship”, Mr Rothman proposed the extension of the ground under section 14(4)(a) and 14(4)(aA) to include reference to a person having lawful custody of the child. The following provisions are recommended:

“(a) the child has no parent, guardian, or **other person having lawful custody of the child**; or  
(b) the child has a parent, guardian or **other person having lawful custody of the child** who cannot be traced.”

Mr Rothman further suggested that wherever reference is made to “the person in whose custody the child is”, specific reference should also be made to “the person in whose lawful custody the child is”, as provided for in section 12(2)(a) of the Child Care Act.

The Commission has recommended that all children's court cases be recorded as a separate component of the National Child Protection Register. Responding to this, the **Department of Social Development, Free State** stated that it should be made clear whether the Department of Social Development or the Department of Justice will be responsible for the recording of all children's court cases.

### 5.8.2 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission supports this move to a child-centred approach and recommends that the primary ground for the removal of children remains that of a “child in need of care”. The criteria in terms of which a child may be found to be in need of care as listed in the Child Care Act, 1983, should be retained and supplemented. The general feeling seems to be that section 14(4) of the Child Care Act, 1983 is working well and that its principles

should be retained. The Commission therefore recommends the inclusion in the Children's Bill of a broad provision defining a child in need of care and protection.<sup>35</sup> Provision is made for any court to refer to the child and family court the question of whether a child is need of care and protection.<sup>36</sup> In this regard the Commission recommends that the deliberate failure of a person who has parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a particular child to fulfil his or her parental rights and responsibilities in respect of that child should constitute a criterion for finding a child in need of care. Provision is further made for a child and family court to investigate the question of whether a child is in need of care and protection on the basis of evidence presented to the court by a designated social worker.<sup>37</sup>

However, the Commission wishes to point out that finding a child to be in need of care should not necessarily constitute a ground for removal of that child. Under the new Children's Bill the aim should rather be to support that child and his or her family in order to ensure that the child remains with its family.

The mandatory reporting function, on the other hand, will serve a different purpose and should be tailored accordingly. The cases that involve serious protection issues have been categorised specifically in a section of the new children's statute dealing with reporting and registration.<sup>38</sup> The "child in need of care" criteria need to be broad enough to take in many situations, because as they stand they apply to children who never will or should come before the courts. The Commission also recommends that all children's court cases must be recorded as a separate component of the National Child Protection Register.<sup>39</sup> Statistics in this regard would be of great value for planning and for allocating resources. It would be important to know both the type of order made, as well as the grounds upon which the order was made. At present no-one knows, for instance, how many children are being committed to foster care annually by the courts. This would require an amendment to Regulation 39B of the regulations to the Child Care Act, 1983.

---

<sup>35</sup> Section 166 of the Bill.

<sup>36</sup> Section 168(1) of the Bill.

<sup>37</sup> Section 169 of the Bill.

<sup>38</sup> Section 167 of the Bill.

<sup>39</sup> Section 122 of the Bill.

The Commission agrees with Mr Rothman's proposal that the grounds under section 14(4)(aB) of the current Child Care Act should be extended to include the ground that the child may be at risk if returned to the custody of his or her parent, guardian or care-giver as there is reason to believe that he or she will live in or be exposed to circumstances which may seriously injure the physical, mental or social well-being of the child. This proposal is accordingly adopted.<sup>40</sup>

Where a child in need of care is to be removed, the present range of court options is limited. The children's court can in the first place order that the child be placed in the custody of any suitable person who is available to serve as a foster parent; secondly, in a children's home, or, as a last resort, in a school of industries. The Commission, however, is of the opinion that the children's court needs broader powers. The Commission accordingly recommends that the powers of the children's court be extended. In this regard, see chapter 22 below.

## **5.9 Children placed with persons other than their parents or custodian**

The Child Care Act 1983 recognises, in the absence of any evidence to the contrary, that children are best cared for by their parents. To this end, section 10 of the Child Care Act, 1983 prohibits –

- Any person other than the managers of certain specified institutions or certain specified relatives from receiving any child under the age of 7 years or any child “for the purpose of adopting him or her or causing him or her to be adopted” ;
- Any person other than the managers of certain specified institutions or certain specified relatives from caring for such a child apart from his or her parents or custodian for longer than 14 days unless such person has applied for the adoption of the child concerned ;
- Any person other than the managers of certain specified institutions or certain specified relatives from receiving any child under the age of 7 years, unless the person has obtained the consent in writing of the commissioner of child welfare of the district in which the child was residing immediately before he or she was

<sup>40</sup> Section 166(c)(vii) of the Bill.

received. In considering an application for such consent, the commissioner must have regard to the religious and cultural background of the child concerned as against that of the applicant.

However, section 10, outside the adoption sphere, serves little purpose in practice as large numbers of children are living apart from their parents or are being cared for by persons other than the defined category of family members or ‘designated relatives’ for long periods of time. The Commission accordingly recommends that all provisions relating to adoption be incorporated under the general adoption provisions.<sup>41</sup>

### **5.10 Ill-treated and abandoned children; children whose parents fail to maintain them properly**

Children have the constitutional right to be protected from “maltreatment, abuse, neglect or degradation”. It follows that should this right be infringed, appropriate relief should be provided to such children. It also gives justification for criminalizing the acts of those parents or care-givers who wilfully infringe this right. The Commission therefore recommends that the Children’s Act should be brought in line with the Constitution and that children should be protected from persons who maltreat, abuse, neglect or degrade them.<sup>42</sup> Maltreatment is not limited to physical injury, but includes emotional and psychological harm and abuse.

It must also be pointed out that the physical, emotional or sexual abuse or maltreatment of a child by a parent or guardian constitutes a ground for finding a child in need of care, and therefore a ground for removal. The Commission recommends that the abuse or ill-treatment of a child by a parent or guardian should remain a ground for finding a child in need of care.<sup>43</sup>

### **5.11 Deadlines**

---

<sup>41</sup> Chapter 18 of the Bill – see chapter 17 on adoption below.

<sup>42</sup> Section 18 of the Bill.

<sup>43</sup> Sections 166, 168, 169 and 170 – see discussion on children in need of care above.

Generally, the Child Care Act, 1983 is deficient in that there is a lack of restriction as to how long children's court inquiries can go on for. Cases frequently continue for many months, sometimes years. This often amounts to secondary abuse, especially in cases involving very young children, where time is of the essence for providing them with the bonding opportunities which are crucial for their normal development.

#### **5.11.1 Comments received**

**H. Gerryts, Department of Social Development, Free State** mentioned that in practice, commissioners of child welfare do not always know the reasons for the delays in finalising cases. He stated that it is the social worker's responsibility to inform the commissioner on the progress of the investigation and the reasons for any delay.

#### **5.11.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission is mindful of the dangers inherent in imposing deadlines on our severely under-resourced current children's court and social welfare systems. The Commission would therefore recommend, on the basis of a proper assessment and the place of the child in the system (criminal justice versus child protection), that commissioners be held accountable to the Magistrates Commission for inordinate delays in finalising children's court inquiries. This can be done by requiring commissioners to report to the Magistrates Commission every month, on the basis of information supplied to the child and family court magistrate by the child and family court registrar, the number of unresolved children's court inquiries outstanding and to require reasons from the magistrate for the delays in finalising those cases.<sup>44</sup> The Magistrates Commission should then in turn in terms of section 7(1)(f) of the Magistrates Act, No. 90 of 1993 report such statistics to the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development, for the information of Parliament.

### **5.12 Contribution orders**

---

<sup>44</sup> Section 105(h)-(i) of the Bill.

Chapter 7 of the Child Care Act, 1983, deals with contributions orders. A contribution order is defined in the Act as an order for the payment or recurrent payment of a sum of money as a contribution towards the maintenance of a child in a place of safety or in any custody in which he or she was placed or towards the maintenance of a pupil.<sup>45</sup> While in many ways similar to a maintenance order,<sup>46</sup> it must be clear that a contribution order is a sub species thereof.

No submissions were received on this issue.

The Commission retains the concept of contribution orders in the Children's Bill. Provision is therefore made for the child and family court to make an order instructing a respondent to pay a sum of money or a recurrent sum of money as a contribution towards the maintenance of a child placed in alternative care or temporarily removed by the court from the child's family for treatment, rehabilitation, and counselling or as a short-term emergency contribution towards the maintenance of a child in urgent need.<sup>47</sup> It is further recommended that a contribution order may direct payment to the registrar of the child and family court or any other person.<sup>48</sup>

---

<sup>45</sup> Definition of 'contribution order' in section 1 of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>46</sup> A contribution order has the effect of a maintenance order in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 and the provisions of the section 11 of the Maintenance Act, 1963 (now repealed) apply mutatis mutandis to any person who refuses or fails to make any particular payment in terms of a contribution order: section 44 of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>47</sup> Section 181(1)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>48</sup> Section 184 of the Bill.

## CHAPTER 6

### ESTABLISHING PARENTHOOD AND THE STATUS OF CHILDREN

#### 6.1 Introduction

In order to allocate parental rights and responsibilities, it is necessary to determine parentage. Rapid advances in medical science over the past few decades have made the determination of parentage very problematic in certain areas, notably in cases involving artificial fertilization techniques.

#### 6.2 Legitimacy of children

As pointed out in the discussion paper,<sup>1</sup> a legitimate<sup>2</sup> child is one whose parents were married to each other at the time of his or her conception or at the time of his or her birth, or at any time in between these dates.<sup>3</sup> Where the parents= marriage, though invalid, fulfils the requirements of a putative marriage, children born of the union are legitimate for all purposes, and will on application be declared so by the court.<sup>4</sup>

At common law, annulment of a voidable marriage rendered children born or conceived of the union retrospectively extra-marital. In modern South African law, however, the status of children born or conceived of a voidable marriage which is subsequently set aside by the court is regulated by the Children=s Status Act 82 of 1987.<sup>5</sup> In terms of this

---

<sup>1</sup> Par 7.2.

<sup>2</sup> Objections have been raised to the use of the terms >legitimate= and >illegitimate= on the grounds that especially the latter term stigmatises the child concerned and may be offensive: see South African Law Commission **Report on the Investigation into the Legal Position of Illegitimate Children** (October 1985), para 6.25.- 6.26. The Commission therefore suggested the use of the term >extra-marital= instead of >illegitimate= in legislation.

<sup>3</sup> Section 4 of the Children's Status Act 82 of 1987. See also Van Heerden et al **Boberg=s Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 327, footnote 3 on the marriage requirement.

<sup>4</sup> Van Heerden et al **Boberg=s Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 328. See also the South African Law Commission=s investigations into the Review of the Marriage Act 25 of 1961 (Project 109) and Domestic Partnerships (Project 118).

<sup>5</sup> In its **Report on the Investigation into the Legal Position of Illegitimate Children**, the Commission proposed legislation to place children born or conceived of a voidable marriage which is subsequently annulled in the same position as children born or conceived of a valid marriage which is subsequently dissolved by divorce. The Children=s Status Act 82 of 1987 arose from the recommendations made by the Commission in this regard.

Act, the annulment of the marriage has no effect on the status of children born or conceived of it;<sup>6</sup> such children retain their legitimate status and, if minor or dependent at the time of the annulment, are treated as if the marriage had been terminated by a decree of divorce.<sup>7</sup>

Adoption, which is not confined to extra-marital children, is discussed fully in another chapter.<sup>8</sup> It is, however, important to point out that in terms of section 20(2) of the Child Care Act, 1983, an adopted child >shall for all purposes whatever be deemed in law to be the legitimate child of the adoptive parent, as if he was born of that parent during the existence of a lawful marriage=.

In the past considerable disadvantages attached to being an adulterine child, and the penalties for the fruit of incest were even greater.<sup>9</sup> Today the notion that it is proper to visit the sins of the parents upon their innocent children has happily passed away, and it makes little difference into what class of illegitimacy a person falls.<sup>10</sup>

No submissions were received on this issue.

In line with the Commission's vision to move towards an inclusive, comprehensive, single Act, it is recommended that sections 4, 6 and 7 of the Children's Status Act 82 of 1987 be incorporated in the new Children's Bill.<sup>11</sup> These sections deal with situations where the rights of a child are affected by the annulment of the marriage of the parents of such a child. In this regard, the Commission further recommends that where a marriage is annulled, the father is to be regarded as a *divorced* father rather than an *unmarried* father.<sup>12</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup> Section 6.

<sup>7</sup> Section 7.

<sup>8</sup> See Chapter 18 below.

<sup>9</sup> The distinctions between the different categories of illegitimate children were relevant particularly in regard to succession rights and to legitimisation by subsequent marriage (for details see Hahlo and Kahn **The Union of South Africa: The Development of its Laws and Constitution** Cape Town: Stevens 1960 356.)

<sup>10</sup> Van Heerden et al **Boberg=s Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 332.

<sup>11</sup> Sections 50 and 51.

<sup>12</sup> Section 51(6) of the Bill.



### 6.3 Artificial insemination

Since the legitimacy of a child depends on the status of his or her parents at the relevant time, it is necessary to determine who those parents are. As stated above, rapid advances in medical science over the past few decades have made such determination very problematic in certain cases, notably in cases involving so-called >artificial fertilization=<sup>13</sup> techniques.

Under the common law, a child born as a result of the artificial insemination of an unmarried woman or as a result of the artificial insemination of a married woman with the semen of a man other than her husband<sup>14</sup> was ordinarily extra-marital even if, in the latter case, the husband was a consenting party.<sup>15</sup>

Section 5 of the Children's Status Act 82 of 1987 brought about far-reaching changes to the common law in this regard. In terms of section 5(1)(a), whenever the gamete or gametes of any person other than a married woman or her husband have been used for the artificial insemination of that woman with the consent of both spouses, any child born as a result of such artificial insemination is deemed for all purposes to be the legitimate child of the spouses. There is a rebuttable presumption that both spouses have in fact granted their consent in this regard.<sup>16</sup>

Section 5 of the Children's Status Act 82 of 1987 does not apply to cases where an unmarried woman has been artificially inseminated or a married woman has been artificially inseminated with donor sperm without her consent or the consent of her husband, with the result that the child in question will be considered extra-marital.<sup>17</sup> Section 5 of the Children's Status Act 82 of 1987 also does not apply to an arrangement

<sup>13</sup> The term >artificial fertilization= is used by the Commission in its **Report on Surrogate Motherhood** (1993) to refer to inter alia the procedures of artificial insemination and *in vitro* fertilisation. See also the Commission's **Report on the Investigation into the Legal Position of Illegitimate Children** (October 1985). For a criticism of the word >artificial= in this context, see Graig Lind >Sexual orientation, family law and the transitional Constitution= (1995) 112 **SALJ** 481 at 490, footnote 48.

<sup>14</sup> The so-called 'heterologous' artificial insemination or AID/DI.

<sup>15</sup> Van Heerden et al **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 334.

<sup>16</sup> Section 5(1)(b) of the Children's Status Act 82 of 1987.

<sup>17</sup> Van Heerden et al **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 336.

involving a ‘pure’ ovum donation or a ‘pure’ embryo donation. After considering the issue, the Commission recommends that section 5 of the Children’s Status Act 82 of 1987 be amended to also cover these three instances. Consequently, a similar amendment of the definition of ‘artificial fertilisation’ in the Human Tissue Act 65 of 1983 might be opportune. These recommendations will be incorporated in the reformulation of the present section 5 of the Children’s Status Act 82 of 1987. However, the Commission does not consider it appropriate to extend the operation of section 5 of the Children’s Status Act 82 of 1987 to instances where a woman (whether married or not) has been artificially inseminated with donor sperm without her consent, or in the case of a married woman, also without the consent of her husband. The Commission also refrains from covering the situation where a child is born as a result of sexual intercourse between the child’s mother and a man other than the mother’s husband. In the latter instance, we specifically see a continued role for the common law.

No submissions were received on this issue.

The Commission affirms its preliminary recommendation in the discussion paper<sup>18</sup> and recommends that section 5 of the Children’s Status Act 82 of 1987, as to be amended, be incorporated in the new Children’s Bill.<sup>19</sup> The Commission further recommends that the Minister for Social Development requests his colleague, the Minister for Health, to ensure that the definition of ‘artificial fertilisation’ and the confidentiality provisions in the Human Tissue Act 65 of 1983 be amended in line with the suggestions made in the discussion paper.<sup>20</sup>

The Commission would also like to reiterate its position that all legal ties between a child and a donor of gametes with which the child was conceived be severed.

The Commission also recommends that neither the recipient nor the child should have access to the information regarding the donor’s identity.<sup>21</sup> However, the Commission is convinced that children born as a result of artificial insemination procedures have a right to have access to medical and biographical information concerning their genetic

---

<sup>18</sup> Par 7.3.

<sup>19</sup> Section 52.

<sup>20</sup> Par 7.4.

<sup>21</sup> Section 53(2) of the Bill.

parents.<sup>22</sup> The Commission therefore recommends that the confidentiality provisions in the Human Tissue Act 65 of 1983 be amended to allow children born of artificial insemination access to medical and biographical information concerning their genetic parents. However, access to biographical information should be limited to children over the age of 18 years.<sup>23</sup> We would like to stress that we see this as the right of the child, and not that of the donor or recipient of the gametes.

The Commission therefore recommends that the Minister for Social Development requests his colleague, the Minister for Health, to have the necessary amendments affected to the Human Tissue Act 65 of 1983 to allow children such access.

#### **6.4 Surrogate motherhood**

A surrogate mother is a woman who (usually before becoming pregnant) agrees (for financial or compassionate reasons) to bear a child for another person or for a couple (the 'commissioning' person or couple), with the explicit intention of handing over the child to the commissioning person or couple after the birth. It is further intended by the parties to this agreement that the child should become, for all legal purposes, the child of the commissioning person or couple and that neither the surrogate mother (nor her husband, if she is married) should have any parental rights or responsibilities in respect of the child.

There is as yet no legislation in South Africa dealing specifically with surrogacy arrangements, and the only way in which the commissioning person or couple can become the *legal* parents of the child is by adopting such child, even if the surrogate mother (and her husband, if she is married) are prepared to give effect to the surrogacy agreement and hand over the child to the commissioning person or couple. Adoption could give rise to problems in a situation of commercial surrogacy, since section 24 of the Child Care Act criminalises the payment or receipt of remuneration in respect of the adoption of a child, except as prescribed under the Social Work Act 110 of 1978 (which exception is not relevant in the present context). Thus, under the present South African law, if the surrogate mother breaches the agreement and refuses to hand over the child to the commissioning person or couple, it seems likely that the South African courts will

---

<sup>22</sup> Section 53(1) of the Bill.

<sup>23</sup> This recommendation was supported by Ms R van Zyl.

regard the agreement as *contra bonos mores* and hence unenforceable.

To give effect to the vision of a single comprehensive children's statute, the Commission recommended in the discussion paper that the provisions in the envisaged new Surrogacy Act on the status of children born of surrogacy be mirrored in the new children's statute. In this context, it was recommended that a distinction between full and partial surrogacy be maintained. In the case of *full* surrogacy, the Commission recommended the establishment of direct parentage between the child born of surrogacy and the commissioning parent(s) from the time of birth of that child. In this scenario, the commissioning parent(s) would be entitled to register the child as their child immediately. In the case of *partial* surrogacy, the Commission recommended the use of a '*delayed direct parentage*' model. In terms of this model, the commissioning parent(s) would automatically become entitled to register the child as their child after a short 'period of grace' (say 60 days) has lapsed after the birth of the child. The acquisition of parental rights and responsibilities by the commissioning parent(s) is therefore merely delayed by a 'cooling-off period' in which the surrogate mother has the right to change her mind and keep the child. Should the surrogate mother decide to keep the child, then the commissioning parents have no rights in respect of the child.

The effect of the recommendation is that **direct** parentage will be established for children born of both partial and full surrogacy, with one difference, as explained above. In the case of **full** surrogacy, if the child is with the commissioning parents, then the child will grow up with at least one genetic parent. If the child grows up with the surrogate mother, then the child will not be growing up with any genetic parent at all. In the case of **partial** surrogacy, the child will grow up with at least one genetic parent (either the surrogate mother or commissioning parent(s)).

In addressing the scope of the investigation the Commission reconsidered its position in regards to its preliminary recommendation to include a mirror provision on the status of children born of surrogacy in the Children's Bill.<sup>24</sup> As this provision, in the format suggested, should anyway appear in the envisaged new Surrogacy Act, it was recommended by some respondents<sup>25</sup> that it makes little sense to restate the position in the Children's Bill. However, in line with the Commission's vision to present a

---

<sup>24</sup> See Chapter 2 above.

<sup>25</sup> E.g. Africa Christian Action.

## CHAPTER 7

### THE PARENT - CHILD RELATIONSHIP

#### 7.1 Introduction

The move away from the concept of parental authority or power to a focus on parental rights and responsibilities is one of the core principles underlying the Children's Bill. This move will result in a codification of what is currently a large part of our common law on the parent and the child.

#### 7.2 The diversity of family forms

South African law has no single definition of a 'family'. Different pieces of legislation recognise individual relationships for particular purposes. It is clear, however, that the 'traditional nuclear family form', based on the relationship of a married man and woman and their biological or adopted children, does not reflect the reality of South African society. This diversity of family forms is not unique to South Africa or even the African continent, but is increasingly encountered throughout the world.<sup>1</sup>

In the discussion paper, the Commission recommended that the diversity of family forms and parent/child relationships in South Africa can best be recognised by means of the inclusion, in the new children's statute, of a section expressly prohibiting unfair discrimination against children on any of the grounds set out in section 9(3) of the Constitution, in article 2 of the Convention on the Rights of the Child, as also on the grounds of the family status, health status, socio-economic status, HIV-status or nationality of the child or of his or her parents, legal guardian, primary care-giver or any of his or her family members.<sup>2</sup>

The Commission further recommended in the discussion paper<sup>3</sup> that the children's statute should contain a definition of '*family member*', which definition should be relationship-focussed and should entrench a non-traditional approach to family relations.

---

<sup>1</sup> See, in general, John Eekelaar and Thandabantu Nhlapo (eds) **The Changing Family: International Perspectives on the Family and Family Law** (1998); J A Robinson 'An introduction to the international law on the rights of the child relating to the parent-child relationship' (2002) Vol. 13(2) **Stellenbosch LR** 309.

<sup>2</sup> Par. 8.2.4 of the discussion paper. See also section 13 of the Bill.

<sup>3</sup> Par 8.2.4.

### 7.2.1 Comments received

**Pro-life** submitted that the traditional family unit, i.e. a married man and woman with their biological or adopted children, must be encouraged and supported. This view is shared with **Africa Christian Action** and **The Right To Live Campaign**, KwaZulu-Natal. With regard to the definition of ‘family member’ proposed in the discussion paper, **Pro-Life** argued that the definition should be based on the traditional family unit. The respondent thus wanted to restrict family members to persons related by blood or through marriage.

**Durban Children’s Society** stated that the parent/child relationship, different family members and other relationships need to be clearly defined.

**CHILDS** commended the Commission on its recommendations in relation to a relationship-focussed definition of ‘family-member’. The **Consortium** supported the proposal for the inclusion of a section in the new child care legislation expressly prohibiting unfair discrimination against a child on the ground of family status. The Consortium was also in favour of the Commission’s proposed definition of a ‘family member’.

With reference to the grounds for prohibited unfair discrimination listed in the discussion paper,<sup>4</sup> **Ms Carrie Kimble** suggested that ‘birth’ should also be included.

### 7.2.2 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission confirms its preliminary recommendation that the diversity of family forms and the parent/child relationship can best be protected by the inclusion of a general unfair discrimination section in the Children’s Bill.<sup>5</sup> The Commission further confirms its recommendation in the discussion paper supporting a relationship-based definition of ‘family member’. This definition deliberately goes beyond the traditional concept of the nuclear family to include the primary care-giver of a child, the extended family, and persons with whom the child has developed a significant relationship resembling a family relationship.<sup>6</sup> Rather than restricting family to persons related by blood or through marriage, it is our contention that the net of

---

<sup>4</sup> Par 8.2.4.

<sup>5</sup> For the formulation of this provision, see section 13 of the Bill.

<sup>6</sup> Section 1: Definition of ‘family member’.

potential care-givers a child should have should be broadened, especially in the light of the HIV/AIDS pandemic. However, the Commission does realise that the definition of ‘family member’ proposed in the discussion paper and restated in the Children’s Bill is a flexible one – the primary care-giver of a child might change in person overnight – but sees this flexibility as its strength in preventing children from becoming ‘family-less’.

A relationship-based definition of ‘family member’ also brings additional challenges. While the principle of casting widely the net of potential care-givers of a child is surely legitimate, practical problems can arise. For instance, should the consent of all family members in this broad sense be required in the case of adoption of a child, then the whole adoption procedure can be jeopardised. Mindful of these practical issues, the Commission used more restrictive definitions such as that of ‘parent’ and ‘foster parent’ where appropriate.

### **7.3 The shift from ‘parental power’ to ‘parental responsibility’ and changes in terminology**

In the discussion paper, the Commission recommended that the common-law concept of ‘*parental power*’ be replaced with the concept of ‘*parental responsibility*’, while requiring at the same time a balance between the responsibilities of parents and the rights and powers needed to enable parents to fulfil their responsibilities.<sup>7</sup> The Commission further recommended that the term ‘parental responsibility’ be defined to enumerate the components of parental responsibility in a non-exhaustive manner.<sup>8</sup> The Commission also recommended that the Children’s Bill should contain a statement of parental rights, which rights should mirror the components of parental responsibility. In this regard, the Commission expressed its preference for a formulation along the lines of those included in the Scottish legislation, with certain amendments and additions.<sup>9</sup>

The Commission further recommended that the components of parental rights / responsibilities currently encapsulated by the concepts ‘custody’ and ‘care’ be redefined as ‘care’ and ‘access’ respectively.<sup>10</sup> In the Commission’s view, the most appropriate term for a person’s responsibility, and corresponding right, to maintain personal relations and direct contact with a child who is living with another person

---

<sup>7</sup> Par 8.3.4 of the discussion paper.

<sup>8</sup> Par 8.4.5.1 of the discussion paper.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid.

<sup>10</sup> Par 8.4.5.2 of the discussion paper.

appeared to be the term '**contact**'. This term would include both physical contact with the child (i.e. visiting the child or being visited by the child), as also other means of communication with the child (for example, telephonic or e-mail contact).

As regards an appropriate term for the responsibilities, and corresponding rights, vested in a person with whom the child is to live, the Commission considered various options, such as the retention of the term 'custody' or the replacement of the concept of 'custody' with a new concept of 'residence', '>care=' or '>day-to-day care='. Because of the difference in the legal position of a person who has the *de facto* care of the child, and the legal position of a person who has the *de jure* care of a child, the preferable option would appear to be either to retain the term '**custody**' (as has been done in the Ghanaian Children's Act of 1998 and in the revised draft of the Kenya Children Bill of 1998) or the introduction of the concept of '**residence**' (as in the English, Scottish and Australian legislation).

In the discussion paper<sup>11</sup> the Commission recommended, in the context of children caught up in divorce proceedings, a shift to new, less '>loaded=' terminology to reduce conflict in divorce. In this context, the Commission did recommend that the current Divorce Act 70 of 1979 term '>custody=' be replaced with the term '>care=', as the use of words such as '>custody=' and '>sole custody=', besides their negative connotation with police and prisons, promotes a potentially damaging sense of winners and losers. Given this decision, and to ensure uniformity, the Commission recommended that the concept '>custody=' be replaced with the concept '>care='.

As regards '*guardianship*', the Commission recommended in the discussion paper that this term should be retained, but should be defined so as to encompass the residual aspects of parental responsibility (viz. those not covered by 'care=' and 'contact').<sup>12</sup>

To summarize, in the discussion paper the Commission recommended the following changes in terminology:

>Access=	÷	>Contact=
>Custody=	÷	>Care=
>Guardianship=	=	>Guardianship=

In the discussion paper, the Commission also recommended that these three

<sup>11</sup> Par 14.5 of the discussion paper.

<sup>12</sup> Cf. in this regard clause 97 of the revised draft of the Kenya Children Bill.



components of parental rights and responsibilities be clearly defined so as to make it possible for the court to allocate all or some of these components (or sub-components thereof) to one or more persons.<sup>13</sup>

In the light of the foregoing, and to give content to the terms 'care', 'access' and 'guardianship', the following definitions were used in the discussion paper:<sup>14</sup>

>**Care**= includes the right and responsibility of a parent to -

- (a) to create, within his or her capabilities and means, a suitable **residence** for the child and living conditions that promote the child's health, welfare and development;
- (b) to safeguard and promote the **well-being** of the child;
- (c) to **protect** the child from ill-treatment, abuse, neglect, exposure, discrimination, exploitation and from any other physical and moral hazards;
- (d) to **safeguard** the child's human rights and fundamental freedoms;
- (e) to guide and **direct** the child's scholastic, religious, cultural, and other education and upbringing in a manner appropriate to the stage of development of the child;
- (f) to guide, **advise** and assist the child in all matters that require decision-making by the child, due regard being had to the child's age and maturity;
- (g) to **guide** (discipline) the child's behaviour in a humane manner; and
- (h) generally to ensure that the **best interest** of the child is the paramount concern in all matters affecting the child.

>**Contact**= includes the right and responsibility of a parent, if the child is not living with him or her, to maintain personal relations with and to have direct access to his or her child on a regular basis.

To act as >**guardian**= means the right and responsibility of a parent to -

- (a) administer and safeguard the child's property;
- (b) to assist and represent the child in contractual, administrative and legal matters, and
- (c) to give or refuse any consent which is legally required in respect of his or her child.

### 7.3.1 Comments received

**Mr Rothman** agreed with the proposed shift from parental power to parental responsibility, but cautioned that immense problems will arise in practice should certain terminology be changed without defining it properly. He said that the terms "custody" and "care" have always meant two different things in practice. He suggested that the proposed new terminology relating to responsibilities should be

<sup>13</sup> Par 8.4.5.1.

<sup>14</sup> Par 8.4.5.2.

built around the terms “custody” and “care”.

The **Consortium** supported the recommendation that the new child care legislation should replace the common law concept of “parental power” with a new concept of “parental responsibility”.

**Ms Sally Rowney, Provincial Department of Education: Gauteng**, supported defining the term “parental responsibility”. She stated that such a definition could be extended to enhance the responsibilities of parents of children at public schools, in line with existing policies and legislation governing schools as well as the process of enabling greater parental participation in public schools.

**CHILDS** stated that the Commission has failed to pay sufficient attention to what is now termed inadequate parenting and suggested that this area be addressed in the new child care legislation. For a detailed discussion on the issue, the Commission is referred to Muller and Rencken-Wentzel **Suggested changes to the laws affecting children: Separation and Divorce**.<sup>15</sup> CHILDS further recommended that the Australian Three-Tier Model as outlined in the latter mentioned source be followed in the event of parents who fail to fulfil their parental responsibilities.

### 7.3.2 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission sees no need to depart from the preliminary position adopted in the discussion paper. It is therefore recommended that:

- the move from the dated concepts parental power / parental authority to those of parental rights and responsibilities be endorsed;<sup>16</sup>
- parental rights and responsibilities be defined in the Children’s Bill;<sup>17</sup>
- the components of parental rights and responsibilities – care, access, and guardianship – be clearly defined to allow for the allocation of these components (or parts thereof) to more than one person in respect of the same child;<sup>18</sup>
- the change in terminology – ‘care’ for ‘custody’ and ‘contact’ for ‘access’ – for the reasons stated, be accepted.

---

<sup>15</sup> 23 February 2002 at VI (3) and VII (3)

<sup>16</sup> See Chapter 5 of the Bill.

<sup>17</sup> Definitions: section 1.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid.

These recommendations are given effect to in the Children's Bill.

#### 7.4 The acquisition of parental rights and responsibilities

In the discussion paper,<sup>19</sup> the Commission recommended that the **mother** of a child should in all instances have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of her child. Where the child's mother is an unmarried minor and the child's father does not have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the child, the Commission recommended that the person(s) who has parental rights and responsibility in respect of the child's mother should have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of that mother's child.

The Commission further recommended that a child's **father** should acquire automatic parental rights and responsibilities in respect of his child if such father is married to the child's mother or was married to her at the time of the child's conception.<sup>20</sup> In this regard, the Commission pointed out in the discussion paper that marriage was given an extensive definition in the new children's statute to include 'any marriage recognised in terms of South African law, or customary law, or [a marriage] concluded in accordance with a system of religious law ...'.<sup>21</sup>

As for the **unmarried father**, the Commission recommended in the discussion paper<sup>22</sup> that the children's statute should provide for a procedure whereby such a father can acquire parental responsibility by entering into an agreement with the mother, which agreement must be in the prescribed form and must be registered with the appropriate forum and in the prescribed manner. There should, however, be certain exceptional cases (such as, for example, where the child was conceived through rape or incest) where this procedure would not be open to the unmarried father. Failing a parental responsibility agreement with the mother, the unmarried father who does not have automatic parental responsibility should, in the view of the Commission, be able to obtain parental responsibility or certain components thereof by making application to court and satisfying such court that this will be in the best interests of the child concerned.<sup>23</sup>

---

<sup>19</sup> Par. 8.5.2.4.

<sup>20</sup> Ibid.

<sup>21</sup> See also the definition of 'marriage' in the Bill.

<sup>22</sup> Par. 8.5.2.4.

<sup>23</sup> See also Julia Sloth-Nielsen and Belinda Van Heerden 'The constitutional family: developments in South African Family Law jurisprudence under the 1996 Constitution' (2002) (unpublished).

The Commission further recommended in the discussion paper<sup>24</sup> that certain categories of unmarried fathers should be vested automatically with parental responsibility. These categories included the following:

- (a) the father who has acknowledged paternity of the child and who has supported the child within his financial means;
- (b) the father who, subsequent to the child's birth, has cohabited with the child's mother for a period or periods which amount to not less than one year;
- (c) the father who, with the informed consent of the mother, has cared for the child on a regular basis for a period or periods which amount to not less than one year, whether or not he has cohabited with or is cohabiting with the mother of the child.

The Commission did consider, in the light of the developments regarding the **De Toit** judgment, whether one partner in a same sex or opposite relationship should also automatically acquire parental rights and responsibilities in respect of his or her partner's children. In this regard, and to ensure legal certainty, the Commission recommended in the discussion paper that the partner in a domestic relationship who does not have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child can acquire such rights and responsibilities either by agreement in the prescribed form with the other partner, or on application to the court.

The Commission further recommended in the discussion paper<sup>25</sup> that any caregiver who is not a biological parent of a child who is concerned with the care, welfare or development of the child, should be able to obtain parental responsibility and parental rights, or certain components thereof, but only by making application to the court and by satisfying such court that this will be in the best interests of the child concerned. It was recommended that non-biological parents should be unable to acquire parental responsibility and parental rights simply by entering into agreement with the biological parent or parents. There should, however, be no differentiation in the manner in which different categories of non-biological parents may acquire parental responsibility and rights or certain components thereof – the procedure prescribed for making application to the appropriate forum should be the same for all

---

<sup>24</sup> Par. 8.5.2.4.

<sup>25</sup> Par. 8.5.3.4.

non-biological parents. Unlike the position under the English Children Act 1989, neither the leave of the forum concerned, nor the consent of any other person with parental responsibility, should be a prerequisite to making such an application.

In the discussion paper,<sup>26</sup> the Commission further recommended that a biological parent who, for whatever reason, has no parental responsibility and parental rights, or only limited parental responsibility and rights, should be able to apply to the court in order to obtain parental responsibility and parental rights, or certain components thereof. Moreover, the child himself or herself should be able to apply to the same forum for an order conferring parental responsibility and parental rights, or certain components thereof, on an appropriate (and willing) adult person, provided that the court is satisfied that, taking account of the child's age and maturity, the child has sufficient understanding to make such an application.

As regards a person who does not have parental responsibility for a particular child, but has the *de facto* care of the child (either on a temporary or part-time basis or on a longer term or full-time basis), the Commission recommended in the discussion paper<sup>27</sup> that the legal position of such a person in relation to the child should be spelt out in the new children's statute, as has been done in the English and Scottish legislation, as also in the revised draft of the Kenya Children Bill.

The Commission was also of the view that, even if no application for parental responsibility and parental rights in respect of a child has been made, if it appears to any court in the course of any proceedings before that court that it will be in the best interests of that child to make an order conferring parental responsibility and parental rights, or certain components thereof, on any willing and competent adult person, the court should, of its own accord, be able to make such an order.<sup>28</sup>

#### 7.4.1 Comments received

**CHILDS** disagreed with the Commission's recommendation that the mother of a child should in all circumstances have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of her child. The respondent proposed that both parents should in all circumstances have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of their child. The respondent argued that failure to make both parents responsible for the consequences of their actions

---

<sup>26</sup> Par. 8.5.3.4.

<sup>27</sup> Par. 8.5.3.4.

<sup>28</sup> Par. 8.5.3.4.

would encourage irresponsible conduct on the part of fathers. The respondent stated that given the AIDS pandemic, the government has to take every opportunity to ensure that responsible conduct in its citizens is enforced. In addition, the psychological research into the effects of absent fathers on children is conclusive. Thus, children should not be punished for the sins of their parents. For a detailed discussion on the issue, the Commission is referred to Muller and Rencken-Wentzel: **Suggested changes to the laws affecting children: Separation and Divorce**, 23 February 2002.

In responding to the Commission's preliminary recommendation that where the child's mother is an unmarried minor and the child's father does not have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the child, the person(s) who has parental responsibility in respect of the child's mother should have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of that mother's child, **Ms Julie Todd** stated that this will allow persons other than the biological mother of a child to consent to the adoption of that child.

The **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** did not support the Commission's recommendation that certain categories of unmarried fathers should be vested automatically with parental responsibility. The respondent stated that unmarried fathers should be given parental responsibility only on successful application to court or by agreement. The respondent further argued that unmarried fathers are not interested in the lives/upbringing of their children.

**CHILDS** recommended that no distinction be made between married and unmarried fathers. The respondent proposed that in the case of a child being born to a minor child, the guardianship of that child should be vested jointly in the parents of *both* minor parents. The rights and responsibilities for the child should then automatically vest in the parents of the child when they reach the age of majority. The respondent further suggested that in a case of a child being born where one parent is a minor and the other parent a major, the guardianship of that child be vested in the parent who has reached majority and the parent of the minor parent until such time that the other parent also reaches the age of majority. At such time, guardianship should be vested in both parents jointly regardless of their marital status. However, should one or both parents be mentally disabled, rights and responsibilities for the child should be given to the grandparents of the child, failing that a curator should be appointed on behalf of the mentally disabled parent(s).

**Ms R Lombard** submitted that the Maintenance Act requires parents to share only financial responsibilities for their children. Furthermore, South African fathers are in the majority of cases not involved in their children's upbringing. Ms Lombard argued that fathers should be required to play a more active role in the development of their children, and getting fathers involved in child-rearing should be a national strategy.

The **Consortium** submitted that if a father has acknowledged paternity of the child and has supported the child within his financial means, this should not be sufficient to vest the unmarried father with automatic parental rights and responsibilities. It suggested that the father must also have either cohabited with the mother and the child or cared for the child on a regular basis, whether or not cohabiting with the mother. The Consortium stated that some unmarried fathers may not wish to have rights and responsibilities in respect of their children automatically conferred upon them simply because they have acknowledged paternity and pay maintenance. This view is contrary to that of CHILDS who argued that all parents should automatically be given rights and responsibilities in respect of their children in order to promote responsible behaviour.

The Consortium suggested that the proposed Office of the Children's Protector (recommended in chapter 24 of the discussion paper) be empowered to register parental responsibility agreements between mothers and unmarried fathers. The proposed Office of the Children Protector should ensure that the agreement is in the best interests of the child. Furthermore, criteria for determining whether an agreement is in the best interests of a child need to be developed in order to ensure equal treatment of all unmarried fathers. The proposed Office of the Children's Protector should also be obliged to refer the matter to the child and family court if in doubt whether an agreement is in the best interests of a child.

**Africa Christian Action** objected against giving parental responsibilities to persons who are not the biological parents of a child.

With reference to the Commission's recommendation that the legal position of a person who has *de facto* care of a child be spelt out, **Ms Sally Rowney** enquired what the specific implications for teachers are given the status awarded to them (*in loco parentis*) during normal school hours.

The **Consortium** further submitted that the use of a court process, by persons other than the biological parents of the child, to access parental rights and responsibilities may prove inaccessible for children and their caregivers living in rural areas. It

therefore recommended that an alternative mechanism be introduced that will enable caregivers to obtain certain parental rights (especially the right to receive and administer social security grants for children without having to produce proof of express consent from the child's mother) and responsibilities without going through the court process. The Consortium stated that the draft provisions on "Care of a child by person without parental responsibilities or parental rights" in the discussion paper may be an appropriate solution and in effect gives de-facto caregivers the necessary parental rights and responsibilities. However, the following questions are asked: (1) How will caregivers prove that they qualify, e.g. to apply for social security?, (2) How will a health care professional know whether an adult caregiver, other than the parent of the child, has the right/responsibility to give consent to medical treatment on behalf of that child?

**Pro-life** submitted that same-sex partners in a domestic relationship should not acquire any rights in respect of a child. The respondent believed that allowing same-sex partners to acquire parental rights would encourage the acceptance of an "unnatural relationship" by the child.

#### **7.4.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The different positions adopted by the respondents reflect different moral considerations of what the ideal family should look like: on the one hand, some respondents argue that no unmarried fathers, for instance, should be vested automatically with parental rights and responsibilities in respect of their children, while an organisation such as CHILDS argues that no distinction should be made between married or unmarried fathers or, for that matter, between fathers or mothers. These moral considerations reach their extreme in the case of same-sex partners where, as we have seen, some respondents would see the allocation of parental rights and responsibilities as 'unnatural'.

Given the diversity of ideas as to how the modern family should look, and the objections to 'unnatural' forms of family life, it was to be expected that opinions would differ on the (automatic) allocation of parental rights and responsibilities to mothers who are minors at the time of birth of their children, unmarried fathers, partners in a domestic relationship, and same-sex partners. Without a doubt, these differences of opinion would persist.

The Commission believes its approach in the discussion paper in respect of the



allocation of parental rights and responsibilities is balanced, pragmatic, and legally and constitutionally sound. It takes into account the judgment of the Constitutional Court in **Fraser v Children's Court, Pretoria**<sup>29</sup> and the legislation adopted to give effect to this judgement.<sup>30</sup> It also takes into account the judgment of the High Court (Transvaal Provincial Division) in **Du Toit v Minister of Welfare and Population Development** which was confirmed by the Constitutional Court.<sup>31</sup>

It is therefore recommended that:

- the biological mother of a child should have full parental rights and responsibilities in respect of her child;<sup>32</sup>
- the married father of a child should have full parental rights and responsibilities in respect of his child;<sup>33</sup>
- the unmarried father of a child should in certain defined circumstances automatically obtain parental rights and responsibilities in respect of his child. The defined circumstances are where the father has lived with the mother for at least one year after the child's birth; where the father has cared for the child with the mother's consent for at least a year; upon confirmation by a court of a parental rights and responsibility agreement; or where so ordered by the court;<sup>34</sup>
- where the biological father does not have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child, provision is made for the father to obtain parental rights and responsibilities by agreement with the mother or another person who has such rights and responsibilities in respect of the child concerned.<sup>35</sup> Other categories of persons such as the partner in a domestic relationship will have to follow the court application route<sup>36</sup> and will not be able to simply conclude agreements to this effect with the mother of the child.
- any person having an interest in the care, well-being or development of a child may apply to court for an order assigning to the applicant full or any specific parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child.<sup>37</sup>

---

<sup>29</sup> 1997 (2) SA 261 (CC).

<sup>30</sup> The Natural Fathers of Children born out of Wedlock Act 86 of 1997.

<sup>31</sup> Judgment handed down on 10 September 2002.

<sup>32</sup> Section 31(1) of the Bill.

<sup>33</sup> Section 32 of the Bill.

<sup>34</sup> Section 33 of the Bill.

<sup>35</sup> Section 34 of the Bill.

<sup>36</sup> Provided for in section 35 of the Bill.

<sup>37</sup> Section 35(1) of the Bill.

However, the Commission does note with concern that the present High Court procedure for obtaining guardianship in respect of a child is being misused to circumvent the more rigorous adoption procedure. Persons wishing to adopt South African-born children simply apply to the High Court for appointment as guardians of that child. Once appointed, the guardian(s) applies/apply for a passport for the child, leave(s) South Africa, and adopt(s) the child in his, her or their home-country. Such applications for guardianship are not necessarily accompanied by social worker reports or preceded by the screening of the applicant's background or suitability. In order to discourage persons in future from simply applying for the guardianship component of parental rights and responsibilities in order to circumvent the proper inter-country adoption proceedings, the Commission recommends that where it appears to the court that an application for full parental rights and responsibilities or the guardianship component thereof has been made by a non-South African, such application must be regarded as an inter-country adoption to which the Hague Convention on Intercountry Adoptions and consequently Chapter 19 of the new Children's Bill should apply. To further discourage the potential misuse to which an allocation of parental rights and responsibilities might give rise, the Commission recommends that all applicants applying for full parental rights and responsibilities or exclusive guardianship rights, must state reasons in the application why the adoption route is not being followed. The Commission has also recommended that the court should be able to require a social worker's report<sup>38</sup> or have potential guardians screened.

## **7.5 Parental responsibility and rights agreements**

In the discussion paper,<sup>39</sup> provision is made for the (unmarried) mother of a child to enter into an agreement with the (unmarried) father of the child in terms of which such father would obtain parental rights and responsibilities in respect of that child. A similar provision was formulated to allow for a partner in a domestic relationship to acquire parental rights and responsibilities in respect of his or her partner's child by agreement with such partner. These agreements were called 'parental responsibility agreements'.

The form of 'parental responsibility agreements', as per the discussion paper, was to be prescribed in the regulations to the children's statute and could only be terminated

---

<sup>38</sup> Section 41(5) read with section 67 of the Bill.

<sup>39</sup> Par. 8.5.2.4.

by an order of court. As such, parental responsibility agreements must be distinguished from 'parenting plans', also dealt with in the same chapter of the discussion paper.

The Commission received no submissions on this issue.

However, in reconsidering the issue and in view of the abuse of the existing guardianship provisions to circumvent adoption requirements, the Commission decided not to make it possible for **any** person to acquire parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child simply by concluding an agreement to this effect with the child's mother. It is therefore recommended that provision be made in the Children's Bill to allow only the father of the child who does not have parental rights and responsibilities to enter into such an agreement with the mother.<sup>40</sup> Such agreement will have to adhere to a format prescribed by the regulations and will have to be registered with the registrar of the child and family court.<sup>41</sup> Provision is also made for amendments to and terminations of such plans.<sup>42</sup>

#### **7.6 The management of parental rights and responsibilities where several persons (parents or otherwise) simultaneously have parental rights and responsibilities or components thereof in respect of a child**

In the discussion paper, the Commission recommended, on the basis of sections 2(5) - 2(11), read with section 3(4) of the UK Children Act, and clauses 21(4) - 21(8) of the revised Kenya Children Bill, 1998, that:

- more than one person may have parental rights and responsibilities for the same child at the same time;
- a person who has parental rights and responsibilities for a child at any time shall not cease to have those rights and responsibilities simply because some other person subsequently acquires parental rights and responsibilities for that child;
- where more than one person has parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child, each of them may act alone and without the other(s) in fulfilling those responsibilities, with certain exceptions mentioned below;
- the fact that a person has parental rights and responsibilities shall not entitle

---

<sup>40</sup> Section 34(1) of the Bill.

<sup>41</sup> As per section 34(3)-(4)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>42</sup> Section 34(4)(b) of the Bill.

- such a person to act in any way which would be incompatible with any order made in respect of that child in terms of the new children's statute;
- a person who has parental rights and responsibilities for a child may not surrender or transfer any part of those rights and responsibilities to another, but may arrange for some or all of them to be undertaken by other persons on his or her behalf.<sup>43</sup>

The Commission further recommended that the consent of all persons who have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child must be obtained:

- (a) when the child wishes to conclude a marriage;
- (b) when the child is to be adopted;
- (c) when the child is to be removed from the Republic;
- (d) when an application is made by or on behalf of the child for a passport; and
- (e) when the immovable property or any right to immovable property belonging to the child is to be alienated or encumbered.<sup>44</sup>

In terms of these recommendations, it would be possible, for instance, to allocate, in respect of one child, contact rights to the unmarried father and to both sets of grandparents, guardianship to the mother and a trusted uncle, and care to the mother and her sister. In the customary setting, it would be possible to allocate the care component to the unmarried mother and the other wives in the kraal, contact to the unmarried father, and guardianship to mother's father.

#### 7.6.1 Comments received

**Africa Christian Action** argued that not more than one person should exercise parental responsibilities over a child with the exception of married or divorced couples. Furthermore, the respondent argued that co-adoption should be limited to persons legally married to each other.

The **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** supported the Commission's recommendation that more than one person may have parental rights and responsibility, or components thereof, in respect of the same child at the same time; and that where more than one person has parental rights and responsibility in respect of a child, each of them may act alone and without the other(s) in fulfilling

---

<sup>43</sup> Par. 8.4.5.3.

<sup>44</sup> Ibid.

that responsibility, with certain exceptions where the consent of all persons who have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child must be obtained.

**CHILDS** recommended that the consent of all persons who have parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child should also be obtained in regard to the following issues: (a) education, (b) both physical and psychological health, and (c) religious upbringing.

### **7.6.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission sees no need to depart from its preliminary position adopted in the discussion paper. Critical among these recommendations is the one allowing for more than one person to hold parental responsibilities and rights or components thereof in respect of the same child at the same time.<sup>45</sup> However, to cater for the situations currently regulated by section 1(2) of the Guardianship Act 192 of 1993, the consent of all persons with parental rights and responsibilities would be required where the child is to conclude a marriage, the child is to be adopted, the child is to be removed from the Republic, or where immovable property belonging to the child is to be alienated or encumbered.<sup>46</sup>

In line with the position adopted in the discussion paper, and to prevent individual persons holding parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child from single-handedly making other major decisions involving that child, the Commission recommends that such person must give due consideration to any views and wishes expressed by the child and any co-holder of parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the child. 'Major decisions involving a child' would include those previously covered by section 1(2) of the Guardianship Act 192 of 1993, aspects relating to contact with the child, the assignment of parental rights and responsibilities to a parent substitute, and decisions 'likely to change significantly, or to have an adverse affect on, the child's living conditions, education, health, personal relations ... or generally, the child's well-being'.<sup>47</sup>

The Commission further recommends that provision be made for the exercise of parental rights and responsibilities by care-givers not holding such rights or responsibilities in certain emergency situations.<sup>48</sup>

---

<sup>45</sup> Section 42 of the Bill.

<sup>46</sup> Section 42(5) of the Bill.

<sup>47</sup> Section 43(2) of the Bill.

<sup>48</sup> Section 44 of the Bill.

## 7.7 Parent-substitutes

In the discussion paper,<sup>49</sup> the Commission recommended that provision be made in the children's statute for the appointment of testamentary 'parent-substitutes' in the event of a parent's death. The Commission further recommended that provision also be made for the appointment, by the court, of a person to be a child's parent-substitute if the child has no parent with 'parental responsibility' for him or her or if the person in whose favour a 'care order' in respect of the child has been made dies while such order is in force and no other 'care order' has been made in favour of a surviving parent of the child.

### 7.7.1 Comments received

The **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** submitted that there should be no automatic right of a dying parent to appoint a testamentary parent-substitute without first consulting the surviving spouse (if any).

**CHILDS** commended the Commission on its recommendations in respect of parent-substitutes.

### 7.7.2 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission sees no need to divert from its preliminary position adopted in the discussion paper and therefore recommends that provision be made for the assignment of parental rights and responsibilities to parent-substitutes.<sup>50</sup>

However, in revisiting the preliminary recommendation on parent-substitutes, certain concerns were raised. A problem arises, for instance, where the surviving parent only has some components of parental rights and responsibilities, such as, for example, contact (access), and the deceased parent, who had full parental rights and responsibilities, does not leave a will in terms of which either the surviving parent or another person or persons are appointed as parent-substitutes. While provision is made in the Bill for the assignment of parental rights and responsibilities to any suitable person with an interest in the care, well-being or development of the child,<sup>51</sup>

---

<sup>49</sup> Par. 8.4.5.4.

<sup>50</sup> Section 38 of the Bill.

<sup>51</sup> Section 35.

the problem highlights the need for awareness-raising campaigns to empower persons at all levels of society to timeously prepare for the eventuality of death.

Ordinarily, however, both the mother and father independently would have full parental rights and responsibilities in respect of their children – the death of one such parent would therefore not leave the children without a parent with full parental rights and responsibilities. In the case where one parent does not have full parental rights and responsibilities the surviving parent can obviously obtain those parental rights and responsibilities which the now deceased parent had by being appointed parent-substitute.

## **7.8 Parenting plans**

Given the reality of modern family life, the Commission believes parents should be trusted to act in the best interest of their children. The Commission therefore recommended in the discussion paper<sup>52</sup> that parents must be given the option to develop parenting plans setting out how they as parents plan to raise their children. Provision was also made to register such parenting plans with the court (or Family Advocate) should they wish to do so. In so doing, the court may make the parenting plan an order of court. It is in this context that the court should scrutinise the parenting plan to ensure that it is in the best interests of the child concerned.

In the majority of cases, however, the Commission stated that parents should simply be encouraged to prepare parenting plans, where appropriate in consultation with the child involved, and to agree about matters concerning their child rather than to seek court orders. The Commission therefore did not recommend in the discussion paper that all parenting plans be lodged or registered with some authority or court, or that all such plans be scrutinised by such authority or court. A parenting plan was defined in the discussion paper as an agreement in writing made between the parents of a child that deals with one or more of the following aspects:

- the care of the child, including decisions as to with whom the child is to live;
- contact between the child and another person or other persons;
- the appointment of a parent-substitute for the child;
- maintenance of a child;
- any other aspect of parental responsibility for the child.

---

<sup>52</sup>

Par. 8.6.4.

### 7.8.1 Comments received

**Mr Rothman** supported the idea of parenting plans. He, however, stated that written agreements are not enforceable unless they are made orders of court. He proposed that in order to ensure the best interests of the child, all settlement agreements upon the termination of a marriage should be made court orders.

The **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** endorsed the idea of parenting plans and the recommendation that parents must be given the option to register their parenting plans with the court (or Family Advocate) should they wish to do so. In response to the Commission's recommendation that parents should simply be encouraged to prepare parenting plans, where appropriate *in consultation with the child involved*, the Society submitted that a too heavy burden is placed on the child which may force the child to make decisions/choices against one particular parent.

**E.N Maonela, Department of Social Development, Free State**, stated that the idea of parenting plans is positive as it will have the effect of decreasing maintenance cases before court.

**CHILDS** submitted that all parents stand to benefit from parenting plans. The respondent therefore suggested that all parents who do not live together, regardless of their age (assisted by their guardian), marital status or nature of their relationship must submit a parenting plan. The respondent proposed that the following be added to the list of issues that may be dealt with in a parenting plan:

- a dispute resolution mechanism for the parents;
- residential arrangements;
- contact arrangements with the non-residential parent as well as with members of the extended family; and
- to cover the involvement of the non-residential parent in the life of the child in terms of general parenting obligations and related aspects.

**CHILDS** furthermore recommended that a suggested but not prescribed form covering areas to be included in the parenting plan must be available. The respondent mentioned that it has drafted such a form.

### 7.8.2 Evaluation and recommendations



As before, the Commission received overwhelming support for its proposals regarding parenting plans. The Commission therefore recommends that provision be made for the co-holders of parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child jointly to agree to the manner in which those rights and responsibilities are to be exercised. To actively encourage such co-holders to find common agreement, the Commission recommends that they must first seek to agree to a parenting plan before seeking court intervention.<sup>53</sup> As to the content and form of a parenting plan, the Commission is of the opinion that the legislation should not be overly prescriptive. However, while such plan, in the absence of a court order, could for instance deal with contact, care and maintenance issues, it should be clear that reaching agreement as to such a plan would not have the effect of suspending, varying or terminating existing court orders. A parenting plan cannot therefore usurp a divorce settlement, although such plan should ideally form part of the divorce settlement.

The Commission further recommends that, given the seriousness of the issues that can be dealt with in such a parenting plan, to facilitate proof and legal certainty, and to ensure that the best interests of the child involved are protected, parenting plans must be in writing and signed by the parties to the agreement.<sup>54</sup> Provision is also made for the option to register such plans with the registrar of the child and family court or to make such plans an order of court.<sup>55</sup> It is also recommended that registered parenting plans only be amended or terminated by a court order.<sup>56</sup>

## 7.9 Termination of parental rights and responsibilities

In the discussion paper, the Commission recommended that the court should have the power to rescind, suspend or vary any order made by it in regard to parental rights and responsibilities.<sup>57</sup> In this context, the Commission also considered the option of a *summary termination process* where parents are, for instance, found guilty of trafficking their children for purposes of sexual exploitation. However, rather than summarily to terminate the parental rights and responsibilities of a person, the Commission decided to recommend the suspension, pending an enquiry, of all parental rights and responsibilities of such a person in relation to such a child. It was accepted, however, that ultimately the court may find it necessary to terminate all or

---

<sup>53</sup> Section 45(1).

<sup>54</sup> Section 46(1)(a).

<sup>55</sup> Section 46(1)(b).

<sup>56</sup> Section 47.

<sup>57</sup> Par. 8.7.4.

some of the parental rights and responsibilities of a parent.

The Commission further recommended in the discussion paper that the wilful failure of the person having parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child to fulfil his or her parental rights and responsibilities when able to do so should constitute a criterion for finding that child to be in need of care.

#### **7.9.1 Comments received**

**Mr Rothman** asserted that the Commission's recommendation that the wilful failure of a person having parental rights in respect of a child should constitute a ground in terms of section 14(4) for finding a child in need of care, will shift the focus from the child to the parent and criminalise the parent again, a principle that was sought to be avoided when the criteria were changed in 1996. He recommended that the proposed ground could be kept from the ambit of the existing section 14(4) enquiry by broadening the scope of the present section 50 of the Child Care Act, 1983 which criminalises ill-treatment and abuse of children.

**Ms R van Zyl** supported the Commission's recommendation that a court be able to terminate the parental rights and responsibilities of parents found guilty of trafficking their children for purposes of sexual exploitation.

The **Consortium** recommended that with regard to orphan children, alternative forms of proof of their parents' death, other than death certificates, should be accepted. It mentioned that many parents die at home and are buried without being registered. Thus, a letter from a religious organisation, a traditional leader or healer should suffice as proof of the parents' dead. The Consortium proposed that where parents cannot be found and are presumed death, the child or caregiver should be able to obtain a letter of presumption of death from the social development office. Such a letter should be issued after certain proof as been shown, e.g. the length of time since the person was last seen.

#### **7.9.2 Evaluation and recommendation**

In casting the net widely and by allowing more than one person concurrently to exercise parental rights and responsibilities or components thereof in respect of a child, the Commission attempts to extent the range of possible care-givers beyond the traditional nuclear family concept. However, in so doing, it is realised that the

possibility for conflict among these care-givers may increase.<sup>58</sup> Provision must therefore be made for the termination, suspension or restriction of any such person's parental rights and responsibilities.<sup>59</sup>

The Commission therefore recommends that a co-holder of parental rights and responsibilities, the child, the Family Advocate, or 'any other person having a sufficient interest in the care, well-being or development of the child' may bring an application to court for an order suspending for a period, terminating, restricting or extending any or all of the parental rights and responsibilities a specific person has in respect of the child.<sup>60</sup>

---

<sup>58</sup> See also Van der Linde A and Labuschagne J M T 'Strafregtelike aanspreeklikheid weens die skending van 'n omgangsreg van 'n ouer met sy / haar kind deur die ander ouer' (2001) Vol. 22(1) **Obiter** 153.

<sup>59</sup> Section 39 of the Bill.

<sup>60</sup> Ibid.

## CHAPTER 8

### PREVENTION AND EARLY INTERVENTION SERVICES FOR CHILDREN AND THEIR FAMILIES

#### 8.1 Introduction

The Commission's recognition that prevention and early intervention services are vitally important components in any future strategy on behalf of children was well received.<sup>1</sup> However, the translation of the recognition into enforceable legal provisions proved more difficult and highlighted the dichotomy between social work practice, from which the concepts stem, and the demands of legal drafting. Another major challenge was to shift the focus to promotion and prevention on the primary level through legislation setting out the necessary structures, systems, and resources required for ensuring and sustaining such a shift.

Prevention and early intervention services are usually focused on the family and not only on the child. Nor is the family or the child necessarily at risk of statutory intervention, as primary prevention by definition would attempt to prevent such family or child from being put at risk in the first place. Given this broad focus of prevention and early intervention services, proper targeting of legislative provisions becomes difficult.

#### 8.2 Defining prevention and early intervention services

Prevention is very broadly defined in the Welfare ***Financing Policy*** as 'any strategies and programmes which strengthen and build the capacity and self-reliance of families, children, youth, women and older persons'.<sup>2</sup> Early intervention services are defined in the Policy as services that 'target children, youth, families, women, older persons and communities identified (through a developmental risk assessment) as being vulnerable or at risk and ensure, through strengths-based developmental and therapeutic programmes, that they do not have to experience statutory intervention of any kind ...'.<sup>3</sup>

Prevention activities generally occur at three levels: primary, secondary and tertiary.

---

<sup>1</sup> See the submissions by Ms R Lombard, Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa, and the Consortium.

<sup>2</sup> March 1999, p. 10.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid, p. 11.

Primary prevention activities are directed at the general population with the goal of stopping the occurrence of maltreatment and abuse before it starts. Secondary prevention or early intervention activities focus efforts and resources on families where there are children known to be at greater risk of maltreatment, in order to prevent the development of full-scale or ongoing abuse. Early intervention services have the following primary goals:

- To prevent the removal of children from their families;
- To prevent the recurrence of problems and reduce the negative consequences of risk factors;
- To divert children away from either the child and youth care system or the criminal justice system.

Primary and secondary prevention do not feature prominently in the Child Care Act, 1983.<sup>4</sup> The emphasis in the Child Care Act, 1983 is rather on tertiary prevention which involves dealing with abuse once it has occurred in order to prevent its continuation. Neither prevention nor early intervention services are defined in any South African legislation, and in the discussion paper it was recommended that definitions be included in the new children's statute.

While the concept of prevention services is relatively well understood in the welfare sector, the Commission is convinced of the need to go beyond prevention to safeguarding and promoting the well-being of children. In the discussion paper, the Commission recommended that a balanced approach, using both the concepts - 'prevention' and 'promotion' - be utilised in the new children's statute. As regards appropriate wording, the Commission supported the Namibian provision where both promotion of children's well-being and prevention services are referred to. It was therefore recommended in the discussion paper that, out of monies appropriated by law for the provision of preventative assistance and services under the new children's statute, the Minister must provide such assistance and services to children and to their families and communities as he or she deems appropriate to

- prevent the neglect, abuse or inadequate supervision of children or other failure to meet children's needs;
- promote every child's well-being and the realisation of his or her full potential;  
and

---

<sup>4</sup> Regulation 2(4)(b) provides that the social worker's report to the court must include a summary of the prevention and early intervention services rendered in respect of the child and his or her parents.

- actively involve and promote the full participation of families in identifying and resolving their own problems.<sup>5</sup>

The Commission confirms the preliminary position adopted in the discussion paper. However, while we recognise the need to provide prevention and early intervention services to society at large, and therefore also to families without children, the Commission limits the definitions of prevention and early intervention services for the purposes of the Children's Bill to families *with children*.<sup>6</sup>

In the discussion paper, the Commission further recommended that a provision along the lines of section 55 of the draft Indian Children's Code Bill 2000 on health, as a preventative measure, be included in the children's statute.<sup>7</sup> The **Consortium** supported this recommendation, but suggested that the Indian provision be adapted to our particular circumstances. The Consortium suggested the following

---

<sup>5</sup> Par. 9.5.

<sup>6</sup> Sections 158 and 159 of the Bill.

<sup>7</sup> Par 9.5. Section 55 of the draft Indian Children's Code Bill, 2000 reads as follows:

**Preventative measures against diseases and malnutrition**

(1) The State Government shall take adequate measures to combat disease and malnutrition affecting children residing in the State.

(2) The main causes for infant mortality in India have been found to be low birth weight, diarrhoea and acute respiratory infections which causes morbidity in children, absence of complementary feeding during six months to eighteen months wherein the infant is most vulnerable to infection, iodine deficiency, affliction of cretinism, mental retardation and motor handicaps, blindness, seasonal food shortages and the last but not the least, continuing gender disparity in intra-familial distribution of food, and steps shall be taken to minimize the recurrence of the above conditions so as to promote the general health of children.

(3) To combat the general prevalence of malnutrition, both the Central and State Governments shall initiate programmes providing for a package of services, comprising supplementary nutrition, immunization, and health and referral services for the children below two years of age, health check-up, immunization and supplementary nutrition for pregnant and lactating women.

(4) The programmes referred to in sub-section (3) shall take the form of assistance being rendered to the non-governmental or other organizations in the local area and the Government shall have a clear obligation to ensure access to proper nutrition and an efficient and adequate public distribution system.

(5) The measures that may be taken to prevent malnutrition may include -

(a) the child's right to colostrum in the first few days of its birth, exclusive breast feeding for four to six months and an adequate supplementation thereof;

(b) nutrition and well-being shall be achieved through delivery of services, capacity building and empowerment, and ensuring the three necessary conditions of food, health and care;

(c) community groups working on local malnutrition problems should approach the local Panchayats and State Governments for help in the form of money, endorsements, contacts, transportation, or moral support and encouragement and the State should help such community groups;

(d) to conduct all the above activities, the State Government shall adopt a holistic approach towards preventing malnutrition.

formulation:

“For the purposes of increasing the rate of child survival and improving the health status of children, the state shall take adequate measures to ensure:

- (1) the supply of clean water and basic sanitation to children and their families;
- (2) the availability of land and resources for food production and the direct provision of financial support or food to children suffering from malnutrition, hunger or lack of adequate nutrition;
- (3) the financial support of local organisations providing basic services to children and their families, with an emphasis on organisations providing food, shelter, clothing, skills development, child care and health promotion;
- (4) the availability of housing/shelter for children and their families;
- (5) the provision of comprehensive and adequate primary health care services to children and pregnant women; and
- (6) a comprehensive social security system for children living in poverty and children with special needs.

There is merit in this proposal and the Commission has made provision in section 232 of the Children’s Bill for the Minister to include in the national policy framework strategies aimed at combating malnutrition among children and to provide children at risk of malnutrition access to sufficient and appropriate food, etc.

### **8.3 Promotion, prevention and early intervention: An inter-sectoral responsibility**

As pointed out in the discussion paper,<sup>8</sup> the abuse, neglect and maltreatment of children are complex phenomena that reflect underlying problems in the family, community and society. In order to address the problems effectively and to promote the welfare of all children, it is necessary that an inter-sectoral approach be adopted. In addition, inter-departmental co-operation aimed at promoting the welfare of children is needed.

In this regard, the National Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect states that >Government departments at all levels, in partnership with the broader public, must plan inter-sectoral preventive strategies which are designed to strengthen family and community life and to promote homes, schools, neighbourhoods and communities which are safe for children and which promote their full and healthy development=.<sup>9</sup> The Committee further states that >[k]ey role players for this purpose include structures responsible for education (including pre-school care) and primary health

---

<sup>8</sup> Par. 9.6.

<sup>9</sup> National Committee on Child Abuse and Neglect **Proposed National Strategy on Child Abuse and Neglect** Pretoria: Department of Welfare, 1996.

care; NGO=s and community-based organisations, religious and cultural groupings and traditional authority structures; employers, and the media=.<sup>10</sup> The National Strategy on Child Abuse and Neglect provides for local government to play a central role in inter-sectoral planning for the development of neighbourhoods which are safe and healthy for children, and in the provision of accessible venues from which a range of supportive and preventive services can be delivered on an inter-sectoral, one-stop basis. It further states that categories of children who are particularly vulnerable to abuse and neglect, including disabled children, and adults and juveniles who are known or potential perpetrators, should be targeted for specifically designed preventive strategies.<sup>11</sup>

In the discussion paper, the Commission has therefore made recommendations for the inclusion of provisions in the new children's statute to give effect to an inter-departmental, inter-sectoral approach to prevention and early intervention.

Most respondents who commented upon these proposals supported the Commission's approach.

To complement the prevention and early intervention services on offer, the Commission recommended in the discussion paper that the public school fees of children in residential care, foster care and those in subsidized adoption placements be paid by the Department of Education for the duration of that placement. The Commission also recommended that free basic health care be provided to such children by the Department of Health.<sup>12</sup>

In its submission, the **Consortium** gave the following legislative content to the above recommendations:

**"Free and subsidised state services for children**

- (1) Children in residential care, foster care or subsidised adoptions, and children who are unable to afford to pay for state services due to socio-economic status are entitled to:
  - (a) free basic education;
  - (b) subsidised school uniforms, shoes and stationery;
  - (c) free basic health care;
  - (d) subsidised and free public transport;
  - (e) free minimum level of water, sanitation and electricity services; and
  - (f) exemption from having to pay fees when making application for Home

---

<sup>10</sup> Ibid.

<sup>11</sup> Ibid.

<sup>12</sup> Par. 9.6



Affairs documents.

(2) The Government Departments responsible for providing such services must design exemption processes which are accessible to children and their families and shall take steps to make families aware of their right to apply for free and subsidised services and shall assist children and their families to apply.”

The **Consortium** submitted that in order to ensure that the Minister for Social Development is empowered to perform an inter-sectoral co-ordinating function, the new child care legislation must provide for monitoring and reporting functions for the various Departments and government bodies. Furthermore, it was said that the monitoring and reporting process must be informed by clear performance indicators and must be done in a prescribed format. The Consortium suggested the following legislative provisions:

“(1) Each Government Department shall draft a plan detailing how they intend to fulfil their mandate of promoting the rights and well-being of children and providing for prevention and early intervention services.

(a) the plan must be submitted to the Minister for Social Development, the Joint Monitoring Committee on Children, Youth and Persons with Disabilities, and the Office of the Children's Protector; and

(b) the plan must be reviewed and submitted annually.

(2) Each Government Department must draft a report detailing the steps that they have taken to implement their plan, their successes and failures.

(a) the report must be submitted to the Minister for Social Development, the Joint Monitoring Committee on Children, Youth and Persons with Disabilities, and the Office of the Children Protector; and

(b) the report must be submitted annually.

(3) Plans and reports must follow a format prescribed by the Minister for Social Development and must be guided by the use of clear performance indicators.

(4) The Minister for Social Development may request opportunities to discuss plans and reports with the Departments concerned and may make recommendations that certain actions be taken in order to ensure that children's well-being is adequately promoted.

(5) Departments shall be required to give due consideration to the Minister's recommendations and to respond in writing if so requested.”

### 8.3.1 Evaluation and recommendations

As stated in the discussion paper, the Commission is convinced that prevention and early intervention services can only be delivered effectively as part of an integrated, inter-sectoral and inter-departmental framework. To achieve this aim, the Commission recommends that the national policy framework meant to guide the implementation and administration of this Act<sup>13</sup> must specifically include a comprehensive national strategy aimed at securing the provision of prevention and

<sup>13</sup>

See section 5 of the Bill.

early intervention services to families, care-givers and children.<sup>14</sup> The Commission believes the suggestions put forward by the Consortium immediately above could be dealt with adequately in such a comprehensive national strategy.

The Commission further affirms its preliminary position adopted in the discussion paper that children in alternative care should receive free basic education and basic health care. The proposal submitted by the Consortium in this regard is a helpful start. Provision is therefore made for children in alternative care to receive free basic education, subsidised school uniforms, free basic health care, subsidised public transport to and from schools, etc. Unlike the Consortium, however, the Commission would not extent this provision beyond the category of children in alternative care, where the State has a clear constitutional obligation in the light of the **Grootboom** decision, to 'all children unable to pay for state services due to socio-economic status'.

While the current regulations to the Child Care Act, 1983, provides that the report of the investigating social worker should contain a summary of prevention and early intervention services rendered in respect of the child and his or her family,<sup>15</sup> and while this requirement is generally complied with,<sup>16</sup> the Commission is of the opinion that the provision should be included in the principal statute and not the subordinate legislation. This is accordingly recommended.<sup>17</sup>

#### **8.4 The role of local government**

The Commission sees a specific role for local government in the provision of prevention and early intervention services for children and their families. In the discussion paper, the Commission therefore recommended that the Children's Bill should empower local authorities to provide certain specified prevention services, early intervention services and programmes to promote the welfare of children.

More specifically, and in addition to the powers and functions a municipality has in terms of sections 156 and 229 of the Constitution and sections 83 and 84 of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act 117 of 1998, the Commission

---

<sup>14</sup> Section 161 of the Bill.

<sup>15</sup> Regulation 2(4)(b).

<sup>16</sup> See the submission by Mr Rothman.

<sup>17</sup> Section 165.

recommended in the discussion paper that each local authority should be obliged, in terms of the new Act, to:

- X Safeguard and promote the welfare of children within its area.
- X Ensure integrated development planning in respect of child care facilities within its area.
- X Keep a register of the total number of children and record their ages, in its area of jurisdiction. The purpose of the register will be to assist in rational and appropriate budget allocations to and by the local authority. It will also be used in planning services for children in the area by government.
- X Undertake a needs analysis of children in order to determine the existing needs of children in its area of jurisdiction. Each local government should appoint a task team to determine what it needs to do in respect of the children in its area and to budget for such services. The analysis must be conducted at least once every three years. A format for the needs analysis should be included in the regulations to the new children's statute.
- X Keep records in the register of the number of lost or abandoned children, children living on the street, and disabled children within its area of jurisdiction and give assistance to them in order to enable them to grow up with dignity among other children and to develop their potential and self-reliance. These children within the area of its jurisdiction are the special responsibility of the local authority. The local authority must see that such children have access to basic nutrition, shelter, basic health care services and social services. The latter must include, where appropriate, family tracing and family reunification services for children.
- X Maintain a database of all available child care facilities in their area of jurisdiction.
- X Provide and maintain sufficient and appropriate recreational facilities for the children in its area of jurisdiction.
- X Ensure the environmental safety of the children in its area of jurisdiction.
- X Conduct inspections of child care facilities to ensure maintenance of standards. This must occur in terms of a single, national standard set in the regulations of the new children's statute.
- X Provide for home visiting services to all new-born babies.

The Commission recommended in the discussion paper that all of the above services may be provided directly by employees of the local authority and/or delegated to non-employees or non-governmental organisations. The Commission also suggested

that registered non-profit organisations that provide services to children and families be exempted from paying property rates. In addition, it was recommended that local authorities be accorded discretion to entertain applications for full or partial exemptions from payment of electricity and water tariffs by non-profit organisations providing social services for children. The local government's availability of financial resources was regarded as a legitimate factor to be taken into account in considering such applications.

#### **8.4.1 Comments received**

In its response to the above recommendations, the **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** suggested that, as circumstances differ from province to province, from rural area to urban area etc., aside from uniform guidelines and national regulations, provincial regulations peculiar to each area are needed.

The **Consortium** and **Ms R van Zyl** supported the Commission's recommendations made in respect of the role of local government. The **Consortium** proposed, however, that the phrase "child care facilities" be defined to make it clear what facilities are referred to. In its opinion, child care facilities should include ECD centres, creches and children's homes. The Consortium suggested that the protection of children from accidental trauma injuries should also be a clear function of local government. It submitted that many children die and are injured in motor vehicle accidents, drowning, burns and falls. Thus, local government can be made responsible for addressing some of the underlying problems causing these injuries, e.g. putting speed bumps on busy roads and near schools.

The **Consortium** agreed further that local authorities must be enabled to develop "one-stop centres" for child and family services in their areas of jurisdiction. It recommended that these centres should include service points that enable caregivers to register their children, obtain birth certificates and identity documents and apply for social security.

The **Consortium** recommended that a specific budget be allocated for purposes of primary prevention at national, provincial and local government level. This could be done at national level through calling primary prevention a "programme" which would make it possible to monitor the amount of money allocated to the function in the Department's income statements. Furthermore, it was said that as far as local government is concerned, resources dedicated to primary prevention activities that

focus on children should be ring-fenced to ensure that children are prioritised. Also, any function delegated to local government should be followed by the necessary resources.

**The Criminal Justice Initiative, Open Society Foundation of South Africa** argued that schools can play a major role in respect of prevention due to their access to children and families. The respondent submitted that the South African Schools Act does not address the various ways that schools could contribute to prevention. Also, very little responsibility is placed on educators or other government departments or service providers to ensure that children are protected from victimisation when in their care. The respondent stated that the range of opportunities for prevention and protection that are afforded during the school-going years of children can be placed into the following broad categories:

- Schools can play a role in identifying children and families who are in need and intervene early to ensure that these children have access to services aimed at addressing the problem.
- Schools can engage in proactive prevention initiatives, located in the school and possibly also radiating out into the surrounding community, aimed at promoting development or preventing crime.

The respondent thus recommended that the new child care legislation should give specific attention to the proactive role that schools can play in relation to prevention. Furthermore, the new child care legislation should make specific reference to the responsibility of the Department of Education to take decisive action, if necessary through the courts, to protect children in its care.

**The Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** (Community Law Centre, UWC) submitted that the Commission's recommendations in respect of local government fail to distinguish between Schedule 4B and Schedule 5B matters and the assignment of additional duties to local government. The respondent also points out that the Commission has failed to take full cognisance of the latest legal developments and especially the recently enacted Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000.<sup>18</sup> This failure complicates the implementation of the Commission's recommendations. The respondents stated that it is essential that the recommendations distinguish between the regulation of child care facilities as a Schedule 4B matter and assigning additional matters to local government. The respondent also provided a detailed outline of the legal framework for regulating

---

<sup>18</sup> The Act commenced on 1 March 2001.

Schedule 4B matters and the legal framework for assigning additional matters to local government.

In essence, the **Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** submits that obligations placed on local government (to keep registers of children in its area, for instance) fall outside the functional area of concurrent national and provincial legislative competence covered by "child care facilities" in Schedule 4B of the Constitution. As a result, an assignment in terms of section 99 or 126 of the Constitution, coupled with appropriate funding and capacity building where needed, would be necessary. The respondent maintains that the mere formulation in national legislation of such a duty on local government is unconstitutional and not in keeping with the system of intergovernmental relations.<sup>19</sup>

The respondent's analysis and division of the different tasks assigned to local government proved useful. For ease of reference, this analysis is presented in table form.

<b>Functions assigned to local government</b>	<b>Constitutional competence</b>
a. Ensure integrated development planning	Schedule 4B
b. Keep a register of all children	Unconstitutional - assignment needed
c. Undertake a needs analysis of children	Unconstitutional - assignment needed
d. Keep records of the number of lost or abandoned children, children living on the street, and disabled children	Unconstitutional - assignment needed
e. Maintain a database of all available child care facilities	Schedule 4B
f. Provide and maintain recreational facilities for children	Schedule 5B
g. Ensure the environmental safety of children	Already covered
h. Conduct inspections of child care facilities	Schedule 4B
i. Provide home visiting services to newborn babies	Unconstitutional - assignment needed

<sup>19</sup>

This is also the submission of the **Criminal Justice Initiative, Open Society Foundation for South Africa**

With regard to some of the recommendations (such as h for example), the respondent stated that this could be a case of regulating child care facilities that exceed the limits of what is constitutionally permitted. The respondent submitted that local government must regulate child care facilities in their bylaws. The legal framework established in each bylaw would include inspection. National legislation can set minimum standards for child care facilities, but cannot prescribe the content of local government bylaws on child care facilities. A general obligation to conduct inspections would still pass muster, but the content of the single national standard would determine whether it is too prescriptive or not.

Further, with regard to the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000, the **Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** stated that, while Integrated Development Planning (IDP) took place at local government level prior to this Act, the Act now determines a new and far-reaching legal framework for the IDP process. This legal framework makes specific provision for local government to incorporate national and provincial planning requirements. The respondent therefore suggested that the Commission's proposed obligation on local government could be articulated more effectively if it is linked to IDP.

The respondent said that the remark in the discussion paper<sup>20</sup> that the omission of child care facilities from the list of district functions in section 84(1) of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act has as a consequence that resources are not shared at district level is incorrect. The respondent stated that the primary function of a district municipality is to effect redistribution and to co-ordinate the activities of the local municipalities in the district. As such, the sharing of resources (even pertaining to functions that are not listed in section 84(1)) is critical in the district municipalities' activities. For example, through funding, joint planning and co-ordination by the district, the local municipalities' efforts and resources on child care facilities can be shared equitably amongst the local municipalities.

#### **8.4.2 Evaluation and recommendation**

The Commission notes with appreciation the constructive suggestions. However, it needs to be pointed out that, while prevention and early intervention services may be offered at 'child care facilities', this need not be the case. The Commission further takes cognisance of the fact that 'child care facilities', as a Schedule 4B competence of local government, form part of the matters in respect of which the legislative

---

<sup>20</sup>

Par. 9.7.2.

competences of Parliament and the provincial legislatures are limited. The Commission is aware of the fact that municipalities have, in terms of section 156(1) of the Constitution, 'executive authority in respect of, and the right to administer', such child care facilities. The Commission is further cognisant of the fact that 'any other matter' may be assigned to local government by national or provincial legislation.<sup>21</sup> In our opinion, this includes the power to assign to local government the duty to determine and keep statistics in respect of children, to submit those at regular intervals, and to undertake a needs analysis of children in its area.

We concur with the Children's Rights and Local Government Projects that an assignment of functions to municipalities in terms of section 99 or 126 of the Constitution, 1996, coupled with appropriate funding and capacity building where needed, would be necessary. However, we wish to point out that the power or function is to be derived from 'an Act of Parliament'.<sup>22</sup> The link to funding and capacity building is provided by the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000,<sup>23</sup> and not the Constitution directly.

The Commission therefore does not agree with the assessment by the Children's Rights and Local Government Projects that the formulation in national legislation of functions falling outside the ambit of Schedule 4B or 5B of the Constitution on local authorities is *per se* unconstitutional. If a narrow approach is adopted and the matters referred to above are seen to fall under 'welfare services' as a Schedule 4A competence, then such functions must be assigned to a municipality, 'by agreement and subject to any conditions,' if that matter would most effectively be administered locally, and provided that the municipality has the capacity to administer it.<sup>24</sup> If a broader approach is adopted and the matters referred to are not seen as a Schedule 4A or 5A matter, then such matters can be assigned to local government in terms of section 156(1)(b) of the Constitution, 1996. Obviously, where such municipalities do not have the necessary capacity to exercise their powers and to perform their functions, national and provincial government must step in and support and strengthen that capacity.<sup>25</sup>

---

<sup>21</sup> Section 156(1)(b) of the Constitution, 1996.

<sup>22</sup> Sections 99 and 126 of the Constitution, 1996.

<sup>23</sup> Section 9(3).

<sup>24</sup> Section 156(4) of the Constitution, 1996.

<sup>25</sup> Section 154(1) of the Constitution, 1996.



As far as imposing a duty on municipalities to provide for home visits of new-born babies is concerned, the Commission envisages that such visits be conducted by health care professions, as was the custom in some areas in the past. In our opinion, the imposition of such a function on local government would be constitutional – not because it falls under local government’s functional competence under ‘child care facilities’, but because it is covered by ‘municipal health services’ in Schedule 4B of the Constitution.

The Commission therefore recommends that the Minister for Social Development may from money appropriated by Parliament provide or fund prevention and early intervention services to families, parents, care-givers and their children.<sup>26</sup> The Commission further sees a specific role for local government in the provision of prevention and early intervention services. In this regard, it is recommended that local government must keep certain statistics on children in its area, submit those statistics to appropriate organs as prescribed, undertake a needs analysis of children at regular intervals, and apply those statistics and the needs analysis for purposes of budgeting.<sup>27</sup> As was suggested in the discussion paper and discussed above, provision is also made for home visits to new-born babies.<sup>28</sup> It has already been indicated that the imposition of such duties on local government, in our opinion, is not unconstitutional.

The question of whether children’s homes should be regarded as “child care facilities” and therefore be a Schedule 4B local authority competency is discussed in Chapter 18 below.

### **8.5 The role of traditional leaders in the delivery of prevention and early intervention services and in safeguarding and promoting the welfare of children.**

As stated in the discussion paper,<sup>29</sup> the Commission is of the opinion that traditional authorities, through their leaders, have a very important role to play in protecting and promoting the welfare of children living within their jurisdiction. The Commission believes that traditional authorities can best fulfil their role in this regard by participating at the government levels provided for by the Constitution and the Local

---

<sup>26</sup> Section 160 of the Bill.

<sup>27</sup> Section 162(2) of the Bill.

<sup>28</sup> Section 162(2)(f) of the Bill.

<sup>29</sup> Par. 9.8.

Government: Municipal Structures Act 117 of 1998.

As far as local government level is concerned, traditional authorities will obviously exert their influence through the local government structures and the recommendations regarding local government made above will therefore also apply to traditional authorities where applicable. The Commission provides for this possibility through section 163 of the Children's Bill which provides that a municipality may, by agreement with a traditional authority in its area, designate aspects of the functions assigned to municipalities to the traditional authority.

## **8.6 Court-instigated services**

As in the discussion paper,<sup>30</sup> the Commission is of the view that the Child and Family Court needs to be part of a coherent strategy for delivering prevention and early intervention services for children. By virtue of its specialisation, the Court will be an appropriate forum for identifying cases where intensive services are required. It is therefore recommended that where the Court decides on a balance of probability that such services provide a reasonable likelihood of avoiding the need to remove a child from his or her current caregiver, it may:

- Order an emergency, short-term, state-funded financial grant to be paid to the child or her primary caregiver either in a lump sum or in monthly payments over a maximum of three months (the amount of the grant will be set in the regulations);<sup>31</sup> and / or
- Refer the child and / or named family members to an approved family preservation programme.<sup>32</sup>

To give effect to this recommendation, the Commission proposes the inclusion of a provision in the Children's Bill giving the child and family court the competency to order the (provincial) Department of Social Development or any organ of state to provide early intervention services<sup>33</sup> in respect of a child and the family or care-giver of the child in appropriate circumstances.<sup>34</sup> Such an emergency court grant will be of limited duration (maximum six months) and it is aimed at preventing the removal of

---

<sup>30</sup> Par. 9.9.

<sup>31</sup> Section 345 of the Bill.

<sup>32</sup> Section 59(1)(f)(ii).

<sup>33</sup> In these circumstances it makes little sense to speak of prevention services as court intervention has already been sought.

<sup>34</sup> Section 164.

children from the family environment.

## CHAPTER 9

### CHILD PROTECTION

#### 9.1 Introduction

Formal measures for the protection of children from harmful actions and from negligence, especially by those immediately responsible for their care, are arguably the central focus of the Child Care Act of 1983. While the proposed Children's Bill is much broader in its reach, protective measures remain a crucial component.

#### 9.2 Circumstances in which protective intervention may be required

As pointed out in the discussion paper,<sup>1</sup> circumstances where protective measures may come into play generally fall into one or both of the following categories:

- (a) Neglect, which involves a failure to meet the child's basic physical, intellectual, emotional, and social needs;
- (b) Abuse, which is generally understood to occur when some form of harm is actively perpetrated against a child.

Neglect and abuse may emanate from a number of sources and it is not always easy to pinpoint the primary perpetrator as multiple combinations of perpetrators may be involved. Many children also experience combinations of physical, sexual and or emotional abuse and or neglect. These may take on patterns which are deeply embedded in the child's socio-economic circumstances and/or the surrounding culture. Widespread poverty in South Africa is perhaps the most prevailing of these circumstances.

##### 9.2.1 Comments received

From the submissions received, the need for clarity as to the terms 'abuse' and 'neglect' became very convincing. **CHILDS** submitted that the definitions of "neglect" and "abuse" are too vague and need to go beyond the gross and obvious. The respondent proposed

---

<sup>1</sup> Par. 10.2.2.

that these definitions should include emotional and verbal abuse as well as the alienation from or abandonment by a parent.

**Ms R Lombard** stated that it is almost impossible to process complaints of psychological abuse in practice, despite the provisions of the Prevention of Family Violence Act (Domestic Violence Act). She also said court officials seem to be unable to deal with cases of psychological abuse, not only in terms of content, but also in terms of identifying abusive processes/patterns and how the course of events can change meaning. She suggested that the Department of Justice must appoint experienced persons to deal with cases of psychological abuse. She proposed that the new child care legislation should deal with the issue of psychological abuse under children in need of special protection and should make provision for legal action against those subjecting children to psychological abuse.

### 9.2.2 Evaluation and recommendation

In the light of the submissions received, the Commission recommends that the terms 'neglect' and 'abuse' be defined for the purposes of the Children's Bill.<sup>2</sup> 'Abuse' is defined broadly to cover any form of harm or ill-treatment deliberately inflicted on a child. It includes assault, commercial sexual exploitation, exploitative labour practices and the exposure of a child to behaviour that may psychologically harm the child. 'Neglect' is also defined broadly as a failure in the exercise of parental responsibilities to provide in the child's basic physical, intellectual, emotional or social needs.

### 9.3 The Commission's broad approach to the protection of children

In the discussion paper<sup>3</sup> it was pointed out that is one thing to agree that children's needs must be met and that they must be protected from abuse and neglect, and another to decide whether, when and how the state should intervene to ensure that this happens.<sup>4</sup> Legally sanctioned interventions, designed specifically to safeguard children

<sup>2</sup> Section 1 of the Bill: Definitions of 'abuse' and 'neglect'.

<sup>3</sup> Par. 10.2.3.

<sup>4</sup> Dingwall >Labelling children as abused or neglected= in Stainton Rogers et al (ed) **Child Abuse and Neglect - Facing the Challenge** London: Open University 1989, 164 points out that there is an important distinction between discourses about types of behaviour towards children, moral formulations in this regard, and the question of whether or not specific types of conduct should be policed.

who are in specified forms of danger, are only one component of any society's arrangements for protecting its children. A multiplicity of measures and processes, mandated by law or operating informally, help to meet the fundamental needs of children and ensure their normal growth and development, as part and parcel of the normal functioning of society. Others may be established specifically to prevent certain types of harmful situation from developing, or for purposes of intervening when problems are apparent but can be managed without the use of state authority.

The nature and emphasis of state intervention will depend in part on how a given society assigns the responsibility for the wellbeing of its children, and where it believes the risks to children are primarily located. Societies differ in the extent to which they lay the burden of responsibility with the biological parents on the one hand, or view the nurturing of children as a responsibility shared by the extended family, the community and the state on the other. Even where specific, identifiable individuals such as parents or caregivers pose an immediate danger to a child, abuse and neglect tend to be generated or at least aggravated by broader societal issues. High stress levels and a lack of support for parents and caregivers are factors widely believed to promote abuse of children. Poverty and a lack of basic resources are prime generators of stress and disorganisation, as well as limiting the ability of parents and other caregivers to meet the needs of children. It is thus no accident that incidences of child abuse and neglect are markedly higher among poor families.<sup>5</sup>

A number of writers and practitioners caution against an approach to child abuse which is over-preoccupied with ideas of personal or family pathology. Child abuse can be seen *inter alia* as a manifestation of underlying social problems, with families who are caught up in these becoming >agents of structural violence=.<sup>6</sup> The view that child abuse is basically a matter of >sick= behaviour within families enables society both to avoid engaging with the broader social causes, and to relegate the task of protecting children from the resulting harm to designated professionals, regardless of whether they have the necessary resources.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>5</sup> Corby >Alternative Theory Bases in Child Abuse and Neglect= in Stainton Rogers *et al* (ed) **Child Abuse and Neglect - Facing the Challenge** London: Open University 1989, 30-39; Faller, K **Child Sexual Abuse - an Interdisciplinary Manual for Diagnosis, Case Management and Treatment** London: Macmillan 1989, 23; National Coalition for Child Protection Reform, 2000: **Issue Paper 6** - "Child Abuse and Poverty", <http://www.ncccpr.org/newissues.html>.

<sup>6</sup> Parton N **The Politics of Child Abuse** London: MacMillan 1985, 167.

<sup>7</sup> Loney, M >Child Abuse in a Social Context= in Stainton Rogers *et al* (ed) **Child Abuse and Neglect -Facing the Challenge** London: Open University 1989, 88-96.

If society as a whole has responsibilities for the protection and nurturing of children, and the causes of neglect and abuse are not located only in individuals or families, it follows that the types of statutory intervention for which provision is made should not be focussed only at the level of the individual child and family, and should not be predominantly of a controlling or punitive nature.

The body of legislation which serves to protect children should include at least the following components:

(a) *Provision for mechanisms which are geared towards the broad population and which support parenting, family life and child wellbeing generally, thereby lowering the risk of abuse and neglect and reducing their effects;*

(b) *Provision for mechanisms through which help is offered on a voluntary basis to individual children and families who are experiencing stress or believed to be at risk;*

(c) *Provision for mandatory measures which are exercised with or without the consent of those concerned, in which state authority is exercised to protect and provide care for the individual child who is deemed to be in danger in his or her own home or immediate environment;*

(d) *Criminal justice measures aimed at dealing with perpetrators of offences against children.*

It can be argued that a sound balance between these components, in legislation as well as in policy frameworks and in resourcing, is essential for a society which wishes to protect its children effectively. It would appear, from the overwhelming weight of information supplied to the Commission, that in South Africa all these components are inadequate and in urgent need of strengthening. In efforts to reinforce them, the optimum possible balance should be sought.

The focus of the present chapter is on formal child protective services (CPS) which carry state authority, i.e. interventions contemplated in (c) and, insofar as they impact directly on the child, also (d) above. However it is necessary when designing CPS measures to ensure that they are linked to, and in proper balance with, other approaches. It becomes

extraordinarily difficult, apart from being prohibitively expensive, to deal effectively with abuse and neglect through case-by-case protective intervention by state agents when essential social mechanisms required to ensure the wellbeing of children are weak or absent.

#### **9.4 Existing situation in South Africa**

Much of South Africa=s child protection system is based on models developed in the First World, particularly Britain and North America. Formal child protection responsibilities are shared between a number of government sectors (e.g. welfare, police, justice, health) and various civil society organisations, particularly child and family welfare organisations. Child abuse is designated both as a crime and as a situation necessitating protection, care and treatment.

Removal of a child who has been abused or is at risk of abuse is provided for in section 11 of the Child Care Act 74 of 1983. In a situation of urgency a child may be removed by a police officer, social worker or >authorised officer= who must complete the required Form 4<sup>8</sup> and bring the removal to the attention of the court within 48 hours. A children's court inquiry is then held in terms of sections 13 and 14, and a finding is made as to whether the child is >in need of care=. The grounds for such a finding are found in section 14(4).<sup>9</sup>

Options open to the court for dealing with a child found to be >in need of care= are supplied in section 15(1). These include supervision within the home, or placement of the child in foster care, a children=s home or a school of industries. No distinction is spelled out as to the type of situation which would merit each option - any can be used at the discretion of the court.

The Child Care Act also provides for ongoing monitoring of the care arrangements of, and ongoing planning for, children who have been placed in substitute care by the court.<sup>10</sup> In addition the Act sets out conditions for and processes involved in adoptive placements for children who are unable to reside within their own families.<sup>11</sup> The Act

---

<sup>8</sup> Regulation 9(2)(a).

<sup>9</sup> For the wording see Par. 6.4.3 of the discussion paper.

<sup>10</sup> Sections 15(2)-(5), section 16 and Chapter 6.

<sup>11</sup> Sections 7 – 27.



further provides for the setting up of places of safety, children's homes, and secure care facilities for children awaiting trial or sentence.<sup>12</sup> Provision is also made for the registration and inspection of shelters, children's homes and other residential facilities for children.<sup>13</sup>

Parental rights may be terminated and children may be adopted where this is considered to be in their best interests.<sup>14</sup> Recent amendments to the Regulations have strengthened an already implicit emphasis in the Act on achieving stability for each child in substitute care through permanent placement, preferably within the child's own family or community, as soon as possible. This principle is strongly supported by the current policy framework as set out by the Inter-ministerial Committee on Youth at Risk (IMC).<sup>15</sup>

The Domestic Violence Act 116 of 1998 makes it possible for a court to exclude a known or alleged perpetrator of domestic violence from a child's home or restrict other forms of access by him or her. The court may issue an >interim protection order= followed by a >protection order= against such a person, if satisfied that the child (or anyone else in the household) is at risk of domestic violence from him or her. The Act also provides for the setting of conditions to which contact with the child by an alleged perpetrator must be subject.<sup>16</sup> Domestic violence is very broadly defined in section 1 of this Act, and includes e.g. physical, sexual, emotional and verbal abuse as well as intimidation and >controlling or abusive behaviour=. A child may approach the court directly for a protection order without adult assistance, or a concerned adult may make such an approach on behalf of the child.<sup>17</sup>

In addition to the direct protective actions which are provided for by these Acts, other forms of statutory provision are in place which are designed to prevent children from becoming vulnerable to neglect and abuse, and/or to facilitate informal intervention in

---

<sup>12</sup> Sections 28 – 29.

<sup>13</sup> Sections 30 – 31.

<sup>14</sup> Section 19.

<sup>15</sup> See **IMC Minimum Standards B South African Child and Youth Care System** 1998, 5; also Department of Welfare **Project Go - Programme of Action** December, 1998. A central principle in making alternative care arrangements for children in terms of the Child Care Act, and of achieving permanency for them thereafter, is that of selecting the 'least restrictive and most empowering' option which is commensurate with each child's needs.

<sup>16</sup> Sections 7(1) and (6).

<sup>17</sup> Sections 4(3) and (4).

situations where children are seen to be vulnerable. Some measures are specifically intended to protect certain children from the worst extremes of poverty. The Maintenance Act 99 of 1998 provides machinery intended to ensure the financial support of children by those who have responsibility for them. The Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992 provides for limited state assistance to certain categories of children in impoverished families, in the form of the Care Dependency Grant for children with severe disabilities, and the Child Support Grant for children under seven years. The state Old Age Pension and the Disability Grant, while not primarily directed to children, are in fact used to assist with the support of large numbers of the country's poorest children.<sup>18</sup> Section 5 of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992 provides for the payment of grants to NGO=s by provincial welfare departments. These organisations between them carry out a range of supportive and preventive services.<sup>19</sup> The Act may undergo change in the future arising from the work of the Committee of Inquiry which was appointed by the Minister in March 2000 to conduct a comprehensive investigation with a view to presenting options for >an integrated and comprehensive social security system=.<sup>20</sup>

Some additional provisions which are intended or have the potential to prevent the abuse and neglect of children are as follows:

- The Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act 24 of 1987 enables a court to call on the Family Advocate's Office to assist in the reaching of decisions, where possible through mediation, regarding custody and access in contested divorces and also in disputes arising after divorce.<sup>21</sup>
- Section 10 of the Child Care Act 73 of 1984 provides that children under seven years who are living by informal arrangement in the care of persons who are not members of their immediate or extended families must be brought to the

---

<sup>18</sup> **Report of the Lund Committee on Child and Family Support**, Department of Welfare, 1996, 6-7.

<sup>19</sup> Formal protective services by NGO's are also subsidized in terms of this provision.

<sup>20</sup> See statement by Dr Zola Skweyiya, Minister for Social Development, on the appointment of a ministerial Committee of Inquiry into Social Security. The Minister for Social Development has mooted the idea of a Basic Income Grant for impoverished persons. Such a measure would hold vast potential for the strengthening of families, and the amelioration of conditions which place children at risk of neglect and abuse. It would also facilitate reunification in cases where children at present cannot be returned home from statutory care due to their families being destitute.

<sup>21</sup> The Family Advocate=s functions have since been expanded to include assistance to the High Court in disputes in matters where an unmarried father applies for custody, access or guardianship in terms of the Rights of Natural Fathers of Children Born Out of Wedlock Act 86 of 1997.

- attention of the commissioner of child welfare, and that his or her permission is required for such arrangements to continue. The intention here is, in part, to prevent trafficking of young children and undesirable adoptive placements.
- Section 30 of the same Act requires that >places of care= B i.e. formal and informal preschool, afternoon and holiday care facilities catering for more than six children - be registered with the Department of Social Development, and makes them subject to inspection and other controls. Shelters for children in especially difficult circumstances, which usually provide voluntary rather than court-ordered care for children on the streets, are also covered by section 30.
  - The Northern Province Initiation Schools Act 6 of 1996 requires those holding circumcision schools, for either male or female initiates, to obtain permits and adhere to whatever conditions may be specified. The Act also empowers the Premier to issue regulations governing the operations of such schools, and every SA Police Service member is authorised to rescue a person who has been abducted or forcefully taken to a school.<sup>22</sup>
  - The Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act 4 of 2000 prohibits unfair discrimination on the ground of gender. Section 8 designates *inter alia* the following as forms of such discrimination: >(a) gender-based violence; (b) female genital mutilation; Y. (d) any practice, including traditional, customary or religious practice, which impairs the dignity of women and undermines equality between women and men, including the dignity and well-being of the girl child; . . . (f) discrimination on the grounds of pregnancy=. The Act creates an >equality court= to which complaints of infringements must be directed, and details a large number of options open to this court if discrimination is deemed to have taken place. These include e.g. restraining orders; orders of compliance; orders of payment for loss, damages or suffering; and referral of matters to the Director of Public Prosecutions.<sup>23</sup> In terms of section 28 the State is obliged, *inter alia*, to audit laws, enact appropriate laws and develop action

---

<sup>22</sup> See also the Application of Health Standards in Traditional Circumcision Act, 2001 (Eastern Cape) which provides that there must be proof in the form of a birth certificate that the prospective initiate is at least 18 years old (Annexure A of the Schedule) and requires parental consent of a prospective initiate who is under 21 years of age or who has not acquired adulthood (section 7(1)).

<sup>23</sup> Sections 16 and 21.

plans with the aim of eliminating discrimination on the grounds of race, gender and disability.

There is extensive provision for the prosecution of perpetrators of child abuse via the criminal justice system. Many forms of child abuse amount to common law crimes, e.g. murder, assault, indecent assault, rape and incest. A range of statutes also prohibit specific abusive practices. In terms of section 50 of the Child Care Act, ill-treatment, or the permitting of ill-treatment, and abandonment of a child by a parent or guardian are criminal offences. Section 50A criminalises anyone involved in the commercial sexual exploitation of a child, including persons who own, occupy or manage property on which this takes place.

Certain other forms of sexual behaviour with children are crimes in terms of the Sexual Offences Act 23 of 1957. This Act also defines the legal age of consent to sex, i.e. 16 for heterosexual and 19 for homosexual acts.<sup>24</sup> The Film and Publications Act 65 of 1996 prohibits the production, possession and distribution of pornographic material involving children, and the exposure of children to pornographic material. Section 45 of the Liquor Act 27 of 1989 prevents the sale of alcohol to persons under eighteen years and obliges holders of licences to exclude children from certain areas where liquor is being sold. Section 4 of the Tobacco Products Control Act 83 of 1993, as recently amended, prevents the sale or supply of any tobacco product to a person aged less than 16 years.<sup>25</sup> Section 43(1) of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act prohibits the employment of children under the age of 15, subject to the possibility of regulated work in terms of a sectoral determination, which may be negotiated for purposes of allowing children to be employed in advertising, sports, artistic or cultural activities.<sup>26</sup> Section 53(2) prohibits the employment of children of any age in work which places their normal development at risk.

The Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977 sets out criminal justice processes to be

---

<sup>24</sup> This discriminatory situation is being addressed by the SA Law Commission Project Committee on Sexual Offences

<sup>25</sup> As of 1 October 2000 persons selling tobacco products to children under sixteen years will be liable to a fine of R10 000.

<sup>26</sup> Sectoral determinations for any other type of employment are excluded by section 55(6) of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act. However, this limitation will fall away if the controversial Basic Conditions of Employment Amendment Bill is passed in the form as gazetted on 27 July 2000.

conducted in cases of alleged abuse of children. The amended section 153 of the Act provides for various protective mechanisms to reduce trauma for child witnesses in criminal court proceedings. Children's court proceedings aimed at the protection of the child may be initiated independently of, or in tandem with, criminal justice processes.

Both the criminal law and the Child Care Act (in the case of offences by family members) allow for activities designed to promote the rehabilitation of offenders and abused children, although these are not clearly spelled out in either case, and there is a dearth of legal mechanisms to monitor treatment which is carried out in terms of a court order. Recent policy initiatives, including the Victim Empowerment Programme (VEP) within the National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS), and the National Strategy on Child Abuse and Neglect (NSCAN), have helped to promote inter-sectoral cooperation in bringing together criminal justice, medico-legal, educational, social service and corrective approaches in dealing with crimes against children.

## **9.5 Setting broad principles for child protection measures**

As pointed out in the discussion paper,<sup>27</sup> internationally most interventions provided for in protective legislation seem to fall into one or other of the following categories:

- Reinforcement of the protective potential within the family or neighbourhood
- Statutory protection of the child within the home
- Removal of the offender
- Placement of the child in substitute care, either through a court order or by voluntary agreement
- Combinations of criminal justice and protective measures.

Legislation should include adequate provision for the range of options likely to be needed and the options chosen would depend *inter alia* on the severity and context of the problem and the resources available. In this context, the Commission pointed out, for example, that if family support services can be intensively applied it may be possible to avoid more drastic interventions, even where a serious problem exists.<sup>28</sup> However, such services will offer no protection to the child if they are superficial or inconsistent.

---

<sup>27</sup> Par. 10.2.4.

<sup>28</sup> Par. 10.2.5.2.

Indeed, such interventions may be harmful in their own right and cause secondary abuse.

Given the scarcity of formal child protection resources in South Africa, it appears unwise to legislate for a system which depends excessively on authoritarian interventions by the state or its delegates into the lives of children and families. Considerable problems are associated with such approaches even in First World countries with well-developed child protection service infrastructure. In South Africa such a system would probably not be affordable and, given that resources for its implementation would be thinly spread, could generate high levels of secondary abuse. At the same time, the Commission recognises that well designed and implemented protective services have important preventive potential in breaking the cycle of abuse and neglect. They also minimise secondary abuse. South Africa has a very high rate of severe child abuse and neglect, and this has extremely damaging implications for the present and future well-being of the nation. In such a context, a strong and effective child protection services system is essential for the realisation of the constitutional right of every child to protection. The Children's Bill should be designed accordingly, without detracting from other essential forms of provision for children.

After highlighting the deficiencies in the present child protection system in the discussion paper,<sup>29</sup> the Commission proposed a system which included the following features:

- Properly resourced, coordinated and managed child protection services measures, focussed primarily on children who are at serious risk of immediate harm.
- Careful balancing of these measures with measures designed to support family life, promote child wellbeing and prevent neglect and abuse in the broader population of children, as provided for in Chapter 8 above.
- An expanded range of protective options, designed to improve and expand on those currently available and make them more flexible. Innovations include provision for:
  - time-limited, voluntary foster care placement agreements between parents / caregivers and structures providing foster care services;

---

<sup>29</sup>

Par. 10.2.11.

- hospitals to be authorised to retain children with injuries likely to have been caused by abuse for investigation, for a limited period of time, where early release could place them at risk;
  - orders by the children's court to remove an alleged or confirmed perpetrator from the child's home, or to restrict or prohibit that person's access to the child;
  - the court to have the option of ordering that family group conferences be arranged and of endorsing and monitoring decisions made in such conferences, subject to appropriate programmes being in place, and to specified conditions being observed to ensure that family solutions include proper protection of the child;
  - orders by the children's court for children with special needs who are found to be 'in need of care' to be placed in facilities registered by the Departments of Health and Education, where such facilities are the best available resources for the meeting of their needs;
  - measures specifically designed to address the protection needs of children 'in especially difficult circumstances' or 'in need of protection'. These would include, e.g. requirements for making protective processes accessible to children with disabilities;
- Codes of Good Practice, for inclusion in the Regulations, in which the child protection services responsibilities of personnel in the Departments of Safety and Security, Justice, Correctional Services, Education, Health and Social Development, and relevant NGOs are spelled out separately and jointly. These should be rights-based and linked to the Developmental Quality Assurance (DQA) process being pioneered by the Department of Social Development.
  - An inter-sectoral coordinating mechanism, housed in the (national) Department of Social Development, for the overall planning, development and implementation of child protective services, and for ongoing needs-assessment in this area.
  - Clarification as regards the structures and categories of social service personnel authorised to perform child protection functions in terms of the Act. This would be achieved in part through the revision of the present definitions of a 'prescribed welfare organisation' and an 'authorised officer'. The aims would be (i) to ensure improved coordination, planning and quality control in these services; and (ii) to preserve the impartiality of processes whereby protective investigations are carried out and recommendations are made to the court or other authorities. It is

envisaged that NGOs would be contracted on a planned basis by the Department of Social Services to assist with these functions, and that contracted NGOs would be required to meet criteria as set out in Regulations.

- An educative approach towards corporal punishment, implemented by the above-mentioned coordinating mechanism, and involving the social development, health and education sectors, using awareness campaigns and parenting skills training programmes. Formal protective interventions and the criminal justice system would continue to be used in cases where injuries to, or physical assaults on, children are concerned.
- Removal of the common law defence of 'reasonable chastisement' in any case involving a charge of assault against a child.
- Provision for protection against other harmful or potentially harmful cultural practices within both the child protection and criminal justice systems, by (a) prohibiting harmful or potentially harmful cultural practices; (b) regulating (male) circumcision schools; (c) prohibiting female genital mutilation; (d) expanding the grounds for refugee status to include the threat of female genital mutilation; and (e) and educative and criminal law approach to virginity testing. As far as the health aspects of virginity testing and male circumcision are concerned, the Commission recommends that the (provincial) Health Departments prepare the necessary legislative enactments.
- A requirement for each province to make an annual estimate of the number of children who will require state-funded child protective and associated services, from the social development, justice, education, health, policing, and correctional services sectors, and to budget for these accordingly.

#### **9.5.1 Comments received**

**Ms R Lombard** expressed her concern over the removal of children by untrained officials who fail to make a proper assessment before removing a child. She submitted that an uninformed decision to remove a child often results in trauma for the child and his or her family. She recommended that the new child care legislation should include provisions in terms of which action can be taken against Departmental officials and other professionals who abuse their powers and behave in an unethical way resulting in harm to children and their families.

The **Department of Health, Pretoria**, submitted that traditional circumcision schools



must be regulated with special emphasis on hygienic practices, water supply, food preparation, availability of sanitation facilities and general safety measures.

**Ms Sally Rowney** said that although it is important to address issues such as virginity testing, female genital mutilation and unhygienic or traumatic circumcision practices, it is also essential to deal with these issues in a culturally sensitive, yet responsive and an educative manner, to ensure that silence and secrecy do not continue to enshroud these issues.

In the discussion paper it is suggested that facilities in which children with special needs are placed should be registered by the Departments of Health *and* Education. In its submission, the **Department of Education** points out the difficulties such a dual registration approach would entail and suggests that the word 'and' be substituted for 'or'.

With reference to an earlier version of section 172 of the Bill (Other children in need of care and protection) the **Department of Correctional Services** submitted that the Commissioner for Correctional Services should also have the authority to bring the matter of children in prison to the child and family court registrar for referral to the child and family court. This would give children in prison the opportunity to be transferred from prison, as a most restrictive and least empowering facility, to a less restrictive and more empowering facility under the management of the Department of Social Development.

The response to the Commission's preliminary position on corporal punishment in the home is dealt with separately immediately below.<sup>30</sup>

### 9.5.2 Evaluation and recommendations

It is an unfortunate reality that the formal child protection system will not be properly resourced, coordinated or managed in the short term. Indeed, in the absence of substantial additional funding, the existing system is bound to fail more and more children in need of care and protection. Given this reality, the Commission recommends

---

<sup>30</sup>

See 9.7 below.

that the national policy framework<sup>31</sup> must include a comprehensive national strategy aimed at securing a properly resourced, coordinated and managed child protection system.<sup>32</sup> The national strategy must include inter-sectoral mechanisms for the planning, development and implementation of designated child protection services focused primarily on children who are at risk of immediate harm; strategies for expanding the range of child protection mechanisms; criteria for the selection and designation of child protection organizations to assist in the provision of designated child protection services; measures to implement quality control over designated child protection services provided by organs of state and designated child protection organizations; mechanisms to ensure impartiality in the provision of designated child protection services, including in performing investigations and assessments and in making recommendations; and measures to ensure that budgetary requirements and procedures are complied with to secure adequate funds for the provision of designated child protection services.<sup>33</sup>

This recommendation (to prepare a national strategy as part of the national policy framework) also accommodates some of the other preliminary recommendations made in this regard by the Commission in the discussion paper. Such national strategy therefore would provide for an inter-sectoral coordinating mechanism, clarification as to roles and functions of the various actors offering child protection services; and proper budgeting based on reliable data.

As for providing an expanded range of protective options as described in the discussion paper, the Commission recommends that:

- Time-limited, voluntary placement agreements between parents / care-givers and structures providing such services be provided for;<sup>34</sup>
- Hospitals be authorised to retain children with injuries likely to have been caused by abuse for investigation, for a limited period of time, where early release could place them at risk;<sup>35</sup>

---

<sup>31</sup> Referred to in section 5 of the Bill.

<sup>32</sup> Section 113(1) of the Bill.

<sup>33</sup> Ibid.

<sup>34</sup> Termed 'voluntary temporary safe care' in the Bill. See section 171 of the Bill.

<sup>35</sup> Section 59(1)(g)(v) of the Bill.

- The child and family court may order the removal of an alleged or confirmed perpetrator from the child's home, or to restrict or prohibit that person's access to the child;<sup>36</sup>
- The child and family court may order for a family group conference to be arranged and that decisions made in such conferences be made orders of court and be monitored, subject to appropriate programmes being in place, and to specified conditions being observed to ensure that family solutions include proper protection of the child;<sup>37</sup>
- The child and family court may order that children with special needs who are found to be 'in need of care' be placed in facilities registered by the Departments of Health and Education, where such facilities are the best available resources for the meeting their needs;<sup>38</sup>
- Measures specifically designed to address the protection needs of children 'in especially difficult circumstances' be adopted.<sup>39</sup> These would include, e.g. requirements for making protective processes accessible to children with disabilities;

It will be recalled that the Commission has made recommendations on the 'child in need of care'-criteria, removals and the reporting obligation in Chapter 5 above. These recommendations form crucial components of the child protection system and are summarised here for the benefit of the reader.

The Commission did not receive input to indicate that the current 'child in need of care'-criterion is causing problems in practice. Indeed, the general feeling seems to be that section 14(4) of the Child Care Act, 1983 is working well and that its principles should be retained. The Commission therefore recommends the inclusion in the Children's Bill of a broad provision defining a child in need of care and protection.<sup>40</sup> Provision is made for any court to refer to the child and family court the question of whether a child is need of care and protection.<sup>41</sup> A novel introduction in this regard is the requirement that where

---

<sup>36</sup> Section 59(1)(g)(ix) of the Bill.

<sup>37</sup> Section 59(1)(g)(iii) of the Bill.

<sup>38</sup> Section 175(1)(h) of the Bill.

<sup>39</sup> See Chapter 16 of the Bill.

<sup>40</sup> Section 166 of the Bill.

<sup>41</sup> Section 168 of the Bill.

allegations of child abuse and neglect are made in divorce matters and proceedings in terms of the Domestic Violence Act 116 of 1998, such (divorce or domestic violence) court may stand down the divorce or protection order application pending the child and family court's enquiry into the alleged child abuse.<sup>42</sup> Provision is further made for a child and family court to investigate the question of whether a child is in need of care and protection on the basis of evidence presented to the court by a designated social worker.<sup>43</sup> This position is currently regulated by section 11 of the Child Care Act, 1983.

Section 12 of the Child Care Act, 1983 is also restated in the Children's Bill.<sup>44</sup> This provision allows for the placement of a child in temporary safe care without a warrant in certain limited circumstances. Only police officers, designated social workers or an authorised officer may use this emergency power and abuse of this process would constitute misconduct.<sup>45</sup> The Commission further recommends that where there is a reasonable suspicion that the siblings of a child placed in temporary safe care might also be in need of care and protection, such siblings may be brought before the child and family court by a referral process.<sup>46</sup>

The Commission prescribes the court process to be followed when a decision is to be made whether a child is in need of care and protection.<sup>47</sup> Where the child and family court finds a child in need of care and protection, the court may make any one of a number of possible orders.<sup>48</sup> These orders include orders confirming control over a child, returning a child to the control of the person under whose control such child was before the placement in temporary safe care, placement of the child in partial care or alternative care, payment of the emergency court grant, treatment orders, and interdicts aimed at preventing the continuation of abuse of a child.<sup>49</sup> The Commission further recommends that before a court makes an order involving the removal of the child from the care of the care-giver of that child, it must consider a social worker's report which report must include an assessment of the needs of the child, details of family

---

<sup>42</sup> Section 168(2) of the Bill.

<sup>43</sup> Section 169(1) of the Bill.

<sup>44</sup> Section 170.

<sup>45</sup> Section 170(3) of the Bill.

<sup>46</sup> Section 172.

<sup>47</sup> Section 174.

<sup>48</sup> Section 175.

<sup>49</sup> Section 175(1) of the Bill.

preservation attempts made or attempted, and a documented plan aimed at achieving stability in the child's life. The court must in the light of this report find the best way of securing stability in the child's life.<sup>50</sup>

While the Children's Bill does recognise that children may be placed by the court in child and youth care centres, such placement is to be considered only if no other option is appropriate.<sup>51</sup> This is to give effect to the IMC strategy to prevent the transfer of children deeper into the system.<sup>52</sup>

## **9.6 Harmful cultural practices**

The Commission paid specific attention to harmful or potentially harmful cultural practices relating to children in the discussion paper.<sup>53</sup> In this regard it was recommended that harmful or potentially harmful cultural practices be prohibited, that male circumcision be regulated, that female genital mutilation be prohibited, that an educative and criminal law approach to virginity testing be adopted, and expansion of the grounds for refugee status to include the threat of female genital mutilation. The Commission also recommended the inclusion of a prohibition on child betrothals and suggested that a standard minimum age for marriage be set.

The Commission received no submissions on these preliminary proposals.

The Commission therefore confirms its preliminary position and recommends the inclusion in the Children's Bill of provisions to this effect.<sup>54</sup>

## **9.7 Corporal punishment (physical punishment of children by their parents or caregivers)**

In the discussion paper, the Commission adopted a dual approach in respect of corporal

---

<sup>50</sup> Section 176(1) of the Bill.

<sup>51</sup> Section 177(1) of the Bill.

<sup>52</sup> See further Chapter 18 on residential care below.

<sup>53</sup> See Par. 10.2.11 and Chapter 21 of the discussion paper.

<sup>54</sup> Section 19 of the Bill for instance provides that every (male) child has the right to refuse to be circumcised; that every (female) child has the right to refuse to be subjected to a virginity test as part of a cultural practice.

punishment in the home. On the one hand, the Commission recommended the adoption of an educative and awareness-raising approach in respect of corporal punishment. The aim of such an approach would be to educate parents and care-givers about the harmful effects of corporal punishment and to empower such parents or care-givers to use successfully alternative forms of discipline in the home. To support this educative approach, the Commission also adopts a criminal law approach which will in effect facilitate the possibility of prosecuting parents in the criminal courts on charges of assault or assault with the intent to cause grievous bodily harm for inflicting corporal punishment upon a child. To facilitate the criminal prosecution, the Commission recommended the repeal of the common-law defence that a parent may raise that the physical punishment was justified on the grounds of the rights of parents to impose reasonable chastisement upon their children.

The Commission therefore proposed that upon any criminal charge of assault or related offences (such as assault with intent to do grievous bodily harm), it shall not be a defence that the accused was a parent, or person designated by a parent to guide the child's behaviour, who was exercising a right to impose reasonable chastisement upon his or her child. This is not to say that parents who impose corporal punishment on their children will in all cases end up facing criminal prosecution, as prosecutors do have a discretion whether to prosecute or not. However, where such prosecutions are instituted, parents would not be able to escape conviction on the basis of the common law defence available to parents.

### **9.7.1 Comments received**

The Commission's preliminary recommendations on the right of parents to inflict corporal punishment in the home were debated extensively in the media, at workshops, and by the respondents. The opinions covered the whole range: On the one end, the Commission was criticised for not being brave enough to ban with criminal sanction any form of physical discipline of a child by his or her parent, while on the other end it was argued that the Commission's recommendation would limit God-given and constitutional rights of parents to raise their children. The fervour of the debate matched that associated with the morality of the death penalty and in this investigation was on par with the debates surrounding the Commission's recommendations on providing condoms for children. It again highlights the difficulties law-makers face when an attempt is made to regulate issues of morality in the private law sphere.

The following are selected comments received from some of the respondents:

**Doctors For Life** submitted that appropriate disciplinary physical punishment must be distinguished from abusive and harmful forms of corporal punishment. The respondent argued that appropriate disciplinary physical punishment can play an important role in optimal child development, and has been found in prospective studies to be a part of the parenting style associated with the best outcomes.

**Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** stated that the common law position regarding corporal punishment by parents should be left unaltered, but greater emphasis should be placed on the reporting and investigating of injuries to children.

**The Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** (Community Law Centre, UWC) agreed that the defence of reasonable chastisement be removed. However, the respondents submitted that the new child care legislation should specifically stipulate that corporal punishment in the home is prohibited. Furthermore, it was said that there is no danger that a statement in the new child care legislation prohibiting corporal punishment will lead to a duplication of offences. The respondent suggested that the prohibition be inserted in the new child care legislation which should provide that if there is any contravention of the prohibition, the offender be prosecuted in terms of the common law crime of assault or related offences.

**Ms Carol Bower** of RAPCAN<sup>55</sup> is of the opinion that the Commission did not go far enough in the discussion paper and argued for outright ban of corporal punishment by parents of their children. She said that the arguments for the use of corporal punishment against children have no foundation and that the imposition of corporal punishment by parents is counter-productive and engenders behaviours which are inappropriate and dangerous. Ms Bower further argued that corporal punishment is a human and child rights violation and advanced the notion that a revolution in parenting, which should include a total ban on corporal punishment, would assist in creating a society more at harmony with itself, and more appropriate for the 21<sup>st</sup> century.

The **Department of Education** argues that the Commission's recommendation to remove the common law defence of reasonable chastisement implies that reasonable

---

<sup>55</sup>

Resources Aimed at the Prevention of Child Abuse and Neglect.

chastisement is prohibited. The question is then posed how the law can prohibit what is reasonable. The Department concludes by saying that abuse of children must be distinguished from what is reasonable chastisement.

**A national workshop on corporal punishment** hosted by the South African Human Rights Commission and Wits EPU was held on 20 - 21 February 2002. One of the principal objects of this workshop was to consider the implications of the Commission's proposals in respect of corporal punishment. Delegates at this workshop were unanimous that the new child care legislation should ban outright all forms of corporal punishment of children in all contexts. However, there should not be a separate criminal provision for the elimination of physical punishment. If criminal sanctions are required, this should be instituted in terms of the common law, i.e. assault, assault with the intention to do grievous bodily harm etc. Furthermore, the Department of Education should be tasked with the inclusion of parenting courses in their life skills programmes - senior primary as well as high schools should be targeted.

Some of the speakers at the workshop argued that the Commission's proposal to simply remove the common law defence, while it may technically remove the inequality of protection suffered by children, may not send out a very clear message. It was therefore argued that is necessary, in addition to removing any existing defences like reasonable chastisement, to explicitly prohibit corporal punishment in the home in the new child care legislation.<sup>56</sup>

### 9.7.2 Evaluation and recommendation

Parental use of corporal punishment is one of the most controversial and emotionally charged topics in the parent-child relationship.<sup>57</sup> No other child-rearing topic has elicited as much attention or heated debate as whether parents should engage in the practice. Conflict on the topic is pervasive at multiple levels: Paediatricians hold divergent attitudes, husbands and wives disagree over its use, communities dispute it, global

<sup>56</sup> Ms Mali Nilsson, Programme Officer on Corporal Punishment, Save the Children (Sweden); Ms Carol Bower, RAPCAN.

<sup>57</sup> Gugu Nkosi "Corporal punishment at schools in perspective" (2002) Vol XXXXII (2) **Codicillus** 28; **Final Report of the Goldstone Commission of inquiry regarding the prevention of public violence and intimidation** 27 October 1994.



initiatives have been launched to end all corporal punishment of children,<sup>58</sup> and even countries debate whether to outlaw the practice.<sup>59</sup>

Research has also found it difficult to find causal links between corporal punishment and child outcomes. In one such recent study, Gershoff found that, except for an association with immediate compliance to parental demands, corporal punishment is associated with negative or undesirable behaviours (e.g. aggression, lower levels of moral internalisation and mental health).<sup>60</sup> She argues that just because some other disciplining techniques are worse than corporal punishment, that does not make corporal punishment any better. She concludes by saying that until positive effects are linked with corporal punishment, it should not be routinely recommended as a method for controlling children.

In 1979, Sweden became the first country to ban all corporal punishment of children, including that by parents. The Swedish ban has been particularly effective in changing attitudes about corporal punishment – such that 15 years after the ban only 11% of the public supported the use of corporal punishment – and in orienting social service intervention towards support and prevention.<sup>61</sup> Prosecution of parents for assault and abuse against children has remained steady in the years since the ban, belying fears that the ban would lead to a rash of parents being prosecuted.<sup>62</sup> In addition, contrary to fears that a ban on corporal punishment would lead to increases in youth violence and criminal behaviour, rates of youth involvement in crime, alcohol and drug use, rape, and

---

<sup>58</sup> See e.g. [www.endcorporalpunishment.org](http://www.endcorporalpunishment.org)

<sup>59</sup> For a broad overview of the debates surrounding corporal punishment in the home, see Save the Children, Sweden **Ending corporal punishment of children – Making it happen** (2001).

<sup>60</sup> Gershoff ET 'Corporal punishment by parents and associated child behaviors and experiences: A meta-analytical and theoretical review' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 539 – 579, 'Corporal punishment, physical abuse, and the burden of proof: Reply to Baumrind, Larzelere, and Cowan (2002), Holden (2002), and Parke (2002)' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 602 – 611. See also Parke R D 'Punishment revisited – Science, values, and the right question: Comment on Gershoff (2002)' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 596 – 601; Holden G W 'Perspectives on the effects of corporal punishment: Comment on Gershoff (2002)' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 590 – 595; Baumrind D, R E Larzelere and P A Cowan 'Ordinary physical punishment: Is it harmful? Comment on Gershoff (2002)' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 580 – 589.

<sup>61</sup> Ministry of Health and Social Affairs, Sweden **Ending corporal punishment: Swedish experience of efforts to prevent all forms of violence against children – and the results** (2001); \_rjan Bartholdson **Corporal punishment of children and change of attitudes – a cross cultural study** (2001); Durrant J E 'Evaluating the success of Sweden's corporal punishment ban' (1999) 23 **Child Abuse and Neglect** 435 – 448.

<sup>62</sup> Ibid.

suicide decreased in the period after the ban compared with the period before the ban.<sup>63</sup>

In addition to Sweden, ten countries have banned the use of corporal punishment by parents: Austria, Croatia, Cyprus, Denmark, Finland, Germany, Israel, Italy, Latvia, and Norway.<sup>64</sup> However, in each case the wording of the laws or court rulings indicates that the intent of the lawmakers was to change public attitudes about corporal punishment more than to prosecute parents for using corporal punishment.<sup>65</sup> It is further important to note that both Sweden and Finland accompanied their rulings with extensive national campaigns educating adults and children about discipline techniques that are more effective than and preferable to corporal punishment.<sup>66</sup> Prohibitions of parental corporal punishment are also being considered by other countries, including Belgium, Canada,<sup>67</sup> New Zealand, and the United Kingdom.<sup>68</sup>

The Commission believes its dual approach regarding corporal punishment in the home is a pragmatic and balanced one. A complete ban on corporal punishment in the home without equipping parents with alternatives to corporal punishment<sup>69</sup> and a fundamental shift in public opinion supporting such a shift would be meaningless. However, given the high levels of violence in society, it would be reckless not to address parental violence in the home. Rather than to advocate for an outright ban, the Commission recommends, as it did in the discussion paper, that the common law defence of reasonable chastisement available to a parent facing a charge of assault or assault with the intention

<sup>63</sup> Durrant J E 'Trends in youth crime and well-being since the abolition of corporal punishment in Sweden' (1999) 31 **Youth and Society** 437 – 455.

<sup>64</sup> Bitensky SH 'Spare the rod, embrace our humanity: Toward a new legal regime prohibiting corporal punishment of children' (1998) 31 **University of Michigan Journal of Law Reform** 353 – 474; EPOCH-USA 'Legal reforms: Corporal punishment of children in the family' (2000) Internet <http://www.stophitting.com/legalreform.php>.

<sup>65</sup> Bitensky (1998) 31 **University of Michigan Journal of Law Reform** 378.

<sup>66</sup> Ibid.

<sup>67</sup> See, however, the decision of the Ontario Court of Appeal in **Canadian Foundation for Children, Youth and the Law and the Attorney General v The Canadian Teachers' Federation, the Coalition for Family Autonomy and the Ontario Association of Children's Aid Societies**, case no C34794/2002 on reasonable chastisement by persons *in loco parentis*.

<sup>68</sup> Gershoff E T 'Corporal punishment by parents and associated child behaviors and experiences: A meta-analytical and theoretical review' (2002) 128(4) **Psychological Bulletin** 539 -579 at 564.

<sup>69</sup> The publication by Kimberley Porteus, Salim Vally and Tamar Ruth **Alternatives to corporal punishment – Growing discipline and respect in our classrooms**, Wits Education Policy Unit (2001) is an useful indication of what would need to be done; **Final Report of the Goldstone Commission of inquiry regarding the prevention of public violence and intimidation** 27 October 1994.

to cause grievous bodily harm be revoked and that an educational and awareness programme be developed to equip parents with alternative forms of discipline.<sup>70</sup>

## 9.8 Assessment and treatment / therapeutic services

A proper understanding of the needs and situation of each child entering protective services and his or her family is clearly essential as a basis for appropriate planning and action. Practitioners emphasise the need for skilled interdisciplinary assessments which are undertaken on a planned and fully co-ordinated basis.<sup>71</sup> Assessment is needed at the point of referral, to decide whether protective intervention is necessary and, if so, in what form. Thereafter, if a child is to be placed in care or under official supervision, assessment should guide the choice of care arrangement and the plan for subsequent services, including any form of treatment<sup>72</sup> which may be required.

A crucial dimension of assessment in cases of alleged child abuse is risk analysis. A process of weighing up the risks of various forms of intervention, and also of refraining from intervening, has to be undertaken for every child referred for protective services.<sup>73</sup> Protective intervention and the processes which follow are in themselves potentially hazardous for children, given the possibilities for secondary abuse.<sup>74</sup> Where a report is considered sufficiently serious to warrant a social work investigation, it is necessary in the first place to establish whether any risk to the child can be dealt with by the use of enabling or empowering approaches.<sup>75</sup> Such approaches, calling for voluntary involvement of the family in secondary preventive strategies, will be the first choice unless they are inadequate to prevent harm to the child.

---

<sup>70</sup> Section 142 of the Bill.

<sup>71</sup> NCCAN **National Strategy on Child Abuse and Neglect**, 1996, p. 34.

<sup>72</sup> The term 'treatment' may be problematic in some quarters at present due to moves away from the 'medical model' by many in the social work and child and youth care fields. However the term continues to be used to cover many therapeutic activities designed to promote emotional and social health and development and to overcome past problems.

<sup>73</sup> Cooper, DM and Ball, D **Social Work and Child Abuse** London: BASW 1987; see also NCCAN **National Strategy on Child Abuse and Neglect**, 1996, 25-6.

<sup>74</sup> See Par. 10.2.5.3 of the discussion paper.

<sup>75</sup> These may include counselling, drawing in support from the extended family or neighbourhood, education in child development and parenting skills, linking of the family with available resources or with a development programme, etc. Regulation 2(4)(b) to the Child Care Act as amended in 1996 requires that >a summary of prevention and early intervention services rendered in respect of the child and his or her family ...= be supplied to the court in the social worker's report for every children's court enquiry.

Section 14 of the Child Care Act, 1983, which provide for psychological assessments of the child during children's court inquiries, and its deficiencies have been highlighted in the discussion paper.<sup>76</sup>

The Commission has sought an approach to assessment, ongoing services and therapeutic support which is realistic in terms of the limitations on resources for these purposes in South Africa; provides adequately for a decision-making process which is based on sound information; ensures that services which are essential for positive outcomes will be carried out; and is sufficiently flexible to allow for different conditions and resourcing priorities in different parts of the country, while also being equitable. In this regard, the Commission has made recommendations in the discussion paper for the inclusion of provisions dealing with:

- the right of child protection services practitioners in various disciplines to undertake routine investigations in response to allegations of abuse and neglect, before a case comes to court;
- court orders for additional investigations and assessments where these are indicated, if necessary, at state cost;
- appropriate provision for consent to examination and assessment by the child concerned;
- a mechanism to ensure the impartiality of the assessment process, whether this is undertaken by a state facility or a professional in private practice;
- a Code of Good Practice to guide assessments of children referred for protective services, based on the IMC guidelines with the addition of specific considerations where protective investigations are involved;
- a broad risk assessment framework, adaptable to different local conditions, to guide decision-making;
- provision for Family Group Conferencing outcomes to be incorporated into court orders, where the necessary programmes exist and where outcomes comply with requirements to ensure the safety of the child;
- court orders which incorporate necessary and available services, which may be practical, supportive, educative and/or therapeutic.

No submissions were received on these issues and the Commission confirms its

---

<sup>76</sup> See Par. 10.3.3.

preliminary position.<sup>77</sup>

## 9.9 Permanency planning

The basis for permanency planning is the premise that every child, in order to enjoy healthy growth and development, needs secure and meaningful relationships with parents and other significant persons. This in turn requires continuity and stability in these relationships. The parental home is the natural and generally the best environment for a child to experience this. The first premise in a permanency planning approach is to avoid removal from the family where possible, through timely preventive services.

Provision for permanency planning was not initially spelled out in the Child Care Act 74 of 1983 but has always been implicit. Where a child is placed either in his or her own home under supervision, or in any form of substitute care, in terms of section 15 of the Act, the relevant order is valid for a maximum of two years. Thereafter it will lapse, thereby effectively restoring the child to the normal custody of the parent(s), unless the Minister for Social Development extends its validity for a further period not exceeding two years, or parental responsibilities are terminated through adoption. In practice, however, many children in South Africa remain in substitute care arrangements for many years.

In the discussion paper,<sup>78</sup> the Commission has opted for an approach to permanency planning which includes the following elements:

- A requirement that in every case where there is application to a court for removal of a child from the home, details are given of what possibilities for family preservation have been considered or attempted and why these are being excluded - with the proviso that the child's safety and well-being will take first priority.
- A requirement that in every case where a child is placed in alternative care, the court will be supplied with a documented plan aimed at achieving stability for the child, with priority given to family reunification unless there are compelling

---

<sup>77</sup> See e.g. Part 2 of Chapter 11 of the Bill in this regard.

<sup>78</sup> Par. 10.4.8.

- reasons to the contrary. Reunification may involve permanent placement within the extended family circle. The plan must include time frames for reunification which are appropriate to the developmental stage of the child, as well as regular reviews.
- Waiving of the requirement for efforts towards reunification with any parent or caregiver who has subjected the child to assaults which have been life-threatening or liable to cause lasting bodily harm, or has subjected a sibling of the child to such assaults, or has caused the death of a sibling.
  - Provision for very young children who have, on balance of probabilities, been intentionally abandoned, to be released for adoption with the minimum possible delay.
  - Provision, in cases of apparent abandonment, for clear procedures to enable a finding to be made within the shortest possible time as to whether or not a child has been abandoned.
  - Provision for children to be freed for adoption without the consent of the parents, where this can be considered to be in their best interests on the basis of a clearly specified set of principles. More specifically, it is recommended that the department or organisation managing the child's case be empowered to make an application to the children's court for the termination of all or certain parental rights and responsibilities over a child who at the time of placement
    - was aged seven years or more, and has been in foster or residential care for at least two years;
    - was aged three to six years, and has been in foster or residential care for at least a year; or
    - was aged less than three years, and has been in foster or residential care for at least six months.
  - It is further recommended that the children's court should be in a position to terminate all parental rights and responsibilities only if -
    - there are clear indications that the termination of parental rights and responsibilities would be in the best interests of the child;
    - reasonable efforts have been made to reunify the child with his or her family and these have not succeeded, or the parents have refused to involve themselves in such efforts or have been untraceable, and there is

a poor prognosis for the child's return to parental care within a time frame suited to his or her developmental needs; and

- o there is a high probability that adoption or another form of permanent family care can be arranged.
- When making an order for the termination of parental responsibilities and rights in a situation where adoption is not envisaged, the court may make an order assigning increased or full parental responsibilities and rights to the current caregiver.
- Limited and circumscribed provision for termination of parental responsibility in cases where adopters have not yet been recruited, where family reunification is clearly not an option but where an end to parental involvement is necessary to facilitate the recruitment of, or the child's placement in, a permanent substitute family. When making an order for the termination of parental rights and responsibilities for purposes of facilitating adoption, the court may request the department or organisation which has made the application for such order to re-appear before the court, within a period prescribed by the court, with a report on whether the child has been adopted or not. At such hearing, if the court finds that the adoption of the child is not likely, it may revoke the termination order and restore parental rights and responsibilities, provided that this is in the best interests of the child.
- Provision for permanent forms of foster or kinship care should the recommendations by various constituencies for a (universal) child grant accessible to all children not be accepted.
- Provision for successful long-term foster placements to be converted to subsidised adoption arrangements where appropriate.
- Continued support for children and caregivers after reunification or transfer to a new permanent placement, until successful reintegration has been achieved.
- Continued support, over a bridging period, to children who turn eighteen while in care.

### 9.9.1 Comments received

**Africa Christian Action**, and the **Dutch Reformed Church, Pretoria**, endorsed the Commission's recommendations with regard to permanency planning for children.

**Mr Rothman** submitted that the approach to permanency planning was radically improved upon in the 1998 regulations. Furthermore, most of the Commission's recommendations in respect of permanency planning are already contained in these regulations. Mr Rothman suggested that the current Child Care Act and the regulations be "fine-tooth combed" in order to determine perceived omissions.

### 9.9.2 Evaluation and recommendations

Mr Rothman is of course right when he said that the approach to permanency planning improved dramatically when the regulations to the Child Care Act, 1983 were amended in 1998. However, the Commission believes the inclusion of substantive provisions on permanency planning in the Children's Bill will improve the position even more. The Commission therefore recommends the adoption of a provision requiring court orders to be aimed at securing stability in the child's life.<sup>79</sup> This provision requires the court to consider a social worker's report which, based on an assessment of the needs of the child, must include details of family preservation considered or attempted and contain a documented plan aimed at achieving stability in the child's life. In considering the best way of securing stability in the child's life, the court may waive the requirement for efforts to be made to reunify the child with parents who have seriously assaulted the child by terminating the parental rights and responsibilities of those parents.<sup>80</sup> In the case of abandoned infants, the court may release such infant for adoption with the minimum possible delay if that is considered the best way of securing stability in the child's life.<sup>81</sup>

In line with the position adopted in the discussion paper, the Commission further recommends that the Department for Social Development or a designated child protection organisation may apply to the court for an order suspending for a period, or terminating any or all of the parental rights and responsibilities which a specific person

---

<sup>79</sup> Section 176 of the Bill.

<sup>80</sup> Section 261(1)(c) of the Bill.

<sup>81</sup> Section 176(2) read with section 261(1)(b) of the Bill.



has in respect of a child.<sup>82</sup> In order to facilitate stability in the life of the child, time spend in alternative care and the age of the child are used as criteria: the younger the child, the less time spend in alternative care is required for parental consent to be dispensed with.<sup>83</sup> As was suggested in the discussion paper, provision is made for permanent forms of foster or kinship care,<sup>84</sup> but not for the conversion of long-term foster care to subsidised adoptions. As far as the latter is concerned, those foster parents who wish to adopt the child in their foster care will have to follow the usual adoption process.<sup>85</sup> Should the adoption subsidy be equal to the foster care grant, foster parents will have no financial incentive to foster children long-term, given the need for renewals, follow-up reports, etc.

The Commission provides for limited continued support, over a bridging period, to persons who turn 18 years while in alternative care to enable them to complete their schooling or training.<sup>86</sup> Provision is further made for a person placed as a child in alternative care to remain in that care until the end of the year in which that person reaches the age of 21 years of age if the care-giver is willing and able to care for that person.<sup>87</sup>

## **9.10 Reporting and registration of reported cases**

Mandatory reporting of child abuse, sometimes associated with provision for an associated register of abused children and/or of offenders, is legislated for in many countries for purposes which include ensuring help for abused children, monitoring the safety and progress of such children, and gathering data for planning of prevention programmes and intervention services. These approaches initially gained currency in the 1970's and are well established in a number of first world countries. However they have become increasingly controversial. The relevant debates are covered in the Discussion Paper.<sup>88</sup>

---

<sup>82</sup> Section 141(1) read with section 39(1) of the Bill.

<sup>83</sup> Section 141(2) of the Bill.

<sup>84</sup> Section 198 of the Bill.

<sup>85</sup> See also section 141 on applications to terminate parental rights and responsibilities.

<sup>86</sup> Section 196(1) of the Bill.

<sup>87</sup> Section 196(2) of the Bill. See also the discussion on lowering the age of majority in Chapter 4 above.

<sup>88</sup> Par. 10.5.

A particular danger which has become apparent is that of entrenching an imbalance in the overall system of provision for children by artificially loading it towards reporting and investigation.<sup>89</sup> In North America and Britain there have been complaints that limited child protection resources have become disproportionately swallowed up in reporting and associated investigative processes, at the expense of preventive and promotive services and also of longer-term care and treatment for abused children. In addition there has been widespread concern over the excessive numbers of unsubstantiated cases generated by mandatory reporting laws – estimated at two-thirds of all reports investigated in 1993 in the United States.<sup>90</sup> Investigations of such cases create massive costs, at the expense of other essential tasks, and substantial harm can be caused to the families investigated, including job loss and social stigma.<sup>91</sup> It has also been noted that there has been a swing away from the initial emphasis of reporting systems on bringing help to vulnerable children and families, to a focus on criminal justice processes which may not always promote the wellbeing of the children concerned. Compulsion to report is, in addition, in tension with the confidentiality ethics of a number of professions, some of whose members hold that such compulsion can undermine the interests of children. There have been calls for professionals to be allowed to use some discretion, at least in cases where they are themselves in a position to deliver the necessary services to prevent further abuse. Furthermore, compliance with mandatory reporting laws has been found to be far from consistent; for example, in the USA the race, socio-economic status, age and gender of the child and other extraneous factors have been found to influence the likelihood that abuse of that child will be reported.<sup>92</sup>

An extensive survey by the Australian Law Reform Commission (ALRC) and the Human Rights and Equal Opportunity Commission into Children and the Legal Process reported both strong support for and serious concerns regarding mandatory reporting. Critics point out that abusers are less likely to seek help if professional persons are required to report them, and that children themselves may be more reluctant to seek help in such a context (e.g. if the perpetrator is a family member). Mandatory reporting may also deny

---

<sup>89</sup> Hutchison January 1993, **Social Work**, 38(1), 57.

<sup>90</sup> Lynch M, 2000: Keynote address, ISPCAN Congress, Durban.

<sup>91</sup> Deisz et al 1996 20(4) **Child Abuse and Neglect** 276; Pollak and Levy 1998 13 **Child Abuse and Neglect** 515-22.

<sup>92</sup> See for example Warner J and Hansen D 'The identification and reporting of physical abuse by physicians: a review and implications for research' 1994(18) **Child Abuse and Neglect** 11-25;

children and families the opportunity of finding other ways to deal with the abuse. A central concern in the Australian report is that mandatory reporting is often instituted without adequate resources for its proper implementation and may siphon off resources needed for prevention and treatment. Child Protection services in Victoria, for instance, found themselves less able to effectively protect children after the introduction of mandatory reporting than before. The Australian Capital Territory's Law Reform Committee recommended against the immediate introduction of mandatory reporting stating that "it would be grossly irresponsible to introduce a system of mandatory reporting without at the same time ensuring that the whole child welfare system can cope with the new measures".<sup>93</sup> The ALRC recommended a phased approach, based initially on voluntary reporting encouraged by targeted education. New Zealand, after intensive deliberation and study of the impacts of mandatory reporting systems elsewhere in the world, has decided against such a system, and instead provides for public education and voluntary reporting protocols.<sup>94</sup>

In South Africa, while there is strong support for mandatory reporting and registration, concerns have been raised that these approaches have been imported from contexts in which the basic survival needs of children are met and where highly developed service infrastructure is in place. Superimposing such approaches where vastly different social conditions apply and without proper backup provision can set children up for secondary abuse. The point is made that mandatory reporting is only useful to the extent that it gives rise to effective services, both immediate and ongoing, to the children concerned, and/or provides data for planning and policy development. It is noted that in South Africa the range of persons required to report has been steadily increased, but there has been no simultaneous attention to the needs of the under-resourced system which is expected to respond to the reports in question.<sup>95</sup>

South Africa has followed the pattern set by the USA since the 1960's by making the reporting of child abuse compulsory, with failure to do so being a criminal offence for those to whom the obligation applies. In terms of section 42(1) of the Child Care Act of 1983 as amended, reporting of suspected ill-treatment of children is mandatory for

---

<sup>93</sup> ALRC 84, 1997:435, 82, 84.

<sup>94</sup> Dept of Social Welfare 1996: "Strategic Directions" (post-election briefing paper), Wellington.

<sup>95</sup> NCANN 1996: National Strategy on Child Abuse and Neglect, Department of Social Welfare.

dentists, medical practitioners, nurses, social workers, teachers, and persons employed by or managing children's homes, places of care and shelters. The obligation to report applies when any such person 'examines, attends or deals with any child in circumstances giving rise to the suspicion that the child has been ill-treated, or suffers from any injury ... the cause of which probably might have been deliberate, or suffers from a nutritional deficiency disease'.

Persons mandated to report in terms of the Child Care Act, 1983, must send notifications of cases of suspected abuse to the Director-General of the Department of Social Development on Form 25, as supplied in the Regulations as amended in 1988. The Director-General is then required to request a police officer, social worker or authorised officer to take appropriate steps, and to call for an investigation into the circumstances of the case and a report on these circumstances and on action taken, within 30 days. The Director-General may in certain cases instruct that the alleged perpetrator be removed from direct contact with children (presumably where such a person is employed in a registered or government-operated children's facility), and that the matter be referred to the SAPS for possible prosecution.<sup>96</sup>

A similar obligation to report the ill-treatment of children is provided for in section 4 of the Prevention of Family Violence Act 133 of 1993. Unlike the reporting obligation in terms of the Child Care Act, 1983, however, this provision applies to 'any person who examines, treats, attends to, advises, instructs or cares for any child in circumstances which ought to give rise to the reasonable suspicion that such child has been ill-treated, or suffers from any injury the probable cause of which was deliberate'. The Act requires the report to be made to a police official, a commissioner of child welfare, or a social worker.

The concept of a register based on mandated reporting of child abuse was introduced in South African law in April 1998, in new Regulations under the Child Care Act. The purpose of this register is the protection of children, and it will capture information obtained from three sources: criminal court convictions, children's court findings, and notifications received in terms of section 42(1) of the Act. Some uncertainty arises from the wording of Regulations 39B(2)(e) and (f). In terms of the former, identifying details of a perpetrator are to be included after conviction by a criminal court. But in terms of the

---

<sup>96</sup> Regulations 39A (2) and (3).

latter, >details of the relationship between the child and the perpetrator= must be revealed even where an alleged perpetrator has not been convicted. Such details may serve to identify the person and thus circumvent the protection provided to unconvicted persons by Regulation 39B(2)(e). As pointed out in the discussion paper,<sup>97</sup> the constitutionality of Regulation 39B(2)(e) may be at issue.

With hindsight, the wisdom of proceeding with a system of mandated reporting in the South African context is perhaps open to question. However the Commission acknowledges that the reporting system and the national child abuse register as currently provided for have protective potential for children as well as being a prospective source of data for planning, policymaking and resourcing purposes, and that it might be ill-advised to reverse the mandatory provisions which are presently in place in the Child Care Act. In the discussion paper,<sup>98</sup> the Commission therefore recommended that the reporting provision in the Prevention of Family Violence Act be repealed, and that this issue be addressed only in the proposed comprehensive children's statute. It was also recommended that compulsion to report be confined to the categories of persons set out in section 42 of the Child Care Act at this time, and that the emphasis for the general population be on voluntary reporting based on public education and awareness-raising. It was further recommended that the mandated reporting provision and the registration process be confined to cases involving actual or suspected physical injury, sexual abuse, severe neglect which appears to be intentional, and child labour.

In the discussion paper,<sup>99</sup> the Commission stated that registration should take place only after investigation has confirmed reasonable grounds for suspicion of ill-treatment. Clear definitions of each category are to be provided. It was recommended that nutritional deficiency disease which is caused by poverty rather than deliberate neglect should be removed from the reporting provision, child malnutrition being a mass problem in South Africa which can more effectively be addressed through other mechanisms. It was further recommended that accounts of abuse which have occurred in the distant past not be subjected to the reporting requirement unless there is reason to believe that a child is currently at risk. Further, it was recommended that a mechanism should be included whereby a report can be registered for statistical purposes only, if the Director General is

---

<sup>97</sup> Par. 10.5.2.

<sup>98</sup> Par. 10.5.7.

<sup>99</sup> Par. 10.5.7.

satisfied that the person reporting the case is in a position to undertake the action necessary to protect the child. The Commission further recommended that immunity be provided for any person, whether or not mandated to report, from legal action after making a *bona fide* report, and that the anonymity of informants specifically be protected. This protection should encompass both persons who submit formal notifications in terms of the Act, and persons referring cases for investigation and intervention. Malicious reporting should carry a severe penalty.

The approach taken in the United Kingdom of maintaining a consolidated register of persons found by a court or through some other form of due process to have abused children, or to be likely to pose a risk of abuse, was considered advisable for South Africa, as a means of keeping serial offenders out of children's services. It was stated that such a register should be available to assist with the screening of prospective staff members, volunteers or substitute caregivers for children within schools, designated child care services and major youth organisations, and for no other purpose whatever. Strict controls on access to this information and strong sanctions for any breach of the limitations should be put in place. The Commission recognised that it would be necessary to build in processes to ensure that, in cases involving dismissal, internal transfer or retirement of a person on the basis of *prima facie* evidence of abuse, principles of administrative justice have been upheld. It was further recommended that severe criminal penalties should apply to malicious reporting. The Commission further recommended that any prospective foster or adoptive parent, prospective volunteer or applicant for employment or voluntary service in a designated child care employment setting or category of work should be required to produce a certificate confirming that his or her name does not appear on such a list or register. This was regarded as the least invasive way of applying this protective measure.

#### **9.10.1 Comments received**

**Ms Krystyna Smith** recommended that all religious leaders should be added to the list of specified mandatory reporters of suspected or alleged cases of child abuse. She submitted that religious leaders engender deep trust and for this reason may often be the first people to hear about reports of child abuse in their communities. In addition, religious leaders usually have pastoral, teaching, social outreach roles and responsibilities in their communities. This brings them into constant professional contact with children and adults. Ms Smith mentioned that media and other reports have

indicated that there is a problem across a wide spectrum of religions regarding sexual offences committed by religious leaders. Furthermore: most of these cases are not reported to the relevant civil authorities, but are treated as a problem of internal discipline, and these crimes may often be covered up. The matter is thus not taken beyond the religious community, for fear of scandal caused to the religious community or damage to the image of the religious authority. Ms Smith questioned a religious authority's ability to punish an offender appropriately, and to protect the victim and community from further harm. She stated that a religious authority that finds a religious leader guilty may insist that he should undergo rehabilitative treatment and can also remove him from the ministry, but cannot sentence or imprison the offender, even if dangerous, e.g. a paedophile. Furthermore, she said the offender will have no criminal record and there will be no reliable restraint on the offender continuing the criminal behaviour. Ms Smith thus proposed that internal discipline hearings by religious authorities should not be regarded as a substitute for the criminal justice system.

**Africa Christian Action** submitted that all child care organisations should have access to the proposed register of offenders.

The Commission has recommended that the new children's statute should make it clear that a reporting obligation exists where there are reasonable grounds to suspect sexual abuse despite the confidentiality provision in the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act 92 of 1996.<sup>100</sup> Responding to this, **Ms Dellene Clark** stated that the obligation to report will automatically include all pregnant children under the age of 12, who in terms of the proposed definition of rape contained in the Discussion Paper on Sexual Offences, are not capable in law of appreciating the nature of an act of sexual penetration. This also applies to mentally impaired children younger than 16 years. Ms Clark mentioned that there is an irrebuttable presumption at common law that a female person under the age of 12 years is incapable of consenting to sexual intercourse. Based on this, Ms Clark submitted that a medical practitioner is not only obliged to report all cases where a child under the age of 12 requests a termination of pregnancy (such children are per definitions victims of sexual abuse) in terms of section 7 of the Choice

---

<sup>100</sup> The confidentiality relates to the identity of the woman (name and address) who has requested or obtained a termination of pregnancy - section 7(5) read with section 7(3). The medical practitioner or midwife who has performed the termination must record the prescribed information and give notice to the person in charge of the facility – sections 7(1) and (2). The person in charge of the facility must then notify the Director-General: Health who must keep proper records – sections 7(3) and (4).

on Termination of Pregnancy Act 92 of 1996 and section 42 of the Child Care Act, 1983 or section 4 of the Prevention of Family Violence Act 133 of 1993, but is required to retain the aborted baby as evidence of the crime. (Obviously, reporting of sexual abuse of children over the age of 12 by medical practitioners in terms of the relevant section of the Child Care Act, 1983 or the Prevention of Family Violence Act 133 of 1993, should depend on whether there are reasonable grounds to suspect sexual abuse.)

### **9.10.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

Early in 2002, the world was shocked by the disclosures of child sexual abuse by priests, especially in the Roman Catholic Church. The Church itself came in for severe criticism for the manner in which such errant priests were dealt with and several law suits were instituted. A recurring theme linked to the disclosures was the imputed obligation on priests and the Church to report cases of sexual abuse in their midst to the relevant authorities. In the South African context, calls were also made for the extension to priests and religious leaders of the mandatory reporting obligation in section 42 of the Child Care Act, 1983, as the submission of Ms Smith above attests.

Seen from a broader context, the problems the Church faces highlight the difficulties associated with mandatory reporting alluded to in the discussion paper.<sup>101</sup> These problems also raise issues such as confidentiality, accountability (in the context of reports made in good faith), and affordability. Clear guidance is needed on questions such as who should do the reporting, what should be reported, to whom and for what purpose.

In South Africa the reporting of cases of suspected child abuse is complicated by the fact that two legal provisions apply: Section 4 of the Prevention of Family Violence Act 133 of 1993 and section 42 of the Child Care Act, 1983. While the reporting obligation is common, the two sections differ fundamentally as to who should report (any person versus a closed category of professionals), as to what should be reported (ill-treatment or injury the probable cause of which was deliberate versus injuries and nutritional deficiencies), and the consequences of failure to report (no sanction versus criminal sanction). As recommended in the discussion paper, the Commission therefore recommends that the provision in the Prevention of Family Violence Act 133 of 1993 be

---

<sup>101</sup>

Par. 10.5.7.



repealed.

The decision to repeal section 4 of the Prevention of Family Violence Act 133 of 1993 called for a reconsideration of the question concerning to whom the reporting obligation should apply. In this regard, the Commission recommends that a duty be imposed on teachers, medical practitioners, nurses and other persons involved with a child in a professional capacity and who on personal observation conclude that a child has been ill-treated or is being deliberately maltreated, abused or neglected to report that conclusion to a social worker, police officer or the child and family court registrar.<sup>102</sup> The Commission affords any other person who believes that a child is being ill-treated or deliberately being maltreated, abused or neglected the discretion to report such belief to a social worker, police officer or the child and family court registrar.<sup>103</sup> The person making the report may be asked to substantiate the conclusion or belief with facts.<sup>104</sup>

Once the report has been made to the social worker, police officer or the registrar, that official must make an initial assessment of the report, investigate the truthfulness of the report, and if the report is substantiated by such investigation, immediately take steps to ensure the safety and well-being of the child concerned, initiate care and protection proceedings, and submit particulars concerning the matter to the Director-General for inclusion in the National Child Protection Register.<sup>105</sup>

In drafting the reporting provision, care was taken to not to link the circumstances requiring a person to report to the broader child in need of care and protection criteria. As stated in the discussion paper,<sup>106</sup> the Commission is of the opinion that mandated reporting be limited and be followed by appropriate action aimed at protecting the child. The Commission's proposals in this regard are action driven in an attempt to address the needs of the child in need of care and protection at a local level. It is not the primary purpose of the Commission's proposal to serve as a statistical record of the number of reported cases, though it should also serve this function.

---

<sup>102</sup> Section 167(1) of the Bill.

<sup>103</sup> Section 167(2) of the Bill.

<sup>104</sup> Section 167(3) of the Bill.

<sup>105</sup> Section 167(5) of the Bill.

<sup>106</sup> Par. 10.5.7.

However, the Commission maintains the linkage of the reporting obligation to the existing national child protection register. Provision is therefore made for a national child protection register to be kept and maintained by the Director-General: Social Development.<sup>107</sup> In terms of the Commission's recommendations, Part A of the register is to be a record of all incidents of reported child abuse and ill-treatment, all convictions of parents, care-givers, or family members of children on charges involving the abuse or deliberate neglect of the child, and all determinations by the child and family court that a child is in need of care and protection because of the abuse or deliberate neglect of the child.<sup>108</sup> It is a combined child protection and (convicted) offender register. The purpose of this part of the register is to have a record of abuse and deliberate neglect inflicted upon specific children and to use the information on the register to protect these children from further abuse and neglect. The Bill prescribes what must be recorded in this part of the register and regulates access to and disclosure of information contained in it.<sup>109</sup>

The purpose of Part B of the register is to establish a record of persons unsuitable to work with children in order to protect children in general from these persons.<sup>110</sup> In line with the British approach described above, the Commission prescribes procedures in terms of which findings can be made that a particular person is unfit to work with children.<sup>111</sup> Such findings are reported to the Director-General: Social Development.<sup>112</sup> No person whose name appears in Part B of the register may manage or operate a child and youth care centre, a partial care facility, a shelter or a drop-in centre or even assist in the management thereof; work with children at such facilities, either as an employee, volunteer or in any other capacity; or act as a foster parent, kinship care-giver or adoptive parent; or work in any unit of the South African Police Service tasked with child protection.<sup>113</sup> Before a person is allowed to work with children at a child and youth care centre, a partial care facility, a shelter or a drop-in centre, or in a unit of the SAPS tasked with child protection, the manager of such facility or the SAPS must establish whether or not that prospective employee's name appears in Part B of the register.<sup>114</sup> Given the

---

<sup>107</sup> Section 120(1) of the Bill.

<sup>108</sup> Section 122(1) of the Bill.

<sup>109</sup> Sections 122(2), 123 and 124 of the Bill.

<sup>110</sup> Section 125 of the Bill.

<sup>111</sup> Section 127 of the Bill.

<sup>112</sup> Section 129 of the Bill.

<sup>113</sup> Section 130(1) of the Bill.

<sup>114</sup> Sections 132(1)(a) and (c) of the Bill.

serious legal consequences to being find a person unsuitable to work with children, provision is made for a dispute resolution mechanism,<sup>115</sup> access to the register,<sup>116</sup> and the removal of names from the register.<sup>117</sup> Disclosure of names in Part B of the register is prohibited.<sup>118</sup>

As far as the confidentiality provision in the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996, is concerned, the Commission is of the opinion that the problem is not so much related to the lack of reporting by health practitioners, even though this is a concern, but rather the absence of any clear linkage to reporting provisions in other legislation. To overcome this problem, the Commission provides for a supremacy clause in terms of which a medical practitioner or a registered midwife will be obliged to report to a social worker, police officer or the child and family court registrar the fact that a girl under the age of 12 years was pregnant and had her pregnancy terminated if that pregnancy was due to the sexual abuse of that girl.<sup>119</sup>

---

<sup>115</sup> Section 128 of the Bill.

<sup>116</sup> Section 131 of the Bill.

<sup>117</sup> Section 134 of the Bill.

<sup>118</sup> Section 133 of the Bill.

<sup>119</sup> Section 167(4) of the Bill.

## **CHAPTER 10**

### **THE PROTECTION OF THE HEALTH RIGHTS OF CHILDREN**

#### **10.1 Introduction**

This chapter examines how children's health rights can be promoted and protected through legislation and policy. As such, it covers aspects such as the right of children to basic health care services, consent to medical treatment and/or surgical intervention, HIV testing, confidentiality of information relating to the HIV status of children, access to contraceptives, access to termination of pregnancy services and the right to refuse medical treatment.

#### **10.2 Children's right to basic health care services**

##### **10.2.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

Section 28(1)(c) of the Constitution<sup>1</sup> states that every child has a right to basic health care services. It is, however, not clear what this right to basic health care services entails and what the state's responsibility is in relation to children with disabilities and those infected with HIV/AIDS with regard to their right to basic health care services. For example, the provision of assistive devices and rehabilitation services to children with disabilities is essential to improve their level of functioning within society. Whether this can be included under a child's right to basic health care services is debatable. The Commission accordingly recommended that children's right to basic health care services be confirmed in both the new Children's Bill and the National Health Bill. Furthermore, the National Health Bill must set out the core minimum requirements for the state in providing for the health of all children, including the state's responsibility in providing for the basic health care needs of children with additional health care needs.<sup>2</sup>

##### **10.2.2 Comments received**

---

<sup>1</sup> Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act 108 of 1996.

<sup>2</sup> Par. 11.3.4 of the discussion paper.

There was wide spread support for the Commission's recommendations amongst the respondents who commented on this section. Some of the respondents also made additional suggestions. For instance, the **Department of Health**, Pretoria, proposed that both the new Children's Bill and the National Health Bill must contain core minimum requirements for the state in providing for the health care of all children, irrespective of any special needs they may have. This proposal is shared with **Ms Sanet Van Moerkerken** who also suggested that the State should provide basic health care services to all children under the age of 18 who are not able to pay for such services.

### 10.2.3 Evaluation and recommendations

In view of the support received for the Commission's recommendations made in the discussion paper, the Commission reaffirms its preliminary recommendations. In addition to these recommendations and in line with the Department of Health's suggestion, the Children's Bill sets out certain requirements for the state in providing for the health of all children, including those with additional health care needs.<sup>3</sup>

## 10.3 Consent to medical treatment and/or surgical intervention

### 10.3.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103

The Commission recommended that the age at which children may consent to medical treatment should be lowered to 12, whilst until they are 18 they cannot consent to an operation without the assistance of their parent or guardian.<sup>4</sup> In order to provide for a simpler procedure to obtain consent to medical treatment or an operation, the Commission recommended that a caregiver who is not a parent or guardian of a child may consent to medical treatment for or an operation on that child if that child has been abandoned or his or her parents are deceased. Furthermore, a parent or guardian of a child may give written consent to a person caring for a child to give consent to medical treatment for or an operation on that child.<sup>5</sup> The

---

<sup>3</sup> Sections 232(1)(a)(iv) and (xiv) - (xv) of the Bill.

<sup>4</sup> Par. 11.4.5 of the discussion paper. Consent to medical treatment or an operation in terms of the proposed child care legislation would be subject to the provisions of the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act (Act 92 of 1996) which require only the consent of a pregnant woman, including a minor.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid.

procedure set out in section 39(1) of the Child Care Act<sup>6</sup> which requires a medical practitioner to apply to the Minister for consent (in instances where a parent or guardian refuses to give consent, or cannot be found, or is deceased, or is by reason of mental illness unable to give consent) is criticised for being impractical in practice. For this reason, the Commission recommended that the children's court, instead of the Minister, be approached to obtain the necessary consent.<sup>7</sup> The Commission further recommended that the new children's statute should explicitly provide that no child may be submitted to any medical treatment and/or surgical intervention without consent.<sup>8</sup> Consent may include consent, on behalf of a child, by the superintendent of a residential care facility or department or organisation arranging placement of the child in terms of the Child Care Act.

### 10.3.2 Comments received

There was widespread support for the Commission's recommendations. However, **Africa Christian Action** disagreed with the recommendation that the age at which children may consent to medical treatment be lowered to 12. The respondent argued that a child as young as 12 lacks the maturity to consent to medical treatment. This view is shared with **Jimmy and Lizelle Meyer**. A contrary view was expressed by **Manamela Damons Mbanjwa inc.** (attorneys) who stated that 12 as the age at which children may consent to medical treatment is still too high. The respondent argued that a child of any age should be able to give informed consent to his or her own medical treatment regardless of the urgency of the situation. In order to substantiate its view point, the respondent stated that if a girl child chooses to terminate a pregnancy without her parents' consent or knowledge, such child should be able to consent to any medical treatment or operation (without parental consent) which may be needed to rectify or treat a condition resulting from the termination of the pregnancy. Furthermore, if a child chooses to undergo treatment for a sexually transmitted disease (without his or her parents' knowledge) and such treatment requires a medical intervention not directly related to the treatment for the sexually transmitted disease, then such a child should be able to give consent to that medical intervention without parental consent.

### Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project (Community Law

---

<sup>6</sup> 74 of 1983.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid.

Center, UWC) asserted that the proposed age of 12 at which children may consent to medical treatment without parental consent is somewhat arbitrary and contrived. The respondents stated that by making use of the requirement that a child must be capable of forming his or her own views, the Convention on the Rights of the Child is allowing a greater number of children to participate in decisions as a child's capacity varies according to his or her individual development, and events in question are not necessary dependent on his or her age. The respondents therefore recommended that a child, who by his/her age or maturity is capable to do so, should be able to consent to medical treatment without his or her parents' assistance.

**Manamela Damons Mbanjwa inc.** (attorneys) recommended that children's constitutional right to information regarding their own health care, privacy and bodily integrity should be acknowledged. Furthermore, medical practitioners should be required to inform and advise a child of any age, on the basis of the prudent or individual patient, on any proposed medical interventions. The respondent stated that the reasoning that children would not understand is negated by studies done in the United Kingdom by Alderson (Alderson 1990, 1993). The respondent argued that there is no reason why children may not be informed, in a manner they can understand, of an intended medical procedure.

This respondent also stated that currently, no provision is made for children under the age of 14 who are parents to consent to medical interventions in respect of their children. The respondent mentioned that some States in the USA have overcome this obstacle in that parenthood automatically emancipates a person. The respondent thus recommended that parenthood should emancipate minors in order to enhance their chance of survival and that of their offspring.

**Department of Health**, Pretoria, agreed that the procedure in section 39(1) of the Child Care Act is impractical. The respondent therefore suggested that the medical superintendent of a hospital or, in remote areas where some hospitals may not have full-time superintendents the children's court, be approached for consent to medical treatment or surgical intervention in the absence of such consent by the parent or guardian. **E.N Maonela, Department of Social Development**, Free State agreed that section 39(1) of the Child Care Act be amended to provide that the children's court, instead of the Minister, be approached to obtain the necessary consent for medical treatment of or an operation on a child. This view is shared with **Ms R van Zyl**. A contrary view was expressed by **Mr Des Rothman**. He stated that many, if not most, instances where a child may require medical treatment or an operation

relate to children who are not subject to current children's court enquiries. He said that it will be impractical to expect commissioners of child welfare, who represent the judiciary, to handle matters affecting the health of all children. He recommended that the Minister for Social Development must delegate this function to responsible senior representatives within the provinces.

The Department of Health, Pretoria, agreed that the age at which a child should be able to consent to medical treatment and/or surgical intervention should be synchronised through the new child care legislation. The respondent stated that this will facilitate uniformity of application by the various sectors, i.e. government, private and non-governmental organisations.

The **Consortium** suggested that the head of a health facility should be allowed to consent to certain basic medical treatment for children living in child-headed households as the procedure recommended by the Commission, i.e. that the child and family court be approached, may prove to be cumbersome for these categories of children. Also, medical treatment should be defined to include mental health care services such as psychology sessions and counselling, and dental services.

### 10.3.3 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission is mindful of the fact that children's capacity to understand the full implications of medical treatment varies according to their individual development and maturity. However, there are no indicators for determining maturity. Thus, a provision that a child (of any age) who is of sufficient maturity may consent to medical treatment could be abused where a parent or primary caregiver is not readily available. The Commission therefore reaffirms its preliminary recommendation that the age at which children may consent to medical treatment be lowered to 12.<sup>9</sup> In addition, the Commission recommends that before a child 12 years of age can give consent to medical treatment, he or she should also have the mental capacity to understand the benefits, risks and social implications of such treatment.<sup>10</sup>

The Commission does not agree with Manamela Damons Mbanjwa's proposal that parenthood should automatically emancipate minors. Given the high rate of teenage pregnancies in South Africa, such a provision would not be in the best interests of many children (most from disadvantaged communities) as they would be deprived

<sup>9</sup> Section 135(2)(a)(i) of the Bill.

<sup>10</sup> Section 135(2)(a)(ii) of the Bill,



from the protections enjoyed by children.

The Commission has given due consideration to Mr Rothman's view that the child and family court should not be burdened by requiring it to give consent to medical treatment or an operation for certain children. The Commission wants to highlight that the proposed provision that the child and family court may consent to medical treatment of or an operation on a child would not overburden the court for the following reasons. The Commission recommends that the superintendent of a hospital may consent to medical treatment of or an operation on a child in emergency situations.<sup>11</sup> A person who is not a holder of parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child, but who cares for that child may consent to medical treatment of that child if such consent cannot reasonably be obtained from the parent or primary care-giver of that child.<sup>12</sup> A relative caring for a child in terms of an informal kinship care arrangement may consent to the medical treatment of or an operation on that child.<sup>13</sup> Furthermore, the superintendent of a hospital may consent to any medical treatment of or an operation on a street child or a child in a child-headed household under the age of 12 years or where such child is over the age of 12 years, assist him or her to consent to an operation.<sup>14</sup> Thus, applications to the child and family court for consent to medical treatment or an operation would be minimal. The Commission reaffirms its preliminary recommendation that the child and family court, instead of the Minister, be approached for consent to medical treatment or an operation in certain instances.<sup>15</sup>

#### **10.4 HIV testing in relation to placement of children in need of care**

##### **10.4.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

As stated in the discussion paper, an HIV test may often not be in the best interests of a child because it can be used to discriminate against a child.<sup>16</sup> The Commission therefore recommended that no child may be tested for HIV without consent and HIV testing may only take place where this is in the best interests of the child. The Commission further recommended that, where appropriate, a child should receive

---

<sup>11</sup> Section 135(4) of the Bill.

<sup>12</sup> Section 44(2) of the Bill.

<sup>13</sup> Section 207(1)(b) and (3) of the Bill.

<sup>14</sup> Section 237 of the Bill. This is in line with the Consortium's suggestion that the head of a hospital, instead of the child and family court, be approached for consent to medical treatment of or surgical intervention on children in child-headed households.

<sup>15</sup> Section 135(5) of the Bill.

<sup>16</sup> Par. 11.5.5

pre- and post-test counseling. The Commission also recommended as follows:<sup>17</sup>

- The age at which a child may consent to an HIV test should be lowered to children 12 years of age and older.
- A child under 12 years of age who is of sufficient maturity to understand the benefits, risks and possible social implications of an HIV test may consent to such a test.
- Where a child under 12 years of age is not of sufficient maturity to understand the benefits, risks and possible social implications of an HIV test, the person exercising parental authority over that child may consent to the HIV testing of that child.
- Where parental consent to an HIV test is unreasonably withheld, the court should be approached for the necessary consent.
- Where a child under 12 years (who is not of sufficient maturity) is in residential care or awaiting statutory placement, the head of the residential care facility or organisation arranging placement may consent to the HIV testing of that child.
- The head of a hospital may only give consent to the HIV testing of a child under 12 years of age (who is not of sufficient maturity) if no parent or person exercising parental authority over the child is available or where no organisation is arranging placement for the child or where the child is not in the care of a residential care facility.

The Commission has taken cognisance of the fact that many parents will not accept a child for adoption until his or her HIV negative status is confirmed. The Commission therefore recommended that consideration be given to making the Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) test available, at state expense, for babies requiring placement in terms of this Act for purposes of permanency planning and appropriate selection of placement. The cost and emotional damage resulting from keeping a healthy child in residential care or a hospital until he or she tests negative at eighteen months is vastly higher than using the PCR test. The PCR test can detect the HIV virus in the blood immediately.<sup>18</sup>

#### **10.4.2 Comments received**

---

<sup>17</sup> Ibid.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid.

**Manamela Damons Mbanjwa inc.** (attorneys) submitted that an HIV-test should be considered as a medical intervention based on the child's right to privacy, bodily integrity and the right not to be discriminated against. Furthermore, as HIV/AIDS is a sexually transmitted disease, all children should have free access to compulsory counselling, particularly after being informed about the test result whether the test result was negative or positive.

Responding to the Commission's recommendation that a child under the age of 12 years who is of sufficient maturity to understand the benefits, risks and possible social implications of an HIV test may consent to such a test, **Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** submitted that this recommendation does not place the responsibility to make the decision regarding the child's maturity with the parent or guardian of such a child. This view is shared by Justice Edwin Cameron who submitted that a statutory provision to this effect could easily be abused if a parent or substitute decision-maker is not readily available. Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa further suggested that the consent of the parent or guardian should be obtained before any child is tested for HIV/AIDS. Furthermore, pre- and post-test counselling must be provided to parents in order to enable them to assist the child in dealing with the results of an HIV/AIDS test.

**H. Gerryts, Department of Social Development**, Free State stated that "when a child is of sufficient maturity" to understand the benefits, risks and possible social implications of an HIV test needs to be defined.

The **Dutch Reformed Church**, Pretoria, stated that it is difficult to determine when a child is mature enough to make difficult choices and to know what is in his or her best interest. The respondent proposed that a professional assessment of the child's maturity should be made before he or she is allowed to give consent for an HIV test.

**E.N Maonela, Department of Social Development**, Free State, supported the Commission's recommendation that the PCR test be made available to babies for purposes of permanency planning. **Ms R van Zyl** was also in favour of this recommendation.

**Justice Edwin Cameron** submitted that, instead of testing children for HIV for purposes of adoption at state cost, consideration should be given to the alternative of having such testing done at the cost of the prospective adoptive parents. This, in his view, would be preferable to a situation where a test is not done at all (because the

state might not be able to afford testing) and the placement is cancelled at a later stage.

The **Consortium** supported the Commission's recommendation that no child may be tested for HIV without consent and that HIV testing may only take place where this is in the best interests of the child. The Consortium suggested that a list of criteria which must be considered when applying the best interests principle in relation to HIV testing should be developed. Criteria should include consideration of whether the benefit in testing is outweighed by the stigma the child is likely to face when returning home, whether the child has received counselling, whether post-test counselling is available, and whether appropriate care and treatment are available. The Consortium was also in favour of the Commission's recommendation with regard to the PCR-test.

**Ms Annette van Loggerenberg** agreed with the Commission's recommendations.

#### **10.4.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission has given due regard to the concerns raised as to when a child under the age of 12 would be of sufficient maturity to understand the benefits, risks and social implications of an HIV test. The Commission wants to point out that a person who conducts an HIV test on a child must have a reasonable belief that the child is of sufficient maturity to understand the implications of an HIV test before testing the child for HIV. Furthermore, the 'reasonable man' principle is well established in our law and does not need to be explicitly stipulated in legislation. Thus, if the maturity of a child is in dispute, the court would be able to determine whether the person who has conducted an HIV test on a child had, in light of the circumstances, a reasonable belief that the child was of sufficient maturity to understand the benefits, risks and social implications of an HIV test.

The Commission sees merit in Justice Cameron's proposal that testing children for HIV for purposes of adoption should be done at the cost of the adoptive parents. However, testing children for HIV, particularly babies, for purposes of recruiting appropriate adoptive or foster parents is often necessary, even before adoptive or foster parents for the child have been found. The Commission therefore recommends that HIV testing on children younger than three years of age for foster or adoption purposes must be done at state expense.<sup>19</sup>

---

<sup>19</sup> Section 137 of the Bill.

The Commission retains its preliminary recommendation that pre- and post-test HIV counselling should be provided to a child where applicable.<sup>20</sup> The Commission further agrees with Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa's recommendation that pre- and post-test counselling should also be provided to the parents of a child who is to be tested for HIV. This is important as the results of an HIV test will undoubtedly have profound implications for the entire family. However, care should be taken that the child's right to confidentiality is not infringed when counselling is provided to a family member other than the child.<sup>21</sup>

In view of the support received for the Commission's recommendations regarding the PCR test, these recommendations have been retained.

The Commission has taken note of the National Policy on testing for HIV which sets out the circumstances in which HIV testing may be conducted without consent. The Commission is mindful of the fact that compulsory HIV testing curtails a person's right to privacy and bodily integrity and that any infringement of these rights should not be greater than what is necessary. In order to ensure the minimum infringement of the rights of a child, the Commission recommends that a child may only be tested for HIV without consent if the test is necessary in order to establish whether a health care worker may have contracted HIV due to contact in the course of a medical procedure with any substance from the child's body that may transmit HIV. However, where a person, other than a health care worker, has come in contact with any substance from the child's body that may transmit HIV, the Commission considers it necessary that an order of court must be obtained before a child can be subjected to an HIV test without consent.<sup>22</sup>

## **10.5 Confidentiality of information relating to the HIV status of children**

### **10.5.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

As children infected with HIV/AIDS face high levels of discrimination, it is important that information regarding their HIV/AIDS status be kept confidential. For this

---

<sup>20</sup> Pre- and post-test counselling will not be necessary if the child concerned is not of sufficient maturity to understand the implications of an HIV test.

<sup>21</sup> Section 138 of the Bill.

<sup>22</sup> Section 136(1)(b) of the Bill.

reason, the Commission recommended as follows:<sup>23</sup>

- A child of 12 years of age and older should have the right not to have information regarding the outcome of his or her HIV test disclosed.
- A child under 12 years of age who is of sufficient maturity to understand the benefits, risks and possible social implications of an HIV test should have the right not to have information regarding the outcome of his or her HIV test disclosed.
- The HIV status of a child under 12 years of age who is not of sufficient maturity to understand the benefits, risks and possible social implications of an HIV test may only be disclosed by other parties on a need to know basis when it is in the best interests of that child or when the child's HIV/AIDS status would pose a real risk to third parties. The Commission did not debate the meaning of a "real risk" and invited comment in this regard.
- All child care practitioners, including medical practitioners, should have a legal duty to consider the possible consequences of disclosure of information regarding a child's health status before providing this information to third parties.
- Before disclosing a child's HIV status, note must be taken of the National Policy on testing for HIV.

#### 10.5.2 Comments received

**Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** submitted that even if a child understands the benefits, risks and social implications of an HIV/AIDS test, no information regarding his or her HIV/AIDS status should be disclosed unless the consent of the parent or guardian is obtained.

The **Consortium** supported the Commission's recommendations regarding confidentiality and disclosure of the outcome of a child's HIV test. With regard to the recommendation that 'All practitioners ... should have a legal duty to consider the possible consequences of disclosure of information ... before providing this information to third parties', the respondent suggested that the words 'parents and caregivers' be inserted before the words 'third parties'. The Consortium submitted that health personnel must take into account the harm the child or the child's mother

<sup>23</sup>

Par. 11.6.5 of the discussion paper.

is likely to suffer if the result of an HIV test is disclosed to a certain person, for instance, the child's father. The Consortium stated that many women are blamed for having HIV and suffer violence from their partners when their partners find out about their HIV status. Pre-disclosure counselling of the father is vital in such cases.

### **10.5.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission takes note of the Consortium's concern that many women suffer violence from their partners should it become known that their children are HIV positive. However, it would be difficult to deny a father access to information on his child's HIV status, particularly where the father has given consent to and paid for the HIV test. The problem can therefore not be addressed through legislation. As no other adverse comments were received, the Commission retains the rest of its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper. In addition to these recommendations, the Children's Bill also provides for the disclosure of a child's HIV status in certain circumstances by a designated child protection organisation, the head of a hospital or a child and family court.<sup>24</sup>

## **10.6 Access to contraceptives**

### **10.6.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

In order for young persons to make informed choices regarding the age of initiating sexual activity and protecting themselves against unwanted pregnancies and sexually transmitted diseases, they need access to appropriate family planning services. The Commission therefore recommended that confidential access to contraceptives should be provided to all sexually active persons regardless of age. The Commission further recommended that access to contraceptives and information on contraceptives should be at state expense where necessary and should not be linked to medical treatment.<sup>25</sup> Furthermore, any child should be able to obtain treatment for sexually transmitted diseases regardless of age.<sup>26</sup>

### **10.6.2 Comments received**

---

<sup>24</sup> Section 139 of the Bill.

<sup>25</sup> Par. 11.7.5 of the discussion paper.

<sup>26</sup> Par. 11.4.5 of the discussion paper.

A substantial number of the respondents to the discussion paper did not support the recommendation that confidential access to contraceptives should be provided to all sexually active persons regardless of age. They argued, from a biblical point of view, that no child under the age of 18 should be provided with access to contraceptives and that children should be taught to abstain from sex before marriage. Those respondents who were in favour of the Commission's recommendation suggested that confidential access to contraceptives should only be provided to children over the age of 12 years. The following are selected comments from some of the respondents.

With reference to recent scientific research, **Doctors For Life** submitted that oral or injectable contraceptive users have a 50% greater risk of cervical cancer than non-users. Also, women starting the pill at an earlier age are at an increased risk of developing cervical cancer. The respondent further submitted that, given the risks involved in oral or injectable contraceptives, the unreliability of barrier methods and the inability of children to make choices based on future consequences, it is not logical to allow children confidential access to contraceptives.

**Ms Dellene Clark** stated that the Commission's recommendation does not take cognisance of the fact that, in terms of the current law and as proposed in the Sexual Offences Discussion Paper, children below the age of 12 and in certain circumstances below the age of 16 years are not capable of consenting to sexual intercourse. In her view, children should not be given access to oral contraceptives without their parents' consent. Furthermore, condoms should not be made available to children who are legally not capable of consenting to sexual intercourse.

**Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** stated that children should be given sex education only with the consent of their care-givers. The respondent proposed that a parent committee be elected at each school which should decide on the nature of sex education provided to the children at that school. The respondent suggested that only children who may legally consent to sex should be allowed to have access to contraceptives provided that the consent of their care-givers has been obtained. The respondent argued that it is not natural for a child to be sexually active and this is often an indication that such a child may be in need of care. The respondent therefore recommended that all children who are found to be sexually active should be counselled with the view to investigate whether there are any underlying problems. **Ms Susan Mogadima** stated that information on contraceptives should be made available to children on a case by case basis taking



into account the maturity and age of a child.

**Jimmy and Lizelle Meyer** submitted that children should not be provided with confidential access to contraceptives and that parental consent should be required for the treatment of sexually transmitted diseases. The respondents further stated that children under the age of 12 requiring contraceptives are being abused and suggested that the circumstances of such children be investigated. **Africa Christian Action** also did not support the recommendation that any child should be able to obtain treatment (without parental consent) for sexually transmitted diseases. The respondent submitted that parents should be able to monitor the child's use of the medication. Furthermore, if parental consent is needed for the treatment of sexually transmitted diseases, parents will be able to address the situation which has caused the transmission of the disease. **Ms Beena Chiba** agreed, however, that any child should be able to obtain treatment for sexually transmitted diseases regardless of age.

The **Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** (Community Law Centre, UWC) supported the Commission's recommendation that children of any age should obtain information on and access to contraceptives. The respondent mentioned that studies have found that the lack of family counselling and services causes irreparable physical and social damage to adolescents, particularly girls. The respondent is thus of the view that the implications of not having access to contraceptives without parental consent far outweigh any arguments relating to the exercise of parental responsibility. Furthermore, the Commission's recommendation is a reasonable and justifiable limitation of parental responsibility.

**N E Phonyana** submitted that children should also be provided with sexuality and HIV/AIDS education.

**Ms Sanet Van Moerkerken** agreed that access to and information on contraceptives should be at state expense where necessary and should not be linked to medical treatment.

**Johannesburg Child Welfare** submitted that the provision of contraceptives to children should be determined by their maturity and that counselling and support be provided to children who request contraceptives.

### **10.6.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

In light of the criticisms received, the Commission has reconsidered its recommendation regarding confidential access to contraceptives. The Commission accordingly recommends that all children should be provided with confidential access to condoms and that no person may refuse to sell condoms to a child or to provide a child with condoms that are available free of charge.<sup>27</sup> The Commission realises that this recommendation is in conflict with the fact that children under the age of 16 are not legally capable of consenting to sexual intercourse. However, the Commission cannot lose sight of the fact that children are sexually active from a very young age. This is confirmed by recent media reports.<sup>28</sup> Furthermore, given the increase of HIV/AIDS, especially amongst teenagers, it would be unwise to deny children access to condoms.<sup>29</sup>

The Commission has taken cognisance of the fact that oral and injectable contraceptives can have side effects, some of a severe nature. Furthermore, the only benefit of taking these contraceptives is that it may prevent pregnancy. It does not protect the user from sexually transmitted diseases such as HIV/AIDS. The Commission therefore recommends that confidential access to contraceptives other than condoms should be restricted to children over the age of 12 years. However, proper medical advice must be given to the child and a medical examination must be carried out on the child to determine whether there are any medical reasons why a specific contraceptive should not be provided to the child.<sup>30</sup>

The Commission agrees with Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa's view that a child who is sexually active may be a child in need of care. It is thus important that a medical practitioner or nurse who provides a child with

---

<sup>27</sup> Section 140(1) of the Bill.

<sup>28</sup> Legalbrief News Diary 'Five school children appeared in the Johannesburg Regional Court in connection with the rape of a 13-year-old girl' 8 November 2002; Legalbrief News Diary 'A 10-year-old Bloemfontein boy, suspected of having raped a baby, has been ordered to be held in the cells of the Juvenile Court' 28 October 2002; Legalbrief News Diary '14-year-old youth charged with the murder and raped of a toddler' 25 September 2002; Keshni Odayan 'Teen jailed for 5 years for statutory rape' The Mercury 18 September 2002. A research study on HIV/AIDS by the Human Sciences Research Council (2002) found that the HIV prevalence rate for children 2-14 was unexpectedly high at 5.6%. The study draws no conclusion on how these children were infected, but states that possible factors to be investigated are sexual abuse and exposure to unsterile needles.

<sup>29</sup> A research study on HIV/AIDS by the Human Science Research Council (2002) estimates the overall HIV prevalence in the South African Population (over the age of two) to be 11.4% and that the HIV prevalence among those aged 15-49 was 15.6%. The study also found that condom use amongst sexually active youth aged 15-24 is high, with 57.1% of males and 46.1% of females having used a condom at last sexual intercourse. This is supported by high levels of perceived access to condoms – with over 90% of youth and adults reporting that they could obtain a condom if they needed one.

<sup>30</sup> Section 140(2) of the Bill.

contraceptives and who concludes that that child is in need of care and protection, reports that conclusion to a designated child protection organisation, police officer or child and family court registrar.<sup>31</sup>

The Commission is of the view that confidential access to contraceptives should go hand in hand with appropriate sex education. The Commission therefore recommends that the Department of Education should ensure that sex and HIV/AIDS education form part of the school curriculum.

The Commission retains its preliminary recommendations that children should have confidential access (without parental consent) to treatment for sexually transmitted diseases regardless of age and that access to contraceptives and information on contraceptives should be provided, where necessary, at state expense. In addition, the Commission recommends that a medical examination before providing a child with oral or injectable contraceptives should be provided, where necessary, at state expense.

## **10.7 Access to termination of pregnancy services**

### **10.7.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

The Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act (Act 92 of 1996) provides a girl child of any age with the right to choose to terminate a pregnancy without parental consent. The Commission accepted in the discussion paper that a woman, even a girl child, has a right of choice with respect to reproduction, including the right to choose to terminate a pregnancy.<sup>32</sup>

### **10.7.2 Comments received**

Some respondents to the discussion paper submitted that it is the right and duty of parents to guide their children with regard to a decision to terminate a pregnancy. The argument seems to be that the Children's Bill should override the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act by requiring parental consent for the termination of a pregnancy. The following are selected comments received from some of the

---

<sup>31</sup> Section 167(1) of the Bill.

<sup>32</sup> Par. 11.8.3.

respondents.

**Doctors for Life** submitted that consent to an abortion involves an exercise of choice, and in order to make good choices, an adolescent must be able to anticipate long-term effects and weigh the risks and benefits of each available option. The respondent contended that adolescents lack this ability. The respondent brought to the Commission's attention the results of recent scientific and medical research into the effects of an abortion on a child undergoing an abortion and new evidence applying to anyone having an abortion.

**Manamela Damons Mbanjwa inc.** (attorneys) recommended that pre-termination of pregnancy counselling should be made compulsory for a girl child regardless of age. The respondent suggested that all women, including minors, should be warned about the dangers of multiple abortions. **Department of Social Development**, Free State, also submitted that the right to have access to termination of pregnancy services should include pre- and post abortion counselling.

**Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** proposed that the State should allocate money towards advocating the alternatives to abortions by, for instance, promoting abstinence, faithfulness in marriage, adoptions, help to unwed mothers to be able to keep their babies and creating an effective way of enforcing maintenance orders. Furthermore, girls who request an abortion should be given mandatory counselling before and after the abortion and their parents must be informed. Also, the need for intervention must be investigated as the child may be a victim of sexual abuse.

### **10.7.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission takes cognisance of the concerns raised in respect of the termination of a pregnancy without parental consent. It has come to the Commission's attention that the Christian Lawyers Association has instituted action in the High Court of Pretoria against the Minister of Health, the Premier and MEC for Health of Gauteng to challenge section 5 of the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act which allows termination of pregnancy without parental consent. Pending the outcome of this case, the Commission decides to keep in abeyance any recommendations on the issue of termination of pregnancy without parental consent.

The Commission is mindful of the fact that a girl requesting a termination of pregnancy may be a victim of sexual abuse. Furthermore, the sexual abuse of a girl may be concealed as the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act provides that the identity of a woman who has requested or obtained a termination of pregnancy must remain confidential at all times unless she herself chooses to disclose that information.<sup>33</sup> The Commission therefore recommends that a medical practitioner or a registered midwife performing a termination of pregnancy on a girl must, despite any provisions of the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act requiring confidentiality, report the case if the pregnancy was due to sexual abuse of the child.<sup>34</sup>

The Commission recommends that the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act (Act No. 92 of 1996) be amended by requiring that pre- and post-termination of pregnancy counselling be made compulsory for children. Furthermore, if it comes to light during the pre-termination of pregnancy counselling of the child that a sexual offence has been committed against the child, the necessary steps must be taken to ensure the protection of the child.

## **10.8 Right to refuse medical treatment**

### **10.8.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

As a refusal of medical treatment may lead to a child's death or permanent damage, the Commission recommended that every child above the age 12 of sound mind and *assisted by his or her parent or guardian*, should be competent to refuse any life-sustaining medical treatment or the continuation of such treatment with regard to any specific illness from which he or she may be suffering. Furthermore, the Children's Court may be approached if the child disagrees with his or her parent or guardian that medical treatment on him or her should be refused or discontinued or where a medical practitioner believes that such treatment is necessary. The Commission is also of the view that no child may be deprived of medical treatment by reason only of religious or other beliefs unless the person who refuses to give consent can show that there is a medically accepted alternative choice.<sup>35</sup>

---

<sup>33</sup> Section 7(5) of the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act 92 of 1996.

<sup>34</sup> Section 167(1) read with section 167(4) of the Bill.

<sup>35</sup> Par. 11.9.5 of the discussion paper.

### 10.8.2 Comments received

Pro-life did not support the Commission's recommendations.

**Manamela Damons Mbanjwa inc.** (attorneys) argued that the right to give consent to medical treatment includes the right to refuse medical treatment. The respondent recommended that all children be given the right to refuse medical treatment and that the High Court as upper guardian of all minors should be approached to review such refusal. Furthermore, the child's voice must be heard and his or her age must not be a criteria to overrule a refusal to medical treatment, but the ability of a child to understand the consequences of his or her refusal and to make an informed decision should be the determining factor.

**Ms R van Zyl** did not agree that children, even with the assistance of their parents, be able to refuse medical treatment.

### 10.8.3 Evaluation and recommendations

Although the right to refuse medical treatment has been addressed in the discussion paper, the Commission sees no need to include specific provisions relating to the right to refuse medical treatment in the Children's Bill as the Children's Bill already provides that no child may be submitted to medical treatment without consent. The Commission reaffirms its preliminary recommendation that no child may be deprived of medical treatment by reason only of religious or other beliefs, unless the person who refuses to give consent can show that there is a medically accepted alternative choice. In addition, the Commission proposes that this recommendation be extended to cover a medical operation. This recommendation has been incorporated in the Children's Bill.<sup>36</sup>

---

<sup>36</sup>

Section 135(6) of the Bill.

## **CHAPTER 11**

### **THE PROTECTION OF CHILDREN AS CONSUMERS**

#### **11.1 Introduction**

Children are significant consumers of goods and services. Markets in toys, fast food, entertainment and clothes are directed explicitly at children.<sup>1</sup> In addition, children have an indirect effect on the marketplace through the influence they have on the way their parents and other adults spend money. This Chapter considers the appropriateness and effectiveness of the legal process in protecting children as consumers.

#### **11.2 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

##### **11.2.1 Protecting and informing children as consumers**

In order to educate children on their consumer rights, the Commission recommended that national child consumer education strategies should be developed for implementation in all primary and secondary schools by the Department of Education in consultation with the Department of Trade and Industry.<sup>2</sup>

##### **11.2.2 The sale of dangerous goods to children and safety standards**

In order to comply with the vision of a single comprehensive children's statute, the Commission recommended that a complete audit of national, provincial and municipal by-laws be undertaken by the Department of Trade and Industry of the various prohibitions on the sale of dangerous goods to children, that such provisions then be incorporated in the new comprehensive children's statute. The provisions incorporated can then be repealed in the various other statutes.<sup>3</sup>

The European Union product safety model is cited as appropriate to adopt because it requires manufacturers to ensure that all children's toys meet essential safety

---

<sup>1</sup> Shirley Fairall 'Who's the boss?', **Fair Lady** 25 April 2001, p. 71.

<sup>2</sup> Par. 12.3 of the discussion paper.

<sup>3</sup> Par.12.6 of the discussion paper.

requirements before being placed on the market. The European Union system is one of presumed compliance. It involves manufacturers certifying that their products comply with the law by placing a 'Communauté Européenne' (CE) label on the toy. The European Union Directive establishes safety standards for all toys designed for use by children under 14 years of age. It also stipulates general principles and particular risks as criteria against which a toy's safety is measured. The Commission therefore recommended that the European Union product safety model should be evaluated by the Department of Trade and Industry to determine whether it would provide more effective protection for children from injury caused by defective or dangerous products than the current South African regime.<sup>4</sup>

### **11.2.3 The sale of solvents and other harmful substances to children**

Introducing legislation to prevent the sale of certain harmful solvents such as glue to children is easy to propose and enact, but difficult, if not impossible, to enforce.<sup>5</sup> Also, given the practical difficulties in defining harmful substances, the Commission did not recommend the enactment of a provision in the new children's statute prohibiting the sale of harmful substances to children.<sup>6</sup>

The Commission supported the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act 140 of 1992 which make it a very serious criminal offence to manufacture and supply certain scheduled substances, to use and possess any dependence-producing, dangerous dependence-producing or undesirable dependence-producing substances (such as dagga and Mandrax), or to deal in such substances. The Commission thus condemned the sale of these to children and adults alike.<sup>7</sup>

The Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act 20 of 1992 provides for a procedure for bringing persons dependent on drugs before a magistrate. The magistrate can then commit a person dependent on drugs to a treatment centre after holding an enquiry. Such person shall then be detained in the treatment centre until being released on license or discharged or transferred or returned to any other institution in terms of any provision of the Act. The Act also provides for the transfer and retransfer of persons to and from children's homes, schools of industries or

---

<sup>4</sup> Ibid.

<sup>5</sup> See also Copeland P 'Recommendation: Ban on solvents to minors' Legal Resource Centre.

<sup>6</sup> Par.12.7.3 of the discussion paper.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid.



reform schools to treatment centres. The Commission regarded the provisions of this Act, read with sections 255 and 296 of the Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977, as adequate in dealing with children dependent on drugs and who do require treatment. The Commission therefore did not recommend the inclusion of such provisions in the new children's statute.<sup>8</sup>

As stated in the discussion paper, legislation alone is not enough to prevent the abuse of harmful substances, drugs and alcohol by children. Awareness campaigns which enlighten children, parents and the public about the danger of substance abuse should be initiated. Education on the dangers of the abuse of harmful substances, drugs and alcohol should be part of the school curriculum.<sup>9</sup> The Commission therefore supported the Health Promoting Schools Initiative and the National Drug Prevention Strategy.

#### 11.2.4 Safety at places of entertainment

In some of the newer legislation, provisions are found which protect the safety of children at places of entertainment. One such example is section 271 of the Ireland Children Bill, 1999.<sup>10</sup> It reads as follows:

(1) Where -

- (a) an entertainment for children or any entertainment at which the majority of the persons attending are children is provided,
- (b) the number of children who attend the entertainment exceeds one hundred, and
- (c) access to any part of the building in which children are accommodated is by stairs, escalators, lift or other mechanical means,

it shall be the duty of the person who provides the entertainment -

- (i) to station and keep stationed wherever necessary a sufficient number of adult attendants, properly instructed as to their duties, so as to prevent more children or other persons being admitted to any such part of the building than that part can properly accommodate,
- (ii) to control the movement of the children and other persons admitted to any such part while entering and leaving, and
- (iii) to take all other reasonable precautions for the safety of the

---

<sup>8</sup> Ibid.

<sup>9</sup> See also **Research highlights of the latest MRC Annual Report (19 September 2002)**, Medical Research Council of South Africa.

<sup>10</sup> See also section 19 of the Lesotho Children's Protection Act 6 of 1980.

children.

(2) Where the occupier of a building permits, for hire or reward, the building to be used for the purpose of an entertainment, he or she shall take all reasonable steps to ensure that the provisions of this section are complied with.

(3) If any person on whom any obligation is imposed by this section fails to fulfill it, he or she shall be liable, on summary conviction, in the case of a first offence, to a fine not exceeding £500 or imprisonment for a term not exceeding 6 months or both and, in the case of a second or subsequent offence, to a fine not exceeding £1,500 or imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or both.

(4) A member of the Garda Síochána may enter any building in which he or she has reason to believe that such an entertainment as aforesaid is being, or is about to be, provided with a view to seeing whether the provisions of this section are complied with.

(5) This section shall not apply to any entertainment given in a private residence.

Section 114 of the draft Namibia Children's Act is similar to the Ireland provision, with one addition. Sections 114(3) and (4) of the draft Act provide that, in addition to the possibility of a fine and or imprisonment as punishment for violation of the section, a court may cancel any license issued under any law for the operation of the premises for performances, entertainment, or events to a convicted person who has also been convicted within the last five years of an offence under this section. Such cancellation of a license shall also disqualify the person in question from obtaining any license for a place of entertainment for five years from the date of that person's latest conviction.

The Commission recommended that a provision similar to the Namibian provision be included in the new children's statute.<sup>11</sup>

## **11.2.5 Media regulation**

### **11.2.5.1 Television broadcast**

The stated object of the Broadcasting Act 4 of 1999 is to establish a broadcasting policy in South Africa and for that purpose to 'cater for a broad range of services and

---

<sup>11</sup> Par. 12.8 of the discussion paper.

specifically for the programming needs in respect of children, women, the youth and the disabled’.

Section 2 of the Independent Broadcasting Authority Act 153 of 1993 (the predecessor of the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa Act 13 of 2000) enjoins the Independent Broadcasting Authority (IBA) to ensure that broadcasting licensees adhere to a Code of Conduct acceptable to the Authority. In terms of section 56(1) of the 1993 Act, ‘all broadcasting licensees shall adhere to the Code of Conduct for Broadcasting Services. The existing Code of Conduct for Broadcasting Services does not provide any specific guidance on children. However, the Code of the Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa does provide that the electronic media must ‘exercise due care and responsibility in the presentation of programmes where a large number of children are likely to be part of the audience’. Apart from the Code of Conduct for Broadcasters set by the Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa, the South African Broadcasting Corporation (the SABC) adheres to the Code of Advertising Practice of the Advertising Standards Authority of SA.

The Commission recommended that the Department of Trade and Industry, in consultation with the Department of Communications and the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA), investigate the possibility of introducing legislation to compel manufacturers to install technological blocking devices in all new television sets.<sup>12</sup>

#### **11.2.5.2 Radio broadcast**

The provisions of the Broadcasting Act 4 of 1999 also apply to radio. Like commercial television stations, commercial radio broadcasters are required to comply with a code of practice.

#### **11.2.5.3 On-line services**

Section 27 of the Films and Publications Act 65 of 1996 as amended creates the offence of knowingly creating, producing, importing or being in possession of a publication or film which contains a visual presentation of child pornography. The

---

<sup>12</sup> Par. 12.9.1 of the discussion paper.

definition of 'film' is broad enough to encompass visual presentations and images relayed on the Internet. However, given its specific focus and the nature of the classification system, it is clear that the Act does not, and cannot, specifically regulate Internet material, including advertisements, accessible to children.

#### **11.2.5.4 Printed material**

Although the Films and Publications Act 65 of 1996 as amended sets out certain conditions for the advertising of a publication, it has been criticised for not protecting children effectively, especially as regards the use of the Internet. Although the classification scheme provided for by the Act does provide some form of protection to children, the administration of the scheme is reactive as it is activated by the submission of a complaint or an application. By then it is usually too late to do anything about it.

As stated in the discussion paper, the Commission will be considering all aspects relating to child pornography in its investigation into sexual offences.<sup>13</sup> The Commission, however, recommended that as an interim measure the Department of Home Affairs, as the Department responsible for the administration of the Films and Publications Act 65 of 1996 should effect the amendments to the Act agreed upon at the national workshop held in Cape Town on 12 to 14 May 2000. The Commission is convinced that these amendments will address some of the concerns relating to effective law enforcement against child pornography in South Africa. In addition the Commission recommended that when films or video material unsuitable for viewing by children or children of a certain age group are advertised, such advertisements (trailers) must be age-appropriate.<sup>14</sup>

#### **11.2.5.6 Advertising**

The Commission recommended that research on the effects of advertising on children at different ages and stages of development should be undertaken to enable the preparation of best practice guidelines for all advertisers to protect children at different ages and stages of development from harm. Furthermore, the Departments of Communications, Home Affairs, Trade and Industry, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa and the Advertising Standards Authority of

---

<sup>13</sup> Par. 12.9.4.

<sup>14</sup> Par. 12.9.4 of the discussion paper.

South Africa (ASA) should conduct this research in consultation with the relevant stakeholders and community groups, provide the results to the ASA and assist ASA to develop and refine appropriate best practice standards for distribution to advertisers.<sup>15</sup>

### 11.3 Comments received

The **Department of Health**, Pretoria, admitted that it is difficult to enforce the prohibition on the sale of harmful substances to children. The respondent, however, submitted that not legislating on the issue will open a bigger and more serious ‘can of worms’. The respondent suggested that a multi-sectoral ad-hoc committee should be established to define harmful substances, and through community involvement, a list of what harmful substances are could be developed.

### 11.4 Evaluation and recommendations

In view of the Department of Health’s comments, the Commission is of the view that the issue of the sale of harmful substances to children should be addressed in a separate investigation. The purpose of such an investigation should be to define harmful substances and to determine what legislative and/or non-legislative provisions can be introduced to regulate the sale of harmful substances to children. As no other adverse comments were received, the Commission reaffirms its preliminary recommendations. The Commission has included in the Children’s Bill provisions with regard to child safety and places of entertainment.<sup>16</sup> Furthermore, the Commission urges the various Departments and institutions referred to above to take positive steps which will give effect to the Commission’s recommendations.

---

<sup>15</sup> Par. 12.10 of the discussion paper.

<sup>16</sup> See section 143 of the Bill.

## CHAPTER 12

### CHILDREN IN ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT CIRCUMSTANCES

#### 12.1 Introduction

The term 'children in need of special protection' (CINSP) has been used in the discussion paper.<sup>1</sup> The Commission, however, decided to revert back to the term 'children in especially difficult circumstances' as this term better highlights the dilemma of the children discussed in this chapter.

The discussion paper dealt with the following commonly recognised categories of children in especially difficult circumstances:

- children living in severe poverty;
- children affected by HIV/AIDS, including orphaned children;
- children with disabilities and chronic illnesses;
- child labourers;
- children living or working on the streets;
- commercial sexually exploited children; and
- child refugees and undocumented immigrant children.

Child refugees and undocumented immigrant children are not discussed in this chapter, but are dealt with in detail in the context of the international issues facing children in chapter 21 below.

As pointed out in the discussion paper, the Commission does not suggest that children in especially difficult circumstances be dealt with as a distinct group apart from other children.<sup>2</sup> However, there is a need to examine each category of children in especially difficult circumstances in order to ensure that their special circumstances are addressed in legislation.

The children who are at issue in this chapter are those whose lives are lived daily in circumstances which place their survival, development and protection at risk. Many, if

---

<sup>1</sup> This term appears to be replacing the old term 'children in especially difficult circumstances' in modern literature.

<sup>2</sup> Par. 13.1.

not most, children in especially difficult circumstances could be considered to be in need of care in terms of section 14(4) of the Child Care Act<sup>3</sup> and would qualify in theory for protection via the conventional children's court processes. However, such children are caught up in mass-based socio-economic situations which case-by-case interventions on their own cannot satisfactorily address. Broader structural interventions are thus needed which will address the underlying causes of these children's problems and bring them within the reach of needed services.

After examination of the plight of the above identified categories of children in especially difficult circumstances, the Commission proposed certain broad-based interventions to address problems common to the vast majority of these children.<sup>4</sup> These proposals have been incorporated in the new Children's Bill.<sup>5</sup> With specific reference to children living in poverty, the Commission also recommended the inclusion of a provision on preventative measures against diseases and malnutrition (similar to section 55 of the draft Indian Children's Code Bill, 2000<sup>6</sup>) in the new Children's Bill.<sup>7</sup> Furthermore, the Commission recommends that the Minister for Social Development should urge his colleague the Minister for Education to amend the Regulations to the South African Schools Act, 1996 to include all categories of care-givers and children from child-headed households for purposes of exemption from school fees.

## **12.2 Children affected by HIV/AIDS, including orphaned children**

### **12.2.1 Overview of the proposal in Discussion Paper 103**

This section in general deals with the impact of HIV/AIDS on the ability of children to grow up in an environment which can meet their basic physical, emotional, social and educational needs and fulfill their right to family or family-like care. The following categories of children are identified as AIDS-affected children in need of special protection: children in infected households, children orphaned by AIDS, children who are HIV-positive or have AIDS, and abandoned infants.

---

<sup>3</sup> 74 of 1983.

<sup>4</sup> Par. 13.1.4.

<sup>5</sup> Section 232(1)(a)(xiv) – (xvi), 341, and 345.

<sup>6</sup> See chapter 11 of the discussion paper at p.457.

<sup>7</sup> Section 233 of the Bill.

In the discussion paper, the Commission recommended that children who are ill with AIDS should, as far as possible, be enabled to remain in the care of their own families, including the extended family network and, failing this, with care-givers in the community. As social assistance for sick children is a key form of provision to promote family-based care, the Commission recommended that family care-givers of children who are chronically and/or terminally ill, including those with AIDS, be eligible for specific social assistance to help them to meet the special needs of such children.<sup>8</sup>

As children who are HIV-positive are subjected to discrimination in a variety of contexts, the Commission recommended that the Children's Bill should provide that no person may discriminate, directly or indirectly, against a child on the basis of his or her HIV status, unless this can be shown to be fair. The Commission also recommended that the South African Schools Act, 1996 be amended to include the provisions of the National Policy on HIV/AIDS for Learners and Educators in Public Schools, and Students and Educators in further Education and Training Institutions as far as these relate to children. Furthermore, the Department of Social Development should develop a national HIV/AIDS policy for places of care and residential care facilities and that the adoption of such policy, once finalised, be a prerequisite for the registration of such facilities.<sup>9</sup>

The Commission took into account the fact that the admission of HIV-positive children to child care facilities can, once these children become ill, have enormous financial implications for such facilities. Cognisance was also taken of the fact that care facilities do not receive a subsidy from government to cater for the additional needs of HIV-positive children. This is a further constraint against admitting such children. The Commission therefore recommended that provision be made for special programme funding to be offered to care facilities that care for chronically ill children, including those with AIDS. A care facility which is a receiver of such funding should progressively adjust its environment to ensure that children with AIDS are protected from opportunistic infections.<sup>10</sup>

As stated in the discussion paper, the options for formal placement of children in

---

<sup>8</sup> Par. 13.3.7 of the discussion paper.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid.

<sup>10</sup> Ibid.



need of care and protection are inadequate to cater for the massive numbers of children who will be affected by the AIDS pandemic. For this reason, the Commission recommended that the Children's Bill should empower the Minister for Social Development to make regulations to allow for in-home support of families affected by AIDS.<sup>11</sup> This will discourage children from abandoning their education to care for dying parents and from taking on other adult responsibilities.

The discussion paper also pointed out that child-headed households will become a familiar phenomenon owing to the increase of HIV/AIDS infected adults. The Commission therefore recommended that legal recognition be given to child-headed households as a placement option for orphaned children in need of care. In order to provide support to child-headed households, the Commission also recommended that-<sup>12</sup>

- legal recognition be given to schemes in terms of which one or more appropriately selected and mandated adults are appointed as 'household mentors' over a cluster of child-headed households by the Department of Social Development, a recognised NGO or the court;
- the proposed 'household mentor' may not make decisions in respect of the child-headed household without consulting the child at the head of the household and without giving due weight to the opinions of the siblings as appropriate to their age, maturity and stage of development;
- the proposed 'household mentor' be able to access grants and other social benefits on behalf of the child-headed household; and
- the proposed 'household mentor' be accountable to the Department of Social Development or a recognised NGO or the court.

Children living in families where one or both parents are infected with HIV/AIDS are affected in various ways. For one, they are forced to abandon their education to care for ill parents or to work in order to supplement family income. The Commission therefore recommended that schools be required to identify children who are absent owing to AIDS and to refer such children to the Department of Social Development or link them to community support structures.

---

<sup>11</sup> Ibid.

<sup>12</sup> Ibid.

### 12.2.2 Comments received

**Ms Beena Chiba** submitted that child-headed households should be monitored by social workers in order to ensure that the children are not exploited by the proposed adult person (household mentor).

**Ms Annette van Loggerenberg** objected against the Commission's recommendation that legal recognition be given to child-headed households as a placement option for orphaned children in need of care. She is of the view that children cannot be given parental responsibilities over younger children.

With regard to the issue of at what age should a child be able to head a household, **Ms Sanet Van Moerkerken** suggested that children from the age of 12 years should be able to head a household. **Ms Beena Chiba** proposed that children from the age of 13 should be able to head a household, provided that the own needs of the child at the head of the household are not neglected. However, **Ms Susan Mogadima** stated that the stage at which a child should be able to head a household should not be determined by his or her age, but should depend on the maturity of the child and whether he or she is able to take on such a responsibility. She added that the availability of supervision services to a prospective child-headed household should also be a determining factor. **N E Phoyana** submitted that a social worker or multi-disciplinary team should assess whether a child is able to head a household.

With regard to the question of what the functions of the proposed household mentor should be, Ms Susan Mogadima proposed that the responsibilities of the proposed household mentor should be outlined in guidelines. Furthermore, the relationship between the children and their household mentor should be checked regularly. Ms Sanet Van Moerkerken said that a household mentor must be a responsible and reliable person and must stay near the child-headed household for which he or she is responsible. A household mentor must also be involved in training programmes. Mrs Beena Chiba submitted that a household mentor must, where practical, be responsible for the safety and protection of the children in the child-headed household for which he or she is responsible. N E Phoyana recommended that relevant training should be provided to household mentors and that social workers should provide continuous support to household mentors. Ms Susan Mogadima suggested that the proposed household mentor should also provide the children in the child headed-household for which he or she is responsible with advice, monitor

their progress in school, ensure that their basic needs are fulfilled, and determine whether the children's living environment is safe.

**Ms Susan Mogadima** did not support the recommendation that schools should be required to identify children who are absentees owing to AIDS for purposes of referring such children to the Department of Social Development or to link them with community support structures. She argued that this recommendation may isolate (stigmatise) children whose families are affected by HIV/AIDS. She proposed that a 'mentor teacher' should visit the homes of children whose families are affected by HIV/AIDS. Furthermore, these families can then be referred to the Department of Social Development should they need any assistance. Ms Mogadima emphasised that the family's right to privacy should be kept in mind. **Ms Roslyn Halkett** cautioned that this recommendation may single out children affected by HIV/AIDS. She suggested that where children are absent from school, no matter for what reason, home visits should be conducted, especially in impoverished communities. Furthermore, the Department of Education should develop systems to monitor children who are absent from school and refer them to appropriate resources where necessary.

Responding to the recommendation that a national HIV/AIDS policy for places of care and residential care facilities be developed, **Justice Edwin Cameron** emphasised the need for developing such a policy for children in institutions for mentally and physically disabled children. Justice Cameron did not agree with the recommendation that the National Policy on HIV/AIDS for Learners and Educators in Public Schools be incorporated in the South African Schools Act, 1996. He stated that the policy is currently promulgated under the National Education Policy Act, 1996. Furthermore, he argued that the circumstances surrounding HIV/AIDS develop and change regularly and rapidly. Therefore, a provision requiring that the policy be reviewed regularly and adapted to change circumstances, was specifically included. Justice Cameron submitted that, in its current form, embodied in regulations, the policy can be readily reviewed and adapted. This would not be possible should the policy be included in primary legislation - regular amendment and adaption would be much more cumbersome and time-consuming because of the parliamentary process to which primary legislation is subject.

### **12.2.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission sees merit in Ms Chiba's argument that child-headed households

should be monitored by social workers. However, the Commission is of the view that scarce social work resources should rather be concentrated on cases where there is a specific need for support and assistance. Intervention by a social worker is, however, not excluded where children in a child-headed household are being abused or are at risk of abuse.

The Commission has sympathy with Ms Loggerenberg's objection against the legal recognition of child-headed households. The Commission, however, cannot lose sight of the fact that the formal placement options for children in need of care and protection are inadequate to cater for the massive number of children orphaned by AIDS. Child-headed households also have the advantage of keeping siblings together and allow for the continuity of their relationship with the community. The Commission accordingly retains its preliminary recommendation that legal recognition be given to child-headed households.<sup>13</sup>

The Commission agrees with Ms Mogadima's suggestion that the stage at which a child should be able to head a household should not be dependent on his or her age. The Commission is of the view that the question of whether a child is able to head a household should depend on the maturity of the child and the availability of a support structure. The Commission accordingly recommends that the new Children's Bill should provide for the necessary support structure in order to ensure the survival of child-headed households.<sup>14</sup> Furthermore, the new Children's Bill should provide for the monitoring of children in child-headed households.<sup>15</sup> In addition, the Commission recommends that the Department of Social Development should be responsible for developing broad minimum criteria for the selection and training of adult persons for appointment over child-headed households.

In light of the comments received from Ms Mogadima and Ms Halkett, the Commission has reconsidered its proposal regarding the identification of children who are absent from school due to being affected by HIV/AIDS. The Commission accordingly recommends that schools should be required, on a confidential basis, to identify children who are frequently absent from school because of being in need of care and protection.<sup>16</sup> Furthermore, schools should take all reasonable steps to assist these children in returning to school or discourage them from leaving

---

<sup>13</sup> Section 234(1) of the Bill.

<sup>14</sup> Section 234(2) – (4).

<sup>15</sup> Sections 235(a)(i) and 235(b) – (e).

<sup>16</sup> Section 236(a) of the Bill.

school.<sup>17</sup> Schools must also submit the names and addresses of these children to the provincial heads of the Department of Social Development.<sup>18</sup> In order to ensure that the HIV status of these children and that of their families remain confidential, the Commission further recommends that every child should have the right to confidentiality regarding his or her health status and the health status of his or her parent, care-giver or family member.<sup>19</sup>

The Commission takes cognisance of Justice Cameron's view that there is a need to develop a national HIV/AIDS policy for institutions designated for mentally and physically disabled children. However, most of these facilities are registered with either the Department of Health or the Department of Education. The Commission therefore recommends that the Minister for Social Development should urge his colleagues, the Ministers for Health and for Education, to develop a national HIV/AIDS policy for institutions designated for mentally and physically disabled children registered with their Departments.

In light of Justice Cameron's concern about the Commission's recommendation that the provisions of the National Policy on HIV/AIDS for Learners and Educators in Public Schools, and Students and Educators in further Education and Training Institutions as far as these relate to children be incorporated in the South African Schools Act, 1996, the Commission abandons this recommendation.

As no other adverse comments were received, the Commission retains the rest of its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper. These recommendations have been incorporated in the Children's Bill where appropriate.<sup>20</sup>

## **12.3 Children with disabilities**

### **12.3.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

In the discussion paper, the Commission expressed the view that children with disabilities should be enabled to live with their families. The Commission accordingly recommended that parents should be empowered to care for their children at home. This could be achieved by the establishment of rehabilitation and health care

---

<sup>17</sup> Section 236(b) of the Bill.

<sup>18</sup> Section 236(c) of the Bill.

<sup>19</sup> Section 22(b) of the Bill.

<sup>20</sup> Sections 346 and 349 of the Bill.

services within communities, by making schools accessible for children with disabilities, by the provision of assistive devices free of charge or at an affordable cost, and by developing support programmes for parents of children with disabilities. Furthermore, an integrated approach must be followed in the delivery of rehabilitation services and the role and responsibilities of each Department towards the rehabilitation of children with disabilities should be clearly outlined.<sup>21</sup>

As pointed out in the discussion paper, children with disabilities are often forced into institutions for the disabled as existing residential care facilities are not 'disabled friendly'. Residential care facilities registered in terms of the Child Care Act are run by NGOs. Most of these NGOs are under-resourced and are battling to manage with their existing services. Thus, absorbing children with disabilities into residential care facilities can have enormous resourcing implications for such facilities. Also, residential care facilities receive no special subsidies for the additional cost involve in caring for children with special needs. The Commission therefore recommended that special programme funding be offered to residential care facilities that care for children with special needs for the purpose of making them fully accessible to children with disabilities. This means that a residential care facility which would be a receiver of the proposed funding will have to progressively adjust its programmes and environment in such a manner that will allow, to the maximum extent possible, the accommodation and care of children with disabilities. It was further recommended that staff of residential care facilities who work with children should receive in-house training in order to provide a comprehensive and inclusive service delivery to all children, including children with disabilities.<sup>22</sup>

The discussion paper highlighted that in terms of the Child Care Act, the children's court has the power to place children with special needs, who are found to be in need of care, in facilities established under the Child Care Act only. The Commission therefore recommended that the children's court should be empowered to make orders for the placement of children with special needs, who are found to be in need of care, in care facilities registered by the Department of Health or Education where such facilities are the best available resources for the meeting of their needs.<sup>23</sup>

---

<sup>21</sup> Par.13.4.7 of the discussion paper.

<sup>22</sup> Ibid.

<sup>23</sup> Ibid.

As public transport is inaccessible for most children with disabilities, the Commission recommended that the Department of Transport should budget for the transportation of children with disabilities (for whom public transport is inaccessible) to school. This should include the provision of accessible vehicles, and coupons for those children who cannot afford to pay for transport.<sup>24</sup>

In order to ensure the provision of basic education for children with disabilities in an inclusive environment, the Commission recommended that provisions along the directions set out in the Education White Paper 6 on Special Needs Education<sup>25</sup> be included in the South African Schools Act.<sup>26</sup>

The Commission further recommended as follows:<sup>27</sup>

- The definition of a 'care-dependent child' in the Social Assistance Act<sup>28</sup> should be amended to remove the reference to permanent (24-hour) care.
- Social assistance to children with disabilities should be determined by a needs test, which considers the extra needs and cost incurred by or in respect of the child owing to his or her disability;
- Where the circumstances of the child with a disability and that of his or her family demand that the disabled child be placed in a special home, the care dependency grant should not be taken away if this enables the child's parent or guardian to pay for the hostel fees.
- The new children's statute should recognise sign language as deaf children's first and natural language and as the primary medium of their communication.
- Sign language services should be made available to children with hearing disabilities at Domestic, Children and Sexual Offences Investigation (DCS) Units and during police and court processes and that, as far as possible, sign language interpreters should be used who understand the dialect used by the deaf child.
- Sign language interpreters for the children's court must receive training in legal interpreting and special skills in interpreting for children. In other words, sign language interpreters must understand the dialect of the child since the

---

<sup>24</sup> Ibid.

<sup>25</sup> July 2001.

<sup>26</sup> Par. 13.4.7 of the discussion paper.

<sup>27</sup> Ibid.

<sup>28</sup> 59 of 1992.

signs used by the deaf child originate in a different reference framework from the one being used by a deaf adult.

- The Department of Justice, in conjunction with the Department of Social Development, should design appropriate questioning techniques during court and police processes for children with intellectual disabilities.

### 12.3.2 Comments received

**Ms Sally Rowney** supported the Commission's recommendation that basic education be provided to children with disabilities in an inclusive environment. The respondent mentioned that there are currently a number of activities taking place which are aimed at the introduction of extensive training for educators to deal with learners who have special educational needs.

The **Consortium** endorsed the Commission's recommendations in respect of children with disabilities. The Consortium proposed that the definition of a 'care-dependent child' be amended to replace the words 'severe disability' with the words 'chronic health condition'. This, in the Consortium's view, will extend the eligibility criteria to children with other disabilities and chronic illnesses such as those with HIV/AIDS.

**Durban Children's Society** welcomed the recommendation that the children's court be empowered to place children with special needs, who are found to be in need of care, in care facilities registered by the Departments of Health or Education.

### 12.3.3 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission is of the view that, in light of limited resources, the provision of social assistance should not be extended to children with mild disabilities. The Commission accordingly recommends that only children with moderate to severe disabilities should be eligible for social assistance.<sup>29</sup>

The Commission retains the rest of its preliminary recommendations. These recommendations have been incorporated in the new Children's Bill.<sup>30</sup> The Commission further recommends that children with chronic illnesses (including those

<sup>29</sup> Section 346 of the Bill. The term 'supplementary special needs grant' replaces the term 'care dependency grant' as used in the Social Assistance Act.

<sup>30</sup> Sections 25, 175(1)(h), 232(1)(a)(iv) – (v) and 346.



with HIV/AIDS) be provided with access to health care services.<sup>31</sup> Also, the new Children's Bill should provide for the monitoring of children with disabilities and chronic illnesses.<sup>32</sup>

## **12.4 Child Labour**

### **12.4.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

As stated in the discussion paper, abusive child labour in South Africa is practised in a number of sectors, including commercial agriculture, street trading, entertainment and modelling, the taxi industry, brickyards, domestic service and prostitution. South Africa has also very few programmes aimed specifically at removing children from labour or protecting them within the labour context.<sup>33</sup>

Section 52A of the Child Care Act provides that no person may employ or give work to any child under the age of 15 years. Similarly, section 43 of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act (BCEA)<sup>34</sup> stipulates that no person may employ a child who is under 15 years of age; or who is under the minimum school-leaving age in terms of any law, if this is 15 or older. This Act further states that no person may employ a child in employment that is inappropriate for a person of that age, and that places at risk a child's well-being, education, physical or mental health, or spiritual, moral or social development. Despite these provisions, it would appear that both section 52A of the Child Care Act and section 43 of the BCEA are ignored on a wide scale. The Child Care Act lacks specific provisions designed for the protection of children who are in illegal employment, except in the case of prostitution. Neither does it provide for any means to enable such children to survive without being prematurely employed. Nor does it address the plight of those who are not in employment, but are nevertheless engaged in toil which is inappropriate for their age and stage of development. For these reasons the Commission recommended as follows:<sup>35</sup>

- That 'employment' be clearly defined so as to overcome present loopholes in labour legislation as it applies to children, and to avoid blocking survival

---

<sup>31</sup> Section 232 (1)(a)(iv) of the Bill.

<sup>32</sup> Section 235(a)(iv) and (b) – (e).

<sup>33</sup> Par. 13.5.1.

<sup>34</sup> 75 of 1997.

<sup>35</sup> Par. 13.5.8 of the discussion paper.

strategies initiated by children themselves (such as those living on the streets).

- That the provisions of the BCEA in relation to the minimum age for employment, the prohibition of involvement of children in work which is likely to be harmful to their development, and sectoral determinations which may be made concerning the employment of children in the fields of advertising, sports, artistic or cultural activities, be supported in the comprehensive children's statute.
- That there be collaboration between the Departments of Labour, Social Development and Education in the drawing up and implementation of Regulations with regard to child labour.
- That social programmes allowing for educational work by young persons be provided. Thus, work which is carried out within the framework of a programme registered in terms of the Nonprofit Organisations Act and that is designed to promote personal development and vocational training ought not to be deemed to constitute illegal child labour.
- That involvement of a child in illegal employment or any form of inappropriate or hazardous work be grounds for the opening of proceedings in the child and family court.
- That the Departments of Labour, Social Development, Education, Safety and Security and Justice be required to submit to the Treasury a joint annual estimate of the number of children in each province who are expected to be involved in illegal employment generally, and in the designated 'worst forms' of child labour specifically, together with an estimate of the costs of the interventions which will be required for enforcement of the law and rehabilitation of these children in the year in question.
- That the Departments of Labour and Social Development be empowered to make funds available to NGOs to operate programmes for the specific purpose of intervening in child labour and promoting the rehabilitation of children who have been extricated from situations of child labour - such allocations to be co-ordinated and monitored through an appropriate interdepartmental process.
- That in accordance with the principle of early intervention, all schools be required to identify those children in their area who are not attending school regularly and who are suspected to be working, to take appropriate action, where necessary in cooperation with the Departments of Labour and/or Social Development, to ensure their attendance.

- That the Department of Education be required to identify schools where excessive use is being made of children as a source of labour for the purpose of cleaning and maintenance tasks, and to ensure that sufficient adults are employed to carry out these tasks.
- That the Departments of Mineral and Energy Affairs, Water Affairs and Forestry, and Land Affairs be required to identify areas which must be given priority for service delivery, in order to free children from excessive involvement in fetching wood and water.
- That penalties for the illegal employment of children and the use of any form of exploitative child labour be significantly increased, and provision be made for the payment of the costs of rehabilitation of child workers by offenders.
- That, in compliance with ILO Convention 182, all forms of child slavery and forced or compulsory labour including debt bondage be specifically designated as criminal offences.
- That money or goods acquired through the use of illegal child labour be subject to confiscation by the Assets Forfeiture Unit.

#### **12.4.2 Comments received**

Several respondents to the discussion paper argued that, although children should be protected against exploitative labour practices, children must be allowed to help with core household duties and to earn extra pocket money by doing light work which will not interfere with their education or hazardously affect their well-being. For example, **Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** submitted that healthy labour opportunities for children exist that are not limited to NGO work. The respondent recommended that the law should allow for healthy situations such as allowing children to earn extra pocket money by putting items in plastic bags at tills in supermarkets during Saturday mornings. These situations can be regulated by restricting the times during which a child may be employed and by limiting the duration of working hours.

#### **12.4.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission takes note of the concerns raised that the Children's Bill should not obstruct children from earning extra pocket money by doing light work. However, the Basic Conditions of Employment Act (Act No. 75 of 1997) does not allow the employment of a child who is under 15 years of age or under the minimum school

leaving age, even if such employment does not place at risk the child's well-being. The Commission, however, recommends that the prohibition on child labour should not prevent the engagement of a child, whether for reward or not, in an advertisement, in sport or in an artistic or cultural event, provided that such engagement does not place the child's well-being, education, physical or mental health, spiritual, moral or social development at risk.<sup>36</sup> The Commission realises that its recommendation that the Department of Education be required to identify schools where excessive use is being made of children as a source of labour is impractical as it would be difficult for the provincial heads of education to identify such schools. This recommendation is accordingly abandoned. The Commission retains the rest of its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper. These recommendations have been incorporated in the Children's Bill.<sup>37</sup>

## **12.5 Children living or working on the streets**

### **12.5.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

The Commission recommended that the following definition of a street child be included in the new children's statute: 'A person under the age of 18 who, for reasons which may include abuse, community upheaval and/or poverty, leaves his or her family or community permanently to survive on the streets, or alternatively begs or works on the street but returns home at night, and who experiences inadequate care and protection from adults.'<sup>38</sup>

As the early identification of children at risk is crucial for effective prevention, the Commission recommended that each school should be responsible for identifying children at risk of dropping out of school as well as children at risk of abuse, and should take appropriate action, where necessary in cooperation with the Department of Social Development.<sup>39</sup> Furthermore, Local Government should be accorded the following functions:<sup>40</sup>

---

<sup>36</sup> Section 240(2)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>37</sup> Sections 166(a)(ii), 232(1)(a)(vi), 236, 240 and 241. See also section 1 for the definition of 'employ'.

<sup>38</sup> Par. 13.6.5 of the discussion paper.

<sup>39</sup> Ibid.

<sup>40</sup> Ibid.

- Each local government must estimate the number of street children in its area of jurisdiction.
- Each local government must then furnish these figures to the Department of Education.
- The Department of Education must then design appropriate programmes for the schooling of those children living or working on the streets.
- The Department of Education should budget for the financing of such programmes.
- Each local government may develop and support programmes and/or make available resources to NGOs to assist with the integration of children living on the street.
- Each local government may identify services available and assist children living or working on the streets in its area of jurisdiction.

The discussion paper stated that street children often find it difficult to reintegrate into mainstream schooling, and that an alternative form of education is needed to deal holistically with the needs of such children. The Commission accordingly recommended that the South African Schools Act<sup>41</sup> be amended to make provision for the creation of non-formal educational structures to cater for the needs of street children and other out-of-school learners. Furthermore, that the Department of Education should budget for the establishment of such structures and should develop criteria for their accreditation or registration.<sup>42</sup>

The discussion paper also highlighted the fact that street children often find it difficult to gain access to health care services because they do not have adult caregivers to assist them and who can give permission for medical treatment, and also because of prejudice on the part of some health care workers. In order to make health care services more accessible to street children, the Commission recommended that -<sup>43</sup>

- If a medical practitioner or nurse at a hospital considers it necessary for a street child to undergo an operation or to be submitted to any treatment that requires prior consent of such child's parent or guardian, whether such operation or treatment is *urgent or not*, and the parent or guardian cannot be

---

<sup>41</sup> 84 of 1996.

<sup>42</sup> Ibid.

<sup>43</sup> Ibid.

found, the superintendent of that hospital or person acting on his or her behalf may give the necessary consent.

- The Provincial Departments of Health should budget for appropriate basic health care programmes for all children, including street children.
- As not all street children are accommodated in shelters or frequent a drop-in centre where they will have access to health care services or from where they can be transported to hospital if needed, appropriate basic health care programmes should, where necessary, include the use of mobile clinics (vehicle/staff) in order to provide medical care to children on the street, especially to those far from a drop-in centre. Mobile clinics should also be made available to all other children for whom basic health care services are inaccessible due to distance.

The Commission recommended that a child who is caused or allowed to beg should be listed as a child in need of care. The discussion paper further invited comments as to whether it should be a criminal offence for a non-family member who causes or allows a child to beg.<sup>44</sup>

As pointed out in the discussion paper, street children, particularly but not exclusively female street children, are exploited in the sex industry through child prostitution, child pornography and trafficking. Many are drawn into the formal system of prostitution very soon after arriving in the city. Children who have been sexually exploited are dealt with as children in need of care in terms of the Child Care Act. Although in theory the Child Care Act can be used to protect children caught up in commercial sexual exploitation, in practice the Act does not adequately protect these children. There is also a lack of rehabilitative programmes to assist street children involved in commercial sex work. The Commission accordingly recommended as follows:<sup>45</sup>

- Each local government must provide an annual estimate of the number of children, including street children, involved in commercial sex work in its area of jurisdiction.
- Each local government must then furnish these figures to the Department of Social Development.

---

<sup>44</sup> Ibid.

<sup>45</sup> Ibid.

- Each provincial Department of Social Development must then budget for the development and implementation of rehabilitative programmes to address the specific needs of these children.

Although the insertion of the word ‘shelter’ into the Child Care Act makes some provision for the appropriate care of street children, it is narrowly focussed and does not accommodate other street children interventions. The Commission therefore recommended that regulations governing outreach programmes, drop-in centres, shelters and halfway homes be drafted.<sup>46</sup>

Finally, the Commission recommended that counselling be done with both the child and the family before and after reintegration in order to prepare them for the moment of reintegration and to ensure that the child does not leave the family home and community again. Furthermore, a social service inquiry should be conducted to determine why the child left home and to address the issues that have caused the child to leave the family home.<sup>47</sup>

### 12.5.2 Comments received

The **Consortium** supported the Commission’s recommendations with regard to the definition of a ‘street child’, the call for effective preventative measures and services for street children, access to health and educational facilities, listing a child who begs as a child in need of care, and the proposed functions for local authorities. The Consortium suggested that street children above a certain age, e.g. 12 years should be entitled to receive and administer the proposed universal child grant without adult assistance.<sup>48</sup> Alternatively, street children shelters should receive it on their behalf.

**Ms Susan Mogadima** and **N E Phoyana** also supported the Commission’s proposed definition of a street child. **Mrs Beena Chiba** submitted that the word ‘permanently’ be deleted from the proposed definition as reunification services are rendered to street children and some of these children do return to their families.

**Ms Annette van Loggerenberg** recommended that prevention and early intervention programmes should be a prerequisite for facilities dealing with street

---

<sup>46</sup> Ibid.

<sup>47</sup> Ibid.

<sup>48</sup> See Chapter 24 above for a detailed discussion on the Commission’s recommendation regards a universal child grant.

children. These facilities should also have therapeutic services and family reunification programmes in place. Furthermore, shelters should also consider having in place life skills programmes and job skills training.

**Ms Sanet Van Moerkerken, Ms Beena Chiba, and N E Phoyana** agreed with the Commission's recommendation that provision be made for the creation of non-formal educational structures to cater for the needs of street children and other out-of-school learners. **Ms Sally Rowney**, however, pointed out that the implementability of this recommendation depends on financial, legislative and structural constraints and needs to be debated with the national Department of Education. She mentioned that from the years 1996-1998, an RDP project, the New Nation School in Johannesburg was established as a pilot school for street children in order to encourage the reintegration of street children back into society. She stated that this school is still operational.

**Mrs Beena Chiba and N E Phoyana** accepted the recommendation that a child who is caused or allowed to beg should be listed as a child in need of care.

The majority of the respondents to the discussion paper were of the view that it should be a criminal offence for anyone who causes or allows a child to beg. **Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** proposed that allowing or causing a child to beg should be an offence only when suitable NGO or State help is available to parents. On the other hand, the **Department of Social Development**, Free State, suggested that only non-family members who cause children to beg should be guilty of committing an offence. The **Consortium** strongly opposed making it a criminal offence for any parent or guardian who causes or allows a child to beg. The Consortium proposed that the emphasis should rather be placed on government's obligation to improve the circumstances of poor families.

**Department of Health**, Pretoria, suggested that social workers and primary health care nurses should work as a team to do follow-up home visits in order to assess the child and family interaction post reunification. The respondent stated that the lack of follow-up visits has resulted in secondary traumatising, with some of the children committing suicide to escape recurring problems.

### **12.5.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission agrees with the suggestion made by Mrs Chiba that the word



'permanently' be deleted from the proposed definition of a street child as reunification services must indeed be rendered to street children where necessary.

The Commission has given due consideration to the proposal that it should be a criminal offence for persons who cause or allow children to beg. Given the fact that poverty often forces parents or care-givers to cause their children to beg, the Commission does not consider it appropriate to make it a criminal offence for any parent or care-giver who causes or allows a child to beg. The Commission is also hesitant to make it a criminal offence for non-family members who cause or allow a child to beg as such acts would often be poverty driven. The Commission therefore agrees with the Consortium's suggestion that the circumstances of poor families should be improved.

As no other adverse comments were received, the Commission retains the rest of its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper. These recommendations have been incorporated in the new Children's Bill.<sup>49</sup> In addition to the recommendations made in the discussion paper, the Children's Bill also contains provisions relating to the operation of shelters and drop-in centres.<sup>50</sup>

## **12.6 Commercial sexual exploitation of children**

### **12.6.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

This section focuses on the care and protection of children who have been, are being or are in danger of being sexually exploited for commercial purposes, as a category of children in especially difficult circumstances. Traditionally, commercial sexual exploitation of children is divided into three categories, namely child prostitution, child pornography and the trafficking of children for sexual exploitation. There is no rigid distinction between these categories as children can also be trafficked for more than one of the stated purposes. The Commission has critically analysed the issue of commercial sexual exploitation in its investigation into Sexual Offences and has decided to incorporate provisions criminalising commercial sexual exploitation in the new sexual offences legislation and not in the new Children's Bill. The Commission has, however, recommended the inclusion, in the new Children's Bill, of a general provision criminalising the trafficking of children. Trafficking for commercial sexual

<sup>49</sup> Sections 166(c)(iii), 232(1)(a)(viii) - (x) and (xiv), 235(a)(iii) and (b) - (e), 236, 237, and 238. See also section 1 for the definition of a 'street child'.

<sup>50</sup> Sections 244 - 256.

exploitation would be but one of the possible forms such an indictment can take.

Research shows that South African children are increasingly being trafficked by their own parents into slavery or prostitution in order to generate an income or to pay off a debt.<sup>51</sup> For this reason, the Commission recommended that if a court finds that a child has been trafficked for purposes of commercial sexual exploitation by his or her parents or any other person legally responsible for the child, all parental rights of that person may be suspended pending an enquiry, that the court holding such an enquiry may terminate all parental rights, and that the child immediately be placed in alternative care.<sup>52</sup>

As stated in the discussion paper, the Commission's principal approach to child prostitution is that the child prostitute is not a criminal, but is a child in need of care and protection and should be brought before the children's court. With regard to child pornography, the Commission recommended that an obligation be placed on Internet service providers not to allow child pornography on their servers.<sup>53</sup>

With regard to rehabilitative programmes, the Commission recommended that the provincial Departments of Social Development should determine the extent of the problem (the number of children involve in commercial sex work) and should budget for rehabilitative programmes.<sup>54</sup>

A children's court should also have the discretion to order that a child attend a rehabilitation programme. Rehabilitation programmes should also include activities for skills development which will enable young children to find employment after successful completion of the rehabilitation programme. Children who voluntarily leave prostitution should also have access to such rehabilitation programmes.<sup>55</sup>

The Commission also recommended that children should be sensitised and educated to consciously detect and identify risk factors or situations making them vulnerable to

---

<sup>51</sup> Molo Songololo **The trafficking of Children for Purposes of Sexual Exploitation – South Africa** August 2000, p.34; Rose Barnes –September, Anne Mayne and Ingrid Brown-Adam (eds) **The National Consultative Conference against the Sexual Exploitation of children** 16 – 18 March 1999, section III.

<sup>52</sup> Par. 13.7.4 of the discussion paper.

<sup>53</sup> Par. 13.7.6.4 of the discussion paper.

<sup>54</sup> Par 13.7.7 of the discussion paper.

<sup>55</sup> Ibid.

commercial sexual exploitation. Children should be encouraged to seek help and assistance if they are victims of sexual exploitation and organisations that render services to victims of sexual abuse should be publicised. Furthermore, the public should be educated on the adverse and long-lasting consequences of any form of sexual abuse and exploitation of children.<sup>56</sup>

### 12.6.2 Comments received

**Mrs Beena Chiba, N E Phoyana, Ms Sanet Van Moerkerken and Ms Susan Mogadima** agreed with the Commission's recommendations. **Department of Health**, Pretoria, also supported the Commission's recommendations, particularly aspects pertaining to rehabilitation services for children who are victims of commercial sexual exploitation.

**SWEAT** supported the inclusion of a general provision criminalising the trafficking of children in the new children's statute.

**SWEAT** also endorsed the Commission's approach to child prostitution, i.e. that a child prostitute is not a criminal, but a child in need of care. The respondent mentioned that there are almost no appropriate or effective services available to child prostitutes. The respondent suggested that in addition to the Commission's recommendation that the Department of Social Development must budget for rehabilitative programmes to address the specific needs of child prostitutes, the Department of Social Development should play a central role in developing models of intervention. The development of these models should be done in consultation with children's rights NGOs and other groups working with children involved in prostitution. These models should cater for the diverse needs of child prostitutes and should take cognisance of the fact that some children are coerced into selling sex, whereas others sell sex of their own initiative. The respondent pointed out that child prostitutes between the ages of 16 and 18 are often already sexually active (outside their prostitution activities). Thus, services should also be developed to cater for the needs of these children. The respondent suggested that the words 'rehabilitative programmes' be replaced with the words 'exit programmes'. Furthermore, exit programmes should be geared towards encouraging voluntary participation in the programme and should ideally provide children with marketable skills. The purpose of exit programmes should be to reintegrate child prostitutes into mainstream society and should not stigmatise or isolate them.

---

<sup>56</sup> Ibid.

**SWEAT** did not support the recommendation that the children's court should have a discretion to order that a child attend a rehabilitative programme. The respondent feared that the court may exercise this discretion too frequently. The respondent thus recommended that where it comes to light that a child is involved in prostitution, the child and his or her family or care-giver should be provided with information on programmes specifically designed for former child prostitutes. The respondent further proposed that persons or organisations providing services to child prostitutes be trained with regards the diverse needs of child prostitutes.

**SWEAT** applauded the Commission's approach that adult sex workers are not per se unfit parents and that children of adult sex workers are not necessarily children in need of care.<sup>57</sup> The respondent suggested that social workers and other persons working with children be informed that the fact that a parent is a sex worker, is of itself not a ground to consider the parent as being unfit.

The **Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) Investigation Unit** of the S A Police Services mentioned that it is investigating cases where children are being taken from the Democratic Republic of the Congo and Zimbabwe and are then kept in flats in the Hillbrow and Berea areas until their parents who are illegally in South Africa pay ransom. The respondent added that although these children are removed from the flats, the suspects are, owing to the lack of legislation, only fined on a lesser charge of contravening border control legislation and thus continue with their trade. The respondent also mentioned that children are removed via Form 4 from homes in the Southern suburbs of Johannesburg from which child prostitution is facilitated. However, the perpetrators are later released as these children will not testify against them because they are often emotionally, financially and most often drug-dependant on the so-called pimp. The respondent thus believed that the lack of legislation makes the Form 4 a useless document. In order to address the situation, the respondent recommended that the new child care legislation should include a provision that a person must be able to justify his or her 'possession' of a child, and if a person cannot provide a reasonable explanation for such 'possession', he or she should be guilty of an offence. Furthermore, the following questions could be asked to determine whether a person is rightfully in control of a child:

---

<sup>57</sup> Par. 13.7.5.5 of the discussion paper.

- how long have you known this child?;
- where does the child live?;
- whom does the child live with?;
- who is/are the child's parent(s)?

The respondent stated that the following persons would not be found guilty of an offence:

- a person who has signed a Form 4;
- a person who is a parent or guardian;
- a person who has the permission of the child's parent(s) or guardian(s);
- a person transporting a child to the SAPS or to social services.

### **12.6.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

With reference to SWEAT's comments on rehabilitative programmes, the Commission prefers to use the term 'outreach programmes' as this term places the focus on the support and protection of children subject to commercial sexual exploitation. The Commission accordingly recommends that counselling and outreach programmes should be provided to children subject to commercial sexual exploitation.<sup>58</sup> Obviously, outreach programmes should cater for the diverse needs of children involved in commercial sexual activities.

The Commission appreciates that it is difficult for the South African Police Service to ensure the prosecution of perpetrators who traffic children for purposes of prostitution in instances where children refuse to testify. However, the new Children's Bill deals with the protection of children and does not focus on the prosecution of perpetrators. The Commission therefore recommends that the respondent's concern be addressed in terms of the new sexual offences legislation. The Commission would like to point out that, although it would be difficult to prosecute perpetrators in the absence of a child's testimony, it would not be difficult for the court to find the child as a child in need of care and to make an appropriate order to ensure the child's protection.

The Commission further endorses its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper. These recommendations have been incorporated into the new Children's Bill.<sup>59</sup> The Commission further recommends that municipalities should be

<sup>58</sup> Section 232(1)(a)(xiii) of the Bill.

<sup>59</sup> Sections 232(1)(a)(xi), 239 and 317.

responsible for monitoring children subject to commercial sexual exploitation.<sup>60</sup>

---

<sup>60</sup> Section 235(a)(v) and (b) – (e) of the Bill.

## CHAPTER 13

### THE PROTECTION OF CHILDREN CAUGHT UP IN THE DIVORCE / SEPARATION OF THEIR PARENTS

#### 13.1 Introduction

This Chapter focuses on the care and protection of children who are, or who have been, caught up in the conflict surrounding the divorce or separation of their parents, as a category of children in need of special protection.<sup>1</sup> As these children do have parents who sometimes do go to extreme measures to maintain a relationship with a child, this is one area where the Commission feel a little effort can go a long way to diffuse tension in the family home and improve the well-being of the children involved.

#### 13.2 Improving outcomes for children

##### 13.2.1 Hearing children's voices

Section 6(4) of the Divorce Act<sup>2</sup> empowers a court to appoint a legal practitioner to represent a child at divorce proceedings and to order the parties or one of them to pay the costs of such representation. The Commission stated that it would like to see this provision being used more often. The Commission also recommended that section 6 of the Divorce Act be amended to give a court the authority to appoint an interested third party, such as a member of the child's (extended) family, to support a child experiencing difficulties during parental separation or divorce in a manner determined by the court. Such support can involve a person being allocated temporary parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the child concerned.<sup>3</sup>

While it is one of the key functions of the Family Advocate to canvass and ascertain the genuine wishes of the child and to communicate these to the court, the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act<sup>4</sup> does not require the Family Advocate or the Family

---

<sup>1</sup> The **White Paper for Social Welfare** (p.41, para 38 and 39) identifies children of divorced and divorcing parents as a vulnerable group that require special attention.

<sup>2</sup> 70 of 1979.

<sup>3</sup> Par. 14.5 p. 650 of the discussion paper.

<sup>4</sup> 24 of 1987.

Counselor to hear the views of the child. The Commission stated that a simple amendment to the regulations to the Act to provide for the canvassing and recording of the child's views, where appropriate and if the child so wishes, would go a long way towards solving this problem. However, special care must be taken to ensure that children are not forced to choose between their parents.<sup>5</sup>

The respondents who commented on this section supported the Commission's recommendations. Some of the respondents also made additional recommendations. Responding to the Commission's recommendation that the court should be empowered to appoint an interested third party, such as a member of the child's (extended) family, to support a child experiencing difficulties during parental separation or divorce, the **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** recommended that the appointment of an interested third party should not be restricted to family members, but should include other persons such as psychologists. The **Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** (Community Law Centre, UWC) supported the latter recommendation and added that the third party must be chosen with careful consideration and must be someone to whom the child is close. Such a person should also be made aware of the functions and duties of the staff members in both the Department of Social Development and the children's court, so that should a situation arise which might merit the intervention of a social worker or the children's court, such person would know whom to approach. The Commission agrees that the proposed interested third party to support a child experiencing difficulties during parental separation or divorce should not be restricted to family members. However, the appointment of professionals such as psychologists as interested third parties may have cost implications. An option would be to empower the court to order both or one of the parents to pay the fees of an interested third party appointed in his or her professional capacity.

The **Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** (Community Law Centre, UWC) pointed out that the courts, probably because of the expense that would result to the parties, seldom make use of section 6(4) of the Divorce Act which provides that the court may appoint a legal practitioner to represent a child at the proceedings. Section 6(4) further stipulates that the court may order one or both of the parents *to pay the costs of the legal representative* appointed for the child. Thus, only children of the wealthy might be able to afford separate legal representation in divorce proceedings. The respondent proposed that in order to ensure that all

---

<sup>5</sup> Par. 14.5. p.651 of the discussion paper.



children are given a voice in divorce proceedings or are represented by a legal representative; the State must appoint, at state expense, a legal representative. This, in the respondent's view, will be in accordance with the constitutional right of children in section 28(1)(h) of the Constitution,<sup>6</sup> and section 8A of the Child Care Act.<sup>7</sup> Furthermore, guidelines need to be drafted in order to inform the court as to when a child might need separate legal representation. The Commission has given due consideration to the issue of whether children in divorce proceedings should be provided with legal representation at state expense. In light of the comments made by the Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project, the Commission is of the view that the decision whether to appoint a legal representative for a child at divorce proceedings should not be based on whether both or one of the parents can afford to pay for such legal representation, but should be based on whether the court considers the appointment of a legal representative to be in the best interests of the child and whether the lack of legal representation would result in substantial injustice to the child. The Commission accordingly recommends that section 6(4) of the Divorce Act be amended to stipulate that the court may appoint a legal representative for a child at divorce proceedings and may order the parties or any one of them to pay the costs of the representation. However, if the court is satisfied that neither of the parties can afford to pay for such legal representation, the court must appoint a legal representative, at state expense, if substantial injustice would otherwise result. Furthermore, the Commission is of the view that Regulation 4A(1) to the Child Care Act provides adequate guidelines as to when separate legal representation might be needed for a child.

The Commission has stated that the need for legal representation does not end with divorce. Changed circumstances may require changes in the original custody and access arrangements. Without someone to help give the children an opportunity to speak about their needs and voice their concerns, these sometimes dangerous situations are allowed to continue, and children are put at risk. Responding to this, the Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project (Community Law Centre, UWC) submitted that although they agree with this statement, the Commission needs to make recommendations as to how children who find themselves in such situations can access a legal representative and the courts, and how the original custody or access arrangements can be varied.

The **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** welcomed the recommendation that

---

<sup>6</sup> Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act 108 of 1996.

<sup>7</sup> 74 of 1983.

section 6 of the Divorce Act be used more frequently. The respondent also supported the recommendation that the regulations should provide for the canvassing and recording of the child's views, where appropriate and if the child so wishes.

### 13.2.2 Reducing conflict

In its attempt to find ways to reduce conflict between divorcing or separating parents, for the benefit of the children, the Commission recommended that the court should start with the assumption that, in the absence of issues regarding the child's physical, mental or emotional safety, the continued involvement of both parents in the child's life is the desired goal: this involvement ideally should be of the same quality post-separation as pre-separation. While not excluding the possibility of joint custody, the Commission stated that it is not equating the need of the child for the continued involvement of *both* his or her parents in his or her upbringing with the call for joint custody as the presumptive starting-point in divorce.<sup>8</sup>

The use of the words 'custody', 'sole custody', 'guardianship', 'sole guardianship' and 'access' in the Divorce Act promote a potentially damaging sense of winners and losers. The use of more neutral language would help reduce conflict and let both parents focus on their responsibilities rather than their rights. The Commission therefore recommended that the terms 'custody' and 'access' be replaced with the terms 'care' and 'contact' respectively. Furthermore, that the Divorce Act, the Matrimonial Affairs Act,<sup>9</sup> and the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act be amended to add definitions of 'care' and 'contact' that reflect the meanings ascribed to those terms by the Commission.<sup>10</sup> Responding to the latter recommendation, the **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** proposed that the Natural Fathers of Children Born out of Wedlock Act<sup>11</sup> and other ancillary Acts such as the General Law Further Amendment Act<sup>12</sup> and the Maintenance Act<sup>13</sup> be similarly amended. The Commission supports this proposal.

---

<sup>8</sup> Par 14.5, p. 652 of the discussion paper.

<sup>9</sup> Act 37 of 1953.

<sup>10</sup> Par 14.5, p. 653 - 654 of the discussion paper.

<sup>11</sup> 86 of 1997.

<sup>12</sup> 93 of 1962.

<sup>13</sup> 99 of 1998.

### 13.2.3 Parenting education

The Commission recommended that any parent seeking a divorce should be required to participate in an education programme to help him or her become aware of the post-separation reaction of parents and children, children's developmental needs at different ages, the benefits of co-operative parenting after divorce, parental rights and responsibilities, and the availability and benefits of mediation and other forms of dispute resolution, provided such programmes are available. The Family Advocate is in an ideal position to coordinate such educational programmes. Parents should not be required to attend sessions together. The Commission emphasised that its recommendation in this regard is not aimed at putting hurdles in the way of those who wish to divorce, but to equip parents to be sensitive to the needs of their children during and post the divorce.<sup>14</sup>

The **Dutch Reformed Church**, Pretoria, **Ms R van Zyl** and **Africa Christian Action** welcomed the Commission's recommendations. Africa Christian Action recommended that parenting education programmes be operated by family organisations or churches. Some of the respondents who commented on this section were not in favour of the Commission's recommendations. For instance, the **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** pointed out that the Commission's recommendations may create practical problems such as further overloading the Family Advocate. The respondent further highlighted the lack of resources to implement the proposed system. **Ms Julie Todd** submitted that the high case load of the Family Advocate will not allow it to coordinate parenting education programmes. The Commission notes these concerns. However, given the expertise of the Family Advocate, it is best positioned to coordinate the proposed parenting education programmes. Furthermore, the concern of overloading the Family Advocate could be addressed by requiring that the Department of Justice must, when preparing its draft budget for a coming financial year, include in the draft budget an amount for the purpose of enabling the Office of the Family Advocate to perform the function of coordinating parenting education programmes.

**Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** submitted that the Commission's recommendations with regard to parenting education may be impractical in that the courts cannot force people to be good parents and to take a sincere interest in their children's well-being. The respondent argued that requiring

---

<sup>14</sup> Par 14.5, p. 657 of the discussion paper.

participation in a parenting education programme may be a burden on a single parent who is often overwhelmed with the responsibility of caring for the children - the parent needs more time with the children and should not be required to be away from the children at certain times. The respondent thus recommended that education programmes (such as an advice bureau where parents can be provided with a wide range of advice and assistance) be made available to those who need it, with special support for those who need practical assistance. The Commission is mindful of the fact that requiring parents to participate in an education programme would not instantly convert them into good parents. However, the Commission is of the view that it is in the best interests of children that, for the reasons stated above, parents be required to participate in a parenting education programme before a decree of divorce is granted.

**CHILDS** submitted that some children and their parents should also be required to attend an education workshop to assist them to deal with the separation and/or divorce. This should be completed on a prescribed form.

#### **13.2.4 Joint custody**

As stated in the discussion paper, the Commission is of the view that the law should encourage parents to enter into consensual arrangements for shared parenting (joint custody) in the form of parenting plans. The Commission therefore recommended that section 6 of the Divorce Act, section 5 of the Matrimonial Affairs Act and the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act be amended to require that parties applying to a court for a parenting order must file a proposed parenting plan with the court;<sup>15</sup>

**Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** submitted that this recommendation overlooks the fact that neither parents might have had a divorce before and although they may have an idea how they are going to deal with parenting jointly, it is often required that the plan be flexible and subject to review. Furthermore, making a parenting plan a requirement would place a formalism and rigidity on the order that is undesirable. The Commission disagrees with Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa that it is undesirable to make a parenting plan a requirement when applying to the court for a parenting order. In fact, a parenting plan has the advantage of reducing unnecessary litigation over child issues and helps parents to continue with a healthy parental relationship after separation.

---

<sup>15</sup> The Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope supported this recommendation.

The Commission accordingly endorses its preliminary recommendation.

The Commission recommended that divorcing parents should be encouraged to develop, on their own or with the help of a trained mediator or through some form of alternative dispute resolution, a parenting plan setting out details about each parent's responsibilities for residence, care, contact, decision-making and financial security for the children, together with the dispute resolution process to be used by the parties. Parenting plans must also require the sharing between parents of health, educational and other information related to the child's development and social activities. All parenting orders should be in the form of parenting plans. Furthermore, the relationships of grandparents, siblings and other extended family members with the children should be recognised as significant and provisions for maintaining and fostering such relationships, where they are in the best interests of those children, should be included in parenting plans.<sup>16</sup>

The Commission further recommended as follows:<sup>17</sup>

- That where allegations of child abuse surface in divorce cases, whether in the affidavits, in evidence, or as a result of the investigations conducted by the Family Advocate, or otherwise, the Court hearing the divorce matter may, of its own accord or upon application, order that the divorce matter stand down and order a children's court enquiry. This should reduce conflict in divorce proceedings by removing the incentive for making false allegations and should provide those children who are at risk of abuse with the protective framework of the new children's statute.
- That both parents of a child receive information and records in respect of the child's development and social activities, such as school records, medical records and other relevant information. The obligation to provide such information should lie with the parent who has care ('custody') of the child, unless ordered otherwise by a court.
- That the word 'sole' be deleted in the wording of section 1 of the General Law Further Amendment Act. This will have the effect of making it a criminal offence for the parent having care of the child to unreasonably refuse the other parent access to their child. It is further recommended that section 1 of

---

<sup>16</sup> Par. 14.5, p.661 of the discussion paper.

<sup>17</sup> Par. 14.5, p. 655 – 656 of the discussion paper.

the General Law Further Amendment Act 93 of 1962, as then amended, be repealed after having been incorporated in the new children's statute.

**Mr Stuard McDonald** proposed that joint custody should be the point of departure for all divorcing couples. He suggested that clear and concise guidelines on the content of a parenting plan should be made available to mediators and divorcing parents. Such guidelines could also be gazetted. With regard to information in respect of a child's development, Mr McDonald proposed that the non-custodian parent should be able to obtain such information directly from, e.g. the school, hospital, sports club etc. Thus, the non-custodian parent should not have to wait to be provided with such information by the parent who has the care of the child. The Commission does not agree with Mr McDonald's proposal that joint custody should be the starting point in divorce as joint custody may not always be in the best interests of a child. The Commission agrees with Mr McDonald that guidelines on the content of parenting plans should be readily available to divorcing parents. The Commission also supports Mr McDonald's view that the non-custodian parent's access to information in respect of a child's development should not be dependent on being provided with such information by the custodian parent. Thus, where the custodian parent unreasonably withholds such information from the non custodian parent, the child and family court should be able to order that the non-custodian parent be provided direct access to such information.

**CHILDS** suggested that the term 'joint custody' be replaced with the term 'shared parental responsibility'.

### **13.3 The 'maternal preference' or 'tender years' rule**

Until fairly recently, South African courts have tended to apply a so-called 'maternal preference' or 'tender years' principle (namely the principle that the custody of young children - and of girls of any age - should normally be given to the mother in preference to the father,<sup>18</sup> unless the mother's character or past conduct renders her 'unfit',<sup>19</sup> in the court's view, to have such custody, or unless the father's

<sup>18</sup> See, e.g. **Tabb v Tabb** 1909 TS 1033 at 1034; **Dunsterville v Dunsterville** 1946 NDP 594 at 597; **Napolitano v Commissioner of Child Welfare, Johannesburg** 1965 1 SA 742 (A) at 746C-D; **Schwartz v Schwartz** 1984 4 SA 467 (A) at 480F-G; **Fortune v Fortune** 1995 3 SA 348 (A).

<sup>19</sup> In **Mohaud v Mohaud** 1964 4 SA 348 (T) Vieyra J awarded custody of three young children (two of whom were girls) to the father rather than the mother (who had committed adultery on several occasions) in the light of his findings that the mother was 'a person so immature in character, so emotionally unstable, so lacking in discretion, so confused in her moral ideas that despite the youthfulness of the children, it would not be in their interests to entrust their custody

circumstances enable him to make better provision for the needs and well-being of the child). It has been argued that this 'maternal preference' or 'tender years' principle could be seen as violating the equality clause in the Constitution by discriminating between parents on the grounds of gender (although it is submitted that this would in many instances be justified by courts on the basis of the best interests of the child).<sup>20</sup> With the removal of the concepts of custody and access, the outdated and discredited 'tender years' doctrine or 'maternal preference rule' is clearly no longer useful. The Commission accordingly recommended that the common-law 'tender years doctrine' or 'maternal preference rule' be rejected as a guide for decision-making about parenting.<sup>21</sup> **Ms R van Zyl** welcomed the Commission's recommendation. **CHILDS** submitted that the problem of gender bias is far more extensive than in these legal doctrines. The respondent thus recommended that every effort should be made to ensure that the decision-making body is free of gender bias. This can be ensured by, inter alia, basing decisions on established psychological research. Furthermore, decisions should be team-based with equitable representation of male and female.

#### 13.4 Other comments received

**Adv. G J Van Zyl** pointed out that the Commission has missed a crucial point, i.e. that our adversarial system of justice bedevils the issue of custody of children. Also, when the custody of children is in issue, a lot of allegations and counter-allegations are made which can traumatise children. He therefore suggested that the custody of children should be adjudicated on an inquisitorial basis separately from the divorce proceedings. Furthermore, in custody proceedings, parents should be able to stake their claims without resort to the traditional manner of allegations and counter-allegations. The Commission does recommend that where issues of possible child abuse surface in divorce proceedings, the court be able to order that the divorce matter stand down and a children's court enquiry be initiated.<sup>22</sup> This, in the Commission's view, will reduce the making of false allegations in divorce proceedings.

**Adv. Van Zyl** submitted that the enforcement of custody orders is notoriously

---

to her ... '

<sup>20</sup> See **Van der Linde v Van der Linde** 1996 3 SA 509 (O). See also **V v V** 1998 4 SA 169 (C) at 176F-G and 177B.

<sup>21</sup> Par. 14.4 of the discussion paper.

<sup>22</sup> See par. 13.2.4 above.

inadequate as parents are reluctant to lay criminal charges against a custodian parent for failure to abide by the terms of a custody order. He suggested that the General Law Further Amendment Act should be amended by deleting the word 'sole' where it appears before the word 'custody'. The Commission agrees with this suggestion. Adv. Van Zyl also referred to a letter published in the **De Rebus**,<sup>23</sup> in which he suggested a more innovative approach along the lines of the present Domestic Violence Act. He stated that it is not helpful to criminalise refusal of contact by one parent as the child might feel that he or she has been the cause of sending one parent to jail.

**CHILDS** recommended that the following section be added to this chapter: 'Irretrievable breakdown of marriage when minor children are involved'. The respondent suggested that both parents be required to prove the irretrievable breakdown of the marriage. Parents have to undergo some form of marital/spousal/relationship counselling. A competent counsellor recognised by the community should be required to fill in a prescribed form declaring that the marriage has broken down irretrievably. Such a requirement must be met before a divorce can be granted. The Commission is of the view that it is not desirable to force parents with children to stay married by requiring that both parents should prove the irretrievable breakdown of the marriage. In fact, the continuation of a marriage may sometimes not be in the best interests of children as children may be caught between continued marital disputes.

**Mr Lionel Greenberg**, from KID (Kinder In Divorce), submitted that the win-loose scenario is a priority on the agenda of the attorney / advocate. He stated that due consideration should be given to children and that children should be provided with an *advocate ad litem* by default. Mr Greenberg argued that an order granting a divorce should encourage visitation rather than to limit parental involvement in the life of the child. Thus, the order should be a guideline and not be used to obstruct the father's involvement. Further, the order should set a minimum commitment level and not a maximum.

### 13.5 Conclusion

The Commission is of the view that legislative provisions for the protection of children caught in the separation or divorce of their parents should be provided for in divorce legislation. In light of the research undertaken and the submissions received, the

---

<sup>23</sup> February 1999, p.8.



Commission is convinced that the legal position of children in divorce or separation proceedings urgently needs reconsideration. The Commission is therefore considering including in its programme an investigation into these aspects. Obviously, such an investigation would have to go beyond the confines of the Divorce Act to also consider the General Law Further Amendment Act, the Matrimonial Affairs Act, and the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act.

## CHAPTER 14

### EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT

#### 14.1 Introduction

In this Chapter, the question of legislative support for early childhood development (ECD) services is considered.

#### 14.2 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103

##### 14.2.1 Defining ECD

The Commission recommended that the following definitions of ECD and of ECD services be included in the new children's statute:<sup>1</sup>

**'Early childhood development'** means the process of emotional, mental, physical and social growth and development of children aged between birth and 9 years.

**'Early childhood development services'** are formal or informal services that are offered on a regular basis to six or more children aged between birth and 9 years to promote their early childhood development by a person, persons or organisation where the provider of the service is not the parent or the primary caregiver of the children.

The Commission stated that these definitions should not be premises-based, in order to allow for the facilitation of ECD where a building is not available. The Commission also expressed the view that the provisions of the new children's statute should not apply where ECD services are to be provided to less than six children. This position was taken to prevent an over-regulation of the ECD sector.

##### 14.2.2 Responsibility for providing ECD services

---

<sup>1</sup> Par. 15.5 of the discussion paper.

The Commission recommended that the (provincial) Departments of Education be responsible for the provision of ECD services on school premises, and that the (provincial) Departments of Social Development be responsible for the provision of ECD services at all non-school premises. For the sake of simplicity, the (provincial) Departments of Education should also assume responsibility for the registration of ECD services where such services, for instance, are provided for the benefit of the children of the teachers at that school or institution only. The fact that ECD services are to be rendered at school premises is therefore the deciding factor.<sup>2</sup>

#### **14.2.3 Minimum standards for ECD services**

While ECD services can and should be offered at a range of facilities (such as a children's home, in a community centre, inside a private home or in the shade of a tree), and since the content of such services also have infinite variations, the Commission did not specify what the minimum content of such ECD services should be.

However, the Commission recommended that the (provincial) Departments of Social Development and of Education may prescribe, by regulation, the minimum standards with which all registered ECD services must comply. In this regard, the Commission recommended that minimum standards for ECD services, as proposed by the Department of Social Development in its draft Guidelines for Day Care, be included in the regulations which are to accompany the new children's statute.<sup>3</sup>

#### **14.2.4 Registration of ECD services**

The Commission recommended that ECD services not delivered on school premises by non-State service providers who receive a State ECD grant or subsidy must be registered with the Department of Social Development. Furthermore, ECD services delivered on school premises by non-State ECD service providers who receive a State ECD grant or subsidy must be registered with the Department of Education.<sup>4</sup>

The Commission recommended that the adequacy and appropriateness of State-

---

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

<sup>3</sup> Par. 15.6 of the discussion paper.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid.

funded or subsidised ECD services should be assessed by the Department of Social Development.<sup>5</sup> The Commission further recommended that local authorities should be responsible for environmental and health inspections relevant to registration applications where ECD services are to be premised-based.<sup>6</sup>

#### **14.2.5 Lines and levels of Government responsibility**

The Commission stated that the view that ECD is the responsibility of parents and families and not the State is no longer tenable. The Commission therefore recommended that the (provincial) Departments of Education, Social Development and local authorities be given joint responsibility for developing and implementing a plan to ensure that children and their families in their jurisdiction, who are in need of ECD services, can progressively access such services. The Ministers for Social Development, and Education should then be responsible for conferring with the Minister of Finance so as to ensure that there is proper budgetary allocation for these services at the national and provincial levels. In addition, it is recommended that Treasury should budget for ECD services specifically, as an essential service along with health, education, policing, etc.<sup>7</sup> The Commission further recommended that a local authority may support, financially or otherwise, any registered ECD service by:<sup>8</sup>

- making buildings or premises available at no cost to a person or persons who or organisation which proposes to administer such service; and
- providing water or electrical power at reduced rates or at no charge to buildings or premises used for the administration of such service;

It is also recommended that a local authority must not levy rates on land which is used by a registered non-profit organisation for administering or providing ECD services.<sup>9</sup>

#### **14.2.6 Monitoring, inspection and closure of ECD services**

The Commission recommended that the (provincial) Departments of Social

---

<sup>5</sup> Ibid.

<sup>6</sup> Par. 15.7 of the discussion paper.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid.

<sup>8</sup> Par. 15.8 of the discussion paper.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid.

Development and of Education may inspect, monitor, suspend and close down ECD services, whether registered or in receipt of a State ECD grant or subsidy or not. More specifically, the Department of Education should concern itself with monitoring and (where necessary) closing down of ECD services that are provided on school premises. The Department of Social Development should concern itself in particular with monitoring and closing down of ECD services not offered on school premises.<sup>10</sup>

### 14.3 Comments received

**The Criminal Justice Initiative, Open Society Foundation for South Africa** submitted that the issue of ECD has been addressed inadequately and without recognition of the value of ECD, particularly in relation to prevention and early intervention services. The respondent argued that it is only through responsibilities clearly allocated to government agencies that ECD programmes will be implemented, and that it is only through legislated standards that these services can be maintained at appropriate levels of quality.

**Jimmy and Lizelle Meyer** disagreed with the Commission's opinion that the view that ECD is the responsibility of parents and not the State is no longer tenable. However, **Ms R van Zyl** supported the Commission's opinion.

**Mr Eric Atmore** from the Centre for Early Childhood Development, Kenilworth, complimented the Commission on its recommendations in respect of ECD. Referring to page 678 of the discussion paper, the respondent recommended the inclusion of the words in brackets in the following recommendation of the Commission: The Commission recommends that the adequacy and appropriateness of State-funded or subsidised ECD services should be assessed by the Department of Social Development. Where such ECD services are not registered, State-funded or subsidised, then Government has no right [unless the law is broken or is suspected of being broken] to prescribe to or interfere with the content of such ECD programmes.

The **Sinodale Kommissie vir die Diens van Barmhartigheid** submitted that minimum standards for ECD must be set by the Department of Social Development and not by the Department of Education.

---

<sup>10</sup> Par 15.7 - 15.8 of the discussion paper.

The **Department of Health**, Pretoria, suggested that the new child care legislation should contain brief legislative guidelines on minimum standards for ECD, whilst the Department of Social Development Guidelines must cover minimum standards for ECD in more detail.

The **Department of Health**, Pretoria recommended that, given the ‘mushrooming’ of non-state ECD service providers, all ECD centres (formal and informal) must, whether based on school premises or not, be registered with the Department of Social Development. The respondent submitted that the Department of Social Development should keep only one register in respect of ECD service providers. The respondent argued that more than one register will interfere with continuity and quality of monitoring and evaluation techniques. The respondent further proposed that environmental health officers should be guided by local government with regards to how and when to do inspections as well as sanctions for non-compliance.

The **Department of Health**, Pretoria complimented the Commission on its approach with regard to the monitoring and evaluation of ECD centres. However, the respondent pointed out the following challenges:

- the deployment of adequate manpower, especially in remote areas, to assist in the monitoring, evaluating and supervising of services;
- the regulation of private ECD centres and their registration with the Department of Social Development; and
- making the content of Day Care Guidelines congruent with the provisions of the new child care legislation.

In its submission, the **Department of Education**, Pretoria pointed out that private ECD services are registered by the provincial departments of education in terms of section 46 of the South African Schools Act, 1996. Similarly, closure of such centres is performed at provincial level. The Department further opined that, as the South African Schools Act 1996 presently does not apply to children below Grade 1, the imposition of the responsibility on the Department to provide ECD services to children not in school, even where school premises are used, will constitute an unfounded mandate. The Department pointed out that (Education) White Paper 5 provides that the Education Department will eventually, by 2010, be responsible for providing Grade R as part of compulsory education. It is suggested that this be factored into the development of the new child care legislation.

The Department of Education stated that the Departments of Social Development and Education have developed draft guidelines for the registration of ECD services. It said it must be recognised that local government also have responsibilities in this regard and that some local authority structures are not adhering to the minimum standards in some cases.

In response to the Commission's preliminary position that the provision of ECD services should be a state function and not solely that of parents, the Department said that to make a generalised statement that ECD is the responsibility of the state places an unachievable burden on the state and goes against the stance taken in White Paper 5 of poverty-targeting the intervention. However, the Department supported the view that the Departments of Education and Social Services, with local authorities, should work collaboratively towards ensuring that children access ECD services, but said it should be targeted towards the poor. In closure, the Department suggested that the Department of Health also be included when monitoring, inspecting or closing ECD services.

#### **14.4 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission has revisited its recommendation that ECD programmes should be registered. The Commission abandons this recommendation because it does not appear to be feasible to register ECD programmes. The Commission also abandons its recommendation that a local authority must not levy rates on land which is used by a registered non-profit organisation to administer ECD programmes. This is in view of the fact that the Children's Bill cannot prescribe to local authorities how to manage their finances. Furthermore, the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 does not provide for exemptions from the payment of rates and taxes.

In addition to the recommendations made in the discussion paper, the Commission recommends the inclusion of a provision regarding strategies concerning ECD to be included in a national policy framework.<sup>11</sup> The Commission also recommends that ECD services must be provided by a partial care facility providing care to children up to the age of nine years, a child and youth care centre which has in its care children up to the age of nine years or a primary school.<sup>12</sup> The Children's Bill further provides for the issuing of a notice of enforcement to a partial care facility, child and youth care centre or a primary school regarding the provision of ECD services.<sup>13</sup> Specific

---

<sup>11</sup> Section 106A of the Bill.

<sup>12</sup> Section 107(1) of the Bill.

<sup>13</sup> Section 109 of the Bill.

provision is also made for the rendering of assistance to a partial care facility, a child and youth care centre or a primary school.<sup>14</sup> In order to ensure the protection of children to whom ECD services are rendered, the Commission recommends that a person unfit to work with children may not provide or assist in the provision of ECD services.<sup>15</sup>

---

<sup>14</sup> Section 110 of the Bill.

<sup>15</sup> Section 108 of the Bill.



## CHAPTER 15

### PARTIAL CARE

#### 15.1 Introduction

This Chapter deals with the temporary care of children by persons other than their parents or ordinary care-givers.

#### 15.2 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103

##### 15.2.1 Defining partial care

The Commission recommended that, for purposes of the new children's statute, a definition of partial care is required which is not confined only to day-time care. The definition needs to target a range of situations where children are temporarily placed by parents or primary caregivers with persons designated by them, for limited periods of time.<sup>1</sup> The Commission stated that the definition of 'partial care' should be linked to that of 'partial care facility', which is a reworking of the definition of 'place of care' in the Child Care Act<sup>2</sup> and accordingly recommended the following definitions:<sup>3</sup>

**'Partial care facility'** means any place, building or premises, including a private residence, maintained or used partly or exclusively, whether for profit or otherwise, for the reception, protection and temporary or partial care of more than six children apart from their parents, but does not include –

- any boarding school, school hostel or any establishment which is maintained or used mainly for the tuition or training of children and which is controlled by or which has been registered or approved by the State, including a provincial administration;
- any hospital or medical facility which is maintained or used mainly for the medical treatment of children;
- the statutory placement of a child in substitute family care;

---

<sup>1</sup> Par. 16.6 of the discussion paper.

<sup>2</sup> 74 of 1983.

<sup>3</sup> Par. 16.6 of the discussion paper.

- ECD services as defined in this Act.

**‘Partial care’** means the services offered at a partial care facility.

### **15.2.2 Licensing of partial care facilities**

The Commission recommended that the existing registration system be replaced with a licensing system.<sup>4</sup> The Commission expressed the view that it is desirable to introduce a system of *licensing* as a method of regulating partial care in South Africa. Licensing offers a mechanism by which:<sup>5</sup>

- standards may be set before a person or agency is authorised to provide child care;
- adherence to required standards can be regularly monitored; and
- those who fail to meet these standards can be compelled to do so or be excluded from the provision of partial care.

The Commission therefore recommended that where more than six children are cared for on a partial basis apart from their parents, whether for profit or otherwise, in any building or premises maintained or used for such purpose, that such facility be licensed as a partial care facility with the (provincial) Department of Social Development. As the term partial care facility more accurately reflect the type of facility involved, the Commission accordingly recommended a change in terminology from ‘place of care’ to ‘partial care facility’.

### **15.2.3 Minimum building standards for partial care facilities (places of care)**

The Commission did not recommend that the new children’s statute should provide for the formulation, in the Regulations, of minimum building requirements for partial care facilities. In this regard, the Commission stated that the present requirement, in the Regulations,<sup>6</sup> for a certificate to be issued by the local authority to the effect that the premises comply with all structural and health requirements set by the local authority is flexible enough to cater for local and regional differences.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>4</sup> Par. 16.4.2 of the discussion paper.

<sup>5</sup> Par. 16.5.2 of the discussion paper.

<sup>6</sup> Regulation 30A(2)(b).

<sup>7</sup> Par. 16.4.1 of the discussion paper.

However, the Commission recommended that the health and safety appropriateness of the *building or premises*, whether it is a private dwelling, a church building, or a community centre, being used or to be used as a partial care facility, should be assessed by the local authority in terms of appropriate bye-laws. The adequacy and appropriateness of the proposed partial care *service or programme* should be assessed by the Department of Social Development and the latter Department should, after receiving a health and safety clearance certificate from the relevant local authority, finalise the licensing of the partial care facility.<sup>8</sup>

#### **15.2.4 Assistance to providers of partial care services**

The Commission recommended that the (provincial) Department of Social Development, or any local authority may support, financially and otherwise, any licensed partial care facility. Such support, or the continuation of such support, may be made subject to conditions.<sup>9</sup>

#### **15.2.5 Partial care not provided at partial care facilities (places of care)**

The Commission recognised that not all partial care services are rendered in buildings or premises (in other words, not in a 'place of care' as defined in the Child Care Act) and that not all early childhood development (ECD) or partial care situations involve the care of more than six children apart from their parents. While not registered as places of care, some facilities do care for children apart from their parents and sometimes offer ECD services. The Commission also realised that some partial care arrangements involving fewer than six children can be very harmful to children. The Commission thus recommended that the Department of Social Development should be empowered to prevent an ECD service or partial care facility from continuing to operate, even though such service is not registered<sup>10</sup> or such facility is not licensed. It is accordingly recommended that where an unregistered ECD service or an unlicensed partial care facility is de facto in effect or operational, the Director-General: Social Welfare be empowered to issue an enforcement notice to such unregistered or unlicensed operator. Such notice would then either instruct

---

<sup>8</sup> Ibid.

<sup>9</sup> Par. 16.5.4, p. 708 of the discussion paper.

<sup>10</sup> See Par. 14.4 above where it is stated that the Commission has abandoned its recommendation that ECD services should be registered.

the operator to register or obtain a license or to cease operation forthwith.<sup>11</sup>

### **15.2.6 Monitoring and inspection**

The Commission recommended that monitoring provisions be included in the new children's statute which must allow for a power to monitor both the environment and quality of care provided at partial care facilities and the implementation of ECD programmes - by means of inspections or other methods - regardless of the number of children involved.

### **15.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission has received no comment on the issue of partial care. Notwithstanding the lack of comments on the issue, the Commission revisited some of its recommendations in respect of partial care. With regard to the recommendation that the existing registration system be replaced with a licensing system, the Commission has come to the conclusion that there is no substantive difference between licensing and registration. For this reason, the Commission reverts to the existing system in terms of which partial care facilities are required to register.

The Commission further abandons its initial recommendation that partial care facilities must be registered (or licensed as previously suggested) with the relevant provincial Departments of Social Development. The Commission now recommends that local authorities should be responsible for the registration of partial care facilities.<sup>12</sup> This recommendation is in line with section 156 read with Schedule 4, Part B of the Constitution in terms of which the administration of child care facilities is a local government competency. The Commission is mindful of the fact that local authorities are under-resourced. This is, however, not reason enough to impede on municipalities' right to exercise their powers by vesting the administration of child care facilities in the provincial Departments of Social Development. However, if a local authority fails to fulfill its functions, the relevant provincial executive may take appropriate steps to ensure fulfillment of those functions in terms of section 139 of

---

<sup>11</sup> Par. 16.7 of the discussion paper.

<sup>12</sup> Sections 146(1)(a), 149(1)(a), 150(1) and 152 of the Bill. See also Noel Zaal and Carmel Matthias 'Local government and the provision of child care services: An essential area for legislative reform' (2002) 119:1 **South African Law Journal** 138.

the Constitution.

In line with the Commission's decision to assign the registration of partial care facilities to local authorities, the Commission further recommends that a municipality must maintain a record of all available partial care facilities in its area,<sup>13</sup> and must conduct regular inspections of partial care facilities in its area.<sup>14</sup> Furthermore, a municipality or the provincial head of social development may issue a notice of enforcement to a person operating a partial care facility.<sup>15</sup>

---

<sup>13</sup> Section 155(1)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>14</sup> Section 155(1)(b) of the Bill.

<sup>15</sup> Section 148 of the Bill.

## **CHAPTER 16**

### **FOSTER CARE**

#### **16.1 Introduction**

Within the formal child care system in South Africa, foster care is normally considered to be the preferred form of substitute care for children who cannot remain with their biological families and who are not available for adoption. Many thousands of South African children have benefited from court-ordered foster care. It is, however, doubtful whether this form of care as provided for in the Child Care Act<sup>1</sup> can adequately deal with the country's changing needs as vast numbers of children are being left parentless owing to AIDS. This chapter therefore examines alternative forms of family care. It also covers aspects such as social and cultural issues when placing children in foster care, parental rights and responsibilities for foster parents, termination of parental rights and responsibilities over children in foster care, reunification services, statutory supervision, duration and extension of foster care orders and social security.

#### **16.2 Conceptualising foster care**

##### **16.2.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

In the discussion paper,<sup>2</sup> the Commission recommended that provision be made for various forms of substitute family care, which should include short-term and long-term care by relatives and non-relatives. The Commission proposed that a distinction be made between foster care and court-ordered kinship care (care by relatives), and that provision be made for the necessary support of both options. A further distinction is proposed between court-ordered kinship care which arises as a result of child and family court proceedings in cases of abuse and severe neglect and is associated with reunification services, and kinship care (care by relatives) when undertaken by informal arrangement on an indefinite basis. More specifically, the Commission proposed that:

- Legal recognition should be given to court-ordered kinship care as a

---

<sup>1</sup> 74 of 1983.

<sup>2</sup> Par. 17.2.5.

placement option for children who come before the court via the formal child protection system, in cases of abuse or neglect.

- Furthermore, depending on the circumstances of each case, the court should have the discretion to specify whether a placement with relatives should be of a permanent nature, whether reunification services should be rendered to the parties concerned and whether supervision or monitoring by a state department or organisation is required.
- Relatives caring for children who have been abandoned or orphaned or are for some or other reason in need of their assistance, but who are not per se in need of formal protective services, should have access to a simple procedure whereby the necessary parental responsibilities can be conferred on them. These should include consent to medical treatment for or an operation on such children, and capacity to apply for state financial assistance on their behalf. The Commission invited comments as to whether such an arrangement should involve an initial once-off investigation, an order by the child and family court, or whether this could be an administrative process.
- A parent or guardian of a child may give written consent to a person caring for that child to give consent to medical treatment for or an operation on the child.
- Any person, including the child him or herself, who is of the view that a particular placement in kinship care is not in the best interests of the child, should be able to approach the children's court.

### **16.2.2 Comments received**

**Durban Children's Society** and the **Consortium** were in favour of the Commission's recommendations.

**H. Gerryts** supported the Commission's recommendation that relatives caring for orphaned or abandoned children should have access to a simple procedure whereby the necessary parental responsibilities can be conferred on them. The respondent suggested that an initial once-off investigation by a social worker should be required.

### **16.2.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

Instead of providing for a procedure whereby the necessary rights and

responsibilities can be conferred on relatives caring for children on an informal basis as recommended in the discussion paper, the Commission recommends that the Children's Bill should set out the rights and responsibilities of such relatives.<sup>3</sup> Thus, relatives caring for children on an informal basis would not have to go through a prescribed procedure before they can exercise certain right and responsibilities in respect of the children in their care. The Commission further gives recognition to the fact that a person may also become a foster parent through the administrative transfer of a child by the MEC for social development from a child and youth care centre to foster care<sup>4</sup> or that a child may be provisionally transferred from a child and youth care centre in order to test the feasibility of a foster care placement.<sup>5</sup> In view of the positive responses received, the Commission retains the rest of its recommendations. These recommendations have been incorporated in the Children's Bill.<sup>6</sup>

### **16.3 Cluster foster care**

#### **16.3.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

In addition to statutory foster care, court-ordered kinship care and informal kinship care, the Commission recommended that -<sup>7</sup>

- Legal recognition should be given to both state-funded and privately-funded cluster foster care schemes subject to regulation in terms of the Act.
- 'Cluster foster care' be understood to imply a grouping of caregivers who are linked together to provide mutual support in the care of a number of children, and who receive some form of external support and monitoring.
- The court should have the option of committing a child to the care of a specific cluster foster care scheme rather than to that of a particular individual or couple within that scheme.
- The Minister should be enabled to allocate grants to children in cluster foster care schemes and also to subsidise these schemes as entities.
- In any specific case where it is believed to be appropriate for more than six

---

<sup>3</sup> Section 207.

<sup>4</sup> Section 191 of the Bill.

<sup>5</sup> Section 194 of the Bill.

<sup>6</sup> Sections 198 and 208.

<sup>7</sup> Par. 17.3.1.5 of the discussion paper.



children to be placed in the foster care of a single caregiver, the court should be required to assign one or more additional caregivers, whether or not resident in the same household, to exercise shared responsibility for the children in question.

### **16.3.2 Comments received**

**Durban Children's Society** and the **Consortium** supported the Commission's recommendations.

### **16.3.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

As 'cluster foster care' is only one of the forms of care which resort under a collective foster care scheme, the Commission prefers to refer only to the term "collective foster care scheme" in order to cater for the various forms of collective foster care.<sup>8</sup> The Commission is of the view that its recommendation that one or more additional caregivers be assigned by the children's court where more than six children are placed in the foster care of a single caregiver should be addressed in the Regulations to the Children's Act.

## **16.4 Specialist or professional foster care**

### **16.4.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

As pointed out in the discussion paper, the majority of children currently placed in foster care are children with behavioural problems. Thus, many foster parents provide not only care, but also treatment. It is therefore difficult to determine to which categories of children professional foster care should be provided.<sup>9</sup> The notion of 'professional foster care' also creates the impression that 'ordinary' foster parents do not provide professional care to children. For these reason, the Commission recommended that -<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>8</sup> See section 1 of the Bill for the definition of 'collective foster care scheme'. See also sections 175(1)(f)(iii) and 202(2) of the Bill for the Commission's recommendations regards the placement of children in collective foster care.

<sup>9</sup> Par. 17.3.2.4.

<sup>10</sup> Ibid.

- All forms of foster care should be seen as having a professional dimension and that financing of this service should take into account the need for training and support of care-givers.
- In addition to the current foster care grant, an additional allowance should be paid to foster parents caring for children with special needs which have specific cost implications, including those with disabilities and chronic illnesses.
- 'Special needs' should be clearly defined.
- The Minister must be enabled to make regulations for the provision of financial assistance to children with special needs, including those with HIV/AIDS.

#### **16.4.2 Comments received**

**Durban Children's Society** and the **Consortium** supported the Commission's recommendations. **Ms R van Zyl** welcomed the recommendation that an additional allowance be paid to foster parents caring for children with special needs which have specific cost implications.

#### **16.4.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

In light of the positive responses received, the Commission reaffirms its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper.<sup>11</sup>

### **16.5 Selection criteria for prospective foster parents**

#### **16.5.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

The training needs of extended family care-givers and those offering indefinite care differ from those who are, for instance, participating in reunification services. Standardised recruitment and training procedures are therefore unlikely to be viable. However, to ensure that all children in foster care receive at least a basic standard of care, the Commission recommended that the Department of Social Development embark on a consultative process of developing broad minimum standards for the

---

<sup>11</sup> Section 346 of the Bill.

selection and training of substitute family care-givers in various categories.<sup>12</sup>

### **16.5.2 Comments received**

**Durban Children's Society** and the **Consortium** agreed with the Commission's recommendations.

### **16.5.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

As no adverse comments were received, the Commission reaffirms its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper.

## **16.6 Social and cultural issues when placing children in foster care**

### **16.6.1 Overview of the proposal's in Discussion Paper 103**

Section 31(1) of the Constitution<sup>13</sup> guarantees every person belonging to a cultural, religious or linguistic community the right to enjoy their culture, practise their religion and use their language. Children placed with foster parents with a different background from their own may be, albeit not intentionally or directly, denied the right to enjoy their culture, or to practise their religion or to use their language. It is also unrealistic to expect from foster parents that they keep the child in touch with his or her culture, if the foster parents do not know what that culture entails. It also seems that although many child care agencies prefer to place a child in the care of a family with the same cultural and religious background as that of the child, this is not always possible. Taking all this into account, the Commission recommended as follows:<sup>14</sup>

- When arranging care for a child, including a foreign child (refugee and undocumented immigrant children included), social workers should make full enquiries into the cultural, religious and linguistic background of the child, and the availability of foster parents with a similar background to that of the child.
- A social worker arranging care for a refugee or undocumented immigrant child should approach the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees or

<sup>12</sup> Par. 17.4.3 of the discussion paper.

<sup>13</sup> Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Act 108 of 1996.

<sup>14</sup> Par. 17.5.5 of the discussion paper.

relevant service agencies working in the refugee communities to identify appropriate families who can provide foster care to the child.

- The social worker's report must include steps taken to secure placement of the child within a family with a cultural, religious and linguistic background similar to that of the child;
- A child may only be placed with a family from a different background to that of the child if no family with a similar background to that of the child is available, willing and suitable to foster the child.
- However, a pre-existing relationship between a child and a prospective foster parent with a different background to that of the child could serve as a ground for placing the child in the care of such parent.

#### **16.6.2 Comments received**

**Durban Children's Society**, the **Consortium** and **Ms R van Zyl** supported the Commission's recommendations.

#### **16.6.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

In view of the positive responses received, the Commission retains its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper. These recommendations have been incorporated into the Children's Bill.<sup>15</sup>

### **16.7 Parental rights and responsibilities for foster parents**

#### **16.7.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

As stated in the discussion paper, the rights and responsibilities of foster parents in terms of the Child Care Act are limited. Foster parents have only custody of their foster children and those responsibilities that go with custody. The rights transferred to a foster parent do not include the power to deal with the child's property or to consent to the medical treatment of or an operation on the child.<sup>16</sup> As the majority of foster placements last until the children reach the age of 18, the Commission recommended as follows:<sup>17</sup>

---

<sup>15</sup> Section 201.

<sup>16</sup> Par. 17.6.2 of the discussion paper.

<sup>17</sup> Par. 17.6.5 of the discussion paper.

- The new children's statute should provide for a procedure whereby a foster parent or a relative who has been appointed by the court to care for a child may, on application to the court by him or herself or by the department or organisation managing the case, acquire specified parental rights and responsibilities in addition to those initially conferred by the court.
- The parties to the proceedings must include the parent(s) of the child, the foster parent(s) or relative(s) and the child where appropriate.
- If a parent has been given proper notice, but fails to appear, the court may proceed in the parent's absence.
- The children's court may allocate additional parental rights and responsibilities to a foster parent(s) or relative(s) only if this is in the best interests of the child concerned.
- An agreement regarding specific rights and responsibilities of the foster parent(s) reached among all the parties, including the department or organisation managing the case may, at the discretion of the court, be incorporated into the court order.
- In instances where a child has been abandoned, or his or her parents are deceased, or where reunification is not in the best interests of the child, the children's court may, when making a placement order, grant certain parental rights and responsibilities to the foster parent(s) or relative(s) over and above those normally allocated, at the time of the initial enquiry.
- The children's court should have the discretion to request that a written report be submitted to it within six months or any other specified period concerning the suitability of the arrangements made in respect of the child.
- An order conferring certain parental rights and responsibilities may be altered or terminated if the court finds that there has been a substantial and material change in the child's circumstances and that it is in the best interests of the child to alter or terminate the order.
- The new children's statute should broadly outline the rights and responsibilities of biological parents, foster parents and children in the foster care setting.

#### **16.7.2 Comments received**

**Durban Children's Society, Africa Christian Action, the Consortium and Mr**

**Rothman** were in favour of the Commission's recommendations. Mr Rothman mentioned that the presence of foster parent(s) and the biological parent(s) of the child in court could potentially create a hostile atmosphere. In his view, it would not be in the best interests of the child to permit more parties than necessary. He added that the court is empowered to allow persons to be present if it will serve the interests of the child. However, they must apply to do so.

### **16.7.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

After due consideration of Mr Rothman's concern regarding the presence of both the biological and foster parent(s) of a child in court, the Commission recommends that it should be left to the discretion of the court to decide whether both the biological and foster parent(s) should be present when an application for the allocation of parental rights and responsibilities is heard. The court should exercise its discretion based on what is in the best interests of the child concerned. As no adverse comments were received, the Commission retains the rest of its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper. These recommendations have been incorporated in the Children's Bill.<sup>18</sup>

## **16.8 Termination of parental rights and responsibilities over certain children in foster care**

### **16.8.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

Measures to promote permanency for children in all forms of temporary care, including foster care, are discussed in detail in Chapter 9 above.<sup>19</sup> Specifically where children in foster care are concerned, the Commission recommended that an existing bond with a foster parent(s) be taken into account when decisions are taken regarding the termination of responsibilities of biological parents. The securing of an established and positive bond with a foster family should, where appropriate, be given priority as a means to achieving permanency for the child.<sup>20</sup>

The Commission further recommended that provision be made for subsidised adoption. This would enable long-term caregivers who cannot care for their foster

---

<sup>18</sup> Sections 205.

<sup>19</sup> Par. 9.9 above.

<sup>20</sup> Par. 17.7.4 of the discussion paper.

children without financial aid, to adopt these children.<sup>21</sup>

### 16.8.2 Comments received

The **Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** (Community Law Centre, UWC) pointed out that the termination of the parental-child relationship without another similar relationship coming into being may prejudice the child. For example, if the biological parents' rights and responsibilities terminate, this might have negative consequences for inheritances the child might have received. Furthermore, if the child dies intestate, there will be no one on whom the child's estate will devolve.

The Consortium submitted that providing adoptive parents with a care dependency grant if they adopt a child with special needs would greatly encourage adoption of children with special needs. The respondent said that if social security benefits remain means tested and are not made universal, foster and adoptive parents should be excluded from having to pass a means test when applying for the child support grant, foster care grant or the care dependency grant.

The **Durban Children's Society** was in favour of the Commission's recommendations.

### 16.8.3 Evaluation and recommendations

With regard to Consortium's submission, the Commission does recommend that a supplementary special needs grant<sup>22</sup> be payable to children with special needs under certain conditions.<sup>23</sup> The Commission does not agree with the submission of the **Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** because, in terms of the Intestate Succession Act 81 of 1987, intestate succession is based on blood ties. Thus, if a child's biological parents whose parental rights and responsibilities have been terminated in respect of that child die intestate, the child will still be able to inherit from them. Furthermore, the Commission reaffirms its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper.<sup>24</sup>

---

<sup>21</sup> Ibid.

<sup>22</sup> The term 'supplementary special needs grant' replaces the term 'care dependency grant' as used in the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992.

<sup>23</sup> Section 346 of the Bill.

<sup>24</sup> Sections 176, 206 and 344 of the Bill.

## 16.9 Reunification services and statutory supervision

### 16.9.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103

In addition to the measures outlined in Chapter 9 above, the Commission recommended as follows with regard to family reunification services:<sup>25</sup>

- If a child has not been reunited with his or her family after the expiration of the initial court order, the social worker concerned must submit a report to the children's court in which it should be motivated why the child was not reunified with his or her family, whether family reunification is still possible, and what steps will be taken to create stability in the child's life. At this point the court may –
  - authorise the termination of reunification services; or
  - terminate some or all parental rights and responsibilities subject to conditions specified; and/or
  - confer additional parental responsibilities or rights on the foster parents or kinship care-givers should this appear to be in the best interests of the child.

With regard to statutory supervision, the Commission recommended as follows:<sup>26</sup>

- Supervision services should not be required for a child in kinship care - unless there is a need for such services - if the child's parents are deceased or cannot be traced and/or there appears to be no possibility of family reunification. Scarce social work resources could then be focused on cases where there is a likelihood of family reunification.
- The children's court may, when making a placement in foster care or with relatives in respect of a child who has been abandoned or whose parents are deceased, determine the degree of supervision to be rendered with regard to the foster care placement, particularly if the court has ordered that the placement should be of a more permanent nature.

<sup>25</sup> Par. 17.8.4 of the discussion paper.

<sup>26</sup> Ibid.



### 16.9.2 Comments received

**Durban Children's Society** supported the Commission's recommendations.

While the Consortium supported the recommendations relating to statutory supervision, it was concerned about the fact that no supervision services will be rendered to children in the care of relatives. The respondent submitted that although most cases do not require supervision, there are cases where orphaned children in the care of relatives are subjected to the 'Cinderella syndrome', i.e. they receive food and resources only after the biological children's needs have been satisfied and are expected to do most, if not all, the household chores. The respondent suggested that children in the care of relatives should be provided with some forum or person to approach if needed. Furthermore, NGOs, CBOs and other child care workers who come across such situations should be equipped to respond and assist the children. An option would be to place the case under supervision.

Ms **R van Zyl** welcomed the recommendation that the court should be able to determine the degree of supervision to be rendered to foster care placements. She submitted that when a court decides to authorise the termination of reunification services, it should be satisfied that reunification with the child's family is unlikely.

### 16.9.3 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission has reconsidered its recommendation that where a child has not been reunited with his or her biological family after the expiration of the initial court order, a social worker's report must be submitted to the child and family court explaining why the child was not reunited with his or her biological family. The Commission considers it more appropriate to require that such a report be submitted two months before the expiry of the initial court order.<sup>27</sup> In addition to the recommendations regarding family reunification services, the Commission recommends that the child and family court should, after considering the social worker's report, be able to order that the social worker must continue facilitating the reunification of the child with his or her family.<sup>28</sup> The Commission further agrees with Ms Van Zyl's proposal that the child and family court should order the termination of

---

<sup>27</sup> Section 204(2) of the Bill.

<sup>28</sup> Section 204(3)(a) of the Bill.

reunification services only if it is satisfied that reunification with the child's family is unlikely. This proposal is accordingly adopted.<sup>29</sup>

With regard to the Consortium's concern that no supervision services will be rendered to children in the care of relatives, the Commission did not totally exclude the rendering of supervision services to such children, but has recommended that supervision services should not be required unless there is a need for such services. The Commission thus agrees with the Consortium that, where the circumstances of a specific case require social work intervention, the case should be placed under supervision. The Children's Bill also provides children placed with relatives with the option of approaching the child and family court<sup>30</sup> or the Children's Protector<sup>31</sup> if the placement is not in the best interests of the children. The Commission accordingly reaffirms its preliminary recommendations with regard to supervision services. These recommendations have been incorporated in the Children's Bill.<sup>32</sup>

## **16.10 Duration and extension of foster care orders**

### **16.10.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

The Commission recommended that in instances where a child has been abandoned, or his or her parents are deceased, or where there is no requirement for family reunification services, the children's court may make a foster care order for a period of more than two years if this is in the best interests of the child.<sup>33</sup>

Unlike children in schools of industries, the length of the stay of children in foster care cannot be extended until the end of the year in which they turn 21. The Commission believed that children placed in foster care should be entitled to the same protection as those children placed in a school of industries. Accordingly, the Commission recommended that the Minister may, if he or she deems it necessary, order that a child whose period of placement in foster care has expired or is about to expire, return to or remain in foster care for any further period, and may from time to time extend that period, provided that no such order or extension shall extend

---

<sup>29</sup> Section 204(3)(b) of the Bill.

<sup>30</sup> Section 208(c).

<sup>31</sup> Section 325(1).

<sup>32</sup> Section 175(3).

<sup>33</sup> Par. 17.9.5 of the discussion paper.

beyond the end of the year in which the child turns 21 years. Furthermore, provided that if the child is about to turn or has turned 18, such further placement will be subject to the consent of the child.<sup>34</sup>

The Commission noted that, should the age of majority be lowered to 18 as recommended in Chapter 4 above, any young person over the age of 18 will have to give consent to an arrangement under this Act whereby he or she remains in care, and will be able to do so without the concurrent consent of his or her parents. This will do away with the present discrepancy between those children in schools of industries and those children in foster care and children's homes.<sup>35</sup>

### 16.10.2 Comments received

**Durban Children's Society** agreed with the Commission's recommendations.

Although the **Consortium** endorsed the recommendation that the court be empowered to make a foster care order for a period of more than 2 years, it submitted that this should not become the norm in cases where a child has been abandoned or orphaned. The respondent stated that such placements should be of short duration and assessed for permanency planning after the expiry of a short period.

### 16.10.3 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission retains its preliminary recommendation that the children's court be empowered to make a foster care order for a period of more than two years.<sup>36</sup> Furthermore, the Commission agrees with the Consortium that priority should be given to creating stability in the child's life when making a placement in foster care. The Commission accordingly recommends that the child and family court may issue a foster care order or kinship care order for more than two years or extend such an order for more than two years provided that consideration is given to the need for creating stability in the child's life.<sup>37</sup> The Commission reaffirms its preliminary recommendation that the stay of children in foster care may be extended from time to

---

<sup>34</sup> Ibid.

<sup>35</sup> Ibid.

<sup>36</sup> Section 203 of the Bill.

<sup>37</sup> Section 203 of the Bill.

time until the end of the year in which the child turns 21.<sup>38</sup>

## **16.11 Rights of non-South African children to foster care grants**

### **16.11.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

As pointed out in the discussion paper, a number of child refugees and others of indeterminate status are in South Africa and are coming to the attention of the child protection services due to destitution, abandonment, abuse or neglect.<sup>39</sup> Constitutionally and in terms of international child rights agreements these children are entitled to appropriate care and protection, with foster care being an important means to this end.<sup>40</sup> In the absence of required documentation, foreign children are denied a basic measure of care and protection. The Commission therefore recommended that a children's court order declaring a child in need of care should, in the absence of a 13-digit SA identification document or any official document from the country of origin, serve as a basis for granting financial assistance to a foreign child.<sup>41</sup>

### **16.11.2 Comments received**

The **Dutch Reformed Church**, Pretoria, submitted that South Africa does not have enough resources to provide for the needs of non-South African children. The respondent is concerned that citizens of neighbouring countries may deliberately send their children to, or abandon their children in South Africa in order for the State of South Africa to take care of their children.

Ms **R van Zyl** was not in favour of providing non-South African children with financial assistance.

### **16.11.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

---

<sup>38</sup> Section 196(2) of the Bill.

<sup>39</sup> Par. 17.10.1 of the discussion paper.

<sup>40</sup> Par. 17.10.2 of the discussion paper.

<sup>41</sup> Par. 17.10.4 of the discussion paper.

The Commission reaffirms its preliminary recommendations made in the discussion paper. However, as also pointed out by the respondents, limited resources do not allow making available to non-South African children all grants to which South African children are entitled. The Commission therefore recommends that financial assistance to non-South African children be restricted to the foster care grant, court-ordered kinship care grant and the emergency court grant.<sup>42</sup>

## **16.12. Social security**

### **16.12.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

The Commission recommended as follows:<sup>43</sup>

- Kinship care placements not requiring court intervention should be facilitated through a non-means-tested child grant (payable in respect of all children in need who are South African citizens and resident in the Republic) or, in the absence of such a measure, a specific grant designed for this purpose. This grant should be supplemented with an additional needs-based grant such as the care dependency grant if the child has special needs with cost implications.
- Foster care placements with persons unrelated to the child should be supported through a non-means-tested grant as is presently the case. Should a child grant be introduced, this would be an additional source of support for persons willing to provide substitute care for children in need thereof.
- Children who require formal protective services and are placed in care with relatives by means of a court order should qualify for a grant, which could be structured on the same basis as the foster care grant. In addition to the current foster care grant, an allowance should be paid to foster parents and relatives caring for children with special needs.
- Measures to facilitate the fostering of 'special needs' children should be considered. These could include tax rebates, and free health services and education for the biological children of the care-givers as well as the children in their foster care.

---

<sup>42</sup> Sections 342(1) and 345 of the Bill.

<sup>43</sup> Par. 17.11.4 of the discussion paper.

**16.12.2 Comments received**

The **Consortium** submitted that a foster parent, appointed by the court, should receive only the foster care grant and not also the proposed child grant. The Consortium stated that providing both grants would not help with efforts to move towards substantive equality in the child care system, specifically with reference to children in urban versus rural settings.

**Ms R van Zyl** submitted that tax rebates, and free medical services and education for the biological children of care-givers who foster other children is a wonderful idea. She, however, cautioned that this could be abused resulting in persons fostering children for the wrong reasons. The Commission's recommendation is thus not supported.

**16.12.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

See Chapter 24 below for a detailed discussion on the Commission's recommendations with regard to the various grants payable to children in foster care, court-ordered kinship care and informal kinship care.

## CHAPTER 17

### ADOPTION AS A FORM OF SUBSTITUTE FAMILY CARE

#### 17.1 Introduction

Adoption, as it is practised today, embodies a deep sense of social purpose - the primary aim of which is the attempt to assuage the need to provide a stable home for a child. This enables a child to profit from an upbringing that he or she would not otherwise enjoy.<sup>1</sup> Adoption can therefore be described as a process by which society provides a substitute family for a child whose natural parents are unable or unwilling to care for the child.<sup>2</sup> It can therefore be seen primarily as a device for imitating nature in respect of the rearing of a child. This need not be the purpose, or at least the sole purpose, of adoption. It can, in theory at least, also be used simply as a means of altering legal relationships, particularly for the purposes of the law of succession.

The whole issue relating to inter-country adoption is discussed in Chapter 21 below.

#### 17.2 Overview of the current law and the proposals in Discussion Paper 103

The law relating to adoption is contained in Chapter 4 of the Child Care Act, 1983. Its provisions are designed to promote the welfare of the child by admitting him or her to authentic family relationships, while at the same time safeguarding the interests both of the natural and of the adoptive parents.<sup>3</sup>

#### 17.3 Who may be adopted and by whom?

Adoption in terms of the Child Care Act, 1983 is a formal process by means of which parental power over a child is terminated, and vested in another person or persons, namely the adoptive parent(s).<sup>4</sup> Section 17 of the Act provides that a child may be

---

<sup>1</sup> See also Divya Singh 'Adoption of children born out of wedlock' 1996 (29) **De Jure** 305; Anthony Dickey **Family Law** (third edition) Sydney: LBC Information Services 1997 423.

<sup>2</sup> As was done in the **Final Report** (1997) of the Royal Commission on Human Relationships (Vol 4, par2, p. 98), quoted by Dickey **Family Law** (third edition) 423.

<sup>3</sup> Van Heerden et al **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 437.

<sup>4</sup> Barnard, Cronjé and Olivier **The South African Law of Persons and Family Law** 279.

adopted by a husband and his wife jointly,<sup>5</sup> by a widower or widow or unmarried<sup>6</sup> or divorced person, or by a married person whose spouse is the parent of the child.<sup>7</sup> Before making an adoption order, the court must be satisfied that the person or persons who are qualified to adopt a child in terms of section 17 meet the following requirements:<sup>8</sup>

- They must possess adequate means to maintain and educate the child;<sup>9</sup>
- They must be 'of good repute' and be fit and proper persons to be entrusted with the custody of the child;
- The proposed adoption must serve the interests and be conducive to the welfare of the child;
- That the necessary consent(s) to the adoption must have been given.<sup>10</sup>

In considering an application for adoption the children's court is enjoined to 'have regard to' the cultural and religious<sup>11</sup> background of the child and of the natural

<sup>5</sup> Married persons can adopt a child only jointly. See also the wide definition of 'marriage' in section 1 of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>6</sup> Tshepo Mosikatsana 'Comment on *The Adoption by K and B, Re* (1995) 31 CRR (2D) 151 (Ont Prov Div)' 1996 (12) **SAJHR** 582 at 583 - 4 argues that the inclusion in section 17 of an 'unmarried' person as one of the classes of persons qualified to adopt a child clearly includes single gays and lesbians as prospective adoptive parents. See, however, John B 'Prejudice passed off as screening' (February / March 2000) **ChildrenFIRST** 9.

<sup>7</sup> In terms of the amendments brought about to the Child Care Act, 1983 by the Adoption Matters Amendment Act 56 of 1998, the natural father of a child born out of wedlock can now adopt his child.

<sup>8</sup> Prescribed by section 18(4) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>9</sup> Section 18(4)(a). Van Heerden et al **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 448, footnote 64, point out that section 18(4)(a) is consistent with the provisions of article 27 of the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child, which recognises every child's right to a standard of living adequate for the child's physical, mental, spiritual, moral and social development. 'Though the parents bear the primary responsibility to provide for the child, the state, in terms of article 27(3) of the UN Convention read with section 28(1)(c) of the final Constitution, carries the obligation to assist the parents in meeting the child's needs. This suggests that indigent families should be given assistance in the form of government subsidies and tax breaks to enable them to raise their children'.

<sup>10</sup> See par. 17.4 below.

<sup>11</sup> Although the Child Care Act, 1983 lays down no religious requirement as such for an adoptive parent, the **Guide to Adoption Practice** at 61 expresses the view that '[t]he home should provide opportunity for the religious instruction and spiritual development of the child adoption'. If this implies that lack of any religious affiliation is per se a disqualification, Van Heerden et al **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** 442, footnote 30 argue that it goes too far: 'There is no warrant at all for the view that the legislature disapproved of atheists or agnostics in the role of adoptive parents. This view is reinforced by s 15 of the final Constitution, which protects believers and atheists alike'. Quite different considerations arise when a child who comes from a certain religious group has to be 'matched' with particular adoptive parents. But even in this context the courts have stressed that religious background is of little or no importance in the



parents, as compared with that of the proposed adoptive parent or parents.<sup>12</sup> This directive constitutes the legal basis for 'matching' a particular child to particular adoptive parents, and has been developed into a sophisticated set of criteria by social workers engaged in adoption work.<sup>13</sup> These considerations are not, however, decisive of whether a particular adoption order should be made. Unlike the issues on which a court must be satisfied, these are merely matters to which it must have regard.<sup>14</sup>

There are presently no legal barriers to trans-racial adoptions.<sup>15</sup>

### 17.3.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103

In the discussion paper, the Commission recommended that only **children** may be adopted. As a result, the Commission saw no need to provide for the possibility to adopt persons over the age of 18 years. The Commission conceded, however, that effective permanency planning requires that adoption be the first choice of arrangement for a significant portion of **older children** who have no parents or where family reunification efforts have failed. However, the Commission did not regard it necessary to embody this principle in the Children's Bill as a *legal* principle as this should form the basis of the assessment and permanency planning process.

The Commission saw no reason to limit joint adoptions to married couples. It therefore proposed that married couples, partners in a domestic conjugal life-partnership, or other persons sharing a common household and forming a family

---

case of a newly born or very young child. See in this regard **C v Commissioner of Child Welfare, Wynberg** 1970 (2) SA 76 (C) at 87D-F, 88 B-H.

<sup>12</sup> Section 18(3), read with section 40, of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>13</sup> See the **Guide to Adoption Practice** 81, from which it appears that even 'physical likeness' of the child to his or her proposed adoptive parents is considered relevant, though not decisive. Other factors are 'education' and place of residence.

<sup>14</sup> Van Heerden et al **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 449.

<sup>15</sup> The requirement of 'race matching' was done away with in 1991 in terms of the Child Care Amendment Act 86 of 1991. For a discussion of the concept of race matching and the practice of trans-racial adoptions, see J Heaton 'The relevance of race and classification in terms of the Population Registration Act 30 of 1950 for adoption in South Africa' (1989) 106 **SALJ** 713; D J Joubert 'Interracial adoptions: Can we learn from the Americans?' (1993) 110 **SALJ** 726; N Zaal 'Avoiding the best interests of the child: Race-matching and the Child Care Act 74 of 1983' (1994) 10 **SAJHR** 372; T Motsikatsana 'Transracial adoptions: Are we learning the right lessons from the Americans and Canadians? - A reply to Professors Joubert and Zaal' (1995) 112 **SALJ** 606, 'Examining class and racial bias in the adoption process and the viability of transracial adoptions as a policy preference: A further reply to Professors Joubert, Pakati and Zaal' (1997) 13 **SAJHR** 602. Heaton, Joubert and Zaal argue that trans-racial adoptions may meet the child's best interests, while Motsikatsana is opposed to such adoptions, arguing that they are not in the best interests of the child concerned.

unit<sup>16</sup> may adopt a child jointly. This recommendation, for instance, would allow for the joint adoption of a child by the husband and all his wives (the kraal) in a customary law setting.

The Commission in the discussion paper considered the possibility of a two-tier system where adoptions by step-parents and other relatives would be treated differently from adoptions by non-family members. Step-parent and relative adoptions differ from other types of adoptions in that agencies do not select the adoptive parents. Instead, the issues are whether the existing care arrangement should be transformed into an adoption and whether provision should be made for a simpler, faster adoption process. However, the Commission accepted that it is necessary to impose the same threshold upon eligibility for step-parent and relative adoption as for other adoptees and therefore did not recommend the introduction of a parallel system for intra-familial adoptions.

The Commission noted that the section 18(4) requirements are causing some problems in practice. These problems mainly relate around the difficulties with birth fathers having to acknowledge themselves in writing, the consent provisions, the 60-day cooling off period, and the different interpretations given to and applications of the said requirements by commissioners of child welfare. In this regard, the Commission recommended a move away from the adequate means test to a willing and able test (section 18(4)(a)). The Commission further recommended that the requirement that the prospective adoptees must be of good repute and fit and proper to be entrusted with the custody of the child (in section 18(4)(b)) be strengthened by requiring proper screening of applicants.

The Commission did not recommend the reintroduction of the requirement of age differentials, as was provided for in the 1960 Children's Act. Neither did the Commission support South African citizenship as a requirement, given the judgment of the Constitutional Court in **Minister for Welfare and Population Development v Fitzpatrick and others**.<sup>17</sup>

While the Commission unfortunately has to concede that racial prejudice is still alive

---

<sup>16</sup> The Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope expressed concern over the vagueness of this concept and suggested that an element of permanency be attached in order to qualify as a family unit.

<sup>17</sup> 2000 (3) SA 422 (CC).

in South Africa, it stated categorically that existing racial prejudices, as also applied to children placed trans-racially, should not be tolerated. If racial prejudices are not eradicated, then all future South African generations will continue to live in a race-conscious society. The Commission therefore did not exclude the possibility of trans-racial adoptions, provided it is in the best interests of the child concerned, and recommended that sections 18(3) and 40 of the Child Care Act, 1983 be retained.

### **17.3.2 Comments received**

Respondents did not whole-heartedly support the Commission's recommendation that same-sex partners be able to adopt a child jointly. They argued that it is not in the best interests of a child to be placed in a "same-sex household".<sup>18</sup> Most of these views were expressed from a biblical point of view.

**Mr Rothman** submitted that before dispensing with the requirement of limiting joint adoptions to married couples, the Commission must assess the full implications of such a step which will have a far-reaching impact on issues relating to parental rights, including familiar terms such as husband and wife; parents; father and mother; biological fathers of children born out of wedlock. Furthermore, he stated that the impact on issues relating to responsibility; access; maintenance; children's court proceedings; transfer of parental right; adoptions; marriages; and passports must be considered.

### **17.3.3 Evaluation and recommendation**

The Commission's preliminary recommendations in respect of who may be adopted (children only) and the qualifications of prospective adoptive parents were not controversial and hardly elicited comment. The Commission therefore confirms its preliminary position.<sup>19</sup> In line with the Commission's position on persons unsuitable to work with children, it is also recommended that persons unsuitable to work with children should not be eligible to adopt a child.<sup>20</sup> All prospective adoptive parents will therefore have to be screened and assessed.

---

<sup>18</sup> Pro-Life; African Christian Action.

<sup>19</sup> Sections 257 and 258(1) of the Bill.

<sup>20</sup> Section 258(3) of the Bill.

The Commission's recommendation in respect of joint adoptions proved more controversial. In this regard, we wish to point out that families come in many shapes and sizes. The definition of family also changes as social practices and traditions change. In recognising the importance of the family, care must be taken not to entrench particular forms of family at the expense of other forms. However, our courts have recognised that the institutions of marriage and the family are important social institutions that provide for the security, support and companionship of members of our society and bear an important role in the rearing of children.<sup>21</sup>

The celebration of marriage gives rise to moral and legal obligations, particularly the reciprocal duty of support placed upon spouses and their joint responsibility for supporting and raising children born of the marriage. These legal obligations perform an important social function.<sup>22</sup>

Section 17 of the Child Care Act, 1983 effectively excludes all those in relationships other than heterosexual marriages from adopting children jointly. In order to make the pool of prospective care-givers in respect of a child larger, that the Commission recommended in the discussion paper that partners in a domestic conjugal life-partnership and persons who share a common household and form a family unit also be allowed to adopt a child jointly. The Constitutional Court in the **Du Toit** case also held that same-sex life partners should be allowed jointly to adopt children where they are found to be suitable parents.<sup>23</sup>

Important is also the recent judgment of Madala J in the **Satchwell** case.<sup>24</sup> In this case, the Constitutional Court limited the order made to partners in a permanent same-sex life partnership who have 'undertaken and committed themselves to reciprocal duties of support'. In the absence of such reciprocal duties of support, it would appear that the Court would be hesitant to place such partnerships on an equal footing with marriages. By analogy, however, if such partners jointly accept the duty of support in respect of a particular child, which is the logical outcome of a joint adoption application, then the courts should not hesitate to place such

---

<sup>21</sup> **Dawood and another v Minister of Home Affairs and others; Shalabi and another v Minister of Home Affairs and others; Thomas and another v Minister of Home Affairs and others** 2000 (3) SA 936 (CC); 2000 (8) BCLR 837 (CC), para 31.

<sup>22</sup> Per Ackermann J in **National Coalition for Gay and Lesbian Equality and others v Minister of Home Affairs and others** 2000 (2) SA 1 (CC); 2000 (1) BCLR 39 (CC).

<sup>23</sup> See also Lori Litchman 'Pennsylvania High Court OKs Second-Parent Adoption' (21 August 2002) Internet  
<http://www.law.com/servlet/C.../View&c=LawArticle&cid=1029689036632&t=LawArticle>  
 Accessed on 26 August 2002.

<sup>24</sup> Case CCT 45/01, decided on 25 July 2002.

partnerships on an equal footing with marriage.

In light of the **Du Toit** case, the Commission affirms its preliminary recommendations in this regard.<sup>25</sup>

#### 17.4 Consent to adoption

In terms of the Child Care Act, 1983 consent to an adoption must be obtained from:

- (a) both parents of a legitimate child;<sup>26</sup>
- (b) if the child is born out of wedlock, by both the mother and the natural father of the child, 'whether or not such mother or natural father is a minor or married person and whether or not he or she is assisted by his or her parent, guardian or in the case of a married person, spouse, as the case may be: Provided that such natural father has acknowledged himself in writing to be the father of the child and has made his identity and whereabouts known . . .';<sup>27</sup>
- (c) the child must also consent to the adoption if the child is over 10 years of age and if the child understands the nature and import of such consent;<sup>28</sup>
- (d) the foster parent where the child is in foster care and the foster parent has not himself or herself made an application for the adoption.<sup>29</sup>

Consent must be in writing and must, if given in the Republic, be signed by those giving the consent in the presence of a commissioner of child welfare who must attest the consent.<sup>30</sup> Before the commissioner attests the consent he must inform the person granting the consent of the legal consequences of the adoption.<sup>31</sup> The person concerned may withdraw the consent in writing before any commissioner at any time during a period of up to 60 days after having given such consent<sup>32</sup> and the

<sup>25</sup> Section 258(1)(a)(ii) of the Bill.

<sup>26</sup> Section 18(4)(d) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>27</sup> Section 18(4)(d) of the Child Care Act, 1983, as amended following the **Fraser** judgment by the Adoption Matters Amendment Act 56 of 1998.

<sup>28</sup> Section 18(4)(e) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>29</sup> Section 18(4)(g) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>30</sup> Section 18(5) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>31</sup> Regulation 19(2).

<sup>32</sup> Section 18(8) of the Child Care Act, 1983; Regulation 19(2)(b). See also **Re J (an infant)** 1981 2 SA 330 (Z) as to the withdrawal of consent by a father and **Y v Acting Commissioner of Child Welfare, Roodepoort** 1982 4 SA 112 (T) as to the withdrawal of consent by a mother.

children's court cannot make any order of adoption before the expiration of this 60 day period.<sup>33</sup>

Previously, in the case of a child born of a South African citizen, the applicants also had to be South African citizens and thus resident in the Republic, or if they were not South African citizens they must have qualified for citizenship and have already made application in this connection.<sup>34</sup>

In **Fraser v Children's Court, Pretoria North**,<sup>35</sup> the Constitutional Court declared section 18(4)(d) of the Child Care Act, 1983, which in its form at that time denied unwed fathers the right to consent to or veto the adoption of their natural children, to be unconstitutional in that it discriminated unfairly against unwed fathers on the basis of their gender and marital status and it also discriminated unfairly against fathers in non-Christian marriages. Parliament was given a period of two years to amend the law to bring it in conformity with the constitutional imperative of equality contained in section 9(3) of the Constitution. The Adoption Matters Amendment Act 56 of 1998, which inter alia amends section 18(4)(d) of the Child Care Act, 1983 so as to require the natural father's consent to his child's adoption in certain instances, takes into account the Constitutional Court's decision in **Fraser**.<sup>36</sup>

No consent will be required in the case of a child whose parents are dead and for whom no guardian has been appointed;<sup>37</sup> nor from any parent who is as a result of mental illness incompetent to give any consent;<sup>38</sup> nor from a parent who deserted<sup>39</sup>

<sup>33</sup> Section 18(9) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>34</sup> This particular requirement was held unconstitutional by the Constitutional Court in **Minister for Welfare and Population Development v Fitzpatrick** 2000 (3) SA 422 (CC).

<sup>35</sup> 1997 (2) SA 261 (CC).

<sup>36</sup> Ibid. See also T L Motsikatsana 'Is papa a rolling stone? The unwed father and his child in South African law - A comment on *Fraser v Naude*' (1996) 29 **CILSA** 154 and Van Heerden et al **Boberg's Law of Persons and the Family** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) 397 et seq. See further C J Davel and R A Jordaan 'Het die kind se belange uiteindelik geseëvier?' 1997 **De Jure** 330; R A Jordaan and C J Davel 'Die Fraser trilogie' 1997 **De Jure** 394; Carol A Gorenberg 'Fathers' rights vs. children's best interests: Establishing a predictable standard for California adoption disputes' (1997) Vol. 31 No. 2 **Family Law Quarterly** 169.

<sup>37</sup> Section 19(a) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>38</sup> Section 19(b)(i) of the Child Care Act, 1983. Prof J C Bekker maintains that this provision is harsh and unreasonable in view of the fact that a mentally ill person 'is not necessarily bereft of all emotion and will'.

<sup>39</sup> Luanda Hawthorne 'Children and Young Persons' in Schäfer **Family Law Service** argues that 'desertion' in this context must be given a restrictive meaning more akin to abandonment rather than mere neglect. Thus, a father who has failed to maintain his children in terms of a court order could not be said to have deserted his children: **Van Rooyen v Van Staden** 1984 1 SA 800 (T).

the child **or**<sup>40</sup> whose whereabouts are unknown;<sup>41</sup> nor from a parent who has assaulted, ill-treated or abused the child or allowed the child to be so assaulted, ill-treated or abused;<sup>42</sup> nor from a parent who has caused or conducted to the seduction, abduction or sexual exploitation of the child or the commission of immoral acts by the child;<sup>43</sup> nor from a parent who is withholding consent unreasonably.<sup>44</sup>

Section 19(b) of the Child Care Act, 1983 was amended by section 5(b) of the Adoption Matters Amendment Act 56 of 1998. In addition to the grounds listed above, no consent to adoption will be required from a parent

(vii) who, in the case of a child born out of wedlock, has failed to acknowledge himself as the father of the child or has, without good cause, failed to discharge his or her parental duties with regard to the child;

(viii) whose child, in the case of a child born out of wedlock, was conceived as a result of an incestuous relationship between himself and the mother of the child; or

(ix) who, in the case of a child born out of wedlock -

(aa) was convicted of the crime of rape or assault of the mother of the child; or

(bb) was, after an enquiry by the children's court following an allegation by the mother of the child, found, on a balance of probabilities, to have raped or assaulted the mother of the child: Provided that such a finding shall not constitute a conviction for the crime of rape or assault, as the case may be; or

(x) who, in the case of a child born out of wedlock, has failed to respond, within 14 days, to a notice served upon him as contemplated in section 19A.<sup>45</sup>

<sup>40</sup> Before its amendment by the Adoption Matters Amendment Act 56 of 1998, the consent of the parent who deserted the child **and** whose whereabouts were unknown could be dispensed with. These now form two separate criteria for dispensing with consent: the 'and' was changed to an 'or'.

<sup>41</sup> Section 19(b)(ii) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>42</sup> Section 19(b)(iii) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>43</sup> Section 19(b)(iv) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>44</sup> Section 19(b)(vi) of the Child Care Act, 1983. See also **SW v F** 1997 (1) SA 796 (O). In paragraph 7.2.10 of the First Issue Paper mention is made of the view of some social workers that commissioners in the children's courts are reluctant to use this ground especially if the parent who is withholding consent is represented by a lawyer. See also question 72 posed on page 86 of the First Issue Paper.

<sup>45</sup> For the procedure that must be followed before a children's court can dispense with a natural parent's consent to the adoption of his or her child on any of the grounds set out in section 19(b) of the Act, see regulations 21(4) - (6).

The Adoption Matters Amendment Act 56 of 1998 also inserted a new section 19A in the Child Care Act, 1983. This new section provides for the natural father of a child to be given notice of consent given by the mother for the adoption of their child born out of wedlock.<sup>46</sup> It further provides for notification of a parent of consent given by the other parent for the adoption of their child born out of wedlock and affords the natural father the opportunity to acknowledge paternity prior to making an order for adoption of his child born out of wedlock so as to enable him to exercise his rights regarding the adoption of the child.<sup>47</sup> A person who wishes to acknowledge himself as the father of a child born out of wedlock can now apply to have the registration of the birth of such child amended by the recording of an acknowledgement of paternity and having his particulars entered in terms of section 11 of the Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1992.

Non-disclosure adoptions, that is where the parents of the child are not allowed to know who the prospective adoptive parents are, nor what the child's destination is to be after the adoption, are regulated by section 18(6) of the Act and can only take place if the children's court is satisfied that this will serve the best interests of the child.<sup>48</sup> To ensure this secrecy, a parent is not allowed to be present during the proceedings of the children's court unless the court is of the opinion that the parent's presence will serve the best interests of the child.<sup>49</sup>

#### 17.4.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103

In the discussion paper, the Commission noted that few problems are being experienced in practice with informing the persons giving the consent of the legal consequences of adoption. In this regard the Commission supported the contention that most problems related to consent are averted when proper pre- and post-adoption counselling is provided.

Section 18(4)(e) of the Child Care Act requires the consent to his or her adoption of a child older than 10 years of age. In the Commission's opinion, the views of a child,

---

<sup>46</sup> In terms of section 19A(1).

<sup>47</sup> In terms of section 19A(7).

<sup>48</sup> In 1981, 25% of all adoptions were of this type: Van der Vyver and Joubert **Persone- en Familiereg** (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) Cape Town: Juta 1985 604.

<sup>49</sup> Regulation 21(3).



where a child has the ability to express such views, must always be considered. The Commission therefore recommended in the discussion paper that the age requirement of 10 years be done away with and be substituted with the following requirement: the child must consent to being adopted if he or she is of sufficient maturity to understand the implications of being adopted and giving consent to such adoption.

Since the *Fraser*-judgment, it is clear that unmarried fathers have certain rights in respect of their children. The Commission acknowledged this fact and wishes to encourage unmarried fathers to play a far greater role in the upbringing of their children. It was clear, however, that difficulties are being experienced in tracing unmarried fathers and serving notice on such fathers to the effect that the mother has consented to the adoption of their child (in terms of section 19(A)). Again the problem seemed to be not so much with the existing provisions of the Child Care Act, 1983, but rather their interpretation and application by different commissioners of child welfare. In this regard, the Commission pointed out that section 19A(1) needs amendment as in its present form it requires the commissioner to cause notice to be served on a parent 'where [such] other parent is not available to give consent or where such parent's consent is not required', which hardly makes sense.

The Commission recommended the retention of the 60-day cooling off period provided for in sections 18(8) and (9) of the Child Care Act, 1983. This allows the parent of a child who has given consent to the adoption of his or her child the right to withdraw such consent up to 60 days after such consent has been given. In this regard, the Commission was convinced by those respondents who pointed out that proper pre- and post-adoption counselling should prevent any difficulties with parents later wishing to withdraw consent.

Section 19 of the Child Care Act, 1983 allows for consent to adoption to be dispensed with in certain circumstances. Section 19(b)(vi), which allows for the dispensing of the consent of a parent who withholds his or her consent unreasonably, is particularly problematic as some commissioners of child welfare are apparently reluctant to make such a finding. Again, however, the problem seems not to be so much with the law, but with its interpretation and application.

#### **17.4.2 Comments received**

The **Dutch Reformed Church, Pretoria**, recommended that the 60-day cooling off period in adoptions be reduced to 14 days. The respondent mentioned that a lot of trauma and permanent damage is caused in cases where the biological parent retracts consent. The same argument was adduced by the **Suid-Afrikaanse Vroue Federasie**, North-West Province, who suggested that the 60-day cooling off period in adoptions be reduced to 30 days when children from birth to 5 years are to be adopted. It was said that adoptive parents' bond very quickly with younger children and that withdrawal of consent by the biological parent can cause immense trauma for both the child and adoptive parents.

**Mr Rothman** asserted that section 19(b)(iv) which deals with dispensing with consent where a parent withholds consent unreasonably is not easy to apply in practice and the regulations do not provide for procedures to be followed. He thus recommended that appropriate regulations be promulgated in order to ensure a uniform approach for adjudicating over these issues.

#### 17.4.3 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission confirms its preliminary position on consent to adoption as set out in the discussion paper. The consent of both parents of the child, whether they are married or not, or any other person with the guardianship component of parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the child, and the child, being of sufficient maturity to understand the implications of being adopted and giving consent to adoption, is required.<sup>50</sup> Consent of a parent or person with parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the child to be adopted is not required where that parent or person

- is incompetent to give consent due to mental illness,
- has abandoned the child,
- if the whereabouts of that parent or person is unknown,
- has abused or deliberately neglected the child,
- has consistently failed to fulfil his or her parental responsibilities towards the child during the last 12 months;

<sup>50</sup>

Section 259(1) of the Bill.

- has been divested by court order of the right to consent to the adoption of the child; or
- has failed to respond to a notice of a proposed adoption.<sup>51</sup>

The need to obtain the consent of the biological father of the child is excluded in certain specific instances. These include the scenario where the biological father was not married to the mother of the child and has not admitted in the prescribed manner that he is the biological father of the child, where the child was conceived from an incestuous relationship between that person and the mother, and where the father was convicted of rape of the mother.<sup>52</sup>

The practical problems relating inter alia to dispensing with consent, tracing uninvolved parents to obtain the necessary consent, and the manner in which notice of an impending adoption is to be given, should be dealt with in the regulations to ensure uniformity of approach.

The Commission recommends that the 60 days cooling period be retained. A parent who has consented to the adoption of a child may therefore withdraw the consent within 60 days after having signed the consent form, after which the consent becomes final.<sup>53</sup> Partly to address the concerns of respondents such as the Dutch Reformed Church and the Suid-Afrikaanse Vroue Federasie, North-West Province and to provide for those situations where the biological parents clearly have no intention to remain involved with the child pending finalisation of the adoption, the Commission recommends that the Department for Social Development, a designated adoption agency or adoption social worker may apply to the child and family court for an order freeing the biological parents or persons with parental rights and responsibilities from their parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the child pending the adoption.<sup>54</sup> The court must then authorise a designated child protection organisation or an individual to exercise parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child pending the adoption. Unless the court orders otherwise, a freeing order relieves the biological parents or persons with parental rights and responsibilities from the duty to contribute towards the maintenance of the child for the duration of the order.<sup>55</sup>

---

<sup>51</sup> Section 261(1) of the Bill.

<sup>52</sup> Section 261(2) of the Bill.

<sup>53</sup> Section 259(6) of the Bill.

<sup>54</sup> Section 260(1) of the Bill.

<sup>55</sup> Section 260(5) of the Bill.

The Commission also envisages an active role in adoption proceedings for the registrar of the child and family court. When a child becomes available for adoption the registrar is tasked to establish the name and address of each person whose consent for the adoption is necessary<sup>56</sup> and to serve notice on each such person.<sup>57</sup> The notice must inform the person whose consent is sought of the proposed adoption of the child.

Where a parent or person with parental rights and responsibilities in respect of a child withholds consent unreasonably while the adoption is in the best interests of the child, the court may grant an order for the adoption of the child despite the absence of such consent. In determining whether consent is being withheld unreasonably, the court must take into account factors such as the nature of the relationship between the child and the person withholding consent and the prospects of a sound relationship developing between the child and the person withholding consent in the immediate future.<sup>58</sup>

### 17.5 Effect of an adoption

An adoption order terminates all the existing rights and obligations between the child and his or her pre-adoption parent(s), and the relatives of the parent(s),<sup>59</sup> and an adoptive child is for all purposes whatever deemed in law to be the legitimate child of the adoptive parent 'as if he (or she) was born of that parent during the existence of a lawful marriage'.<sup>60</sup> Even in the interpretation of a will, unless the context otherwise indicates, an adopted child shall be regarded as being born from his or her adoptive parent(s) and, in determining his or her relationship to the testator or another person for the purposes of a will, as the child of his or her adoptive parent(s) and not as the child of his or her natural parent(s) or any previous adoptive parent(s).<sup>61</sup> An adoption

---

<sup>56</sup> Section 262(1) of the Bill.

<sup>57</sup> Section 263(1) of the Bill.

<sup>58</sup> Section 266(2) of the Bill.

<sup>59</sup> Section 20(1) of the Child Care Act, 1983, read together with sections 1(4)(e) and (5) of the Intestate Succession Act 81 of 1987. If, however, a child is adopted by a married person whose spouse is the parent of that child (i.e. a stepparent adoption), then the adoption order does not terminate any rights and obligations existing between the child and such parent: section 20(1), read together with section 17(c), and with section 1(4)(e)(ii) of the Intestate Succession Act 81 of 1987.

<sup>60</sup> Section 20(2) of the Child Care Act, 1983. See also **Venter v Die Meester** 1971 (4) SA 482 (T); **Cohen v Minister for the Interior** 1942 TPD 151 at 153-4.

<sup>61</sup> Except in the case of a natural parent who is also the adoptive parent of the child concerned

order will have retrospective effect and will confer the surname of the adoptive parent on the adopted child.<sup>62</sup> Adoption does not, however, extinguish any rights the adopted child may have against third parties. Thus, the adopted child can still sue a third party who has caused the child loss by the wrongful killing of his or her natural parent despite the fact of his or her subsequent adoption.<sup>63</sup>

Adoption can obviously not do away with the legal consequences of blood relationship. Thus section 20(4) of the Child Care Act 1983 provides that 'an order of adoption shall not have the effect of permitting or prohibiting any marriage or carnal intercourse (other than a marriage or carnal intercourse between the adoptive parent and the adopted child) which, but for the adoption, would have been prohibited or permitted'. This means that impediments to marriage based on blood relationship which existed before the adoption of the child, persist in spite of the adoption and also that no further impediments to marriage are created by the adoption of the child, other than that the adoptive parent and the child may not marry one another.<sup>64</sup>

Finally, an adoption order terminates an order by the children's court or a criminal court concerning the custody of the child.<sup>65</sup>

### 17.5.1 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103

In the discussion paper, the Commission recommended that adoption should terminate all the parental rights and responsibilities existing between the child and all persons who held such rights and responsibilities immediately prior to such adoption. In this regard it must be recalled that the Commission did recommend that parental rights and responsibilities, or components thereof, in respect of a child, may be assigned by the court to more than one person. The Commission also pointed out that its preliminary proposals regarding the allocation and sharing of parental rights and responsibilities should address those needs currently covered by the call for post-adoption contact where ties with the pre-adoption parents, family, and community can be maintained.

---

and who was married to the adoptive parent of the child concerned at the time of the adoption: Section 2D(1)(a) of the Wills Act 7 of 1953.

<sup>62</sup> Section 20(3) of the Child Care Act, 1983. However, the opposite can be provided for.

<sup>63</sup> **Constantia Versekeringsmaatskappy v Victor** 1986 1 SA 601 (A).

<sup>64</sup> Barnard, Cronjé and Olivier **The South African Law of Persons and Family Law** 282.

<sup>65</sup> Section 20(5) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

### 17.5.2 Comments received

**Rev. A W Doyer** is of the view that the adoption system should be abolished. He submitted that the adoption system is beyond reform as the focus seems to be on the need of the childless couples instead of the best interests of the child. He further argues that adoption perpetuates the myth of the transferability of parenthood. This myth stands in stark contrast to the stated aim of adoption being "... to support that child and his or her family in order to ensure that the child remains with its family" as well as the presumption that "children are best cared for by their parents". Rather than to reform the adoption laws, Rev. Doyer suggested that the foster care system be developed. In his view, this will form a sound structure for the long term care of children up till the age of 18, effectively replacing adoption.

### 17.5.3 Evaluation and recommendation

The views expressed by Rev. Doyer merit serious consideration given the drastic effects of an adoption order. Such an order will in the ordinary course of events terminate all parental rights and responsibilities any person, including a parent, had in respect of the child immediately before the adoption and terminate all claims to contact.<sup>66</sup> The order will confer full parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the adopted child upon the adoptive parent(s) and the surname of the adoptive parent(s) on the adopted child. For all purposes the adopted child will be regarded as the child of the adoptive parent(s).<sup>67</sup> If the purpose of adoption is to find the best child for the prospective adoptive parents and not to find the best parent(s) for the child, as Rev. Doyer maintains, then we should reconsider the fundamental principles underlying adoption as a system of alternative care.

## 17.6 Giving or receiving considerations for adoptions

Nobody may, except as prescribed under the Social Work Act, 1978 give, undertake to give, receive or contract to receive any consideration in cash or kind, in respect of the adoption of a child.<sup>68</sup> Contravention of this provisions constitutes a criminal offence and offenders will be liable to a fine not exceeding R 8 000 or to

---

<sup>66</sup> Section 267(1) of the Bill.

<sup>67</sup> Section 267(3) of the Bill.

<sup>68</sup> Section 24(1) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

imprisonment for a period of two years or to both the fine and imprisonment.<sup>69</sup>

It was brought to the Commission's attention that the above prohibition is regularly flouted with impunity. Among those alleged to be involved, along with prospective adoptive parents and biological parents consenting to adoption of their children by such prospective adoptive parents, are medical practitioners, private clinics, lawyers and social workers in private practice. It also appears that greater clarity is needed as to what should be considered to constitute a 'consideration'. The Commission therefore recommended in the discussion paper that the prohibition against considerations be maintained; also that the Regulations to the children's statute provide clear guidance to adoption practitioners and the courts as to what will constitute a 'consideration'.

No submissions were received on this issue.

The Commission would like to prohibit bartering of children whether directly or indirectly and not place mothers of children being the subject of adoption proceedings in a position where they are financially beholden to the prospective adoptive parents. The Commission therefore confirms its preliminary position and recommends that as a general rule no person may give or receive any consideration for the adoption of a child.<sup>70</sup> Certain exceptions to this general rule are provided for.<sup>71</sup> The Commission further recommends that details as to what will constitute a 'consideration' should be addressed in the regulations.

The Commission would also like to point out that it is recommended that only certain persons are allowed to provide adoption services<sup>72</sup> and that these persons be accredited to perform adoption work.<sup>73</sup>

## **17.7 Subsidised adoption**

In the discussion paper, the Commission expressed its support for the introduction of some form of means-tested State grant for adoptive parents. The Commission

---

<sup>69</sup> Section 24(2) of the Child Care Act, 1983.

<sup>70</sup> Section 276(1) of the Bill.

<sup>71</sup> Section 276(2) of the Bill.

<sup>72</sup> Section 277(1) of the Bill.

<sup>73</sup> Section 278 of the Bill.

stated that this would encourage foster parents to adopt the children in their care and that it would in this manner provide a greater sense of security especially to those children currently in long-term foster care.

The Commission confirms its preliminary recommendation and recommends that an adoption grant be paid to adoptive parents, subject to a means test.<sup>74</sup>

### **17.8 Access to information**

The Commission recommended in the discussion paper that the following persons have access to the information contained in the adoption register:

- X the adopted child from the date on which the child concerned reaches the age of 18 years;
- X the adoptive parent from the date on which the child concerned reaches the age of 18 years;
- X the natural parent or a previous adoptive parent of the adoptive child, with the written consent of the adoptive parent(s) and of the adopted child, from the date on which the child concerned reaches the age of 18 years;
- X subject to the conditions the Director-General: Social Development may prescribe, by any person for official and bona fide research purposes.

The Commission further supported the present Regulation 28(3) in terms of which the Registrar of Adoptions may require an adoptive parent, a natural parent, a previous adoptive parent or a child who wishes to access the adoption records to receive counselling from a social worker designated by the Registrar before allowing that parent or child to inspect the record concerned or to obtain a copy thereof.

An alternative approach would be not to restrict access to information in the adoption register, unless it is in the best interests of the adoptive child concerned. This can be done without much difficulty by accessing the population register. However, the Commission pointed out that access to information should not be equated with unlimited contact with the child. In this regard, the Commission was of the view that the court must in certain circumstances prescribe or even prohibit contact with the

---

<sup>74</sup> Section 344 of the Bill. See also Chapter 24 below.



child.

The Commission confirms its preliminary recommendations.<sup>75</sup>

### 17.9 Facilitating open adoptions

While the Commission recognises that there are a number of forceful arguments in favour of a legislative scheme for open adoption agreements, the Commission did conclude in the discussion paper that these are overwhelmed by the undesirability of creating legally enforceable rights in the context of such family relationships. Therefore, the Commission did not recommend that there be a legislative scheme for open adoption agreements. The Commission does, however, support a system of *voluntary* agreements as to openness in adoption.

In this regard, the Commission wishes to point out that there are a number of practices that agencies can follow which have the potential of increasing the chances of a successful open adoption. These are:

- X allowing birth parents to participate in the selection of adoptive parents;
- X encouraging adoptive parents and birth parents to meet prior to placement;  
and
- X providing certain post-adoptive services.

Another factor, rather than a practice, which can affect the success of open adoption arrangements is the extent to which birth parents have made a fully informed decision to relinquish their child and have a realistic understanding of what adoption will mean for themselves and for the child.

**Rev. Doyer** submitted that should adoptions continue, openness should be the norm. He stated that closed adoptions should be the exception and only resorted to in the event of the well-being of the child being threatened by the biological parent/s. He continued:

- Flexibility is needed in order that each mediated agreement meets the needs of its unique circumstances. However, the finalisation of the agreement itself

---

<sup>75</sup> Section 275 of the Bill.

which will form part of the adoption order, should be mandatory.

- Under no circumstances should the biological parent/s be coerced, encouraged or advised to relinquish parental rights with a view to closed adoption.
- The alternative approach regarding access to information should be the preferred one.

### **17.10 Adoption services**

The Commission recommended, in the discussion paper, an end to the current situation in which provision for, and the regulation of, adoption services are fragmented between the Child Care Act and the Social Work Act. It was further recommended that all adoption services ultimately be provided by individuals and agencies accredited by the Department of Social Development for this purpose in terms of the Children's Bill. It is recognised that an interim arrangement will be necessary to enable the Department of Social Development, child and family welfare organisations and accredited social workers to continue to deliver these services until a system of accreditation is fully operational.

Regulations should cover the manner in which applications for accreditation may be made, refused or withdrawn; procedures for appeal and review; annual reporting obligations and so forth. Regulations must, in addition, provide for fee structures and mechanisms for fee payment in respect of adoption services which are designed to preserve the impartiality of the relevant assessment and decision-making processes. Hence there must be no direct payment by any interested party in an adoption application to the social worker dealing with the matter or any person who is in a position to influence the outcome of the process, and no direct or indirect financial incentive for an adoption social worker to recommend adoption by a specific applicant, or to pursue adoption of a child in preference to another appropriate solution. Reimbursement of social workers in private practice, medical practitioners or other service providers should therefore be undertaken through contracting of their services to the Department of Social Development or an accredited agency, or through a centralised fund.

The Commission confirms these preliminary recommendations and provisions to this

effect are included in the Children's Bill.<sup>76</sup>

---

<sup>76</sup>

Sections 277 and 278 of the Bill.

## CHAPTER 18

### RESIDENTIAL CARE

#### 18.1 Introduction

Although it is widely recognised that children must be kept in the community as far as possible, residential care is an essential part of the child and youth care system. Unfortunately, even though the placement of children in residential care facilities should be regarded only in appropriate circumstances, too many children still end up in residential care in the current system.

##### 18.1.1 Comments received

**Durban Children's Society** supported the recommendations made in this chapter.

**Ms Lesley du Toit** submitted that it is essential that as few children and youth as possible are placed in residential care. She proposed that residential care be fully funded by the State and that the State should be held accountable to an independent body. She is of the view that residential care should exist only for therapeutic and protection purposes and not as an alternative home for the child. Thus, residential care should be only for those who need short term therapeutic support within a managed environment away from their community and family. Ms Du Toit said that residential care should be a resource to young people, families and communities without having to admit/commit children. Furthermore, residential care should be available to young people, families and communities as a self-referral option.

**Suid-Afrikaanse Vroue Federasie, Northern Province** submitted that although section 15(1)(c) and (d) of the Child Care Act, 1983 provides that a child found to be in need of care can be placed in a children's home or a school of industries, these institutions do not want to admit a child over the age of 15 (school leaving age). This forces social workers to place such children with "hobos" in a shelter. The respondent pointed out that exemption from paying school fees is only applied to a child in residential care until the child reaches the age of 15, which is the end of compulsory school going age. Thereafter donors must be found which is practically impossible.

### 18.1.2 Evaluation of comments

In response to Ms Du Toit's comments, the question could be asked as to what independent body the State should be held accountable to. The responsibility for child care ultimately resides with the Minister for Social Development, who is accountable to Parliament in terms of the Constitution for the performance of his/her duties.

With regard to residential care: Although the Commission agrees that as few children as possible should be placed in residential care, the contention that residential care should only be for those who need short term therapeutic support within a managed environment away from their community and family cannot be supported. Residential care should be avoided as far as possible, but there are instances where it is the most suitable option for a particular child. In order to ensure that residential care is only used in appropriate circumstances, only the courts should be enabled to place children in residential care.

## 18.2 Forms of residential care

### 18.2.1 Comments received

With reference to the chapter on residential care in the discussion paper, **Ms Lesley du Toit** pointed out that "the key role player in the transformation of the child and youth care system" is not "the child and youth care worker". Ms Du Toit proposed that the reference to schools of industry and reform schools and the necessary changes be updated in relation to what the Western Cape Education Department has done and how this has, if any, influenced the national system.

Ms Du Toit submitted that the major problem with schools of industry and reform schools are not the administration of these facilities. She stated that administration is only part of the bigger problem and that the situation is far more complex. In her view, the chapter on residential care fails to highlight the need, e.g. for a continuum of care for each child, which is one of the main reasons why one department should be responsible for the care, protection and development of children from the time they enter the system to the time they leave the system – even if this is merely a monitoring function.

Ms Du Toit pointed out that problems experienced include the absence of therapeutic work with children; absence of child and youth care personnel in view thereof that teachers are primarily used as caregivers against their will and without the necessary skills; absence of transition work and absence of continuity of care for the child. According to Ms Du Toit there is a lack of skills in schools of industry and reform schools to provide developmental programmes, to perform family reunification work and to undertake family preservation services. There is also a tendency amongst children in these facilities to deteriorate in behaviour, whereafter they are transferred deeper into the system due to poor capacity and lack of skilled personnel and not necessarily due to the child's problem with behaviour or emotions. Ms Du Toit submitted that schools of industry should operate as treatment centres and that reform schools should operate as secure treatment centres. She is thus of the view that the new child care legislation should not support the following scenario:

A child is treated in a therapeutic/developmental environment. Should the child's behaviour deteriorate, rendering the child in need of more intensive and skilled therapeutic work, the child is sent to a school of industry, where the focus is on education. Should the child's behaviour deteriorate even more, the child is then sent to a reform school.

### **18.2.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends that the Minister of Social Development, an MEC responsible for social development in a province, (a municipality), as well as any other person or organisation (provided certain requirements are complied with in the case of any other person or organisation) must be enabled to establish and maintain child and youth care centres.<sup>1</sup> Included in the recommendations is the establishment of a national strategy aimed at securing an appropriate spread of child and youth care centres throughout the Republic.<sup>2</sup>

The introduction of permanency plans for children is specifically aimed at securing stability in a child's life and to address the lack of continuity of care.<sup>3</sup> As advocated by Ms Du Toit, provision is also made for child and youth care centres to provide

---

<sup>1</sup> Section 212 and 214 of the Bill.

<sup>2</sup> Section 211 of the Bill.

<sup>3</sup> Section 176(1)(a)(iii) of the Bill.

therapeutic programmes designed for the residential care of children outside the family environment. The programmes may include a range of programmes designed for matters such as the reception and safe care of children pending court decisions or to protect children from harm and neglect.<sup>4</sup> A child and youth care centre may offer more than one programme.

To address the problem with regard to the lack of skills in residential care facilities, it is recommended that the Bill provide for the promulgation of regulations with regard to the minimum qualifications and experience for staff of child and youth care centres.<sup>5</sup>

### **18.3 Regulation of residential care**

The Child Care Act, 1983 requires the Minister to appoint a board of management for a children's home managed by the State. Private children's homes may only function as such if they are registered and managed by an association of persons consisting of at least seven members. Schools of industry are also subject to requirements relating to management structures.

#### **18.3.1 Comments received**

With reference to the discussion paper, **Ms Lesley du Toit** supported the view that there should be a connection between a residential care facility and the community, and submitted that a residential care facility should be accountable to the families and children it serves. She also supported the proposal that board members of a residential care facility should not play a direct role in the care, assessment or treatment of children. She however questioned the need for a board of management if it should not be involved in the care, treatment and development of children.

#### **18.3.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends that each child and youth care centre should have a board of management. This will consist of not fewer than 6 and not more than 9

---

<sup>4</sup> Section 210(2) of the Bill.

<sup>5</sup> Section 230 (p) of the Bill.

members.<sup>6</sup> The Commission recommends that the powers and duties of management boards should be set out in greater detail in regulations to the Act.<sup>7</sup> The new children's statute should also include a requirement that the details relating to eligibility, appointment, tenure, duties, responsibilities and termination of office of the members of the management board and matters such as the possibility of co-opting additional members for their expertise will be set out in the regulations to the Act.<sup>8</sup>

#### **18.4 Human resources**

Nowhere in the Child Care Act, 1983 or regulations are any requirements set for the appointment of a residential care manager or a worker at a child and youth care centre. The new child and youth care system can only be successfully implemented if it is supported at every level by people with the required knowledge and skills. There also is broad support for the idea that new child care legislation should include some provisions to ensure that children in residential care are cared for by appropriate people.

After due consideration of the issue of a list of persons deemed unsuitable to work with children, the Commission expressed the view in the discussion paper that there is considerable merit in the approach taken by the United Kingdom in keeping and maintaining a consolidated register of persons found by a court to be unsuitable to work with children.

##### **18.4.1 Comments received**

**Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa** submitted that the proposed register on persons unsuitable to work with children should be made available upon application to anyone who can show a likelihood of abuse and a situation that makes the sharing of the information necessary. The respondent stated that applicants can be compelled to comply with requirements of confidentiality and so forth, and that

---

<sup>6</sup> Section 225 of the Bill.

<sup>7</sup> Section 230(l) of the Bill.

<sup>8</sup> Section 230 (m), (n) and (o) of the Bill.



updated lists should be available only on application. Furthermore, a process must be created whereby anyone whose name is on the register can apply to have it removed and appeal to a higher authority.

The Commission initially recommended that the task of maintaining and administering a register of persons found to be unsuitable to work with children should vest in the South African Council for Social Service Professions. Responding to this, the **S A Council for Social Service Professions** submitted that section 19 of the Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978) provides only for the keeping of separate registers in respect of social workers, student social workers, social auxiliary workers and persons practising other professions in respect of which professional boards have been established in terms of Act 110 of 1978. The Council therefore has a responsibility to deal only with members from specific professions, i.e. professionals who render services to children. The Council felt that the concept of “persons unsuitable to work with children” is very wide and general and that it can include anybody working with children in any setting. Thus, the keeping of a register of persons unsuitable to work with children falls outside the Council’s functions as statutorily prescribed. Furthermore, the Council has neither the necessary financial resources nor the human resource capacity to accept and execute the proposed function.

#### **18.4.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends that a set of minimum standards for residential care should be included in the regulations to the new children’s statute.<sup>9</sup> The Commission also supports the establishment of a register of persons found unsuitable to work with children that will form Part B of the National Child Protection Register.<sup>10</sup> The Commission recommends that a child and youth centre, in the appointment of staff or the manager of the centre, must determine whether the name of a prospective employee or manager appears on such register.<sup>11</sup> Although it was submitted in the discussion paper that the manager or management committee of a facility should ensure that a prospective employee is registered to practice if required, the Commission does not consider it necessary to include such a provision in children’s

---

<sup>9</sup> Section 227 of the Bill.

<sup>10</sup> Section 120 of the Bill.

<sup>11</sup> Section 226(3) of the Bill.

legislation. Legislation governing registration of persons practicing certain professions as a rule adequately addresses issues relating to proof of registration.

The Commission originally was of the view that the South African Council for Social Service Professions should be made responsible for the administration and maintenance of the National Child Protection Register. The Commission however is persuaded by the Council's arguments as to the reasons why the Council would not be able to maintain the register. The Commission subsequently recommends that the National Child Protection Register should be the responsibility of the Director-General for Social Development.<sup>12</sup>

Due to the nature of the information contained in the register and the constitutional right of privacy afforded to all citizens, Part B of the Register (containing the record of persons found unsuitable to work with children) will not as such be made available to anyone as called for by the Christian Lawyers Association. Only the Director-General of Social Development and designated officials of that Department, as well as heads of provincial departments of Education on certain conditions will have access to Part B of the Register.<sup>13</sup> Organisations such as child and youth care centres, partial care facilities, shelters, schools and child protection organisations will only be able to establish whether a person's name appears in Part B of the register on confidential application to the Director-General of Social Welfare.<sup>14</sup>

## **18.5 Registration and classification**

There is no doubt that the registration of facilities is essential. This is a way to ensure that a facility has met the basic minimum standards before being permitted to receive children. The registration of a facility is the first step towards accountability and appropriate funding procedures which will then be taken forward through a quality assurance process.

### **18.5.1 Comments received**

**Ms Lesley du Toit** suggested that the term "children's home" be replaced with the

---

<sup>12</sup> Section 120 of the Bill.

<sup>13</sup> Section 131 of the Bill.

<sup>14</sup> Section 132 of the Bill.

term “child and youth care centre”. In her view, using the latter terminology will allow a centre to run any number of differentiated programmes.

### **18.5.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends that the current categorisation of facilities should be departed from, and that all facilities be referred to as child and youth care centres. The primary legislation should set out the broad requirements for registration of any facility caring for more than six children.<sup>15</sup> These would include matters such as the appointment of a suitable board of management,<sup>16</sup> the appointment of a suitably qualified manager through an approved interview process, the appointment of sufficient appropriately qualified staff<sup>17</sup> and the provision of programmes in accordance with the minimum standards.<sup>18</sup>

The Commission further recommends that all child and youth care centres need to be registered with the Department of Social Development (whether or not they are funded by the Department)<sup>19</sup> and that the Department will have the responsibility of inspecting and investigating facilities offering residential care programmes without registration for the purpose of registering that facility.

‘Child care facilities’ is listed in Schedule 4B of the Constitution, 1996 as one of the functional areas of local government. In terms of section 156(1) of the Constitution, 1996 municipalities have executive authority in respect of and “the right to administer” these matters. As such the right to administer child care facilities forms part of the matters in respect of which the legislative competence of Parliament and the provincial legislatures is limited.

While the Commission accepted the above constitutional framework, and saw a particular role for local government in the provision and administration of most forms of child care facilities, the Commission questioned the correctness of including residential child and youth care centres such as children’s homes within the constitutional ambit and therefore under the control of municipalities. Indeed, the

---

<sup>15</sup> Section 217 of the Bill.

<sup>16</sup> Section 225 of the Bill.

<sup>17</sup> Section 226 of the Bill.

<sup>18</sup> Section 210 of the Bill.

<sup>19</sup> Section 214(1) of the Bill.

current practice is that child and youth care centres are administered at provincial and not municipal level. This view of the Commission also reflects the position of the (national) Department of Social Development, which believes the reference to ‘child care facilities’ in Schedule 4B is meant to be a reference to crèches only. The Bill was drafted accordingly.<sup>20</sup> The word ‘municipality’ is placed in italics.

The Commission took this particular position (i.e. that child and youth care centres be administered at provincial level) for the following reasons:

- Residential care is expensive. Once established, it practically becomes impossible to curtail costs associated to the upkeep and running of such facilities.
- Residential child and youth care centres are currently administered by provincial government according to guidelines and principles determined at national level. Few municipalities have the experience or capacity required to effectively administer such centres.
- Residential care should always be the placement of last resort. There is a real danger that should municipalities assume administrative functions in this regard, that they will resort to residential options rather than follow the more appropriate community-based child protection models. As somebody rather cynically said, it is far easier for a mayor to point to the conversion of an unused building into a children’s home as proof of services delivery to children than to show the successful reintegration of those children into the community.
- Should the administration of residential child care facilities be at municipal level, then establishment or continued operation of such new and existing facilities may be endangered given local political dynamics. Such political meddling relating to the ‘not in my neighbourhood-argument is less effective at provincial level.

The Commission notes the views expressed by the Project Committee, but points out that the right to administer child care facilities would include the administration of a registration system as provided for in section 217 of the Bill. Section 156(1) of the Constitution must be read with section 155(7), which allows Parliament to “regulate” the exercise by municipalities of their executive authority referred to in section

---

<sup>20</sup> Section 217 of the Bill.

156(1). The vesting of the registration system in the provincial Departments of Social Development goes beyond merely regulating municipal executive power, and in fact impedes a municipality's right to exercise its powers. As such section 217 of the Bill falls within the constitutional constraint on Parliament set out in section 151(4) of the Constitution. To argue that children's homes and other ordinary residential care facilities for children are not child care facilities within the meaning of the Constitution, would be untenable, although it would seem that reform schools, schools of industry and other correctional types of institutions would fall outside the ambit of the term "child care facilities".

To accommodate the Project Committee and should the Department for Social Development take the position that the administration of child and youth care centres should not be a Schedule 4B municipal competence, the Commission's opinion is that a constitutional amendment to Schedule 4B would be required.

The Commission also recommends that the Minister should have the power to close down a facility, whether registered or not, before or after a Developmental Quality Assurance (DQA) process.<sup>21</sup> In addition to closure, the Minister should be allowed to suspend closure or registration<sup>22</sup> on certain terms and conditions, such as ordering a DQA process and instructing the facility to work with officials from the Department of Social Development. This could be done through the issuing of an enforcement notice.<sup>23</sup>

## 18.6 Programmes

South African residential care facilities generally lack programmes designed to meet developmental and therapeutic needs for children. However, a distinction needs to be drawn between a development plan for each individual child and a programme that is to be offered by a particular residential care facility. The current regulations create some confusion with regard to programmes offered by facilities and a plan which is specific to a child. The programme should be offered by the residential facility and the child's individual development plan must indicate which aspects of the programme the child will need to access.

---

<sup>21</sup> Section 216(1) of the Bill.

<sup>22</sup> Sections 219 and 221(3) and (4) of the Bill.

<sup>23</sup> Section 216(1) of the Bill.

### 18.6.1 Comments received

The Commission has recommended that each child admitted to a residential facility must have an individual development plan within seven days of arriving at the facility. Responding to this, the **Dutch Reformed Church, Pretoria** submitted that, due to the necessity for a thorough assessment, the seven-day period should be changed to one month. **Ms R van Zyl** and the **Sinodale Kommissie vir die Diens van Barmhartigheid** also suggested that the seven-day period be changed to one month.

**Ms Lesley du Toit** submitted that it may not be possible to provide a child with an individual development plan within seven days of his/her arrival at a facility. She said that an individual developmental plan is the end result of a full developmental assessment and should (if done thoroughly) take at least 2 to 3 weeks. In her view, it is essential that an assessment be done as soon as possible and that a care plan be put in place together with an initial plan to support the child through transition and to provide appropriate behaviour management and care.

### 18.6.2 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission thus recommends that the new children's statute should provide that each child admitted to a residential facility must have an individual development plan,<sup>24</sup> the details regarding which will be provided for in regulations.<sup>25</sup>

The Commission further recommends that the new children's statute must also provide that each residential facility should have a programme or programmes.<sup>26</sup> The nature of this programme should be included in the registration documents,<sup>27</sup> but should be flexible and be able to be changed fairly easily. The programmes should be reviewed as part of the DQA process.<sup>28</sup> The new children's statute should include

---

<sup>24</sup> Section 176(1) of the Bill.

<sup>25</sup> Section 180 of the Bill.

<sup>26</sup> Section 210 of the Bill.

<sup>27</sup> Section 219 of the Bill.

<sup>28</sup> Section 229 of the Bill.

an open-ended list of possible programmes.<sup>29</sup>

## **18.7 Geographical location and size**

Under the current children's legislation a child is *inter alia* entitled, as part of the rights of a child in a children's home, to regular contact with parents, family and friends, to involvement of his/her family and significant others in the child's care and development programme, to communicate with and be visited by parents, guardian, custodian, next of kin, social worker, religious counsellor, medical practitioner, psychologist, legal representative, youth and child care worker. To enforce these rights, it is required of the Director-General in so far as is reasonably practicable to designate a children's home or school of industries as close as possible to where the parent, guardian or custodian resides.

### **18.7.1 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends the inclusion of a general provision in the proposed legislation stipulating that a child should be placed in a residential care centre as close to his or her family and community as possible.<sup>30</sup> The general rule may only be departed from if there is no residential care facility offering the particular programme required by the child within a reasonable distance from the child's family. The legislation should also provide for regulations to regulate the size of the units and the staff-to-children ratio requirements for the particular programme or facility.<sup>31</sup>

It is further recommended that the Minister for Social Development will be required to develop a comprehensive national strategy for residential care, which should include matters pertaining to an appropriate spread of child and youth care centres throughout the Republic providing the required range of residential care programmes in the various regions.<sup>32</sup>

## **18.8 Procedures**

### **18.8.1 Designation**

---

<sup>29</sup> Section 210(2) of the Bill.

<sup>30</sup> Section 177(4) of the Bill.

<sup>31</sup> Section 226(4) of the Bill.

<sup>32</sup> Section 211 of the Bill.

Where the child and family court orders that a child be sent to a children's home or a school of industries designated by the Director-General, the Director-General has thirty days, in terms of the current legislation, to make such a designation.

#### **18.8.1.1 Comments received**

**Mr Rothman** submitted that the term "designated" is only used in terms of foster care placements and placements within children's homes and schools of industries. He stated that the latter should not be confused with other placements, e.g. places of safety, temporary or secure care facilities. According to Mr Rothman the Commission appears to have confused these concepts.

#### **18.8.1.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission endeavours to use language that is specific, but at the same time as clear and simple as possible. Mr Rothman's concerns with regard to the possible confusion of different concepts are noted.

The Commission recommends that the child and family court should have the power to determine the type of programme, such as a secure care or a treatment programme, which a child should undergo.<sup>33</sup> The Commission further recommends that the decision as to which particular child and youth care centre the child should be placed at should be made by relevant officials of the provincial Department of Social Development, based on the programmes offered by such centre, the developmental assessment needs of the child, the instructions of the court and any other relevant factors.<sup>34</sup>

#### **18.8.2 Duration of orders**

The duration of any court order made under the Child Care Act is usually two years. This period of time is regarded as sufficient for the reunification process. This order

---

<sup>33</sup> Section 177(2) of the Bill.

<sup>34</sup> Section 177(3) of the Bill.



can be extended by the Minister for Social Development or by the Minister of Education in the case of a child placed in a school of industry.

#### **18.8.2.1 Comments received**

The Commission has recommended that a children's court should be able to place a child in a residential care programme for longer than two years without reviewing the order. Responding to this, the **Dutch Reformed Church, Pretoria** submitted that residential care orders must be reviewed every two years, otherwise another "project-go" will be needed.

In addition, **Ms Lesley du Toit** submitted that, if developmental assessments are required and children's rights are respected, legislating on how long a child may remain in care makes no sense. She stated that the child (and family) should be able to access programmes for as long as needed and should be able to leave a programme as soon as their developmental and therapeutic goals are met. Furthermore, the child and his/her family should be part of the decision on how long the child should stay and there should be strong DQA work so that children are never left in care for no good reason, or transferred or discharged inappropriately.

With specific reference to section 31(1) read with section 31(4) of the current Child Care Act, **Mr Rothman** submitted that a commissioner of child welfare's primary responsibility is to preside over court proceedings and not to perform administrative functions such as inspecting books. He proposed that reference to the commissioner should be omitted from the section as he or she does not have time to visit residential care facilities.

#### **18.8.2.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

Although the Commission expressed the view in the discussion paper that a children's court should be able to place a child in a residential care programme for longer than 2 years without reviewing the order, the Commission recommends that such an order should be valid for 2 years or a shorter period as determined by the court.<sup>35</sup> Thereafter the order may be extended by the court<sup>36</sup> or administratively after

---

<sup>35</sup> Section 178(1)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>36</sup> Section 178(1)(b) of the Bill.

following the prescribed process<sup>37</sup> In spite of Ms Du Toit's contention that no specific period should be linked to a placement order, the Commission is of the opinion that by stipulating the two year period, placement orders will at least be reviewed regularly to ensure that the placement order is still appropriate. The administrative review process lightens the burden of the courts as the court need not review all placement orders, while provision is made for proper consultation and the possibility of appeal. The proposed children's legislation makes specific provision for a child and his or her family's right to participate in the decision-making process and requires that reasons must be given for any decision.<sup>38</sup>

The discussion paper included a recommendation that the administrative extension of placement orders should be dealt with by a team rather than an individual. The Commission however is satisfied that the procedure followed by provincial departments of social development will allow for sufficient consultation and for team work within the process, therefore it is recommended that the MEC for social development in the relevant province should be the person responsible for the final decision.<sup>39</sup>

As indicated in the discussion paper, the Commission considers it necessary to leave all court orders, including extension of orders, open to the possibility of periodic review at any time. A court may also order that a case be brought back to court for purposes of review.<sup>40</sup> Regarding the matter of who should have the right to approach the court for a hearing during the currency of an order, the Commission recommends that any person, including a child, should be able to approach the court.<sup>41</sup> Any party involved in a matter before the child and family court may lodge an appeal against the decision of the court to the High Court.<sup>42</sup> This would include the possibility of lodging an appeal against a placement order.

With regard to the question whether the children's court has the power to review and amend placement orders, the Commission recognises the court's power to do so in terms of section 15(2) the current Child Care Act. The Commission recommends

---

<sup>37</sup> Section 179(1) of the Bill.

<sup>38</sup> Section 179(2) of the Bill.

<sup>39</sup> Section 179(1) of the Bill.

<sup>40</sup> Sections 59(2) and 65 of the Bill.

<sup>41</sup> Section 76 of the Bill.

<sup>42</sup> Section 68 of the Bill

that this power be reflected in the new children's statute<sup>43</sup> and be augmented to include a power for the presiding officer of the court to request any person involved in the matter to appear before him or her again at a particular time.<sup>44</sup> The Commission is persuaded by the view that this will allow presiding officers to make more creative orders on the basis that they will be able to monitor the orders to some extent.

Mr Rothman's submission that a commissioner of child welfare's primary responsibility is to preside over court proceedings and not to perform administrative functions such as inspecting books is accepted. The Commission accordingly recommends that child and family court magistrates should not be obliged to inspect child and youth care centres, but should be empowered to do so if such magistrates consider it necessary.<sup>45</sup>

### **18.8.3 Appeals from the children's court**

A situational analysis undertaken by the IMC revealed that approximately one-third of children in state-owned and run facilities were considered by the staff to have been inappropriately placed. Due to the lack of a simple procedure to review the children's court decision, the child is usually kept at the facility.

#### **18.8.3.1 Comments received**

**Mr Rothman** did not support the Commission's recommendation that appeals should lie against any residential care placement order or any variation thereof made by the children's court. He pointed out that the children's court is not empowered to vary residential care orders or to refuse to make an order if a child is found to be in need of care. Furthermore, appeals would serve no useful purpose, but could exacerbate matters because of the delays it would cause.

#### **18.8.3.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

In response to Mr Rothman's comment, we submit that the child and family court will be specifically empowered to review and vary its orders in terms of the proposed

---

<sup>43</sup> Sections 175(3) and 65 of the Bill.

<sup>44</sup> Section 90 of the Bill.

<sup>45</sup> Section 352 of the Bill.

children's legislation.<sup>46</sup> The Commission is of the view that in the new children's statute appeals should lie against any residential care placement order, or any variation thereof, made by a children's court.<sup>47</sup> These appeals should lie to a higher court.<sup>48</sup> Application can be made to the Legal Aid Board by the child, parent or guardian should such person lack the financial means to obtain legal representation at his or her own cost.<sup>49</sup> As indicated below, there are certain instances where it is recommended that children must be provided with legal representation at state expense.<sup>50</sup>

#### **18.8.4 Release of a child at the age of 18 years**

Under the current legislation the Minister of Education may order a pupil or former pupil of a school of industries to return to or remain in that school for a further period, provided that the period of retention may not be extended beyond the year in which that pupil attains the age of 21 years. The placement of a child in any other residential care facility may also be extended in order to enable the child to complete his or her education or training.

##### **18.8.4.1 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends that provision should be made for an application for an order to allow the child to remain in a residential facility until the end of the year in which the child turns 18 years of age in order to allow the child to complete his or her schooling or training.<sup>51</sup> The Commission further recommends that a person may also apply to court for an order to allow that person to stay on at a child and youth care centre until the age of 21 in order to complete his or her education.<sup>52</sup>

#### **18.8.5 Discharge**

---

<sup>46</sup> Section 65(1)(c) of the Bill.

<sup>47</sup> In terms of section 68 of the Bill any party involved in a matter before the child and family court may appeal against a decision of the court to the High Court. This would include an appeal against a residential care placement order.

<sup>48</sup> In terms of section 61(1)(b) a child and family regional court is a court of appeal or review in respect of any child and family district court within its region. Section 68 provides for an appeal to the High Court.

<sup>49</sup> Section 77 (2) of the Bill.

<sup>50</sup> Par. 5.3 above.

<sup>51</sup> Sections 196(1) of the Bill. See discussion in Chapter 4 above.

<sup>52</sup> Section 196(2) of the Bill.

According to the Child Care Act the Minister may discharge a child from placement in a residential care facility at any time if he or she considers it to be in the interests of the child. However, the discharge of the child must take place within the context of family reunifications services.

#### **18.8.5.1 Comments received**

**Mr Rothman** pointed out that regulation 15 already requires that the discharge of a child be dealt with through full consultations followed by a report and a review by a team consisting of persons from various disciplines.

#### **18.8.5.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends that the power of discharge from a child and youth care centre may remain an administrative one. The discussion paper included a recommendation that administrative discharges should be dealt with by a team rather than an individual. The Commission however is satisfied that the procedure followed by provincial departments of social development will allow for sufficient consultation and for team work within the process, therefore it is recommended that the MEC for social development in the relevant province should be the person responsible for the final decision.<sup>53</sup> We further recommended that a notice of discharge should only be issued after the prescribed procedures relating to the assessment of the best interests of the child and the reunification of the child with his or her family have been carried out, reported to and considered by the MEC.<sup>54</sup>

#### **18.8.6 Children who abscond**

Under the current South African law, a child who has absconded may be apprehended by a police officer, social worker or authorised officer, whereafter the child must be brought before a commissioner of child welfare as soon as possible. The commissioner must question the child on the reasons why the child absconded before deciding whether to have the child returned to the facility from which the child

---

<sup>53</sup> Section 195 (1) of the Bill.

<sup>54</sup> Section 195(2) of the Bill.

absconded or not.

#### **18.8.6.1 Comments received**

**Mr Rothman** submitted that, in the event of a child being returned to a placement where there are no serious grounds for interrupting the placement, there should be an investigation into the reasons why the child absconded, which investigation should go beyond simply interrogating the child. If the child is to be removed from the placement after absconding, it is necessary for a social worker to investigate and fully motivate why removal is in the child's best interests as the Commissioner is required to report to the Minister. Mr Rothman contended that it is not advisable to empower the court to change the order with this exercise since it is not a children's court enquiry. It is a less formal hearing where no other appearances are required since it is merely an interrogation by the commissioner.

**Ms R van Zyl** suggested that a commissioner of child welfare should be able to change a children's home placement to a school of industry, or foster placement, or place the child back with his or her parents.

#### **18.8.6.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission is of the view that the current legislation should be expanded upon. As contended by Mr Rothman, there should be a more detailed investigation into the reasons that led to the child absconding.<sup>55</sup> Since the court would be performing a more detailed investigation and not merely an inquiry, we recommend that the court should subsequently have the power to change the order where it would be appropriate to do so.<sup>56</sup>

#### **18.8.7 Administrative transfers**

There has been a practice in South Africa of transferring children from one residential facility to another through an administrative process. The Minister may transfer a child from a children's home to a school of industries.

---

<sup>55</sup> Section 190(3) of the Bill.

<sup>56</sup> Section 190(5) of the Bill.

### **18.8.7.1 Comments received**

**Africa Christian Action** objected against the recommendation that “where a child is to be transferred to a more restrictive environment, the matter should be referred back to court”. The respondent proposed that a decision to transfer a child to a more restrictive environment should be made by a team as a referral to court may delay the matter.

**Mr Rothman** pointed out that regulation 15 provides adequately for the transfer of children at Ministerial level and already provides for a multi-disciplinary approach.

### **18.8.7.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends that where children are to be moved to a placement which is less or equally restrictive, such a decision can be made administratively. The discussion paper included a recommendation that administrative transfers should be dealt with by a team rather than an individual. The Commission however is satisfied that the procedure followed by provincial departments of social development will allow for sufficient consultation and for team work within the process, therefore it is recommended that the MEC for social development in the relevant province should be the person responsible for the final decision.<sup>57</sup> Further, where a child is to be transferred to a more restrictive environment, the matter should be referred back to court.<sup>58</sup>

The Commission takes note of the proposal by Africa Christian Action that a decision to transfer a child to a more restrictive environment should be made by a team as a referral to court may delay the matter. However, a decision to transfer a child “deeper into the system” (to a more restrictive placement) holds serious implications for the child and it is thus necessary for such a decision to be scrutinised by the court.

## **18.9 Right to care and protection in residential care facilities**

The protection of children in residential care requires a holistic approach. This

---

<sup>57</sup> Section 191(1) of the Bill.

<sup>58</sup> Section 191(6) of the Bill.

approach translates into the following:

- A process whereby children are made aware of and understand their rights and responsibilities as children, and specifically as children in residential care.
- A process whereby every service provider fully comprehends the rights and responsibilities of every child with whom they are in contact, as well as their own rights and responsibilities.
- Grievance procedures and communication channels must be put in place that are user-friendly for children, their families, the local community and service providers.
- A system of monitoring is required to ensure the effective care, development and protection of children in residential care.

### **18.9.1 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommended in the discussion paper that children's rights should be set out in the Regulations, as is the case at present. However, children's rights are so important that we recommend the inclusion of a chapter on children's rights in the proposed Bill.<sup>59</sup> As indicated in the discussion paper, the Commission is also of the opinion that greater emphasis should be placed on the responsibilities of children and therefore proposes that a provision setting out such responsibilities should be included in the children's legislation.<sup>60</sup>

More emphasis should be placed on training of staff in residential care facilities.<sup>61</sup> As indicated on the discussion paper, the wording of the Regulations should be revisited in consultation with practitioners to specifically address concerns related to uncontrollable or unacceptable behaviour of children in such institutions.<sup>62</sup> The Regulations should include the requirement that children be informed about their rights as well as their responsibilities.

### **18.10 Minimum standards and quality assurance in residential care**

---

<sup>59</sup> Chapter 4 of the Bill.

<sup>60</sup> Section 28 of the Bill.

<sup>61</sup> Section 230(p) of the Bill.

<sup>62</sup> Section 230(u) of the Bill.



The Child Care Act, 1983 makes provision for the inspection of children's homes, places of care, shelters and places of safety. Review and evaluation of children's homes, places of care, shelters and places of safety focus on two aspects: Firstly, whether the requirements for registration of the relevant facility are met, and secondly, the standard of care, protection or development of children in these institutions.

The Inter-Ministerial Committee on Young People at Risk initiated a process to develop a quality assurance system. A set of minimum standards that was circulated for general comment and discussion formed the basis for a national programme on "Developmental Quality Assurance" (DQA), which is being integrated into the line function of the national and provincial Departments of Social Development. The DQA and the minimum standards are inextricably linked. The DQA requires that:

- The residential facility does an internal assessment;
- An independent team assesses the facility over a period of 3 to 4 days;
- An organisational development plan is established by the facility's team and the DQA team and agreed upon; and
- The DQA team appoints a mentor who continues to support the organisation as they implement the plan.

As a monitoring tool the DQA is intended to ensure that organisations comply with legislation, policy principles and international instruments and that an effective and efficient service is delivered on at least the minimum standards level.

#### **18.10.1        Comments received**

The Commission has recommended that the Council for Social Services Professions should keep lists of independent persons who are not in the employ of the Department of Social Development and who are appropriately trained to subject residential care programmes of registered facilities to Developmental Quality Assurance (DQA) processes. Responding to this, the **Council for Social Services Professions** pointed out that it may, in terms of the Social Service Professions Act (Act 110 of 1978), do the following:

- (i) After consultation with the professional board concerned and with the approval of the Minister, make rules relating to any matter which the Council

considers necessary or expedient for the achievement or promotion of its objects or for the exercise of its powers or the performance of its functions (s 27(1)(f)).

- (i) Exercise or perform any power or function conferred or imposed upon it by or under any other act (s 4(1)(i)).
- (iii) Generally, take such other steps and perform such other functions as may be necessary for or conducive to the achievement of the objects of the Council (s4(1)(j)).

The Council submitted that if it should not be possible to confer the proposed function on the Council in terms of (i) and (ii), the new child care legislation could confer the proposed function on the Council, although it is preferable that a matter of this nature be dealt with in terms of the Social Service Professions Act. However, the Council wanted to obtain clarity on the following issues:

- Who should the independent persons be that should serve on the DQA team (persons from professions other than the social service profession)?
- Who would set standards for their training, train them and ensure that they are appropriately trained in DQA?

The Council also brought the following issues relating to costs to the Commission's attention:

- The Council is an autonomous body responsible for generating its own income. In taking on any additional functions, the Council will have to address the issue of staff and the possible need of having to employ additional staff at extra cost in order to execute the proposed function.
- The furnishing of information to prospective employees or interested parties would comprise an extract from the Council's registers and in terms of section 28(1)(v) of Act 110 of 1978 a prescribed fee is payable to the Council on the provision of extracts from any of the Council's registers. Therefore, the required information would be provided to the Department on payment of the prescribed fee.
- Independent persons to serve on the DQA teams will need to pay a registration fee for their names to be entered into the Council's registers.

**Ms Lesley du Toit** submitted that the distinction between departmental inspections

and the DQA process should be maintained. She proposed that where an inspection is conducted by the Department in a state facility, at least one person on the team conducting the inspection should be a qualified and experienced child and youth care practitioner from outside the public service. According to Ms Du Toit the leadership and the majority of DQA members should be qualified and experienced child and youth care practitioners from various appropriate professions outside the Department. In her opinion only one person from the Department should be on the DQA team.

Ms Du Toit recommended that the DQA team should be mandated by the Director-General for Social Development and should also report back on their activities to the DG. Ms Du Toit proposed the establishment of an independent office for the monitoring and development of residential care for children and youth. She submitted that this office should be tasked with registration, DQA, inspections, mentoring, being an ombudsman for children, education on children's rights for staff and children in care and advocacy for children in care. This office should report directly to the Minister / MECs of Education and Social Development, or to one of these, or to the President's office, or to the offices of the Premiers.

#### **18.10.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission is of the view that the Developmental Quality Assurance (DQA) processes as being currently tested by the Department of Social Development will be a more appropriate monitoring process than the inspection procedures provided for in section 31 of the Child Care Act. The Commission recommends, therefore, that the DQA process be included in the proposed legislation, with the detail relating thereto to be contained in regulations. It is further recommended that every residential care programme of all registered facilities must be subjected to a DQA at least every 36 months.<sup>63</sup> Every DQA should be conducted by a team of appropriately trained persons appointed by the Director-General: Social Development. In addition, the DQA process should include a "mentoring" aspect, as follow-up after the quality assurance visit.<sup>64</sup>

As indicated in the discussion paper, the Commission considered the proposal that

---

<sup>63</sup> Section 229 of the Bill.

<sup>64</sup> Section 230(v) of the Bill.

there should be an ombudsman or other independent figure or body which could, together with the DQA process, provide a protection mechanism for children in residential care. We confirm our views as expressed in the discussion paper and recommend that an independent body called the “children’s protector” should be established outside the Department of Social Development.<sup>65</sup>

### **18.11 Funding of residential care**

The Department of Social Development has for some years been discussing the idea of a shift from a per-capita based funding system to programme based funding. In the discussion paper the point was made that the new children’s statute should make it clear that the constitutional right of children to be provided with appropriate alternative care when removed from the family environment should be the key principle, as is provided for in section 28(1)(b) of the Constitution, and lack of funding, the failure to have carried out a DQA and other impediments cannot compromise the child’s right to state funded care.

#### **18.11.1 Comments received**

The **Sinodale Kommissie vir die Diens van Barmhartigheid** and **Ms R van Zyl** welcomed the recommendation that the funding of residential care be based on programme and per capita funding.

#### **18.11.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends that the funding principle that the proposed legislation should endorse and by which it should be informed is that funding of residential care will be based on programme *and* per capita funding. The per capita funding must be such as to ensure that the needs of a child in that residential care facility can be met in order to give effect to the State’s constitutional obligation to care for a child placed in statutory care by the State. The balance between programme and per capita funding should be managed in such a way as not to endanger viable residential care service providers or children being accommodated in these facilities. This can be achieved through appropriate transitional arrangements.<sup>66</sup>

---

<sup>65</sup> Chapter 22 establishes the office of the children’s protector and sets out the functions, qualifications etc. of the children’s protector.

<sup>66</sup> See Chapter 24 below with regard to funding.



## **CHAPTER 19**

### **RELIGIOUS LAWS AFFECTING CHILDREN**

#### **19.1 Introduction**

As stated previously in Issue Paper 13 and the Discussion Paper, the Commission believes that it is necessary to ensure non-discrimination with regard to different groups of children, addressing especially the cross-cultural conflict of laws that may arise for children subject to one or another religious or customary legal system. The model proposed by the Commission saw a future child law system in which core children's rights and concerns are equally respected and protected, independent of the system of personal law in which a child is raised, while at the same time ensuring that the State honours to the maximum extent the cultural and religious rights of children and families.

#### **19.2 Comments received**

**Durban Children's Society** endorsed the recommendations made in this chapter.

**Africa Christian Action** submitted that Christians believe that it would be harmful not to discipline their children. Thus, if a practice is commanded by or consistent with the Bible, it should not be considered as being harmful.

**Ms R van Zyl** submitted that children in foster care placement should not be forced, for practical reasons, to practice the religion of their foster parents.

#### **19.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission confirms the opinion expressed in the discussion paper, namely that South African law, including the new children's code, should apply to all children in South Africa. This means that all religious and cultural practices harmful to children should be prohibited. The Commission is also still of the view that the new Children's Bill is not the place to consider matters related to the assimilation or codification of religious and customary law into mainstream South African law.

The Commission operates within the framework of the South African Constitution and our international obligations. Therefore the Commission can only recommend

provisions in the new children's statute that would pass constitutional scrutiny. It is within such a constitutional dispensation that the Commission must decide whether to provide additional protection for children living in accordance with the tenets of any particular religious or customary law system. The Commission believes that it has to do so. As indicated in the Discussion Paper, there are several options available on how to deal with the protection of children against possibly harmful cultural and religious practices.

The Commission accordingly recommends the inclusion of a general provision stating the right of every child not to be subjected to harmful social and cultural practices that affect the well-being, health or dignity of the child.<sup>1</sup> Similarly, the right of a child to not be given out in marriage or engagement without his or her consent and below the minimum age set by law for a valid marriage must be recognised in legislation dealing with children.<sup>2</sup> It is without any hesitation that the Commission recommends the outright prohibition of female genital mutilation and the circumcision of female children.<sup>3</sup> The Commission does not recommend the prohibition of the circumcision of male children, but recommends that a male child's right to refuse to be subjected to circumcision should be recognised,<sup>4</sup> as well as a child's right to refuse to be subjected to virginity testing, including virginity testing as part of a cultural practice.<sup>5</sup> In addition, a male child's right not to be subjected to unhygienic circumcision should be clearly stated,<sup>6</sup> as should a child's right not to be subjected to unhygienic virginity testing.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Section 19(1) of the Bill.

<sup>2</sup> Section 19(2) of the Bill.

<sup>3</sup> Section 19(3) of the Bill.

<sup>4</sup> Section 19(4)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>5</sup> Section 19 (5)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>6</sup> Section 19(4)(b) of the Bill.

<sup>7</sup> Section 19 (5)(b) of the Bill.

## **CHAPTER 20**

### **CUSTOMARY LAW AFFECTING CHILDREN**

#### **20.1 Introduction**

There can be no doubt that the South African Constitution recognises the importance of customary law to the majority of South Africans. The Commission also accepts the importance of customary law and practices for a very large portion of our population. However, the Commission notes that customary law is recognised as a system of law provided it operates within the broad principles of the Constitution of 1996. Given the fact that the best interest of the child principle in section 28 of the Constitution is paramount and the individualistic nature of human rights protection, it would seem that the right of an individual child supersedes that of the cultural or religious group.

#### **20.2 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

In the discussion paper, the Commission has recommended the inclusion of a general non-discrimination clause in the new children's statute. The Commission also took cognisance of the provisions of section 1(1) of the Law of Evidence Amendment Act, No. 45 of 1988, which allows for the recognition of customary law insofar as such law can be ascertained readily and with sufficient certainty, subject to the principles of public policy or natural justice and developments in case law in this regard. For this reason, the Commission saw no need to provide for a 'choice of law' provision allowing for the customary law relating to children to be applied in the new children's statute.

Similar to our approach on corporal punishment and in order to protect children against harmful cultural practices, the Commission recommended in the discussion paper that cultural beliefs and practices should not serve as a defence against any charge of indecent assault or infringement of the right to privacy. A person would therefore be denied the opportunity to rely on the absence of unlawfulness, a critical element of any criminal offence, because of his or her unreasonable reliance on an alleged cultural practice. Where a girl therefore lays a criminal charge of indecent assault after having been subjected to a virginity test against her will, the person who conducted the test would not be able to say in his or her defence at the criminal trial



that virginity testing is an acceptable cultural practice and therefore completely lawful.

The Commission further recommended, in addition to removing reliance on customary law practices as a defence to a criminal charge, the introduction of a regulatory approach that combines the prohibition of certain abuses and formal protection measures where required. The aim would be to prevent infection and injury, prohibit coercion and provide recourse for children or their caregivers who choose not to participate in such practices.

As for female genital mutilation, the Commission recommended the imposition of severe criminal sanctions for persons and parents that force, coerce or allow girl-children to be circumcised. In this regard, the Commission pointed out that female genital mutilation is internationally recognised as extremely harmful, and appears to have minimal support in South Africa. Criminalising the practice of female genital mutilation would be a step aimed at preventing this practice from becoming established in South Africa, would support action being taken in other African countries, and would facilitate protective action including refugee status for immigrant children who might be affected.

The Commission also noted in the discussion paper that some provinces have adopted or are in the process of adopting legislation to regulate initiation schools. It is further our understanding that the (national) Department of Health is busy drafting legislation regulating initiation schools. The Commission supported this move to regulate initiation schools under the aegis of the Department of Health and accordingly saw no need to regulate male circumcision in the new children's statute. However, we cautioned against certain forms of virginity testing for girl-children masquerading as a customary practice in the discussion paper. In this regard, the Commission stated that a general provision prohibiting harmful social and customary practices in the new children's statute, coupled with new health care legislation so as to regulate circumcision schools, should adequately address the issue. The Commission also recommends the inclusion of a provision recognising the right of children to refuse to be subjected to virginity testing as indicated in Chapter 19 above.<sup>1</sup>

The Commission further argued that the Recognition of Customary Marriages Act

---

<sup>1</sup> Section 19(5) of the Bill.

120 of 1998 now makes it very clear that, 'despite the rules of customary law, the age of majority of any person is determined in accordance with the Age of Majority Act, 1972'. This includes not only women married according to customary law, but also children born of such unions. While it should therefore not be necessary to spell out clearly in the new children's statute how the age of majority of any person, including those living under customary law, is determined, given the clear language of the Recognition of Customary Marriages Act, 1998, the Commission nevertheless considered it prudent to include such a provision in the new children's statute to make it absolutely clear that the new children's statute should apply to all children in South Africa.

Given these recommendations and the recognition that customary law enjoys in South Africa, the Commission believed that the fundamental principles underpinning the new children's statute should be sensitive to the needs of customary law. At the same time, it should be clear that the best interests of all children, including those living under a system of customary law, are the paramount consideration. Accordingly the Commission recommended that children be protected from harmful social and cultural practices.

### **20.3 Comments received**

**Durban Children's Society** supported the recommendations made in this regard.

### **20.4 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission supports a provision dealing with the best interest of the child standard to augment section 28(2) of the Constitution and to set out the factors to be considered when applying the said standard.<sup>2</sup> It is evident from the language of the Children's Bill as proposed by the Commission that the new children's statute should apply to all children in South Africa. Chapter 4 of the proposed Bill sets out the rights of children in detail and includes a clause prohibiting unfair discrimination on grounds such as race, gender, sex, etc, as well as ethnic or social origin, religion, conscience, belief and culture.<sup>3</sup>

The Commission strongly supports the prohibition of female genital mutilation and

---

<sup>2</sup> Section 10 of the Bill.

<sup>3</sup> Section 13 of the Bill.

the circumcision of female children. The Commission not only recommends the prohibition of these extremely harmful practices, but also recommends that severe criminal sanctions should be imposed for contravening this prohibition.<sup>4</sup> Although the Commission does not recommend prohibiting male circumcision or virginity testing, the Commission does recommend that a child's right to refuse to be circumcised or to be subjected to virginity testing should be specifically provided for.<sup>5</sup> In addition, we recommend that a child's right not to be subjected to unhygienic circumcision and unhygienic virginity testing should also be expressly recognised.<sup>6</sup> The Commission supports the move to regulate initiation schools under the aegis of the Department of Health and through the provincial Departments of Health.

---

<sup>4</sup> Section 19(3) read with section 353(1)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>5</sup> Section 19(4)(a) and (5)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>6</sup> Section 19(4)(b) and (5)(b) of the Bill. See discussion in Chapter 19 above.

## CHAPTER 21

### CHILDREN - THE INTERNATIONAL DIMENSIONS

#### 21.1 Introduction

In the modern world children face risks in a variety of cross-frontier situations. Some children are caught up in disputes over custody or contact between parents living in different countries. Children may be the subject of parental abduction. Children who run away abroad face the multiple risks which confront the unaccompanied child in an alien environment. Some children are the subject of unregulated inter-country adoption, fostering or other alternative care arrangements. Other forms of cross-border illicit transfer for the purpose of economic or sexual exploitation of children occur. Children may be displaced through war, civil disturbance or natural disaster. This illustrates the need for international co-operation at all levels in order to ensure the protection of such children.

#### 21.2 Inter-country adoptions

Before the Constitutional Court ruling in the **Fitzpatrick** case,<sup>1</sup> inter-country adoptions were not legally possible in South African law. Section 18(4)(f) of the Child Care Act 74 of 1983 stipulated that a children's court shall not award an order of adoption unless the applicant or one of the applicants for the adoption of the South African born child is a citizen of and resident in South Africa, except where the applicant is a spouse of the parent of the child. Goldstone J, in whose judgment the whole Court concurred, held in the **Fitzpatrick** case that the absolute prohibition of the adoption of a South African born child by non-South Africans is inconsistent with section 28 of the Constitution which requires that the best interests of a child are to be given paramountcy in every matter concerning the child.

##### 21.2.1 Comments received

---

<sup>1</sup> Reported as **Minister for Welfare and Population Development v Fitzpatrick and others** 2000 (3) SA 422 (CC).

**Durban Children's Society** supported the Commission's recommendations in respect of inter-country adoptions.

### 21.2.2 Evaluations and recommendations

Despite the assurances given that foreign applicants will have a greater burden in meeting the adoption requirements of the present Child Care Act, 1983, the Commission recommends that inter-country adoption be regulated in the new children's statute. This section of the new children's statute should follow the section on adoptions in general and should address three specific scenarios. These are:

- Adoption of a child to or from a Hague Convention State in accordance with the provisions of the new children's statute (Hague Convention adoptions);<sup>2</sup>
- Adoption of a child to or from a country with whom a bilateral or multilateral agreement in this regard has been concluded (agreement type adoptions);<sup>3</sup> and
- Adoption of a child to or from a non-Hague Convention State or a country with whom no agreement has been concluded (other overseas adoptions).<sup>4</sup>

To cater for the Hague Convention-type inter-country adoptions, it is recommended that the new children's statute should provide for the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoptions to have the force of law in South Africa;<sup>5</sup> for the establishment of a Central Authority;<sup>6</sup> for the recognition of Convention adoptions;<sup>7</sup> termination of pre-existing legal parent-child relationships;<sup>8</sup> access to information;<sup>9</sup> the establishment of accredited bodies;<sup>10</sup> etc. Once the relevant provisions have been complied with, recognition of the adoption would follow.<sup>11</sup>

---

<sup>2</sup> Sections 289 and 290 of the Bill.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid.

<sup>4</sup> Section 300 of the Bill.

<sup>5</sup> Section 282 of the Bill.

<sup>6</sup> Section 283 of the Bill.

<sup>7</sup> Section 292 of the Bill.

<sup>8</sup> Section 293 read with section 267 of the Bill.

<sup>9</sup> Section 287 read with section 275 of the Bill.

<sup>10</sup> Section 285 of the Bill.

<sup>11</sup> Section 292 of the Bill.

To cater for the agreement-type adoptions, it is recommended that the section in the new children's statute must regulate the adoption by a South African parent of a child in that other country as stipulated in that agreement and that recognition of the adoption need not follow automatically.<sup>12</sup> As for the case of the other overseas adoption category, the Commission recommends that such adoptions should be discouraged and subject to very strict regulation.

Inter-country adoptions are still adoptions; therefore all provisions relating to local adoptions will be applicable to inter-country adoptions as well, where relevant.<sup>13</sup> Naturally, the Commission recommends that South Africa should ratify the 1993 Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoptions.

### 21.3 International child abduction

South Africa has ratified the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction and has incorporated the provisions of this Convention in its domestic law by the promulgation of the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction Act 72 of 1996. This Act designates the Family Advocate as Central Authority.

The operation of this Hague Convention, the constitutionality of the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction Act 72 of 1996, and the "grave risk" requirement as set out in article 13 of the Convention were considered in the case of **Sonderup v Tondelli and another**.<sup>14</sup> This decision of the Constitutional Court now confirms the constitutionality of the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction Act 72 of 1996 and gives credence to the procedures adopted in terms of the Act.

#### 21.3.1 Comments received

The **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** supported the recommendation that the civil law position be strengthened by introducing additional measures in the new child care legislation criminalising the act of parental abduction.

---

<sup>12</sup> Section 288 of the Bill.

<sup>13</sup> Section 282(2) of the Bill.

<sup>14</sup> 2001 (1) SA 1171 (CC).

**Durban Children's Society** endorsed the recommendations made in this chapter.

### 21.3.2 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission recommends that the provisions of the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction Act, No. 72 of 1996 be incorporated in the new children's statute.<sup>15</sup> The Hague Convention on Child Abduction should be incorporated into our domestic law as a schedule to the new children's statute.<sup>16</sup> The Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction Act can then be repealed.<sup>17</sup> The Commission further recommends that the Department of Social Development take over the responsibility for the administration of this Act and that the Director-General: Social Development should be designated as Central Authority.<sup>18</sup> As to the role of the Family Advocate, the Commission recommends that the Family Advocate should act as legal representative for the child in such applications.<sup>19</sup>

The Commission has given considerable attention to the defences provided for in Article 13 of this Hague Convention and its shortcomings in relation to cases where states parties do not deal effectively with domestic violence. The Commission accordingly recommends strengthening the existing provisions in this Hague Convention to provide for the investigation of a case from within the receiving country and to apply interim protective measures before ordering repatriation.<sup>20</sup> It is also recommended that specific provision be made for the right of the child concerned to raise an objection to being returned and for due weight to be accorded to that objection in accordance with the age and maturity of the child.<sup>21</sup>

The Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction by definition deals with the civil law aspects related to such abductions. It does not deal with the criminal law aspects of child abduction. The Commission accordingly

---

<sup>15</sup> Section 306 of the Bill.

<sup>16</sup> Schedule 3 of the Bill.

<sup>17</sup> Schedule 5 of the Bill.

<sup>18</sup> Section 307 of the Bill.

<sup>19</sup> Section 310 of the Bill.

<sup>20</sup> Section 309(1) and (2) of the Bill.

<sup>21</sup> Section 309(3) of the Bill.

considered strengthening the civil law position by introducing additional measures in the new children's statute criminalising the act of parental abduction.<sup>22</sup> We did this well realising that the criminal law is not the ideal measure to deal with family law issues, but unfortunately a civil law action and other mechanisms such as mediation do not always have the required effect.

It must also be pointed out that the common law offence of abduction is rather limited in scope as the intention in taking a child out of the control of his or her care-taker (custodian) must be to enable someone "to marry or have sexual intercourse" with that child. If the intention is something else (even if it is of a sexual or indecent character) which excludes marriage or sexual intercourse, there is no abduction, though the person taking the child may, in appropriate circumstances, be guilty of kidnapping, assault or something else. The Commission also wishes to make it clear that it is not considering abolishing or modifying the common law crime of abduction or kidnapping through the new children's statute. The Commission further recommends that, where appropriate, the abductor should be held liable for all costs reasonably incurred by the State or the other parent in locating and facilitating the return of the child.<sup>23</sup>

---

<sup>22</sup> Section 312(1)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>23</sup> Section 313(b) of the Bill.



## **21.4 Refugee and undocumented immigrant children**

### **21.4.1 Overview of proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

As indicated in the discussion paper, there is currently no legal protection for undocumented immigrant children under South African law as most do not qualify for asylum-seeker or refugee status. Foreign children that do not qualify for refugee status resort under the Aliens Control Act, 96 of 1991. This Act and the Immigration Act, 13 of 2002 which succeeds it, are aimed at getting rid of unwanted people of all ages rather than being founded on the rights of children.

Chapter 5 of the Refugees Act, 130 of 1998 deals with the rights and obligations of refugees, including refugee children. In terms of the Refugees Act, 1998 refugees enjoy full legal protection, which includes, amongst others, the rights set out in the Bill of Rights, the right not to be discriminated against on the basis of nationality, entitlement to the same basic health services and basic primary education which ordinary South Africans receive, *et cetera*. In view of the protection afforded by the Refugees Act, the Commission does not regard it necessary to include similar provisions to this effect in the proposed new children's statute.

Any child that appears to qualify for refugee status and who is found in circumstances which clearly indicate that he or she is a child in need of care as contemplated in the Child Care Act must forthwith be brought before a children's court. This injunction in section 32 of the Refugees Act 130 of 1998 allows the protective measures provided for in the Child Care Act to be activated. Subject to the understanding that this should also be the case under the new children's statute, this issue related to unaccompanied refugee children is therefore adequately dealt with in the Refugees Act, 130 of 1998.

In order to afford greater protection to refugee and undocumented immigrant children, and to make it very clear that the Commission regards the new children's statute as prescriptive in areas where there may be uncertainty as to the rights of children, a provision guaranteeing that refugee children and children seeking refugee status enjoy the rights set out in chapter 4 of the proposed Children's Bill should be included.

### **21.4.2 Comments received**

No comments were received.

### 21.4.3 Evaluation and recommendations

The Commission is of the opinion that the Refugees Act adequately addresses the situation of refugee children. The Commission is still of the view that unaccompanied or separated child asylum-seekers are in a more vulnerable position than those accompanied by their parents. The Commission therefore recommends the inclusion of a provision in the children's legislation clearly indicating that refugee children and children seeking refugee status have the rights set out in Chapter 4 of the proposed Children's Bill,<sup>24</sup> the right to be reunited with his or her parents or family if the child had been separated from them,<sup>25</sup> and the right to receive humanitarian protection and assistance to realise the rights indicated above.<sup>26</sup>

An unaccompanied or separated refugee child or asylum seeking child can be dealt with as a child in need of care and be referred to social services for an investigation into the child's circumstances.<sup>27</sup>

As indicated in the discussion paper, the Commission is critical of the Immigration Bill 2000 and recommends that Parliament should reconsider provisions such as clause 47 which obliges organs of state, with the exception of health care facilities, to ascertain and report on the status or citizenship of persons receiving its services. In this regard, the Commission urges Parliament to at least consider excluding schools, social welfare facilities, and the children's courts - as is the case with health care facilities - from the obligation to ascertain the status or citizenship of their clients and to report illegal foreign children and children of uncertain status to the Department of Home Affairs.

The Commission further recommends that Immigration Act, 2002 be amended to provide that any *accompanied* illegal foreign child found under circumstances which clearly indicate that such a child is a child in need of care as contemplated in the Child Care Act, 1983, must immediately be brought before the children's court.

---

<sup>24</sup> Section 24(a) of the Bill.

<sup>25</sup> Section 24(b) of the Bill.

<sup>26</sup> Section 24(c) of the Bill.

<sup>27</sup> Section 166 of the Bill.

However, an accompanied undocumented immigrant child should not be removed from his or her family, unless there are grounds for removal in terms of section 14(4) of the Child Care Act, 1983. Where the child is *unaccompanied*, we recommend that such child automatically qualify as a child in need of care.

## **21.5 Trafficking of children across borders**

Internationally, trafficking in persons and children in particular is receiving renewed attention. Several countries, South Africa included, are signatories to the UN Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Especially Women and Children, Supplementing the UN Convention against Trans-national Organised Crime, 2000. Although South Africa has no specific anti-trafficking legislation, legislation such as the Child Care Act of 1983, the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997, the Domestic Violence Act of 1998, the Prevention of Organised Crime Act of 1998 and the Sexual Offences Act of 1957 can be used at present to prosecute offences relating to the trafficking of persons to provide relief to or to protect the victims of trafficking.

### **21.5.1 Comments received**

No comments were received.

### **21.5.2 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission recommends the inclusion of a general provision on the trafficking of children in the new children's statute, which makes it a criminal offence for any person to traffic in children for commercial sexual exploitation, for an exploitative labour practice or for the removal of body parts.<sup>28</sup> This is in addition to those provisions criminalising the commercial sexual exploitation of children provided for in the new sexual offences legislation. Obviously children that have been subjected to trafficking are entitled to assistance<sup>29</sup> and to all the protection measures provided for in the new children's statute.

The Commission recommends that the provisions of the UN Protocol be incorporated

---

<sup>28</sup> Section 317 of the Bill.

<sup>29</sup> Section 316 of the Bill.

in the new children's statute.<sup>30</sup> It is further recommended that bilateral or multilateral agreements be concluded with the major countries that are not parties to the Protocol and from which children are being trafficked to South Africa or to which South African children are being trafficked.<sup>31</sup>

---

<sup>30</sup> Sections 314(a) and 315, read with Schedule 4 of the Bill.

<sup>31</sup> Section 314(b) of the Bill.

## CHAPTER 22

### A NEW COURT STRUCTURE FOR SERVING THE NEEDS OF CHILDREN

#### 22.1 Introduction

Obviously, our courts have an important role to play in upholding the rights of children. It was therefore necessary for the Commission to look closely at the functions and structure of the courts as part of their task of reviewing legislation which protects children.

#### 22.2 Comments received

**Durban Children's Society** supported the recommendation that the present children's courts be converted to Level One and Level Two Child and Family Courts.

**Mr Rothman** submitted that it will be in the interests of a child if the court maintains control over the child's placement until his or her discharge from the system. According to him this is the best way to address the accountability issues and to ensure that the rights of the child and other parties are respected.

Mr Rothman submitted that renaming the court the "Child and Family Court" will cause confusion with the Family Court pilot project. He stated that the name "Family Court" implies that the child is included in the family concept, which is desirable. He accordingly recommended that the name "Family Court" be adopted. He asserted that two-tier courts are impractical and will not be economically viable. Thus, rather than creating a more extensive children's court system, it is more desirable to go ahead with the all-embracing Family Court Division at regional level.

**Christian Lawyers Association of South Africa** welcomed the Commission's recommendation to broaden the functions of the children's courts. The respondent pointed out the following problems and inconsistencies with regard to the High Court:

- The High Court is inaccessible to anyone who wants to address the issue of custody and the high costs of advocates and attorneys are often prohibitive to anyone wishing to approach the High Court.
- Divorce cases and custody matters seem not to be popular amongst judges

and senior practitioners and these cases are generally regarded as the work for juniors.

- It is inconsistent to have only the High Court and the Divorce Court deal with custody matters, whilst commissioners of child welfare grant adoption orders (which are more far-reaching) on a daily basis.
- The High Court and Divorce Court may attend to interim custody orders, but the commissioners of child welfare can do a placement of a child who is in need of care. This would involve a child who is not the biological child of (for instance) the foster parent, whereas in terms of Rule 43 applications, for example, the child would be placed with one of his/her biological parents. The decision of the commissioner of child welfare regarding the placement of a child in need of care is therefore subject to far more serious considerations and implications.
- The upper guardianship of the High Court over all children is problematic when it comes to the location of the High Court. For poorer communities, which constitute the greater portion of the population, travelling with children by public transport to another city is a daunting task.
- It is difficult for a judge of the High Court (as confirmed by some judges) to adapt from the approach used in commercial and criminal law cases to the fundamentally different approach required to adjudicate family law matters.

Christian Lawyers Association of South Africa recommended that the specialised Family Courts that are to be instituted should be on magistrates' court level and should be situated in each magistrate's court area. The respondent suggested that the Family Courts should be enabled to hear all family law matters which should include divorces, adoptions, custody matters, foster care, placement of children, emancipation, domestic violence, maintenance for spouses, maintenance for children, consent to marriage for minors, children court inquiries and criminal cases relating to the disregard of court orders (maintenance, domestic violence, etc.) involving children. The respondent recommended that judges who indicated that they have an interest in family law, should be utilised to hear reviews and appeals on family matters. Furthermore, the Family Courts should be more inquisitorial with a wide range of powers to enable it to order the rendering of information and assessments on an *impromptu* basis, to prevent delays in matters and to prevent creating prohibitive hardship for the parties involved. The respondent stated that the High Court can still be recognised as the upper guardian of all children, but that the High Court should not be the court of first instance in this regard. Thus, the High

Court should act as a court of first appeal in family law matters.

The **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** submitted that mediation should be encouraged at the inception of each action. The respondent proposed that a Family Advocate, or a similar court official, should assist parties prior to their divorce by explaining the procedures and referring them for mediation, counselling or therapy. The respondent also recommended the creation of a dedicated family law centre. Such centres could provide audio-visual material such as tapes and videos to assist and educate the community on family law matters.

The Commission recommended in the discussion paper that the present children's courts, operating at district magistrates' court level, should be converted into Level One Child and Family Courts. In the second phase and as resources become available, a smaller network of Level Two Child and Family Courts should be set up. Responding to this, the **Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope** submitted that there should not be tiers of justice. The respondent feared that Magistrates Court matters (which appear to originate mostly from low socio-economic groups) would come to offer no more than "supermarket or assembly line justice". The respondent recommended that a dedicated Family Court system should be created, from High Court level down to Magistrates Court level.

The respondent also proposed that a judge should be appointed in each province to manage the implementation of the Family Court system, with judges appointed under such a managing judge in each Magistrates Court, reporting back to the managing judge. The respondent contends that these judges would manage the implementation of the Family Court system, maintain quality, control training and manage caseloads. The respondent recommended that family matters at Magistrates Court level should include issues such as maintenance, family violence and simple undefended divorces. More complex matters should be dealt with at High Court level. Consideration may also be given to creating a two-tier system of Regional Courts and High Courts that only deal with family matters. The respondent suggested that presiding officers in Family Court matters should be called judges in order not to minimise their functions. Furthermore, the High Courts and Lower Courts should have concurrent jurisdiction in respect of family matters.

The Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope proposed that a system be developed to make information available to litigants on options and services available, the rights of

children, and rights and responsibilities relevant to family law matters. This information should be available at the point of, and before the institution of, any action.

The Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope agreed that extensive and on-going training should be provided to all presiding officers and supporting staff to sensitise and educate them in family law matters. The respondent is of the opinion that disclosure of information regarding critical issues relating to children's best interests and financial information should be exchanged at an early stage. The respondent stated that shortened procedures as well as shortened appeal procedures should be provided for in order to have matters heard as soon as possible.

**CHILDS** recommended the following regarding the new decision-making body in matters of divorce and/or parental separation (*It is not clear whether the respondent is proposing that a decision-making body in addition to the court structure recommended by the Commission should be established for purposes of dealing with matters of divorce and/or separation*):

- the decision-making body should not be referred to as a court;
- the inquisitorial and not the adversarial method of investigation and decision-making be used;
- a clear distinction be made between spousal and parental issues;
- the medical model and not the legal model be employed;
- decision-making powers be vested in a team of professionals rather than in a single person;
- the team should consist of a range of professionals including, but not limited to the following: legal practitioners, psychologists, psychiatrists, social workers, educators and religious personnel.
- teams should be gender and culture sensitive;
- children should form an integral part of the process;
- all practitioners should be appropriately trained in both the law and psychology;
- physical setting should have the appearance of a home and not a court;
- only senior personnel should be selected to serve on the decision-making body;
- the focus of the decision-making body should be to assist families and to establish new levels of functioning post-separation and divorce;



- the procedures should be kept simple, inexpensive and accessible; responsible conduct should be encouraged – parents should be required to inform the decision-making body how they intend to solve their own problems in the form of a parenting plan rather than be told how their problems will be solved; and
- all parents and children must appear before the decision-making body and make representations on their own behalf.

**The Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project** (Community Law Centre, UWC) agreed that the present children's courts need to be transformed in order to bring them in line with children's needs and procedural certainty. The respondent cautioned that the creation of child and family courts will merely result in the proliferation of courts in South Africa. The respondent therefore submitted that the creation of a further court system will continue to fragmentise the court system and may result in more confusion and uncertainty. The respondent suggested that the present children's courts continue to operate, but with certain of the recommended changes.

The Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project agreed that the appointment of presiding officers to the children's courts needs to be revised and that a legally trained and sufficiently experienced judicial officer who has a law degree is the appropriate appointment for a presiding officer in the children's courts. The respondent proposed that, upon the appointment of a presiding officer, certain minimum core requirements must be met, i.e. legal training and motivation to serve as a commissioner. However, training in child development and family matters should be provided by the Department of Justice after appointment.

According to the Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project, an extra-curial lay forum to deal with matters of importance, such as the welfare of children, is inappropriate. The respondents stated that, although the value of community involvement is recognised, child care matters should be dealt with by the courts. Thus, lay forums such as family group conferences should only be used after some type of court order.

The Commission has recommended that a sexual offences court should be empowered to make any order that a child and family court could make if the child is in need of alternative care. Responding to this, the Children's Rights Project and

Local Government Project submitted that the process of deciding whether a child is in need of care and whether he/she should be removed from the home is complex and requires proper investigation. The respondents recommended that, in light of the recommendation that children's court presiding officers must have specific training which is not required of sexual offences court presiding officers, sexual offences courts should not be able to make orders that can be made by child and family courts. Furthermore, owing to the length of some determinations of placements, this will cause delays in the sexual offences courts. The respondents also proposed that both the children's courts and sexual offences courts should record any orders made by the other court in order to ensure that no contradictory orders are made that may affect a particular child victim.

The Commission has recommended that the role of the family advocates be extended and that they be renamed child and family advocates who can legally represent children in care proceedings. Responding to this, the Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project pointed out that the family advocate's role focuses on a welfare approach as opposed to a justice approach. The family advocate does not act in the traditional sense of an attorney or advocate. Private legal counsel takes instructions from his or her client and espouses the instructions over and above any considerations as to what the overall best interests of the client might be. The family advocate has to act in the best interest of the child with whose matter he or she is dealing. The respondent therefore recommended that, should child and family advocates represent children in future, it must be clear that a child and family advocate should represent the child as a legal practitioner acting on the instructions of the child, and not merely acting in the best interests of the child.

The Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project endorsed the Commission's recommendation that only legal practitioners on the family law roster would be eligible to represent children. The respondents pointed out that the Commission in its investigation into juvenile justice has recommended that only legal representatives who have been accredited by a National Office of Child Justice may represent children in the child justice court. The respondents submitted that it would be more efficient to have one accredited list of legal practitioners to represent children, rather than two separate lists, i.e. one for children's courts and one for the child justice courts. This would also make sense in light thereof that the children's court receives referrals from the criminal courts. As pointed out by the respondent, a further implication of this recommendation would be that an accredited child justice

legal representative who is not on the family roster would be unable to present his or her client in the children's court.

Responding to the Commission's recommendation that the children's court should be competent to order delictual damages for children, the Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project cautioned that, given the protracted nature of civil proceedings and rules of civil procedure, this function might overload the children's court and cause unnecessary delays. The respondents therefore proposed that any order made by a children's court in relation to a particular matter involving a child should be considered an order on the merits and that the question of quantum in a delictual matter be referred to the normal civil courts for determination.

The **Consortium** welcomed the Commission's recommendations made in this chapter. The Consortium also recommended the following:

- Adjudicators should be trained in how to communicate with children and listen to children.
- Students training for the various positions in the Child and Family Court should be obliged to study and be conversant in at least three of the official languages spoken in the area in which they want to work.
- Existing court personnel should be required to attend courses to become conversant in the language spoken by the majority of children that appear in their courts.
- The Child and Family Court Protector should be able to deal with the most straightforward cases that do not necessarily require a court hearing. For example, the Child and Family Court Protector could be empowered to register uncontested parenting agreements between a mother and an unmarried father of a child, and to and confer parenting rights responsibilities on family members caring for a child.

In the opinion of the Consortium, Child and Family Protectors, given their workload, will function mainly as reception and screening officers and will struggle to perform effectively other functions such as mediation, giving advice and assisting children and families to prepare for court. The Consortium recommended that a position to be called "Assistant to the Child and Family Protector" be created. This person should mainly be responsible for executing administrative tasks, dealing with less complicated matters and generally acting as a support person. The Consortium

submitted that this could be an intake and training position for persons wanting to work as Child and Family Protectors. Furthermore, law graduates could serve their articles as an Assistant which will serve to increase the pool of lawyers experienced in child and family matters who would later be available for placement on the family law roster.

According to the Consortium the court should have the power to order the Department of Social Development to provide a child or caregiver with temporary social assistance (social relief of distress grant) in addition to ordering the payment of a grant to children out of court funds. Such a child or caregiver should be required to submit the information necessary for the Department's records when approaching the Department of Social Development with the court order, but must be considered to automatically qualify for the grant concerned.

### **22.3 Evaluation and recommendations**

The three main recommendations of the Commission with regard to the courts are as follows:

- (a) That the children's courts be renamed and accorded a wider jurisdiction to allow them to provide more remedies.
- (a) That all courts should begin using the more flexible system of parental responsibilities, rather than merely guardianship, custody and access.
- (b) That practitioners working in courts which make child placement and child care orders must be more effectively utilised and trained in future.

These three main recommendations are discussed and explained below.

#### **(a) A wider jurisdiction and new name for the children's courts**

As a result of its investigations, the Commission has reached the conclusion that the children's courts need broader powers than they are presently afforded under the Child Care Act, 1983. This recommendation is motivated by reasons of cost effectiveness (gaining as much as possible from these courts) and efficiency on behalf of children in need of alternative care or placements.

The Commission does not feel that the functions of the children's courts should be

reduced in any way. Child and Family Courts should continue, *inter alia*, to conduct hearings on behalf of children who appear to be in need of alternative care<sup>1</sup> and to decide on appropriate placements for children such as supervised parental care, adoption, foster care or institutional placements.<sup>2</sup> Children who require alternative care are a vulnerable group and children's courts should continue to perform the important functions of ensuring that their legal rights are respected and that correct placement decisions are made on their behalf. A court which specialises in alternative care and alternative placement decision-making is an essential resource for South Africa – especially during the present period of social dislocation which is being experienced by many children.

It is recommended that, in order to perform their basic functions on behalf of children in need of alternative care more efficiently, children's courts require additional powers besides those which they already have in terms of the Child Care Act, 1983. For example, a children's court should have the power to monitor a case by setting a date for the future recall of the child.<sup>3</sup> It is not suggested that this power should be used in every case, but it would create a new capability for the courts that could be used in appropriate cases. On the side of the child placed by a children's court, it is recommended that the child should have a right to appear before the children's court where he/she is experiencing serious problems with his/her placement or where he/she finds that conditions that were imposed by the court are not being fulfilled.<sup>4</sup> The intention behind this recommendation is to give a more effective voice to a child who, for example, experiences abuse in his/her new placement or discovers that reunification services ordered by the court are not being provided. Courts working on behalf of children need to be able to take into account new circumstances or additional information, and it is therefore recommended that the children's courts require a new power to vary their own orders where there is good cause.<sup>5</sup>

In order to strengthen the status and effectiveness of the children's courts, it is recommended that the situations in which their orders can be administratively changed (as is presently possible under section 34 of the Child Care Act) be

---

<sup>1</sup> Section 58(1)(n) of the Bill.

<sup>2</sup> Section 59(1)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>3</sup> Section 65(1)(c) of the Bill.

<sup>4</sup> Section 76 of the Bill read with section 59.

<sup>5</sup> Section 65(1)(c) of the Bill.

reduced. At present, officials working under the authority of the Minister for Social Development have relatively wide powers to change children's court orders. It can be argued that this negates the time and expense utilised in order to reach court placement decisions. Placement changes without legal due process are also of concern because of fundamental ways in which they may affect the child involved. It is therefore recommended that any decision to move a child deeper into the continuum of alternative care must in future be reached by way of a court hearing that would amend the original children's court order. In other words, where caregivers decide that the child requires to be moved into a more restrictive placement that may have implications for his/her liberty, the matter must be taken back to the children's court.<sup>6</sup>

Amongst other recommendations designed to improve the care and placement work of the children's courts in the future are:

- X The power to order that a person undergo mediation,<sup>7</sup> counselling or assessment where this is in the best interests of a particular child.<sup>8</sup>
- X A personal accountability order to require that a person who has allegedly failed in his/her care obligations towards a child appear before the court in order to defend the claim or show good cause for such failure. This remedy could even be used against someone who received a foster care grant but did not use it for the foster child. It could also include the public domain, for example in the event of a corrupt official that refused to pay out a disability grant for a child because he required a bribe.<sup>9</sup>
- X The power to award delictual damages on behalf of a child where this appears appropriate at the end of a care or alternative placement hearing.<sup>10</sup> This could be used, for example, to order payment of compensation by an abuser of a child who had been a party at a hearing.
- X The power to award a short-term, temporary emergency State maintenance grant for a child where this appears to be necessary to prevent the child from being removed from his/her family or present home into more expensive

<sup>6</sup> Section 191(1), (2), (5) and (6) of the Bill.

<sup>7</sup> See also Mohamed Paleker 'Mountains promised, molehills delivered – mediation in the Family Court' (2002) Vol. 10(1) **Juta's Business Law** 13.

<sup>8</sup> Section 59(1)(g)(iii) of the Bill. See also New Zealand Law Commission **Preliminary Paper 47: Family Court Dispute Resolution** (2002).

<sup>9</sup> Section 59(1)(h)(vii) of the Bill.

<sup>10</sup> Section 58(1)(w) read with 59(k) of the Bill.

alternative State care.<sup>11</sup>

- X The power to arrange for extra-curial and non-adversarial decision-making processes (sometimes involving the extended family) such as mediation, counselling or family group conferences where appropriate.<sup>12</sup>
- X Since the court is to have expertise in child care issues, it is recommended that it would be an appropriate forum for persons to bring applications against the State. Applications could, for example, be brought against decisions relating to the setting up or maintenance of child care centres or early childhood development programmes,<sup>13</sup> or for a person's name to be removed from the national register of child abusers.<sup>14</sup>
- X The court should have the power to sanction, monitor and direct support for in-community placements of children and placements involving child-headed households.<sup>15</sup>
- X The court requires the power to allocate some or all parental responsibilities to any suitable person.<sup>16</sup>

Apart from the new tasks recommended above, it is further recommended that divorced or other unmarried parents or caregivers should be granted the power to approach the children's courts where they wish to apply for the allocation or reallocation of any parental responsibility.<sup>17</sup> Placements of children at divorce would continue to be decided upon by the divorce courts/high courts.

In order to signify a new departure in the form of a court with much wider powers on behalf of children, it is recommended that the children's courts be renamed **Child and Family Courts**.<sup>18</sup> It is recommended that the present children's courts, operating at district magistrates' court level, be converted into **Child and Family District Courts**<sup>19</sup> (in the discussion paper referred to as Level One Child and Family Courts). It is further recommended that, in the second phase and as resources can

---

<sup>11</sup> Section 345 of the Bill.

<sup>12</sup> Section 66 of the Bill.

<sup>13</sup> Section 224 of the Bill.

<sup>14</sup> Section 59(1)(h)(xii) of the Bill.

<sup>15</sup> Sections 59(1)(a) and 90 of the Bill.

<sup>16</sup> Section 59(1)(i)(i) of the Bill.

<sup>17</sup> Section 61(2)(e) read with section 76 of the Bill.

<sup>18</sup> Section 54 of the Bill.

<sup>19</sup> Section 54 of the Bill read with section 60.

be made available, a smaller network of **Child and Family Regional Courts**<sup>20</sup> (in the discussion paper referred to as Level Two Child and Family Courts) should be set up. More experienced personnel should staff these Child and Family Regional Courts. Regional Courts should deal with more complex or time-consuming matters.<sup>21</sup> They should also serve as a Court of Appeal in respect of the District Courts.<sup>22</sup>

Mr Rothman expressed the view that the name “Child and Family Court” will cause confusion with the Family Court pilot project and that two-tier courts are impractical and will not be economically viable. The Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope submitted that there should not be tiers of justice and that a dedicated Family Court system should be created, from High Court level down to Magistrates Court level. The Commission would, however, like to point out the underlying principle, which is the eventual linking of child and family courts and the Family Court system, including the all-embracing Family Court Division at regional level.

The Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope also made several recommendations with regard to the functioning, management and administration of Family Courts. Once the Family Court pilot project takes off, further attention can be given to the management, structure and administration of the family courts, as well as the designation of the presiding officers of the Family Courts as included in the proposal of the Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope.<sup>23</sup> The Children’s Rights Project and Local Government Project expressed concern over the use of an extra-curial lay forum to deal with certain matters and is of the view that child care matters should be dealt with by the courts. Thus, lay forums such as family group conferences should only be used after some type of court order. In response, the Commission can state that the proposed Children’s Bill provides for extra-curial forums such as pre-hearing conferences,<sup>24</sup> family group conferences<sup>25</sup> and other lay forums (e.g. a tribal authority)<sup>26</sup> that must attempt to find solutions to problems involving a child, to

---

<sup>20</sup> Section 54 of the Bill read with section 61.

<sup>21</sup> Section 61(2) of the Bill.

<sup>22</sup> Section 61(1)(b) of the Bill.

<sup>23</sup> See also ‘Family Courts: A Cinderella condemned to cinders?’ (2002) 1:7 **Bulletin**, Centre for Applied Legal Studies.

<sup>24</sup> Section 96 of the Bill.

<sup>25</sup> Section 97 of the Bill.

<sup>26</sup> Section 98 of the Bill.



mediate or settle disputes between the parties and to define the issues to be heard by the court. The intention is not to allow these forums to usurp the responsibilities and functions of the child and family court with regard to the welfare of children, but to assist the court.

It will not be possible to enforce by legislation the submission by the Consortium that prospective child and family court personnel should be obliged to be conversant in at least three official languages and that existing court personnel should be required to attend language courses. These issues could rather be dealt with as ongoing training objectives. The child and family court registrar will fulfil the function of assisting the court with matters that do not necessarily require a court hearing,<sup>27</sup> while the proposed Children's Bill already confers certain parenting rights and responsibilities on family members and other persons caring for a child.<sup>28</sup> The Child and Family Protector, on the other hand, will not be dealing with matters such as the reception and screening of matters, mediation, giving advice and assisting children and families to prepare for court, as understood by the Consortium. These functions will be performed by the child and family court registrar.<sup>29</sup>

**(b) A new system of parental responsibilities**

The Committee recommends that a new and more flexible system of parental responsibility components be used to supplement (and to some extent replace) the present caregiver rights of guardianship, custody and access. This recommendation is mentioned again here because it will significantly affect the work of courts. It should be noted that the Commission makes this proposal for all courts. The parental responsibilities approach would particularly impact upon courts where they do family law work – not only the proposed Child and Family Courts but also, for example, courts conducting divorce cases.<sup>30</sup>

**(c) More effective training and use of staff**

Court work with (often traumatised) children who require consideration for alternative

---

<sup>27</sup> Part 4 of Chapter 6 of the Bill deals with the powers and functions of the child and family court registrar and while Part 3 of Chapter 5 deals with parenting plans.

<sup>28</sup> Section 207 of the Bill read with section 44.

<sup>29</sup> Sections 94 and 95 of the Bill.

<sup>30</sup> Chapter 5 of the Bill.

care or placement requires specialised staff with the correct skills. These skills include interpersonal abilities appropriate for work with children and dysfunctional families, good communication skills, understanding and respect for other cultures and, at a professional level, interdisciplinary knowledge and understanding. The Commission has therefore recommended improved selection and training requirements for staff of the proposed Child and Family Courts as compared with the present children's courts.<sup>31</sup>

Family advocates should be legislatively empowered to work in the Child and Family Courts.<sup>32</sup> It is also recommended that officers to be called “child and family court registrars” (referred to as “child and family protectors” in the discussion paper) perform screening, reception, advisory, mediation and other services at the Child and Family Courts.<sup>33</sup> The Commission’s research has indicated that many private legal practitioners, due to a lack of the necessary skills and knowledge, are not effective or even have a negative effect when they work in the children's courts. The Commission therefore recommends that, where such practitioners are appointed to provide legal aid at State expense in certain cases in the Child and Family Courts in future, they be drawn from a special roster of appropriate practitioners.<sup>34</sup>

---

<sup>31</sup> Sections 70, 74 and 93 of the Bill.

<sup>32</sup> Section 77(2)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>33</sup> Chapter 6 Part 4 of the Bill.

<sup>34</sup> Section 77(2)(b) of the Bill.

## CHAPTER 23

### MONITORING THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE NEW CHILD CARE LEGISLATION

#### 23.1 Introduction

This Chapter dealt with the monitoring of the implementation of the new child care legislation.

#### 23.2 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103

As an effective monitoring structure is needed for the proper protection of children's rights, the Commission recommended the establishment of an independent body to be called the 'Office of the Children's Protector'. The Commission further recommended that the Office of the Children's Protector should operate independently from the Department of Social Development. It was further recommended that the Office of the Children's Protector should prepare an annual report for tabling in Parliament.<sup>1</sup> This report should also indicate difficulties, if any, hampering the proper implementation of the new child care legislation. In order to act effectively as a watchdog over the activities of those responsible for the implementation of the new child care legislation, the Commission recommended that the Office of the Children's Protector should, *inter alia*, have the following powers and functions:<sup>2</sup>

- The Office of the Children's Protector should receive, investigate and resolve complaints relating to any matter falling within the ambit of the new children statute, or direct such complaints to the relevant authorities if these are better placed to deal with such complaints.
- The Office of the Children's Protector should have the power to take legal action, if necessary, on behalf of a child where it is not possible for the child or anybody legally responsible for the child to do so.
- The Commission further recommends that the Office of the Children's

---

<sup>1</sup> Par. 24.5 of the discussion paper.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

Protector may, on receiving of a complaint, authorise an inspection of a residential care facility in order to -

- inspect whether that facility is complying with set minimum standards and may make such enquiries as he or she may deem necessary;
  - inspect and make copies of any books or documents kept on the premises;
  - seize any document or any other thing on the premises which in his or her opinion may be relevant to the investigation concerned;
  - observe and interview any child in the facility, or caused such child to be examined by a medical officer, psychologist or psychiatrist.
- The Office of the Children's Protector should conduct, on a random basis, inspections of drop-in centres to ensure that they comply with minimum standards.
  - The Office of the Children's Protector may also conduct periodical inspections of partial care facilities and may monitor ECD services.
  - The Office of the Children's Protector may, on its own accord or on receiving of a complaint, inspect any immigrant detention centre for the purpose of ensuring the adequate protection of children in that centre.
  - The Office of the Children's Protector should be informed of the death of all children in alternative care in order to consider whether an investigation is necessary to determine the adequacy and quality of services to children.
  - The Office of the Children's Protector should have the power to hold accountable any person or organisation that fails to implement, or contravenes, any provision of the new child care legislation.
  - The Office of the Children's Protector should have the right of access to documentation affecting children at the disposal of any department or organisation to enable it to perform its functions.
  - A procedure should be developed in terms of which the Office of the Children's Protector could summons any person to appear before it and to give testimony or produce documentation which might be relevant to an investigation.

For effective implementation of the new child care legislation and in order to avoid a duplication of efforts and thereby maximising available resources, the Commission recommended that the Office of the Children's Protector should maintain close

liaison with authorities, organisations, bodies and processes concerned with child welfare in order to foster common practices and to promote cooperation in cases of overlapping jurisdiction.<sup>3</sup>

The Chapter on a New Court Structure for Serving the Needs of Children recommended that the Child and Family Court must be accorded a monitoring power to do a follow-up on a case which it heard earlier. This will also serve as a method of monitoring the implementation of the new child care legislation.

The Commission recommended that it should be a criminal offence for any person to interfere with or hinder any person, authorised by the Office of the Children's Protector, in the exercise or performance of his or her powers and functions.<sup>4</sup>

### 23.3 Comments received

The **Consortium** did not support the recommendation that the functions of the proposed Office of the Children Protector be restricted to the monitoring of issues falling within the ambit of the new child care legislation. The Consortium further submitted that in order to ensure adequate resourcing of the proposed monitoring body, outlining its exact composition, structure, staffing needs and an obligation to establish an office in each province would help ensure that the necessary resources are allocated in the budget. The Consortium stated that the Commission for Gender Equality (CGE) and the South African Human Rights Commission (SAHRC)<sup>5</sup> need to work together with the proposed monitoring body to ensure co-ordination. The Consortium added that this could be achieved by the monitoring body being able to utilise the infrastructure and offices of the CGE and SAHRC.

The **Criminal Justice Initiative, Open Society Foundation of South Africa** argued that it is critical that government structures and NGOs that deliver services to children and their families be required to report on their activities exercised in terms of the new child care legislation, and that additional systems be put in place in order to provide information as to the efficacy of the system.

---

<sup>3</sup> Ibid.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid.

<sup>5</sup> See also Matshekg J 'Toothless bulldogs? The Human Rights Commissions of Uganda and South Africa: A comparative study of their independence' (2002) **African Human Rights Law Journal** 68.

**Ms R van Zyl** supported the Commission's recommendations.

#### **23.4 Evaluation and recommendations**

The Commission does not support the Consortium's suggestion that the functions of the Children's Protector be extended beyond the ambit of the Children's Bill. The Commission is of the view that child care issues, if any, which fall outside the ambit of the Children's Bill would not fall through the cracks as these would still be monitored by other bodies concerned with child welfare such as the South African Human Rights Commission.

After consideration of the functions of the Children's Protector as regards the inspection of child care facilities, the Commission concludes that the Children's Protector should not only inspect child care facilities such as child and youth care centres, partial care facilities, shelters or drop-in centres on receipt of a complaint, but should also routinely inspect these facilities whether registered or not.<sup>6</sup> Furthermore, the Children's Protector should be able to inspect any premises to which a complaint about a matter falling within the ambit of the Children's Bill refers.<sup>7</sup>

In order to ensure that child care facilities are safe for children, the Commission also recommended that, if a child dies on the premises of a partial care facility, shelter, drop-in centre or child and youth care centre, or following an occurrence at the partial care facility, shelter or drop-in centre, the Children's Protector must investigate the circumstances of the child's death if there are indications that the child has died because of abuse or neglect.<sup>8</sup> The Commission has further made recommendations on the following issues pertaining to the Children's Protector: qualifications, procedure for appointment, term of office and conditions of appointment, removal from office, filling of vacancy, reports after investigations and inspections, employment of staff, delegation of powers and duties, funding and financial accountability.<sup>9</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup> Section 326(1)(a) of the Bill.

<sup>7</sup> Section 326(1)(b) of the Bill.

<sup>8</sup> Section 325(3) of the Bill.

<sup>9</sup> Sections 320 - 324, 328, 329, and 331 - 337 of the Bill.

## CHAPTER 24

### GRANTS AND SOCIAL SECURITY FOR CHILDREN

#### 24.1 Introduction

Throughout the investigation, the Commission repeatedly stated that any proposals made for law reform must be accompanied and supported by the necessary human and financial resources. Further, given the large scale poverty in which the majority of children in South Africa live, the impact of HIV/AIDS, and limited resources, the Commission had no option but to consider social security measures for children. This is the focus of this Chapter.

#### 24.2 Overview of the current law

Grants and social security for children are presently provided for in the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992 and not in the Child Care Act, 1983. The administration of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992 was assigned to the provinces in 1996.<sup>1</sup>

With the phasing out of the State Maintenance Grant now complete, the only grants for children that currently exist are: the Child Support Grant (CSG),<sup>2</sup> introduced by the Welfare Laws Amendment Act 106 of 1997, which commenced on 1 April 1998; the foster child grant (FCG) which has been applied since 31 March 1998 in accordance with the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992;<sup>3</sup> and the so-called Care Dependency Grant (CDG),<sup>4</sup> also applied since 31 March 1998 in accordance with the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992.<sup>5</sup>

Presently, the Child Support Grant (CSG) is payable to a primary care-giver of a child

---

<sup>1</sup> By Proclamation R7 in **Government Gazette** 16992 of 23 February 1996.

<sup>2</sup> Made in terms of section 2(d) of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992.

<sup>3</sup> Made in terms of section 2(e) of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992.

<sup>4</sup> Made in terms of section 2(f) of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992.

<sup>5</sup> See, in general, Van Heerden et al **Boberg=s Law of Persons and the Family** 260 -7. The Care Dependency Grant is payable in the amount of R520 per month to a caregiver who remains out of the employment market because of the necessity of caring for a profoundly disabled child on a more or less permanent basis. It is, in other words, an income substitute for the caregiver of the child, to replace what would otherwise have been earned, rather than a child-related grant targeting the caregivers of special needs children whose costs in respect of such children are higher than is ordinarily the case. See further 'Social security and grants' *supra* 10-15.

who is under the age of seven years. The amount payable is R130 per month,<sup>6</sup> and the 'take-up rate' has increased from 30 000 children who benefited in 1998, to 1.2 million children by April 2001.<sup>7</sup> The Department of Social Development expects the take-up rate to exceed the projected target of reaching 3 million children aged below 7 years.<sup>8</sup>

The Foster Care Grant (FCG) is payable to the foster parent. The amount payable is R450 per month.<sup>9</sup> At March 2001, a total of 52 642 FCG's were being paid,<sup>10</sup> up from approximately 42 000 grants paid in 1995/6.<sup>11</sup> The most recent statistics on beneficiaries of this grant suggest that two provinces together account for 42% of all FCG=s. These are the Western Cape and the Eastern Cape. In the North West and Northern Province respectively, fewer than 2000 FCG's were paid in each province as at 31 March 2001.<sup>12</sup> Foster care grants are means tested in the hands of the *child*, the income of the foster parent not being relevant.

The third grant payable in regard to the care of children is the Care Dependency Grant (CDG), which, like the FCG, is payable until the child reaches the age of 18 years. The CDG is payable to a parent or foster parent in respect of a care-dependent child. A 'care-dependent child' is defined as a child between the ages of 1 and 18 years who requires and receives permanent home care due to his or her severe mental or physical disability.<sup>13</sup> From 1 April 2002, the amount of this grant is R620 per month. After attaining the age of 18 years, a child beneficiary may apply for a disability grant. Problems in regard to the payment of this grant have been identified by non-governmental organizations and service providers, including the lack of clear criteria for the awarding of this grant - these include the lack of a coherent definition of >care dependency= with a consequent lack of uniformity in assessments of care dependent children. The criteria for assessment are also based

---

<sup>6</sup> As from 1 April 2002.

<sup>7</sup> 'Department of Social Development inputs to yearbook 2001/2002= at [www.welfare.gov.za](http://www.welfare.gov.za) [accessed 14 November 2001].

<sup>8</sup> Ibid.

<sup>9</sup> As from 1 April 2002.

<sup>10</sup> This does not mean that 50 000 children benefited, as a foster parent may receive a grant for more than one child. Hollamby estimated in 2000 that approximately 100 000 children benefited from the FCG.

<sup>11</sup> Department of Welfare (1996) **Report of the Lund Committee of Inquiry on Child and Family Support.**

<sup>12</sup> 'Department of Social Development inputs to Yearbook 2001/2002= at [www.welfare.gov.za](http://www.welfare.gov.za) [accessed 14 November 2001].

<sup>13</sup> Section 1 of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992.



on medical factors, which go against the social model of disability which government would prefer to promote.<sup>14</sup>

In terms of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992, the Minister for Social Development may make financial awards to welfare organisations which undertake or coordinate organised activities, measures or programmes in the field of developmental social welfare services.<sup>15</sup> In the child protection field, this is fairly common and most services in this regard are carried out on behalf of the State by (child) welfare organisations, the churches and NGO's.

The Director-General: Social Development may make financial awards to persons 'in need of social relief of distress'.<sup>16</sup>

### **24.3 Overview of the proposals in Discussion Paper 103**

In the discussion paper, the Commission proposed that the foster care system should be rationalised and its focus altered. Ideally, the Foster Care Grant (FCG) should not function as a poverty alleviation measure, but rather as a mechanism for ensuring short-term, temporary care of children pending a more permanent placement or return to the family setting. The Commission therefore recommended that the FCG should be restricted to court-ordered temporary placements, and where a placement takes on a permanent nature, the foster placement should be converted. It was suggested that the amount of the grant should possibly be reviewed. The Commission, however, was reluctant to propose a lowered amount for foster-carers who are needed to provide alternative care for children who have to be removed from the family environment.

The Commission further recommended the introduction of grants aimed at subsidising adoptions, to enable long-term foster care to be converted into the more secure and permanent option of adoption. The Commission also recommended the extension of the Child Support Grant (CSG) to become a more universal social security system, targeting all poor children aged under 18 years. This proposal accorded with

---

<sup>14</sup> Children with HIV/Aids do not presently qualify for the CDG. The proposals discussed later in this Chapter concerning the payment of a 'top-up' grant for children with special needs must be viewed in relation to amendments /alterations to the CDG, rather than as constituting an altogether new grant. The proposals discussed below are in essence simply a change of name, not a new financial allocation.

<sup>15</sup> Section 5(2)(a) of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992.

<sup>16</sup> Section 5(2) of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992. 'Social relief of distress' is defined with reference to section 15 of the Fund-raising Act 107 of 1978.

advocacy efforts to lobby for the introduction of a Basic Income Grant (BIG) which would be payable to all South Africans, including children. Some lobbyists have proposed that even if Government were to find the immediate implementation of such a grant to be financially beyond the realm of possibility, at least it should be implemented incrementally, commencing with children up to the age of 18 years. The Commission supported these proposals, as they would go a long way towards addressing some of the problems with the present system of grants outlined in the discussion paper. The Commission was further of the view that this basic income grant, whether payable to adults and children alike, or whether it commences with payments regarding children, should not be means-tested.

In the discussion paper, the Commission expressed the view that the current amount of the CSG is inadequate to enable care-givers to provide for children's primary needs. The Commission therefore proposed that the legislation require government to review the amount payable for the CSG on an annual basis, and to adjust it in line with, or preferably above, the inflation rate. The Commission stated that it would have liked to recommend that Government review the amount payable as social security for children, and if this is fiscally at all feasible, to increase the amount to a level which is commensurate with the actual costs of feeding and otherwise raising children.

The Commission was further of the view that, in certain circumstances, an 'add-on grant' (such as the existing care dependency grant) should be provided for in the new children's statute. The Commission therefore recommended in the discussion paper that the Department of Social Development should identify which categories of special needs children should benefit from such a 'top-up grant' and design criteria outlining the precise circumstances within which such a top-up grant would be payable.

The Commission further recommended that recipients of state social security such as the CSG and the CDG, as well as beneficiaries of the FCG, should be exempted from school fees in respect of the children at whom the grant is targeted.

The Commission also recommended that administrative impediments and hurdles caused by over-onerous regulations, which are frequently overzealously applied, be addressed in the regulations which specify the conditions for the payments of grants. These should be simplified and the barriers caused by the requirement of proving compliance with the means test altogether removed.

Lastly, the Commission recommended in the discussion paper that enabling provisions be enacted to permit the Minister to (by regulation) spell out under which circumstances more than one grant, or a portion of a specific grant, may be claimed. Thus, although a person may be able to apply for a CSG and a FCG, the amount payable under the latter may be lower where a 'care by relative' situation is concerned.

#### **24.4 Comments received**

The Commission's recommendation that the Child Support Grant (CSG) be extended to target all poor children under the age of 18 was welcomed by the majority of the respondents to the discussion paper as it accords with the lobby for the introduction of a Basic Income Grant (BIG). However, some respondents expressed concern over the possible abuse of a BIG. For example, **Africa Christian Action** argued that the proposed BIG will encourage people to have more children in order to obtain an extra income, while not committed to the well-being of these children. Other respondents mentioned that the current CSG is already being abused and stated that the Commission could restrict the possible abuse of the proposed BIG by limiting the number of children to whom such grant can be paid within a household.

The **Consortium** supported the Commission's recommendations with regard to social security for children. Concerning the proposed child grant, the Consortium submitted that all children, including refugee children, should be eligible for this grant and that this grant must follow the child irrespective of whom the carer is. It said that children living on their own should be able to access the grant themselves if they are of an age and capacity to manage the money directly. The Consortium agreed with the Commission that the existing child support grant (CSG) be converted to a (universal) child grant which should not be means-tested and should be extended to all children under the age of 18 years. It suggested that it be legislated that the amount of the proposed child grant be linked to inflation with annual increases.

With regard to the foster care grant (FCG), the Consortium submitted that as the FCG and the child grant would serve similar purposes (providing for the child's basic needs), the amount of the child grant should be deducted from the FCG. However, a child with additional needs should be entitled to both the care dependency grant (CDG) and the child grant as the CDG serves a different purpose, namely to provide for the extra needs of the child due to a disability.

The Consortium argued that children with disabilities and chronic illnesses, including those with HIV, which render them in need of special care and material assistance in order to survive and develop must be entitled to social assistance in the form of the existing CDG. The eligibility criteria and assessment for this grant should be according to need due to the chronic health condition, and not solely based on the type or severity of the disability or chronic illness. It stated that further debate is required about the stage at which a HIV positive child should be eligible for the CDG and which chronic illnesses should be automatically eligible for assistance. The Consortium suggested that the Commission propose acceptable, universal definitions of disability and chronic illness.

The Consortium submitted that persons who are court-appointed foster parents should be entitled to a FCG for a limited period of time (2 years) after which the foster placement must be reviewed and subsidised adoption should be considered or full rights and responsibilities should be conferred on the foster parent(s) or the foster placement must be extended if necessary if it is in the best interests of the child to do so. Furthermore, it said that foster parents should also be able to obtain the CDG in addition to the FCG if they foster a child with special needs.

The Consortium proposed that should a child grant for children not be introduced, the present foster care system should be extended to provide for “care with relative” situations, with subsidised adoptions, and efforts to make it more accessible to children in need, especially children affected by HIV.

The Consortium recommended that, in view of the fact that many children are suffering from starvation and that there are long delays in accessing the CSG, a grant for emergency relief be created for families in crisis. This could be in the form of food parcels, transport vouchers and/or a cash grant. The Consortium stated that the new child care legislation should clearly describe the circumstances in which such a grant will be made available. It mentioned that the Social Assistance Act does provide for a social relief of distress grant, but people are not aware of this grant. It further suggested that social workers and child care workers, including NGOs, FBOs, and CBOs, should be entitled to fill in application forms for families in crisis and to submit the forms and to receive and allocate the assistance to the families that they serve. The Consortium submitted that providing caregivers with temporary social assistance would assist them to pay the transport costs to and from the offices of Home Affairs and Social Development which they have to incur in the

application process for permanent grants. Furthermore, it said bar-coded IDs or birth certificates must not be a requirement for access to emergency relief and recipients of emergency relief must be pro-actively assisted by the Department of Social Development to apply for permanent grants.

The Commission was asked to give consideration to the following:

(i) If during a child and family court proceeding, a court considers a child to be in need and to require emergency financial assistance, the court should be able to make an order obliging the Department of Social Development to immediately start paying the child a temporary social relief of distress grant. The court order must suffice as proof that the child is eligible and qualifies for the short-term relief. Uniform measures of need (including financial) will have to be developed by the Department of Social Development, and used by the court, together with the court's obligation to act in the best interests of the child in determining need for emergency relief. The Department may refuse to give the grant only by showing good cause.

(ii) If the situation requires immediate action, the court should be empowered to give the child and family financial assistance or vouchers from its own funds.

(iii) Both methods could be available to the court, e.g. the court could supply a grant for the first week/month to be followed by a social relief of distress grant from the Department of Social Development as ordered by the court.

(iv) When a child is referred by the court to the Department of Social Development for temporary relief, the Department should be obliged to assist the applicant to apply for a permanent grant if they qualify for such.

The Commission has recommended that directives immediately be sent to relevant service providers and the courts to make it clear that relatives should also be entitled to the foster care grant. The Consortium recommended that a similar approach be followed with regard to families in crisis and that the following be implemented immediately: the provision of emergency social relief to families in crisis through using the existing mechanism of social relief of distress grants. This could be facilitated through issuing a directive to all provincial Departments of Social Development informing them of the need to utilise the existing social relief of distress grants to assist families in crisis.

The Consortium proposed that parents who are unable to pay for services for their children such as health care, water, education, home affairs services, public transport, shelter and electricity due to being poor, should be entitled to free or subsidised services. The same principle should apply to family members, foster parents or caregivers who are unable to afford to pay for services that the children in their care need. However, the state should reimburse schools and health services for these “lost fees” so that the quality of the service provided is not affected. The Consortium submitted that children with disabilities and chronic illnesses, including those with HIV, which render them in need of special care must be entitled to subsidised and free services such as free nappies, free or subsidised assistive devices or transport to and from school and health care facilities, and exemption from paying school fees. Furthermore, it said that the Departments of Education, Home Affairs, Health, Water, Transport and Local Government must develop accessible systems that allow people to apply to be exempted from paying for services.

The Consortium stated that the current free basic water application system and the school fee exemption system are not working in the interests of poor children. It said that attention needs to be paid to how the new child care legislation can lay down guiding principles for such exemption systems to ensure that they are accessible to poor families. This could include an obligation on service providers to pro-actively approach poor communities and to assist them to apply for free services.

The **Dutch Reformed Church, Pretoria**, welcomed the Commission's recommendation that a child grant be paid to all children, and specifically that additional grants be paid to children with disabilities.

**Durban's Children's Society** and **Ms R van Zyl** supported the Commission's preliminary recommendations on grants and social security for children.

#### **24.5 The report of the Committee of Inquiry into a Comprehensive System of Social Security for Children (the Taylor Committee report)**

While the Commission was preparing its discussion paper, a Committee of Inquiry was looking at social assistance to children as part of a broader investigation into social security. This Committee (the Taylor Committee) completed its report in March 2002.<sup>17</sup> The report was released in June 2002 for public comment. Due to

---

<sup>17</sup>

the importance of this report and its relevance for this investigation, a summary<sup>18</sup> of the main aspects relating to children is presented below.

The Taylor Committee's recommendations with regards to children are not always clearly expressed. While chapter 7 is specifically dedicated to children's issues, there are other recommendations scattered throughout the report that also relate to children. There is a fair amount of duplication and overlap between chapters, which were written by different authors, causing some inconsistencies and a lack of clarity on some issues.

The Taylor Report states clearly that South Africa's social safety net has its roots in a set of apartheid labour and welfare policies that were racially biased and based on an assumption that everyone is employed or would soon be employed. Ideally, people should be able to earn a living through employment rather than rely on welfare transfers from the state. However, given the size of the unemployment problem in South Africa, the report states that full employment or significant improvements to the unemployment rate and wage levels of the working poor is not at all likely in the short to medium term. Social security policy reform must take cognizance of this reality. Another reality to bear in mind is the impact of HIV/AIDS. The report also takes into account the problems with infrastructure and implementation of social service programmes that have been created since 1994 to provide access to water, electricity, health care, education, housing and land; and mentions that these problems must be taken into account, especially when looking at the short to medium term interventions that are needed to address poverty.

The Taylor Committee's recommendations are based on an analysis of these and other socio-economic realities.

The Taylor Committee examines a range of social security measures that currently exist and that could be introduced, including private insurances (e.g. private pension funds), social insurances (e.g. a national health insurance system) and social assistance (e.g. the Child Support Grant). After considering the evidence, the Taylor Committee proposed that South Africa should create a comprehensive package of 'social protection'.

---

**Committee of Inquiry into a comprehensive system of social security for South Africa,** March 2002. The document is also available on the Internet at [www.socdev.gov.za](http://www.socdev.gov.za).

<sup>18</sup> The summary is based on the summary prepared for ACESS in June 2002.

The purpose of "comprehensive social protection" is defined as follows by the Taylor Committee:

**"Comprehensive social protection** for South Africa seeks to provide the basic means for all people living in the country to effectively participate and advance in social and economic life, and in turn to contribute to social and economic development.

The Taylor Committee therefore sees comprehensive social protection as broader than the traditional concept of social security to incorporate developmental strategies and programmes designed to ensure, collectively, at least a minimum acceptable living standard for all citizens. It embraces the traditional measures of social insurance, social assistance and social services, but goes beyond that to focus on causality through an integrated policy approach including many of the developmental initiatives undertaken by the state.

The Taylor Committee talks about a *package* of social protection interventions and measures. The notion of a package is emphasised as it is not desirable for a person to have to choose between basic needs. For example, a poor parent should not be expected to have to choose between feeding the family or sending their children to school. Both are basic needs that must be provided for by the package of comprehensive social protection.

When the Taylor Committee talks about income poverty they are referring to a situation where people have no income or insufficient income to meet their basic needs (e.g. food and shelter). To address income poverty, the Taylor Committee recommends three universal<sup>19</sup> cash grants. These are:

- Basic Income Grant (BIG)
- Child Support Grant (CSG)
- State Old Age Pension

The Taylor Report recommends that everyone must get *at least* a certain minimum income transfer to reduce or eradicate destitution and starvation. This would mean that all people would get an income transfer, whether it be through the vehicle of the

---

<sup>19</sup> Universal means that everyone gets them.



CSG, BIG or State Old Age Pension.

The Taylor Report is not clear on the relationship between the BIG and the CSG. However, other sections of the report appear to indicate that the CSG will remain and will be extended in the next few years to provide a basic income support for all children. The report does not indicate whether children will qualify for both the CSG and the BIG or for only the CSG. However, the report implies in various places that children will only get the CSG and that this will in effect be their income support grant. The bottom line though is that eventually (by 2015) everyone will get basic income support through one of the grants.

The Taylor Committee proposes a package of services to enable everyone to live and function in society. These services will be provided to everyone (universal) or may have eligibility criteria attached to them. The package of services includes:

- Free and adequate public health care
- Free primary and secondary schooling
- Free basic water and sanitation
- Free basic electricity
- Accessible and affordable public transport
- Access to affordable and adequate housing
- Access to jobs and skills training

The Taylor Committee proposes the following to ensure that everyone has access to assets that enable them to generate food and income:

- Access to productive and income-generating assets such as land and credit
- Access to social assets such as community infrastructure

'Special needs' refers to disability and children in compromised home environments who require foster care. The Taylor Committee proposes that the adult disability grant, care dependency grant and the foster child grant should be retained and reformed. All three grants should continue to be targeted grants which would mean that they would continue to have eligibility criteria.

The Taylor Committee proposes a phased-in approach for the Comprehensive Social Protection package. It stresses that first priority must be to address income poverty

by ensuring that poor people have access to a minimum level of income. While the Taylor Committee calls for a Basic Income Grant/Solidarity Grant/Income Support Grant for all South Africans, it found that the conditions for the immediate implementation of a BIG do not currently exist, and therefore calls for a phased-in approach which would allow for the appropriate capacity and institutional arrangements to be put in place over time. The following phasing in time-table is suggested:

- 2002 - 2004: Children first through extending the CSG
- 2005 - 2015: Income Support Grant (solidarity grant/BIG) extended to all South Africans

The income support grant/BIG is meant for people currently not receiving social assistance – those who fall through the social safety net. The Report is not clear on whether people with special needs will get both the BIG and their special needs grant, or only the special needs grant.

As far as the Child Support Grant is concerned, the Taylor Committee recommends that the CSG be extended to all children under 18 (this is the first phase of the BIG). However, the report is not clear as to how this extension will be put into effect. The report does not specify whether the extension will be achieved through (a) scrapping the means test, (b) simplifying the means test, (c) increasing the age limit incrementally, (d) immediately increasing the age limit to 18, or (e) a combination of two of the above.

The Taylor Committee also recommends that the CSG must be supplemented by an appropriate nutrition and child care support programme. It does not provide any further details of this programme. The Taylor Committee recommends that the procedure for accessing the CSG must be simplified, especially for orphaned children and children living in child-headed households. Child-headed households should be assisted by NGOs or CBOs to allow for adult supervision in the application and spending of the grant. Other than the above with regards to child-headed households, the report does not give detail on what aspects must be simplified or how access should be improved.

The Taylor Committee views the Foster Care Grant (FCG) as providing an important support mechanism for children in compromised family environments. The

recommendations include:

- simplify access to the FCG and shorten the process,
- non-South Africans should be entitled to the grant.

The Care Dependency Grant (CDG) is discussed in the report in the section on disability generally, and recommendations are more conceptual and mixed up in the adult Disability Grant (DG) recommendations. The conceptual recommendations are:

- A broad definition of disability should be used for all the various schemes and funds that relate to disability, with each different scheme adapting this to the purpose and scope of the particular scheme;
- Beneficiaries should not be defined according to the disability, but rather the system should measure and respond to their level of need;
- Persons with chronic illnesses, including HIV/AIDS, should also qualify for a disability grant;
- The needs-assessment should consider not only the type and severity of the disability or illness, but also other social, economic, physical and environmental factors;
- The needs-assessment would include a financial analysis of the individual's situation and needs. There should be a threshold of income, which should be determined by the Disability Sector and economists;
- This assessment should be undertaken at regular intervals to identify changes in circumstances and need;
- A sliding scale of benefits to suit the range of presenting needs, which would incorporate cash transfers and other indirect forms of social security;
- The DG and CDG should be maintained and kept at their current level, if not increased.
- Individuals would receive basic income as the first step in the package of benefits; thereafter consideration of their extra needs through 'topping up' in cash and in-kind benefits.

In the short-term, the Taylor Committee's recommends that:

- Amendments to Social Assistance Act and Regulations and administrative structures be affected;

- the 'permanent home care' clause be removed from the definition of a care dependent child
- the CDG be extended to children with moderate disabilities and to those in special schools or day-care centres;
- the current medical assessment forms be revamped;
- a multi-disciplinary panel for assessments be utilized;
- clear eligibility criteria and guidelines for assessors be developed;
- the criteria of proving spouse's income be removed from the means-test;
- free public health services be provided to persons with disabilities;
- processes be reviewed at regular intervals;
- an appeal mechanism be established;
- the processing time for applications be shortened; and
- the public be educated on social security available to them.

The Taylor Committee's final recommendations are that:

- Existing disability benefits should remain until such time as income support measures are universally implemented;
- Cash benefits and in-kind benefits should be de-linked so that those not eligible for a grant may still qualify for other free services / support;
- Definitions should be amended to reflect an interactive approach that takes into account both medical condition and social and environmental factors, and broadened to include physical, mental, sensory and intellectual disabilities;
- Definition should identify need and appropriate range and level of benefits
- Provision for the purchasing of essential assistive devices should be made;
- Administrative procedures should be simplified;
- Quantitative indicators and benchmarks should be developed;
- Officials should be aware of the obligations of the state and the rights of the applicants;
- Discriminatory elements in the provisioning of grants and insurance should be removed; and
- The citizenship restriction for entitlement be removed.

The Taylor Committee's short-term measures pertaining to orphans and child-headed households are:

- extension of the Child Support Grant (CSG) to all children 0-18 years;

- simplify access to the CSG, with child-headed households being assisted by NGOs or CBOs to allow for adult supervision in the application and spending of the grant;
- develop skills training and vocational training for these children

Long-term measures would include:

- projects aimed at prevention and integration of these children into society
- encouragement of home- or community-based care
- simplify foster and adoption processes, where informal carers can access the grants
- involve CBOs and NGOs in the identification, assessment and care of vulnerable children
- set up childcare centres to increase their learning opportunities and psychological skills.

As far as children with HIV/AIDS are concerned, the Taylor Committee again calls for the extension of the CSG to all children up to 18 years of age. It also calls for free health services for *all* children, for simplification of the foster process, and AIDS awareness projects.

In the disability chapter, the Taylor Committee recommends that people with HIV be entitled to a disability grant. The disability chapter addresses the care dependency grant but mixes it up with the adult disability grant and it is not always clear as to whether the recommendations also apply to children. Thus, it is not clear as to whether the report recommends that children with HIV be entitled to the CDG. In this same chapter, the Taylor Committee recommends that people with chronic illnesses should be entitled to access a disability grant. Again, it is not totally clear if this recommendation also applies to children.

The Taylor Report looks at the problems under the current Maintenance Act and its administration and makes several recommendations to improve the system so that caregiving parents can access maintenance from the child's other parent who refuses to pay for maintenance. These include:

- increased personnel to deal with the lengthy delays that ultimately discourage caregiving parents from following through with the process

- employment of specialised tracers to track down defaulting parents
- a campaign to instill a culture of responsibility of parents towards their children
- clear policy guidelines for those involved in maintenance claims.

The Taylor Committee looks at the problems with the current adoption system, and mentions that the Commission proposes an adoption subsidy. The Taylor Committee does not support or reject the Commission's proposal, but states that the relevance of such a subsidy becomes less apparent if a universal child grant is introduced. The Report further lists possible negative implications of an adoption subsidy. As ACCESS points out, it is not clear what the Taylor Committee is recommending with regards to the adoption subsidy.<sup>20</sup>

On the question of means testing, the Taylor Committee "believes the most efficient, developmentally most effective and fairest way forward is to abolish all means tests and to recover the costs through increases in tax". However, if means tests are to be retained, then the Committee recommends some rationalization, fairness and efficiency in the system, and that "the information as to which elements of the social security package a person is entitled should ultimately be captured on their identity documents".

However, with the exception of the foster care grant, all the existing grants are currently means-tested in the hands of the receiver.<sup>21</sup> The Taylor Report is not clear on what grants should remain means-tested and which will be universal. Some sections of the report mention retaining aspects of the means test for the special needs grants, eg the disability grant and the care dependency grant.

The simulations provided of the costs of the Taylor Committee's recommendations estimated that an additional 2.3% of the GDP will be required to be spent on social security if the Committee's recommendations are accepted. In this regard, the Committee concludes that:

"The reform path (as suggested by the Committee) is affordable when seen from a long-term perspective, as all improvements in the social security

---

<sup>20</sup> Policy summary of the Report of the Committee of Inquiry into a Comprehensive Social Security System for South Africa' compiled for ACCESS by the Children's Institute, UCT, June 2002, p. 10.

<sup>21</sup> The foster care grant is means tested in the hands of the child, not the foster parents.

system occur broadly within the current macroeconomic constraints.... In particular, the implementation of a universal system of social assistance grant in key areas becomes both feasible and affordable”.

## 24.6 Evaluation and recommendations

In the chapter on protecting children,<sup>22</sup> the Taylor Committee concludes that the chapter does not purport to provide a comprehensive package of social security for children as it is envisaged that the Commission would make provision for such a system in the new Child Care Statute. This placed the Commission in a rather invidious position as we were expecting the Taylor Committee to provide such guidance, especially as to affordability, given the resources available to the Taylor Committee.

The Commission would have preferred far closer cooperation with the Taylor Committee on the issue of social security for children. In the absence of such cooperation and adequate Departmental input, the Commission found it very difficult to draft provisions on grants and subsidies for children. Given these challenges, the Commission nevertheless makes the following recommendations in respect of a social security system for children:

- When the responsible Departments at national and provincial level prepare their draft budgets in terms of the Public Finance Management Act, the Departments must consider and determine their funding requirements for the implementation of the Children’s Bill and include in their draft budgets an amount for this purpose which they consider appropriate.<sup>23</sup> Municipalities are obliged in the same way.<sup>24</sup>
- The Director-General: Social Development must establish and administer a social security scheme within the Department’s available financial resources to pay the grants, subsidies and service fees in respect of children.<sup>25</sup> All grants, subsidies and fees must be paid from money appropriated annually by Parliament for the purpose of the social security scheme on the vote of the

---

<sup>22</sup> Chapter 7, p. 83 of the report.

<sup>23</sup> Section 338(1) of the Bill.

<sup>24</sup> Section 338(2) of the Bill.

<sup>25</sup> Section 339(1) of the Bill.

Department.<sup>26</sup> The Minister for Social Development is given the power to determine the amount of each subsidy, grant or fee payable, the period for which and the time when such is to be paid, the eligibility criteria, and appropriate accountability requirements to ensure that grants, fees or subsidies are utilised for the purpose for which they are paid.<sup>27</sup>

- Provision is made for the Director-General: Social Development to assign by agreement aspects of the administration of the social security scheme to the provincial heads of social development or a municipality.<sup>28</sup> Provision is also made for the transfer of funds to the provinces or a municipality.
- The administration of the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992 was assigned to the provinces. Parliament therefore cannot amend the Social Assistance Act 59 of 1992 to regulate provincial involvement in the administration of the social security scheme for children devised by the Commission. To overcome this problem, the Commission recommends that social security for children be regulated by the Children's Bill.<sup>29</sup>
- While the Commission acknowledges that means testing is not ideal, as the costs involved in conducting the means testing divert away funds from the actual recipients, it was decided to retain means testing for all the grants except the child grant. Sadly, given our resource limitations, all the grants and subsidies should be targeted only at the poorest of the poor to enable those children to survive.

A significant problem facing South African children at present concerns the availability of financial support for children orphaned by HIV/AIDS, and especially those living in child-headed households. Unless they are aged under 7, and living with a primary care-giver who can apply for a Child Support Grant (CSG), or placed in formal foster care in order for the Foster Care Grant (FCG) to be payable, there is no monetary support available. Further, children who themselves are HIV positive or have AIDS are not regarded as able to qualify for the Care Dependency Grant (CDG).

---

<sup>26</sup> Section 339(2) of the Bill.

<sup>27</sup> Section 339(3) of the Bill.

<sup>28</sup> Section 340(1) of the Bill.

<sup>29</sup> Section 340(2) of the Bill.



The Commission therefore recommends the introduction of the following social security scheme for children:<sup>30</sup>

- A child grant;
- A foster care and court-ordered kinship care grant;
- An informal kinship care grant;
- An adoption grant;
- An emergency court grant;
- A subsidy to enable children with disabilities to obtain assistive devices;
- Subsidies to NGO's contracted to the State to implement programmes and projects giving effect to this Act;
- Fees to NGO's, FBO's and welfare organisations who carry out services on behalf of the State;
- A subsidy to encourage the provision of early childhood development services.

The eligibility requirements of the grants proposed can be presented as follow in table form:

<b>Grant/subsidy</b>	<b>Payable in respect of?</b>	<b>South African citizens and residents only?</b>	<b>Payable to whom?</b>	<b>Payable in addition to other grants?</b>	<b>Means tested?</b>
<b>Child grant</b>	All children	Yes	Primary care-giver	Yes	No
<b>Foster and court-ordered kinship care grant</b>	All children in foster and court-ordered kinship care	Citizen: No Resident: Yes	Foster or kinship care-giver or primary care-giver	Child grant not payable if foster and court-ordered kinship care grant is payable	Foster: No  Court-ordered kinship: Yes
<b>Informal kinship care grant</b>	All children in informal kinship care	Yes	Relative of the child who cares for the child	Not payable in addition to child grant	Yes
<b>Adoption grant</b>	All adoptive	Yes	Adoptive	Payable in	Yes

<sup>30</sup>

Section 339(1) of the Bill.

	children		parent(s)	addition to child grant	
<b>Emergency court grant</b>	Children at risk of being removed into alternative care because of poverty	Yes	Parent / Primary care-giver	No  Time limited	Yes
<b>Supplementary special needs grant</b>	Children with moderate to severe disability and chronic illnesses	Yes	Parent / Primary care-giver	In addition to child grant, foster care and court-ordered kinship care grant, adoption grant	Yes

Given the focus of the Basic Income Grant (BIG) and the Commission's recommendation to extend the Child Support Grant (CSG) to all poor children (the child grant), it appears prudent to take this child grant into consideration when the amount of the foster care / court-ordered kinship care, informal kinship care or the adoption grant is to be determined. In an ideal world with unlimited resources the Commission would not have hesitated to recommend that all these grants be paid in addition to the child grant, but that is not feasible at this stage.

The Commission recommends that the amount of the foster care, court-ordered kinship care and the adoption grant be set at the same level. This would remove the current financial incentive to keep children in long-term foster care. There is justification for setting a lower grant amount in the case of informal kinship care as the State on a narrow interpretation has no constitutional obligation to care for children in informal kinship care. This is in stark contrast to foster care and court-ordered kinship care where state intervention has caused the child to be removed and placed in alternative care.

In the case of the supplementary special needs grant, the Commission is of the opinion that this grant should be payable only to children with chronic illnesses, including HIV/AIDS, and children with moderate to severe disabilities. Furthermore, the supplementary special needs grant should be payable only after the degree of the child's chronic illness or disability has been assessed in terms of an objective

prescribed assessment procedure. While the Commission would have preferred to extend the application of this supplementary grant to all children in especially difficult circumstances,<sup>31</sup> it is realised that it would be impossible to provide a grant, in addition to the child grant, to all children affected by malnutrition in South Africa. In the long-term, and given the constitutional imperative to ensure the progressive realisation of socio-economic rights, we should strive to implement a needs-based supplementary grant for all children in especially difficult circumstances.

Provision is made for a socio-medical assessment of both the extent of the disability and the needs of the particular child: the details to be spelled out in the regulations.

Should the supplementary special needs grant be introduced, the current Care-Dependency Grant can fall away.

The Commission recommends that subsidies be paid to enable children with disabilities to obtain assistive devices such as wheel-chairs. Such subsidies are to be paid on presentation of an invoice substantiating the purchase. A means test will apply.<sup>32</sup>

The Commission further recommends that subsidies be paid to designated child protection organisations to promote the implementation of programmes and projects giving effect to the Act.<sup>33</sup> The purpose of this subsidy is to compensate these NGO's for the services delivered to children on behalf of the State. In the Bill, provision is made for per capita and programme funding to cater for both the individual needs of the children involved (per capita element) and to cover the cost relating to the overall functioning of the service centre.<sup>34</sup> Obviously, where an NGO, FBO or welfare organisation delivers services to children on behalf of the State in terms of the provisions of the Bill, such organisation is entitled to prompt payment of fees at the agreed rate.

There is also considerable merit in the suggestion made by the Consortium that the existing social relief of distress grant be utilised more extensively. This could be done, as she has suggested, through the issuance of a directive to all provincial Departments of Social Development and the courts recommending its use to assist

---

<sup>31</sup> See section 231 of the Bill for the definition of children in especially difficult circumstances.

<sup>32</sup> Section 348 of the Bill.

<sup>33</sup> Section 349 of the Bill.

<sup>34</sup> Sections 349(2) of the Bill.

families in crisis. Obviously, the directive must be linked to a public awareness campaign informing the public at large of the availability of the social relief of distress grant. The Commission recommends this accordingly.

## **ANNEXURE A**

### **List of respondents to the Discussion Paper on the Review of the Child Care Act**

Note: Respondents who did not make a submission on behalf of a Government Department, organisation or institution are indicated with an asterisk (\*).

1. Africa Christian Action : Jeanine McGill, National Co-ordinator and Charl van Wyk, Director
2. Alfred Bart\*
3. Association of Advertising Agencies, Nina De Klerk, Executive Director
4. Atmore Eric, Centre for Early Childhood Development, Kenilworth
5. Aylward Gordon\*
6. Baumgardt Jacqueline\*
7. Beswick C E, Community Worker\*
8. Boswell Mr and Mrs N R\*
9. Brien M A (Dr)\*
10. Burgess S (Mrs)\*
11. Cameron Edwin (Judge), Chairperson of the Project Committee on HIV/AIDS, S A Law Commission
12. Carte David\*
13. Chapel of Our Lady and St Michael, Father Eldred Leslie
14. Cherry Glen\*
15. Chiba Beena, Johannesburg Institute of Social Services
16. Chilcott Alan\*
17. Children's Rights Project and Local Government Project, Community Law Centre, University of the Western Cape
18. Children in Legal Disputes (CHILDS) : Alan Müller and Anne-Marie Rencken-wentzel
19. Christian Lawyers Association of Southern Africa : Reg Joubert, Executive Director
20. Clark Dellene\*
21. Coetzer Hendrik\*
22. Collett R B\*
23. Collett Rhona\*
24. Consortium: Joint submission by the Children's Institute (UCT), the AIDS Law

- Project (University of Witwatersrand), the Alliance for Children's Entitlement to Social Security (ACCESS) - endorsed by the AIDS Consortium and the AIDS Legal Network
25. Cooper Vanessa\*
  26. Corry Mr A D and Mrs G E\*
  27. Criminal Justice Initiative (CJI), Open Society Foundation of South Africa
  28. Crompton Terence\*
  29. Davies F L\*
  30. De Klerk Mr and Mrs A N\*
  31. Department of Correctional Services, Pretoria: Ms BJ Matshego, Deputy Director, Youth and Females
  32. Department of Education, Pretoria
  33. Department of Health, Pretoria : Ms D R Mohlabi, Director-General
  34. Department of Social Development, Free State
  35. Derrick Jenny\*
  36. Die Gereformeerde Kerk Worcester
  37. Doctors For Life International : Dr A Van Eeden / Dr A B Hyams
  38. Doddard Leslie\*
  39. Doyer A W (Rev)\*
  40. Drury Brian\*
  41. Du Toit L\*
  42. Du Toit Lesley (Ms), Director: Child and Youth Care Agency for Development, Pretoria
  43. Du Preez Gert\*
  44. Durban Children's Society
  45. Durham Brenda\*
  46. Dutch Reformed Church, Pretoria: Dr D F Theron
  47. East Claremont Congregational Church
  48. Eichstadt Karen\*
  49. FCS Investigation Unit, S A Police Service
  50. Field Tracy\*
  51. Fouche K S (Mrs)\*
  52. Fredericksen C M\*
  53. Geldard Charles\*
  54. Gerryts H, Department of Social Development, Free State
  55. Good News Ministries, Appelcryn K\*

56. Goveia Noreen\*
57. Grater K L\*
58. Greenberg Lionel, Kinder in Divorce (KID)
59. Grout T G (Dr)\*
60. Halkett Roslyn, National Programme Manager HIV/AIDS: S A National Council  
for Child and Family Welfare
61. Harrington Jenny\*
62. Harvey Wilhelm\*
63. Henning J S M, Director Public Prosecutions
64. Heyes A (Mrs)\*
65. Immelman T G (Mrs)\*
66. Independent Churches Organisation of South Africa, Mr and Mrs Mogola
67. Johannesburg Child Welfare, Child and Family Unit
68. Jolley Alastair\*
69. Kemp Charlotte\*
70. Kimble Carrie\*
71. King Anthony\*
72. Kotzé Erika\*
73. Kriessbach Joey\*
74. Law Society of the Cape of Good Hope, Family Law Committee
75. Le Mesurier Nick\*
76. Leisegang James\*
77. Leopold Delia\*
78. Leslie Suchilla, SA National Council for Child and Family Welfare
79. Lombard R\*
80. Manamela Damons Mbanjwa Inc. Attorneys : C Prinsloo
81. Maonela E.N, Department of Social Development, Free State
82. McDonald Stuard\*
83. McGill Andrew\*
84. Meintjies Retha, Director of Public Prosecutions
85. Meyer Jimmy and Lizelle\*
86. Meyer J C\*
87. Mives Catharine\*
88. Mogadima Susan, Boka Moso Ba Bana Foster Care Organisation
89. Murray S E\*
90. N G Gemeente, Secunda, Goedehoop, Dr A W Knoetze

91. N G Kerk Maatskaplike Dienste, Wes- en Suid-Kaap
92. O'Dowd Kate\*
93. Oertle Ernest H, Christian Fellowship, Lakeside
94. Phoyana N E, Thembaletu Lifeskills Center for Girls
95. Presbyterian Church, Abraham L
96. Pro-Life : Margrit Sokolic, Secretary
97. Rathbone Russ and Giz\*
98. Rautenbach M\*
99. Ritter Delene, S A National Council for Child Welfare
100. Robertson Soul\*
101. Rogers Ms E A\*
102. Roodbol Marnus\*
103. Rothman D S, Commissioner of Child Welfare, Durban
104. Roux Louise\*
105. Rowney Sally, Department of Education
106. S A Council for Social Service Professions : Dr J Lombard
107. Saambou M V (Ms)\*
108. Sadie R\*
109. Scheepers Lina and Carel\*
110. Seiler Daphne\*
111. Shapiro Sharlene, Greater Benoni Child Welfare Society
112. Shaw Douglas, Global Intelligence Consultancy Solutions
113. Sinodale Kommissie vir Diens van Barmhartigheid, Ms Heidi Joubert, social worker
114. Smith Krystyna\*
115. Sparrow Ashton J\*
116. Stalling Sylvia\*
117. Stalling Sonja\*
118. Sturdon Frans\*
119. Suid-Afrikaanse Vroue Federasie, North-West Province
120. Suid-Afrikaanse Vroue Federasie, Northern Province
121. SWEAT (Sex Worker Education and Advocacy Taskforce) :Helen Alexander, Legal Advocacy Co-ordinator
122. Symons Mr and Mrs GF\*
123. Taggant Mac J H\*
124. The Right to Live Campaign, Kwa-Zulu Natal : Rev F R Massimo P Biancalani



125. Theunissen Brendon\*
126. Thies Celeste, Edenvale Child and Family Care Society
127. Todd Julie\*
128. Unit for Child Witness Research and Training, Vista University: Dr Karen Müller
129. University of Cape Town Christian Medical Fellowship Society
130. Van der Merwe Annalise (social worker), White River Primary School
131. Van der Merwe Janine\*
132. Van Loggerenberg Annette, Gauteng Provincial Department of Social Services and Population Development
133. Van Moerkerken Sanet, Springs Kindersorg
134. Van Wyk L\*
135. Van Zyl G J, Office of the Family Advocate
136. Van Zyl R, NG Kerk Maatskaplike Dienste (Wes- en Suid-Kaap)
137. Vosloo Leon
138. Watson V F\*
139. Watt Candice (Mrs)\*
140. Williams Janet\*
141. Wolfaardt Wolfie\*
142. Wright Irene\*
143. Wright P J\*

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

## **CHILDREN'S BILL**

(MINISTER FOR SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT)

[B ...-2002]

---

REPUBLIEK VAN SUID-AFRIKA

## **WETSONTWERP OP KINDERS**

(MINISTER VAN MAATSKAPLIKE ONTWIKKELING)

[W ...-2002]

**BILL**

**To define the rights and responsibilities of children; to define parental responsibilities and rights; to determine principles and guidelines for the protection of children and the promotion of their well-being; to regulate matters concerning the protection and well-being of children, especially those that are the most vulnerable; to consolidate the laws relating to the welfare and protection of children; and to provide for incidental matters.**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS****CHAPTER 1****INTERPRETATION, OBJECTS AND APPLICATION OF THIS ACT**

1. Interpretation
2. Objects of this Act
3. Conflicts with other legislation

**CHAPTER 2****INTER-SECTORAL IMPLEMENTATION OF THIS ACT**

4. Implementation of this Act
5. National policy framework
6. Contents
7. Consultative process
8. Public participation

**CHAPTER 3****GENERAL PRINCIPLES**

9. General principles
10. Best interest of the child standard

## **CHAPTER 4**

### **CHILDREN'S RIGHTS**

11. Application
12. Conflicts with other legislation
13. Unfair discrimination
14. Best interest of the child
15. Name, nationality and identity
16. Family relationship
17. Property
18. Maltreatment, abuse, neglect, degradation, exploitation and other harmful practices
19. Harmful social and cultural practices
20. Economic exploitation
21. Education
22. Basic health care
23. Social security
24. Refugee and undocumented migrant children
25. Children with disabilities and chronic illnesses
26. Leisure and recreation
27. Access to child and family court
28. Responsibilities of children
29. Age of majority.

## **CHAPTER 5**

### **PARENTAL RESPONSIBILITIES AND RIGHTS**

#### ***Part 1: Acquisition and loss of parental responsibilities and rights***

30. Parental responsibilities and rights

- 31. Parental responsibilities and rights of mothers
- 32. Parental responsibilities and rights of married fathers
- 33. Parental responsibilities and rights of unmarried fathers
- 34. Parental responsibilities and rights agreements
- 35. Assignment of parental responsibilities and rights by orders of court
- 36. Certain applications regarded as inter-country adoptions
- 37. Persons claiming paternity
- 38. Assignment of parental responsibilities and rights to parent-substitutes
- 39. Termination, extension, suspension or restriction of parental responsibilities and rights
- 40. Extension of parental responsibilities and rights after child reaches 18 years of age
- 41. Court proceedings

***Part 2: Co-exercise of parental responsibilities and rights***

- 42. Co-holders of parental responsibilities and rights
- 43. Major decisions involving a child
- 44. Care of child by person not holding parental responsibilities and rights

***Part 3: Parenting plans***

- 45. Contents of parenting plans
- 46. Formalities
- 47. Amendment or termination of registered parenting plans

***Part 4: Miscellaneous***

- 48. Presumption of paternity in respect of children born out of wedlock
- 49. Presumption on refusal to submit to taking of blood samples
- 50. Effect of subsequent marriage of parents on children
- 51. Rights of children born of voidable marriages

- 52. Rights of children conceived by artificial insemination
- 53. Access to biographical and medical information concerning genetic parents
- 53A. Effect of surrogate motherhood agreement on status of child
- 53B. Termination of surrogate motherhood agreement
- 53C. Effect of termination of surrogate motherhood agreement

## **CHAPTER 6**

### **CHILD AND FAMILY COURTS**

#### ***Part 1: Establishment, status and jurisdiction***

- 54. Establishment
- 55. Status
- 56. Seat of Court
- 57. Jurisdiction
- 58. Matters court may adjudicate
- 59. Orders court may make
- 60. Competence of child and family district court
- 61. Competence of child and family regional court
- 62. Referral of matters to child and family regional court
- 63. Referral of matters to other courts
- 64. Referral of matters by other courts to child and family court
- 65. General powers
- 66. Lay-forum hearings
- 67. Inquiries and investigations
- 68. Appeals

#### ***Part 2: Composition***

- 69. Composition
- 70. Qualifications of child and family magistrates

- 71. Qualifications of assessors
- 72. Appointment of child and family magistrates and assessors
- 73. Oath of office
- 74. Training of child and family magistrates and assessors

### ***Part 3: Court proceedings***

- 75. Procedural rules
- 76. Who may approach court
- 77. Legal representation
- 78. Legal representation of children
- 79. Attendance at proceedings
- 80. Compulsory attendance of persons involved in proceedings
- 81. Rights of persons to adduce evidence, question witnesses and produce argument
- 82. Witnesses
- 83. Conduct of proceedings
- 84. Participation of children
- 85. Professional reports ordered by court
- 86. Evidence
- 87. Questions of law
- 88. Decisions
- 89. Adjournments
- 90. Monitoring of court orders
- 91. Protection of court case records

### ***Part 4: Child and family court registrars***

- 92. Appointment
- 93. Qualifications

- 94. Screening of matters
- 95. Referral of matters to child and family courts
- 96. Pre-hearing conferences
- 97. Family group conferences
- 98. Other lay-forums
- 99. Compulsory attendance at pre-hearing conferences
- 100. Settling of matters out of court
- 101. Other functions

***Part 5: Miscellaneous matters***

- 102. Publication of information relating to proceedings
- 103. Child and family matters heard by other courts
- 104. Transitional matters
- 105. Regulations

**CHAPTER 7**

**EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT**

- 106. Definitional provision
- 106A. Strategies concerning early childhood development services to be included in national policy framework
- 107. Provision of early childhood development services
- 108. Persons unsuitable to work with children disqualified from providing early childhood development services
- 109. Notices of enforcement
- 110. Assistance
- 111. Inspection of early childhood development services
- 112. Regulations



## **CHAPTER 8**

### **PROTECTION OF CHILDREN**

#### ***Part 1: Child protection system***

- 113. Strategies concerning child protection to be included in national policy framework
- 113A. Establishment of an inter-sectoral mechanism to co-ordinate child protection system
- 114. Provision of designated child protection services
- 115. Nature of designated child protection services
- 116. Designation of child protection organisations
- 117. Existing child welfare organisations
- 118. Delegation of powers and duties to designated child protection organisations
- 119. Withdrawal of designations

#### ***Part 2: National Child Protection Register***

- 120. Keeping of National Child Protection Register

#### ***Part A of Register***

- 121. Purpose of Part A of Register
- 122. Contents of Part A of Register
- 123. Access to Part A of Register
- 124. Disclosure of information in Part A of Register

#### ***Part B of Register***

- 125. Purpose of Part B of Register
- 126. Contents of Part B of Register
- 127. Finding persons unsuitable to work with children
- 128. Disputes concerning findings

- 129. All findings to be reported to Director-General
- 130. Legal consequences of entry of name in Part B of Register
- 131. Access to Part B of Register
- 132. Disclosure of information in Part B of Register
- 133. Disclosure of names in Part B of Register prohibited

### ***General***

- 134. Removal of name from Register

### ***Part 3: Protective measures relating to health of children***

- 135. Consent to medical treatment and surgical operations
- 136. HIV-testing
- 137. HIV-testing for adoption purposes
- 138. Counselling before and after HIV-testing
- 139. Confidentiality of information on HIV/AIDS status of children
- 140. Access to contraceptives

### ***Part 4: Other protective measures***

- 141. Applications to terminate or suspend parental responsibilities and rights
- 142. Corporal punishment
- 143. Child safety at places of entertainment
- 144. Regulations

## **CHAPTER 9**

### **PARTIAL CARE**

- 145. Definitional provision
- 146. Partial care facilities to be registered

- 147. Existing places of care
- 148. Notices of enforcement
- 149. Application for registration and renewal of registration
- 150. Consideration of applications
- 151. Minimum norms and standards
- 152. Conditional registration
- 153. Cancellation of registration
- 154. Appeals to child and family court
- 155. Role of municipalities
- 156. Death of children in partial care facilities
- 157. Regulations

## **CHAPTER 10**

### **PREVENTION AND EARLY INTERVENTION SERVICES**

- 158. Definitional provision
- 159. Purposes of prevention and early intervention services or programmes
- 160. Provision of prevention and early intervention services
- 161. National policy framework to include strategies for securing provision of prevention and early intervention services
- 162. Role of municipalities in prevention and early intervention services
- 163. Role of traditional authorities in prevention and early intervention services
- 164. Court may order early intervention services
- 165. Reports of social workers to include summary of prevention and early intervention services

## **CHAPTER 11**

### **THE CHILD IN NEED OF CARE AND PROTECTION**

***Part 1: Identification of children in need of care and protection***

- 166. Definitional provision
- 167. Reporting of children in need of care and protection
- 168. Referral of children in need of care and protection by other courts to the child and family court
- 169. Removal of children to places of safety by order of child and family magistrate
- 170. Removal of children to temporary safe care without court order
- 171. Voluntary temporary safe care
- 172. Other children in need of care and protection
- 173. Preconditions for removal of children in need of care and protection to temporary safe care

***Part 2: Child and family court processes***

- 174. Decision of question whether child is in need of care and protection
- 175. Orders when child is found to be in need of care and protection
- 176. Court orders to be aimed at securing stability in the child's life
- 177. Placement of children in child and youth care centres
- 178. Duration and extension of orders
- 179. Extension of placement orders by MECs for social development
- 180. Regulations

**CHAPTER 12****CONTRIBUTION ORDERS**

- 181. Issue of contribution orders
- 182. Jurisdiction
- 183. Effect of contribution orders
- 184. Payments to be made to person determined by court
- 185. Attachment of wages of respondents
- 186. Change of residence or work by respondent

## **CHAPTER 13**

### **CHILDREN IN ALTERNATIVE CARE**

- 187. Definitional provision
- 188. Free and subsidised state services
- 189. Leave of absence
- 190. Children absconding from alternative care
- 191. Transfer of children in alternative care
- 192. Change in residential care programmes
- 193. Removal of children who are already in alternative care
- 194. Provisional transfer from alternative care
- 195. Permanent discharges from alternative care
- 196. Discharges from alternative care after reaching age of 18 years
- 197. Death of children in alternative care.

## **CHAPTER 14**

### **FOSTER CARE AND CARE BY RELATIVES**

- 198. Definitional provision

#### ***Part 1: Foster care and court-ordered kinship care***

- 199. Initial proceedings
- 200. Prospective foster parents or kinship care-givers
- 201. Determination of placement of children in foster care
- 202. Number of children to be placed in foster or kinship care per household
- 203. Duration of kinship care orders and stable foster care placements
- 204. Reunification of child with biological parents

- 205. Responsibilities and rights of foster parents and kinship care-givers
- 206. Termination of foster care and court ordered kinship care

***Part 2: Informal kinship care arrangements***

- 207. Responsibilities and rights of relatives in terms of informal care arrangements
- 208. Termination of informal kinship care arrangements
- 209. Regulations

**CHAPTER 15**

**CHILD AND YOUTH CARE CENTRES**

- 210. Definitional provision
- 211. Strategies to ensure sufficient provision of child and youth care centres

***Part 1: Establishment and registration of child and youth care centres***

- 212. Establishment of child and youth care centres by organs of state
- 213. Existing government children's homes, places of safety, secure care facilities, schools of industries and reform schools
- 214. Establishment of child and youth care centres by other persons
- 215. Existing registered children's homes
- 216. Notices of enforcement
- 217. Application for registration or renewal of registration
- 218. Consideration of applications
- 219. Conditional registration
- 220. Amendment of registration
- 221. Cancellation of registration
- 222. Voluntary closure of child and youth care centres
- 223. Children in child and youth care centres to be closed

- 224. Appeals against and reviews of certain decisions

***Part 2: Operation and management of child and youth care centres***

- 225. Management boards
- 226. Managers and staff of child and youth care centres
- 227. Minimum norms and standards
- 228. Management system
- 229. Quality assurance process

***Part 3: Miscellaneous***

- 230. Regulations

**CHAPTER 16**

**CHILDREN IN ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT CIRCUMSTANCES**

- 231. Definitional provision
- 232. Strategies concerning children in especially difficult circumstances to be included in national policy framework
- 233. Preventative measures against malnutrition
- 234. Child-headed households
- 235. Municipal monitoring and support of children in especially difficult circumstances
- 236. Schools to assist in identifying certain children in especially difficult circumstances
- 237. Consent to medical treatment and operations
- 238. Reunification of street children with their families
- 239. Child pornography on the Internet
- 240. Children subject to exploitative labour practices
- 241. Provincial monitoring of children subject to exploitative labour practices
- 242. Child labour defined

- 243. Regulations

## **CHAPTER 17**

### **SHELTERS AND DROP-IN CENTRES**

- 244. Definitional provision
- 245. Shelters and drop-in centres to be registered
- 246. Existing shelters
- 247. Notices of enforcement
- 248. Application for registration and renewal of registration
- 249. Consideration of applications
- 250. Minimum norms and standards
- 251. Conditional registration
- 252. Cancellation of registration
- 253. Appeals against and revision of certain decisions
- 254. Role of municipalities
- 255. Death of children in shelters or drop-in centres
- 256. Regulations

## **CHAPTER 18**

### **ADOPTION**

- 257. Children who may be adopted
- 258. Persons who may adopt a child
- 259. Consent to adoption
- 260. Freeing orders
- 261. When consent not required
- 262. Gathering of information for proposed adoptions
- 263. Notice to be given of proposed adoptions



- 264. Application for adoption orders
- 265. Consideration of adoption applications
- 266. Unreasonable withholding of consent
- 267. Effects of adoption order
- 268. Rescission of adoption orders
- 269. Grounds for rescission of adoption orders
- 270. Notice of application for rescission
- 271. Effects of rescission
- 272. Recording of adoption in births register
- 273. Registration of birth and recording of adoption of child born outside Republic
- 274. Adoption register
- 275. Access to adoption register
- 276. No consideration in respect of adoptions
- 277. Only certain persons allowed to provide adoption services
- 278. Accreditation of social workers and designated child protection organisations to perform adoption work
- 279. Advertising
- 280. Regulations

## **CHAPTER 19**

### **INTER-COUNTRY ADOPTION**

- 281. Purposes of this Chapter
- 282. Hague Convention on Inter-Country Adoption to have force of law
- 283. Central Authority
- 284. Delegation of functions
- 285. Authority for South African adoption organisations to act in convention countries
- 286. Authority for adoption agencies of convention countries to act in Republic

- 287. Access to information
- 288. Report on person lodging application for inter-country adoption
- 289. Inter-country adoption of children from other countries
- 290. Inter-country adoption of children from the Republic
- 291. Issue of adoption compliance certificate
- 292. Recognition of inter-country adoptions
- 293. Effect of recognition of adoption
- 294. Evidential value of adoption compliance certificate
- 295. Order terminating legal relationship between child and parents
- 296. Refusal to recognise an inter-country adoption or Article 27 decision contrary to public policy
- 297. Adoption of children from prescribed overseas jurisdiction by South African residents
- 298. Effect of recognition
- 299. Evidential value of adoption compliance certificate
- 300. Recognition of foreign adoption other than in convention countries and prescribed overseas jurisdictions.
- 301. Declaration of validity of foreign adoption
- 302. Prior approval for children to be brought into Republic for adoption
- 303. Prior approval for children to be sent out of Republic for adoption
- 304. Processing or facilitating inter-country adoption

## **CHAPTER 20**

### **CHILD ABDUCTION**

- 305. Purposes of this Chapter
- 306. Hague Convention on International Child Abduction to have force of law
- 307. Central Authority
- 308. Delegation of powers and duties

- 309. Additional powers of court
- 310. Role of family advocate
- 311. Unlawful removal or detention of children
- 312. Unlawful taking or sending of children out of Republic
- 313. Regulations

## **CHAPTER 21**

### **TRAFFICKING OF CHILDREN**

- 314. Purposes of this Chapter
- 315. UN Protocol to Prevent Trafficking in Persons to have force of law
- 316. Assistance to children who are victims of trafficking
- 317. Trafficking of children prohibited

## **CHAPTER 22**

### **CHILDREN'S PROTECTOR**

#### *Part 1: Appointment, status and function*

- 318. Appointment of Children's Protector
- 319. Function
- 320. Qualifications
- 321. Appointment procedure
- 322. Term of office and conditions of appointment
- 323. Removal from office
- 324. Filling of vacancy

#### *Part 2: Powers and duties*

- 325. Complaints and reports
- 326. Inspection of child and youth care centres, partial care facilities and shelters, drop-in centres

and other premises

- 327. Access to information
- 328. Reports after investigation and inspections
- 329. General powers
- 330. Annual report

### ***Part 3: Administration***

- 331. Office of the Children's Protector
- 332. Deputy Children's Protector
- 333. Employment of staff
- 334. Secondment of persons to Office of Children's Protector
- 335. Delegation of powers and duties
- 336. Funding
- 337. Financial accountability

## **CHAPTER 23**

### **FUNDING, GRANTS AND SUBSIDIES**

#### ***Part 1: Funding***

- 338. Funds for implementation of this Act to be included in departmental and municipal draft budgets

#### ***Part 2: Social security scheme for children***

- 339. Administration of social security scheme for children
- 340. Provincial and municipal support in administration of social security scheme
- 341. Child grant
- 342. Foster and court-ordered kinship care grant
- 343. Informal kinship care grant

- 344. Adoption grant
- 345. Emergency court grant
- 346. Supplementary special needs grant
- 347. Means testing
- 348. Subsidies for assistive devices
- 349. Subsidies or fees payable to designated child protection organisations engaged in implementing this Act
- 350. Proof of eligibility for grants and subsidies
- 351. Regulations

## **CHAPTER 24**

### **ENFORCEMENT OF THIS ACT**

- 352. Inspection of child and youth care centres, partial care facilities, shelters and drop-in centres
- 353. Offences

## **CHAPTER 25**

### **ADMINISTRATION OF THIS ACT**

- 354. Regulations
- 355. Delegation of powers and duties by Minister
- 356. Delegation of powers and duties by MECs for social development
- 357. Delegation of powers and duties by Director-General and provincial heads of social development
- 358. Outsourcing of services
- 359. Limitation of liability

## **CHAPTER 26**

### **MISCELLANEOUS MATTERS**

- 260. Repeal of legislation
- 361. Transitional matters
- 362. Short title and commencement

**CHAPTER 1****INTERPRETATION, OBJECTS AND APPLICATION OF THIS ACT****Interpretation**

**1.** (1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise indicates –

**“abandoned”**, in relation to a child, means when a child –

- (a) has obviously been deserted by the parent or care-giver; or
- (b) has, for no apparent reason, had no contact with the parent or guardian for a period of at least three months;

**“abuse”**, in relation to a child, means any form of harm or ill-treatment deliberately inflicted on a child, and includes –

- (a) assaulting a child or inflicting any other form of deliberate injury on a child;
- (b) sexually abusing a child;
- (c) committing an exploitative labour practice in relation to a child; or
- (d) exposing or subjecting a child to behaviour that may psychologically harm the child;

**“adoption compliance certificate”** –

- (a) in relation to a convention country, means a certificate issued in terms of Article 23 of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption; or
- (b) in relation to a prescribed overseas jurisdiction, means a similar certificate prescribed in the relevant bilateral or multilateral agreement;

**“adopted child”** means a child adopted by a person in terms of this Act or any legislation regulating the adoption of children before this Act took effect;

**“adoption social worker”** means –

- (a) a social worker in private practice –
  - (i) who has a speciality in adoption services registered in terms of the Social

Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act No. 110 of 1978); and

- (ii) who is accredited in terms of section **278** (1) to provide adoption services; or
- (b) a social worker in the employ of a designated child protection organisation which is accredited in terms of section **278** (1) to provide adoption services;

**“adoptive parent”** means a person who has adopted a child in terms of this Act or any legislation regulating the adoption of children before this Act took effect;

**“alternative care”** means care of a child in accordance with section **187**;

**“annual Division of Revenue Act”** means the Act of Parliament that must be enacted annually in terms of section 214 of the Constitution;

**“area”**, in relation to –

- (a) a metropolitan or local municipality, means the area for which the municipality has been established; and
- (b) a district municipality, means those parts of the area for which the municipality has been established which do not fall within the area of a local municipality;

**“authorised officer”**, in relation to any specific act, means a person who has no direct or indirect financial interest in the performance of that act and who is authorised in writing by a child and family magistrate to perform that act;

**“Bill of Rights”** means the Bill of Rights contained in Chapter 2 of the Constitution;

**“care”**, in relation to a child, includes –

- (a) within available means, providing the child with –



- (i) a suitable place to live; and
- (ii) living conditions that are conducive to the child's health, well-being and development;
- (b) safeguarding and promoting the well-being of the child;
- (c) protecting the child from maltreatment, abuse, neglect, degradation, discrimination, exploitation, and any other physical and moral harm or hazards;
- (d) respecting, protecting, promoting and securing the fulfilment of, and guarding against any infringement of, the child's rights set out in the Bill of Rights and the rights set out in Chapter 4 of this Act;
- (e) guiding and directing the child's education and upbringing, including religious and cultural education and upbringing, in a manner appropriate to the child's age, maturity and stage of development;
- (f) guiding, advising and assisting the child in decisions to be taken by the child, taking into account the child's age, maturity and stage of development;
- (g) guiding the behaviour of the child in a humane manner;
- (h) maintaining a sound relationship with the child; and
- (i) generally, ensuring that the best interest of the child is the paramount concern in all matters affecting the child;

**“care-giver”** means any person other than the biological or adoptive parent who factually cares for a child, whether or not that person has parental responsibilities or rights in respect of the child, and includes –

- (a) a foster parent;
- (b) a kinship care-giver;
- (c) a relative who cares for a child in terms of an informal kinship care arrangement;
- (d) a staff member at a child and youth care centre where a child has been placed;
- (e) a person who cares for a child whilst the child is in temporary safe care;
- (f) a primary care-giver who is not the biological or adoptive parent of the child; or

- (g) the child at the head of a child-headed household to the extent that that child has assumed the role of primary care-giver;

**“Central Authority” –**

- (a) in relation to the Republic, means the Director-General; or
- (b) in relation to a convention country, means a person or office designated for such convention country under Article 6 of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption;

**“child”** means a person under the age of 18 years, regardless of nationality;

**“child affected by HIV/AIDS”** means a child who is –

- (a) part of a household in which a person is ill with AIDS;
- (b) orphaned or abandoned because of AIDS;
- (c) HIV positive; or
- (d) ill with AIDS;

**“child and family court magistrate”** means –

- (a) a person appointed in terms of section 72 (1) as a child and family court magistrate; or
- (b) any existing magistrate assigned by the Minister of Justice to be a child and family court magistrate;

**“child and family court registrar”** or **“registrar”** means –

- (a) the child and family court registrar appointed in terms of section 92 (1) (a) for the area of a child and family court; or
- (b) an assistant child and family court registrar appointed in terms of section 92 (1) (b);

**“child and youth care centre”** means a facility described in section 210 (1);

**“Child Care Act”** means the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act No. 74 of 1983);

**“child-headed household”** means a household recognised as such in terms of section 234;

**“child in kinship care”** means any child who has been placed in court-ordered kinship care;

**“Children’s Protector”** means the person appointed in terms of section 318 (1);

**“collective foster care scheme”** means a scheme providing for the reception of children in foster care in accordance with a foster care programme operated by –

- (a) a social, religious or other non-governmental organisation; or
- (b) a group of individuals, acting as care-givers of the children, and managed by a provincial department of social development or a designated child protection organisation;

**“commercial sexual exploitation”**, in relation to a child, means –

- (a) the procurement of a child to perform sexual activities for financial or other reward, including acts of prostitution or pornography, irrespective of whether that reward is claimed by, payable to or shared with the procurer, the child, the parent or care-giver of the child, or any other person; or
- (b) the trafficking of a child for use in sexual activities, including prostitution or pornography;

**“contact”**, in relation to a child, means –

- (a) maintaining a personal relationship with the child; and
- (b) if the child lives with someone else –
  - (i) communication on a regular basis with the child in person, including –
    - (aa) visiting the child; or

- (bb) being visited by the child; or
- (ii) communication on a regular basis with the child in any other manner, including –
  - (aa) through the post; or
  - (bb) by telephone or any other form of electronic communication;

**“contribution order”** means an order referred to in section **181**, and includes a provisional contribution order referred to in section **182** (2);

**“control”**, in relation to a child, means to be factually responsible for the safety, protection and well-being of the child at any point in time;

**“convention country”** means, in accordance with the wording of Article 45 of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption –

- (a) a country specified in column A in Schedule **1** to this Act; or
- (b) any other country in which the Convention has entered into force, except for a country against whose accession the Republic has raised an objection under Article 44 of the Convention;

**“court”** –

- (a) means a child and family court established by section **54**; and
- (b) except where the wording or the context indicates otherwise, includes any other court;

**“court-ordered kinship care”** means care of a child as described in section **198** (2);

**“delegation”**, in relation to a duty, includes an instruction to perform the duty;

**“Department”** means the national department responsible for the provision of social development services;

**“designated child protection organisation”** means an organisation designated in terms of section

**116** to perform designated child protection services;

**“designated child protection service”** means a child protection service referred to in section **115**;

**“designated social worker”** means a social worker in the service of –

- (a) the Department or a provincial department of social development; or
- (b) a designated child protection organisation;

**“Director-General”** –

- (a) means the head of the Department; or
- (b) in relation to a provision of this Act of which the administration has been assigned by the President by proclamation to another national department or a provincial department, means the head of that national or provincial department;

**“drop-in centre”** means a facility referred to in section **244** (2);

**“early childhood development services”** means services referred to in section **106** (2);

**“early intervention services”** means services referred to in section **158** (1);

**“exploitative labour practice”** means performing, or assisting another person in performing, an act in contravention of section **240** (1);

**“family advocate”** means a family advocate appointed in terms of the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act, 1987 (Act No. 24 of 1987);

**“family member”**, in relation to a child, means –

- (a) a parent of the child;
- (b) any other person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
- (c) a primary care-giver of the child;
- (d) a grandparent, brother, sister, uncle or aunt of the child;
- (e) any other person with whom the child has developed a significant relationship, based on psychological or emotional attachment, which resembles a family relationship;

**“foster care”** means care of a child as described in section 198 (1);

**“foster child”** means any child who has been placed in foster care;

**“foster parent”** means a person who has foster care of a child, and includes an active member of an organisation operating a collective foster care scheme and who has been assigned responsibility for the foster care of a child, but excludes a kinship care-giver;

**“guardian”** means a parent or other person who has guardianship of a child;

**“guardianship”**, in relation to a child, means –

- (a) administering and safeguarding the child’s property and property interests;
- (b) assisting or representing the child in administrative, contractual and other legal matters; or
- (c) giving or refusing any consent required by law in respect of the child, including –
  - (i) consenting to the child’s marriage;
  - (ii) consenting to the child’s adoption;
  - (iii) consenting to the child’s departure or removal from the Republic;
  - (iv) consenting to the child’s application for a passport; and
  - (v) consenting to the alienation or encumbrance of any immovable property of the child;

**"Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption "** means the Convention on Protection of Children

and Co-operation in Respect of Inter-country Adoption signed at the Hague on 29 May 1993, a copy of the English text of which is set out in Schedule 2 to this Act;

**“Hague Convention on International Child Abduction”** means the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction, adopted on 25 October 1980 at the Hague, a copy of the English text of which is set out in Schedule 3 to this Act;

**“informal kinship care arrangement”** means an informal arrangement in terms of which a relative who is not the parent or guardian of a child cares for the child otherwise than in terms of an order of a child and family court;

**“in especially difficult circumstances”**, in relation to a child, means when a child is in a category referred to in section 231 (1);

**“in need of care and protection”**, in relation to a child, means when a child is in a situation as set out in section 166;

**“integrated development plan”**, in relation to a municipality, means the integrated development plan which a municipality must adopt in terms of section 25 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000);

**“kinship care-giver”** means a relative of a child who has court-ordered kinship care of a child;

**“marriage”** means a marriage –

- (a) recognised in terms of South African law or customary law; or
- (b) concluded in accordance with a system of religious law subject to specified procedures, and any reference to a husband, wife, widower, widow, divorced person, married person or spouse must be construed accordingly;

**“MEC for social development”** means the member of the Executive Council of a province who is responsible for social development in the province;

**“medical practitioner”** means a medical practitioner, including a dentist, registered or deemed to be registered as such under the Medical, Dental and Supplementary Health Service Professions Act, 1974 (Act No. 56 of 1974);

**“mental illness”** means mental illness as defined in the Mental Health Act, 1973 (Act No. 18 of 1973);

**“Minister”** means the Cabinet member responsible for the protection and well-being of children;

**“Minister of Health”** means the Cabinet member responsible for the administration of health;

**“Minister of Justice”** means the Cabinet member responsible for the administration of justice;

**“municipality”** means a metropolitan, district or local municipality established in terms of section 12 of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act No. 117 of 1998), but to the extent that a municipality may or must implement a provision of this Act in or in relation to an area which falls within the area of both a district municipality and a local municipality, **“municipality”** in such provision means the relevant local municipality;

**“National Child Protection Register”** means the register referred to in section 120;

**“neglect”**, in relation to a child, means a failure in the exercise of parental responsibilities to provide for the child’s basic physical, intellectual, emotional or social needs;



**“nurse”** means a person registered as a nurse under the Nursing Act, 1978 (Act No. 50 of 1978);

**“organ of state”** –

- (a) means an organ of state as defined in paragraphs (a) and (b) of section 239 of the Constitution;  
and
- (b) when appropriate, includes a court or a judicial officer;

**“orphan”** means a child who has no surviving parent caring for him or her after one of his or her parents has died;

**“parent”**, in relation to a child, includes the adoptive parent of a child, but excludes –

- (a) the biological father of a child conceived through the rape of the child’s mother;
- (b) any person who is biologically related to a child by reason only of being a gamete donor for purposes of artificial procreation; and
- (c) a parent whose parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child have been terminated;

**“parental responsibilities”**, in relation to a child means the responsibility –

- (a) to care for the child;
- (b) to have and maintain contact with the child; and
- (c) to act as the guardian of the child;

**“parental rights”**, in relation to a child means the right –

- (a) to care for the child;
- (b) to have and maintain contact with the child; and
- (c) to act as the guardian of the child;

**“parent-substitute”** means a person appointed in terms of section 38;

**“partial care”** means taking care of a child in accordance with section 145;

**“partial care facility”** means any premises or other place used partly or exclusively for the partial care of six or more children, which place may include –

- (a) a private home;
- (b) other privately owned or managed premises: or
- (b) a school, hospital or other state managed premises where partial care is provided by a person other than the school, hospital or other organ of state;

**“party”**, in relation to a matter before a child and family court, means –

- (a) a child involved in the matter;
  - (b) a parent;
  - (c) a person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
  - (d) a primary care-giver of the child;
  - (e) a prospective adoptive or foster parent or kinship care-giver of the child;
  - (f) the department or the designated child protection organisation managing the case of the child;
- or
- (g) any other person admitted or recognised by the court as a party;

**“permanency plan”** means a documented plan referred to in section 176 (1) (a) (iii);

**“person unsuitable to work with children”** means a person listed in Part B of the National Child Protection Register;

**“prescribed overseas jurisdiction”** means a country specified in column B in Schedule 1 with whom the Republic has concluded a bilateral or multilateral agreement on inter-country adoption;

**“prevention services”** means services referred to in section 158 (2);

**“primary care-giver”**, in relation to a child, means a person –

- (a) who has the primary parental responsibility or right in caring for the child and who exercises that responsibility and right;
- (b) who cares for a child with the implied or express consent of a person referred to in paragraph (a); or
- (c) who cares for a child whilst the child is in temporary safe care,

but excludes a person who receives remuneration other than a social security grant to care for the child;

**“provincial department of social development”** means the department within a provincial administration responsible for social development in the province;

**“provincial head of social development”** means the head of the provincial department of social development;

**“psychologist”** means a psychologist registered or deemed to be registered as such in terms of the Medical, Dental and Supplementary Health Service Professions Act, 1974 (Act No. 56 of 1974);

**“Public Finance Management Act”** means the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act No. 1 of 1999);

**“quality assurance process”** means a developmental quality assurance process in terms of which

- (a) a team of people connected to a child and youth care centre makes an internal assessment of the centre;
- (b) a team of people unconnected to the centre conducts an independent assessment of the centre;

- (c) an organisational development plan for the centre covering matters prescribed by regulation is established by agreement between the teams; and
- (d) the unconnected team appoints a mentor to oversee implementation of the plan by the management of the centre;

**“regulation”** means a regulation made in terms of this Act;

**“residential care programme”** means a programme described in section 210 (2) which is or may be offered at a child and youth care centre;

**“respondent”** means any person legally liable to maintain or to contribute towards the maintenance of a child for whose maintenance, treatment or special needs a contribution order is sought or was made in terms of Chapter 12;

**“school”** means a public school or an independent school as defined in the South African Schools Act 84 of 1996;

**“secure care”** means the physical containment of children in a safe and healthy environment conducive to addressing behavioural or emotional difficulties;

**“serve”**, in relation to any notice, document or other process in terms of this Act, means to serve such notice, document or other process in accordance with the procedure provided for the serving of process in terms of the Magistrates’ Courts Act, 1944 (Act No 32 of 1944), and the rules applying to the proceedings of magistrates’ courts;

**“sexual abuse”**, in relation to a child, means –

- (a) sexually molesting or assaulting a child or allowing a child to be sexually molested or assaulted;

- (b) encouraging, inducing or forcing a child to be used for the sexual gratification of another person;  
or
- (b) procuring or allowing a child to be procured for commercial sexual exploitation or in any way participating or assisting in the commercial sexual exploitation of a child;

**“shelter”** means a facility referred to in section 244 (1);

**“social security grant”** means any of the grants or subsidies provided for in Chapter 23;

**“social worker”** means a person who is registered or deemed to be registered as a social worker in terms of the Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act No. 110 of 1978);

**“street child”** means a child who –

- (a) because of abuse, neglect, poverty, community upheaval or any other reason, has left his or her home, family or community and lives, begs or works on the streets for survival; or
- (b) because of inadequate care, begs or works on the streets for survival but returns home at night;

**“temporary safe care”**, in relation to a child, means care of a child in a child and youth care centre, shelter or private home or any other place of a kind that may be prescribed by regulation, where the child can safely be accommodated pending a decision or court order concerning the placement of the child, but excludes a prison or police cell;

**“traditional authority”** means a traditional authority as defined in the Transitional Executive Council Act, 1993 (Act No. 151 of 1993);

**“this Act”** includes –

- (a) any regulation made in terms of this Act;
- (b) the national policy framework referred to in section 5;

- (b) the rules regulating the proceedings of the child and family courts in terms of section 75 (1) or (2);

**“traffic”**, in relation to a child, means to take a child from one place to another for the purposes of financial or other gain or favour and without lawful authority to do so;

**“undocumented migrant child”** means a child who is unlawfully in the Republic after an illicit entry into the Republic by the child or the child’s parents;

**“UN Protocol to Prevent Trafficking in Persons”** means the United Nations Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Especially Women and Children, Supplementing the UN Convention against Transnational Organised Crime, 2000, a copy of the English text of which is set out in Schedule 4.

- (2) In this Act, a word or expression derived from a word or expression defined in subsection (1) has a corresponding meaning unless the context indicates that another meaning is intended.

### **Objects of this Act**

2. The objects of this Act are –

- (a) to make provision for structures, services and means for promoting and monitoring the sound physical, intellectual, emotional and social development of children;
- (b) to strengthen and develop community structures which can assist in providing care and protection for children;
- (c) to protect children from maltreatment, abuse, neglect, degradation, discrimination, exploitation and any other physical and moral harm or hazards;
- (d) to provide care and protection for children who are –
  - (i) suffering from maltreatment, abuse, neglect, degradation, discrimination, exploitation or

any other physical and moral harm or hazards;

- (ii) in need of care and protection; or
- (iii) in especially difficult circumstances;
- (e) to give effect to the Republic's obligations concerning the well-being of children in terms of international instruments binding on the Republic; and
- (f) generally, to promote the protection, development and well-being of children.

### **Conflicts with other legislation**

**3.** (1) In the event of a conflict between a section of this Act and –

- (a) other national legislation relating to the protection and well-being of children, the section of this Act prevails;
- (b) provincial legislation relating to the protection and well-being of children, the conflict must be resolved in terms of section 146 of the Constitution; and
- (c) a municipal by-law relating to the protection and well-being of children, the section of this Act prevails.

(2) In the event of a conflict between a regulation made in terms of this Act and –

- (a) an Act of Parliament, the Act of Parliament prevails;
- (b) provincial legislation, the conflict must be resolved in terms of section 146 of the Constitution; and
- (c) a municipal by-law, the regulation made in terms of this Act prevails.

(3) For the proper application of subsection (2) (b) the Minister must in terms of section 146 (6) of the Constitution submit all regulations made in terms of this Act and which affect a province, to the National Council of Provinces for approval.

(4) In this section “**regulation**” means –

- (a) a regulation made in terms of this Act;
- (b) the national policy framework referred to in section 5; or
- (c) a rule regulating the proceedings of child and family courts in terms of section 75 (1).

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **INTER-SECTORAL IMPLEMENTATION OF THIS ACT**

#### **Implementation of this Act**

**4.** This Act must be implemented by organs of state in the national, provincial and local spheres of government subject to –

- (a) any specific section of this Act and regulations allocating roles and responsibilities; and
- (b) the national policy framework published in terms of section 5.

#### **National policy framework**

**5.** (1) The Minister –

- (a) must prepare a national policy framework to guide the implementation, enforcement and administration of this Act in order to secure the protection and well-being of children in the Republic;
- (b) must review the policy framework at least once every five years; and
- (c) may, when necessary, amend the policy framework.

(2) The Minister must publish the national policy framework and each amendment of the framework by notice in the Government Gazette.

(3) The national policy framework binds –

- (a) all organs of state in the national, provincial and local spheres of government;
- (b) all designated child protection organisations; and
- (c) any other non-governmental organisations involved in implementing government or government-



aided programmes and projects concerning children.

## **Contents**

- 6.** (1) The national policy framework must –
  - (a) be a coherent policy directive appropriate for the Republic as a whole to guide the protection and well-being of children;
  - (b) provide for an integrated, coordinated and uniform approach by organs of state in all spheres of government and non-governmental organisations on which it is binding; and
  - (c) be consistent with the provisions of this Act.
- (2) The national policy framework must reflect the following core components:
  - (a) national objectives to secure the protection and well-being of all children in the Republic;
  - (b) priorities and strategies to achieve those objectives, including strategies referred to in sections **106, 113, 161, 211 and 232**;
  - (c) performance indicators to measure progress with the achievement of those objectives;
  - (d) a framework for co-operative governance on a cross-functional and multi-disciplinary basis in the implementation of this Act;
  - (e) the allocation to the different spheres of government and to different organs of state of primary and supporting roles and responsibilities in this regard;
  - (f) the engagement of non-governmental organisations in the implementation, enforcement and administration of this Act and in the development and implementation of programmes and projects giving effect to this Act; and
  - (g) measures to ensure adequate funds for securing the protection and well-being of all children in the Republic, including such funds as are required for the implementation, enforcement and administration of this Act .

## **Consultative process**

- 7.** (1) Before publishing the national policy framework or any amendment to the framework,

the Minister must –

- (a) generally follow a consultative process as may be appropriate in the circumstances;
- (b) consult with –
  - (i) Cabinet members whose departments are affected by the framework or amendment; and
  - (ii) organs of state in other spheres of government in accordance with the principles of co-operative government as set out in Chapter 3 of the Constitution; and
- (c) allow public participation in the process in accordance with section 8.

(2) The Minister may not publish the national framework, or any amendment to the framework, except with the concurrence of the Cabinet members whose departments are directly affected by the framework or amendment.

### **Public participation**

8. (1) To allow the public to participate in the preparation of the national policy framework, or any amendment to the framework, the Minister must –

- (a) publish for public comment –
  - (i) the proposed framework, or the proposed amendment, in the *Government Gazette*; and
  - (ii) a brief summary of the proposed framework or amendment in one or more national newspapers; and
- (b) in a notice published in the *Government Gazette* and those newspapers, invite the public to submit to the Minister written representations on or objections to the proposed framework, or the proposed amendment, within 30 days of the date of publication of the notice in the *Government Gazette*.

(2) The Minister may in appropriate circumstances allow any interested person or community to present oral representations or objections to the Minister or a person designated by the Minister.

(3) The Minister must give due consideration to all representations or objections submitted or presented in terms of subsections (1) and (2).

(4) This section need not be applied in respect of a minor or technical change to the national policy framework.

### **CHAPTER 3**

#### **GENERAL PRINCIPLES**

##### **General principles**

**9.** (1) The general principles set out in this section guide –

- (a) the passing of all provincial legislation, municipal by-laws and subordinate national legislation to the extent that such legislation and by-laws are applicable to children;
- (b) the implementation of all legislation applicable to children, including this Act; and
- (c) all proceedings, actions and decisions by any organ of state in any matter concerning a child or children in general.

(2) In all matters concerning a child the standard referred to in section 28 (2) of the Constitution that the child's best interest is of paramount importance, must be applied. What is in the best interest of a child must be determined with reference to section **10** of this Act.

(3) All proceedings, actions or decisions in a matter concerning a child must –

- (a) respect, protect, promote and fulfil the child's rights set out in the Bill of Rights, and the rights set out in Chapter 4 of this Act, subject to any lawful limitation;
- (b) respect the child's inherent dignity;

- (c) treat the child fairly and equitably; and
- (d) protect the child from unfair discrimination on any ground, including on the grounds of the health or HIV/AIDS-status of the child or a family member of the child.

(4) If a matter concerning a child involves a selection between one parent and the other, or between one person and another, there should be no preference in favour of any parent or person solely on the basis of that parent or person's gender.

(5) If it is in the best interest of the child, the child's family must be given the opportunity to express their views in any matter concerning the child.

(6) If a child is in a position to participate meaningfully in any decision-making process in any matter concerning the child –

- (a) the child must be given that opportunity; and
- (b) proper consideration must be given to the child's views and preferences, bearing in mind the child's age, maturity and stage of development.

(7) In any matter concerning a child –

- (a) an approach which is conducive to conciliation and problem-solving should be followed and a confrontational approach should be avoided; and
- (b) a delay in any action or decision to be taken must be avoided as far as possible.

(8) A person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child, and having regard to the age, maturity and stage of development of the child, the child as well where this is appropriate, must be informed of any action or decision taken in a matter concerning the child which significantly affects the child.

**Best interest of the child standard**

**10.** (1) Whenever a provision of this Act requires the best interest of the child standard to be applied, the following factors must be taken into consideration where relevant –

- (a) the nature of the personal relationship between –
  - (i) the child and the parents, or any specific parent; and
  - (ii) the child and any other person relevant in those circumstances;
- (b) the attitude of the parents, or any specific parent, towards –
  - (i) the child; and
  - (ii) the exercise of parental responsibilities or rights in respect of the child;
- (c) the capacity of the parents, or any specific parent, or of any other person, to provide for the needs of the child, including emotional and intellectual needs;
- (d) the likely effect on the child of any change in the child's circumstances, including the likely effect on the child of any separation from –
  - (i) both or either of the parents; or
  - (ii) any brother or sister or other child, or any other person, with whom the child has been living;
- (e) the practical difficulty and expense of a child having contact with the parents, or any specific parent, and whether that difficulty or expense will substantially affect the child's right to maintain personal relations and direct contact with the parents, or any specific parent, on a regular basis;
- (f) the need for the child –
  - (i) to remain in the care of his or her parent, family and extended family;
  - (ii) to maintain a connection with his or her family, extended family, tribe, culture or tradition;
- (g) the child's –
  - (i) age, maturity and stage of development;
  - (ii) gender; and

- (iii) background and any other relevant characteristics of the child;
  - (h) the child's physical and emotional security and his or her intellectual, emotional, social and cultural development;
  - (i) the need for a child to be brought up within a stable family environment and, where this is not possible, in an environment resembling as closely as possible a family environment;
  - (j) the need to protect the child from any physical or psychological harm that may be caused by –
    - (i) subjecting the child to maltreatment, abuse, neglect or degradation or exposing the child to violence or other harmful behaviour; or
    - (ii) exposing the child to maltreatment, abuse, degradation, ill-treatment, violence or harmful behaviour towards another person;
  - (k) any family violence involving the child or a family member of the child; and
  - (l) which action or decision would avoid or minimise further legal or administrative proceedings in relation to the child.
- (2) In this section “**parent**” includes –
- (a) the care-giver of a child; or
  - (b) any person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child.

## CHAPTER 4

### CHILDREN'S RIGHTS

#### **Application**

**11.** (1) The rights which a child has in terms of this Chapter supplement the rights which a child has in terms of the Bill of Rights.

(2) All organs of state in any sphere of government and all officials, employees and representatives of an organ of state must respect, protect, promote and fulfil the rights of children contained in this Chapter.

(3) Any provision of this Chapter binds all persons, natural or juristic, if, and to the extent that, it is applicable, taking into account the nature of the right and the nature of any duty imposed by the right.

### **Conflicts with other legislation**

**12.** In the event of a conflict between a provision of this Chapter and any other legislation, the provision of this Chapter prevails except –

- (a) to the extent that such other legislation is or could be interpreted as a limitation of general application on such provision that is reasonable and justifiable in an open and democratic society based on human dignity, equality and freedom, taking into account all relevant factors, including those listed in section 36 (1) (a) to (e) of the Constitution; or
- (b) as otherwise provided in section 3 (1) (b).

### **Unfair discrimination**

**13.** (1) No organ of state, and no official, employee or representative of an organ of state, and no other person may unfairly discriminate directly or indirectly against a child on the ground of –

- (a) the race, gender, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language or birth of the child or of any parent, guardian, care-giver or family member of the child; or
- (b) the family status, health status, socio-economic status, HIV-status or nationality of the child or of any parent, guardian, care-giver or family member of the child.

(2) Discrimination on any of the grounds listed in subsection (1) is presumed to be unfair unless it is established that the discrimination is fair.

### **Best interest of the child**

**14.** (1) An organ of state, an official, employee or representative of an organ of state, or any other person in authority who has official control over a child, must, when acting in any matter concerning the child, apply the standard referred to in section 28 (2) of the Constitution that the child's best interest is of paramount importance.

(2) Every child capable of participating meaningfully in any judicial or administrative proceedings in a matter concerning that child has the right to participate in an appropriate way in those proceedings. Views expressed by the child must be given due consideration.

### **Name, nationality and identity**

**15.** Every child has the right –

- (a) to be promptly registered in terms of the Registration of Births and Deaths Act, 1992 (Act No. 51 of 1992), if that child is a South African citizen; and
- (b) to the preservation of his or her identity and nationality, subject to the other provisions of this Act.

### **Family relationship**

**16.** (1) Every child has the right not to be separated from his or her family or primary care-giver against the will of the family or primary care-giver and of the child where the child is capable of expressing a choice, except when that separation is in the best interest of the child.

(2) Every child separated from his or her parents has the right to maintain a personal relationship and regular contact with the parents, except when those personal relations and that contact are not in the best interest of the child.

### **Property**



17. Every child who owns property has the right to the administration of that property in the best interest of that child.

### **Maltreatment, abuse, neglect, degradation, exploitation and other harmful practices**

18. (1) Every child has the right to be protected, through administrative, social, educational, punitive or other suitable measures and procedures, from all forms of torture, physical violence, mental harassment, injury, maltreatment, abuse, neglect, degradation and exploitation.

(2) Every child who has been tortured, maltreated, harassed, abused, neglected, degraded or exploited has the right to have access to support services and, where appropriate, to medical treatment at state expense.

### **Harmful social and cultural practices**

19. (1) Every child has the right not to be subjected to harmful social and cultural practices which affect the well-being, health or dignity of the child.

(2) Every child –

- (a) below the minimum age set by law for a valid marriage has the right not to be given out in marriage or engagement; and
- (b) above that minimum age has the right not to be given out in marriage or engagement without his or her consent.

(3) Female genital mutilation or the circumcision of female children as a cultural practice is prohibited.

(4) Every male child has the right –

- (a) to refuse circumcision; and

- (b) not to be subjected to unhygienic circumcision.

(5) Every child has the right –

- (a) to refuse to be subjected to virginity testing, including virginity testing as part of a cultural practice; and
- (b) not to be subjected to unhygienic virginity testing.

### **Economic exploitation**

**20.** Every child has the right to be protected, through administrative, social, educational, punitive or other suitable measures and procedures, from –

- (a) economic exploitation; and
- (b) performing any work –
  - (i) that is inappropriate for a person of that child's age; and
  - (ii) that places at risk the child's well-being, education, physical and mental health, and spiritual, moral or social development.

### **Education**

**21.** (1) Every child has the right to –

- (a) have access to education on the basis of equal opportunities for all;
- (b) have access to educational and vocational information and guidance; and
- (c) receive education and information through a medium which makes such education and information accessible to the child, having regard to the child's personal circumstances and any disability from which the child may suffer.

(2) The education of a child must be directed towards –

- (a) the development of the child's personality, talents and intellectual and physical abilities to their

fullest potential;

- (b) the development of respect for the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom enshrined in our Constitution;
- (c) the development of respect for the child's parents, cultural identity and values, and language;
- (d) the preparation of the child for a responsible life in a free society, in the spirit of peace, friendship, humanity, tolerance and national unity among cultural, religious and linguistic communities on the basis of equality, non-discrimination and free association; and
- (e) the development of respect for our natural and cultural heritage.

### **Basic health care**

**22.** Every child has the right to –

- (a) basic health care services and to have access to such services;
- (b) confidential access to information on health promotion and the prevention of ill-health and disease, including HIV/AIDS, sexuality, and reproduction;
- (c) confidentiality regarding his or her health status and the health status of a parent, care-giver or family member;
- (d) have access to clean drinking water; and
- (e) have access to sanitation services aimed at promoting their health and preventing infections and diseases.

### **Social security**

**23.** (1) Every child has the right to social security, including access to social assistance if the parent or care-giver cannot or does not provide for the basic needs of a child.

(2) A child suffering from malnutrition or who is at risk of malnutrition has the right to have access to sufficient and appropriate food, including emergency measures by the state for a child whose survival is at stake.

### **Refugee and undocumented migrant children**

**24.** Every child who is a refugee or seeking refugee status in accordance with international or domestic law, and every undocumented migrant child, whether unaccompanied or accompanied by a parent or other adult person, has –

- (a) the rights set out in this Chapter, as may be appropriate in the circumstances;
- (b) the right to be re-united with his or her parents or family if the child was separated from his or her parents or family; and
- (c) the right to receive humanitarian protection and assistance to realise the rights referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b).

### **Children with disabilities and chronic illnesses**

**25.** (1) Every child with a physical, intellectual or psychiatric disability has the right –

- (a) to enjoy life in conditions which ensure dignity, promote self-reliance and facilitate active participation in the community; and
- (b) to receive special care; and
- (c) to receive reasonable financial assistance from the state.

(2) Every child who is chronically ill has the right to receive special care and reasonable financial assistance from the state.

### **Leisure and recreation**

**26.** Every child has the right to rest and leisure and to engage in play and recreational activities appropriate to the child's age.

### **Access to child and family courts**

**27.** Every child has the right to bring a matter to a child and family court, provided that matter falls

within the jurisdiction of that court.

### **Responsibilities of children**

**28.** Every child has responsibilities appropriate to the child's age and ability towards his or her family, society, the state, other legally recognised communities and the international community.

### **Age of majority**

**29.** A child, whether male or female, attains the age of majority and become a major upon reaching the age of 18 years.

## **CHAPTER 5**

### **PARENTAL RESPONSIBILITIES AND RIGHTS**

#### ***Part 1: Acquisition and loss of parental responsibilities and rights***

### **Parental responsibilities and rights**

**30.** A person may have either full or specific parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child.

### **Parental responsibilities and rights of mothers**

**31.** (1) The mother of a child, whether married or unmarried, has full parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child.

(2) If the child's mother is an unmarried child and the child's father does not have full parental responsibilities and rights, or has no parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child, the guardian of the mother has those parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child which that guardian has in respect of the mother.

(3) This section does not apply in respect of a child born from a surrogacy agreement.

### **Parental responsibilities and rights of married fathers**

**32.** The biological father of a child has full parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child

–

- (a) if he is married to the child's mother; or
- (b) if he was married to her at –
  - (i) the time of the child's conception;
  - (ii) the time of the child's birth; or
  - (iii) any time between the child's conception or birth.

### **Parental responsibilities and rights of unmarried fathers**

**33.** (1) The biological father of a child who does not have parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child in terms of section **32**, acquires parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child –

- (a) if at any time after the child's birth he has lived with the child's mother –
  - (i) for a period of no less than 12 months; or
  - (ii) for periods which together amount to no less than 12 months;
- (b) if he, regardless of whether he has lived or is living with the mother, has cared for the child with the mother's informed consent –
  - (i) for a period of no less than 12 months; or
  - (ii) for periods which together amount to no less than 12 months;
- (c) upon confirmation by a court of a parental responsibilities and rights agreement in respect of the child in terms of section **34**; or
- (d) if, and to the extent that, parental responsibilities and rights have been granted to him by an order of court.

(2) This section does not affect the duty of a father of a child to contribute towards the

maintenance of the child.

### **Parental responsibilities and rights agreements**

**34.** (1) Subject to subsection (2), the biological father of a child who does not have parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child in terms of either section **32** or **33** may enter into an agreement with the mother or other person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child, providing for the acquisition by the father of such parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child as are set out in the agreement.

(2) The mother or other person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child may only confer by agreement upon the biological father of the child those parental responsibilities and rights which she or that other person has in respect of the child at the time of the conclusion of such agreement.

(3) A parental responsibilities and rights agreement must be in the format and contain the particulars prescribed by regulation.

- (4) A parental responsibilities and rights agreement –
- (a) takes effect only if –
    - (i) registered with a child and family court registrar; or
    - (ii) made an order of court on application by the parties to the agreement; and
  - (b) may be amended or terminated only by an order of a court on application –
    - (i) by a person having parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
    - (ii) by the child, acting with leave of the court; or
    - (iii) in the child's interest by any other person, acting with leave of the court.

**Assignment of parental responsibilities and rights by orders of court**

**35.** (1) Any person having an interest in the care, well-being or development of a child may apply to a court for an order assigning to the applicant full or any specific parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child.

(2) When considering an application the court must take into account –

- (a) the relationship between the applicant and the child, and any other relevant person and the child;
- (b) the degree of commitment that the applicant has shown towards the child; and
- (c) the extent to which the applicant has contributed towards expenses in connection with the birth and maintenance of the child; and
- (d) any other fact that should, in the opinion of the court, be taken into account.

(3) If in the course of the court proceedings it is brought to the attention of the court that an application for the adoption of the child has been made by another applicant, the court –

- (a) must request a family advocate to furnish it with a report and recommendations as to what is in the best interests of the child concerned; and
- (b) may suspend the first-mentioned application on any conditions it may determine.

(4) The assignment of parental responsibilities and rights to a person in terms of this section does not affect the parental responsibilities and rights that any other person may have in respect of the same child.

**Certain applications regarded as inter-country adoptions**

**36.** When application is made in terms of section 35 (1) by a non-South African citizen for the allocation of full parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child or to act as guardian of a child,



the application must be regarded to be an inter-country adoption for the purposes of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption and Chapter 19 of this Act.

### **Persons claiming paternity**

**37.** (1) A person who is not married to the mother of a child and who is or claims to be the biological father of the child may –

- (a) apply for an amendment to be effected to the registration of birth of the child in terms of section 11 (4) of the Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1992 (Act No. 51 of 1992), indentifying him as the father of the child, if the mother consents to such amendment; or
- (b) apply to a court for an order confirming his paternity of the child, if the mother –
  - (i) refuses to consent to such amendment;
  - (ii) is incompetent to give consent due to mental illness;
  - (iii) cannot be traced; or
  - (iv) is deceased.

(2) This section does not apply to –

- (a) the biological father of a child conceived through the rape of or incest with the child's mother; or
- (b) any person who is biologically related to a child by reason only of being a gamete donor for purposes of artificial procreation.

### **Assignment of parental responsibilities and rights to parent-substitutes**

**38.** (1) A parent who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child may appoint a suitable person as a parent-substitute and assign to that person that parent's parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child in the event of the parent's death.

(2) An appointment in terms of subsection (1) –

- (a) must be in writing and signed by the parent;

- (b) may form part of the will of the parent;
- (c) replaces any previous appointment, including any such appointment in a will, whether made before or after this section took effect; and
- (d) may at any time be revoked by the parent by way of a written instrument signed by the parent.

(3) A parent-substitute appointed in terms of subsection (1) acquires parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child –

- (a) after the death of the parent; and
- (b) upon the parent-substitute's express or implied acceptance of the appointment.

(4) If two or more persons are appointed as parent-substitutes, any one or more or all of them may accept the appointment except if the appointment provides otherwise.

(5) A parent-substitute acquires only those parental responsibilities and rights –

- (a) which the parent had at his or her death; or
- (b) if the parent died before the birth of the child, which the parent would have had had the parent lived until the birth of the child.

(6) The assignment of parental responsibilities and rights to a parent-substitute does not affect the parental responsibilities and rights which another person has in respect of the child.

(7) In this section “**parent**” includes a person who has acquired parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child.

### **Termination, extension, suspension or restriction of parental responsibilities and rights**

**39.** (1) A person referred to in subsection (3) may apply to a court for an order –

- (a) suspending for a period, or terminating, any or all of the parental responsibilities and rights

which a specific person has in respect of a child; or

- (b) extending or circumscribing the exercise by that person of any or all of the parental responsibilities and rights that person has in respect of a child.

(2) An application in terms of subsection (1) may be combined with an application in terms of section 35 for the granting of parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child to the applicant in terms of that section.

(3) An application in terms of subsection (1) may be brought –

- (a) by a co-holder of parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
- (b) by any other person having a sufficient interest in the care, protection, well-being or development of the child;
- (c) by the child, acting with leave of the court;
- (d) in the child's interest by any other person, acting with leave of the court; or
- (e) by a family advocate or the representative of any interested organ of state.

(4) When considering an application the court must take into account –

- (a) the relationship between the child and the person whose parental responsibilities and rights are challenged;
- (b) the degree of commitment that that person has shown towards the child; and
- (c) any other fact that should, in the opinion of the court, be taken into account.

#### **Extension of parental responsibilities and rights after child reaches age of 18 years**

**40.** (1) A court may on application by a person referred to in subsection (2) order that parental responsibilities and rights of a person in respect of a child be extended for a period of not more than three years after that child has reached the age of 18 years, if special circumstances exist with regard to the protection and well-being of that child to warrant such an extension.

- (2) An application in terms of this section –
  - (a) must be made before the child reaches the age of 18 years; and
  - (b) may be brought by –
    - (i) the child;
    - (ii) the parent or primary care-giver of the child;
    - (iii) any other person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
    - or
    - (iv) the Director-General or the head of social development in a province.

### **Court proceedings**

**41.** (1) An application in terms of section **34** (3), **35** (1), **37** (1) (b), **39** (1) or **40** (1) may be brought before any court within whose area of jurisdiction the child concerned is ordinarily resident or happens to be.

(2) An application in terms of section **35** (1) for the allocation of full parental rights and responsibilities or to act as guardian of a child must contain reasons as to why the applicant is not applying for the adoption of the child.

(3) The court hearing an application may grant the application unconditionally or on such conditions as it may determine, or may refuse an application, but an application may be granted only if it is in the best interest of the child.

(4) When considering an application the court must be guided by the principles set out in Chapter **3** to the extent that those principles are applicable to the matter before it.

(5) The court may for the purposes of the hearing order that –

- (a) a report and recommendations of a family advocate, a social worker or other professional person must be submitted to the court;
- (b) a matter specified by the court must be investigated by a person designated by the court;
- (c) a person specified by the court must appear before it to give or produce evidence; or
- (d) the applicant or any party opposing the application must pay the costs of any such investigation or appearance.

(6) The court may –

- (a) appoint a legal practitioner to represent the child at the court proceedings; and
- (b) order the parties to the proceedings, or any one of them, or the state, to pay the costs of such representation.

(7) If it appears to a court in the course of any criminal or civil proceedings that a child involved in or affected by those proceedings is in need of care and protection, the court may order that the question whether the child is in need of care and protection be referred to a child and family court for decision.

(8) If the court hearing the application is a child and family court, this section must be read with Chapter 6.

## ***Part 2: Co-exercise of parental responsibilities and rights***

### **Co-holders of parental responsibilities and rights**

**42.** (1) More than one person may hold parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the same child.

(2) When more than one person holds the same parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child, each of the co-holders may act without the consent of the other co-holder or holders

when exercising those responsibilities and rights, except where this Act or an order of court provides otherwise.

(3) A co-holder of parental responsibilities and rights may not surrender or transfer those responsibilities and rights to another co-holder or any other person, but may by agreement with that other co-holder or person allow the other co-holder or person to exercise any or all of those responsibilities and rights on his or her behalf.

(4) An agreement in terms of subsection (3) does not divest a co-holder of his or her parental responsibilities and rights of those responsibilities and rights, and that co-holder remains competent and liable to exercise those responsibilities and rights.

(5) Except where this Act or an order of court provides otherwise, the following acts may not be concluded without the consent of all persons holding parental responsibilities and rights in respect of those acts:

- (a) the contracting of a marriage by the child;
- (b) the adoption of the child;
- (c) the departure or removal of the child from the Republic;
- (d) the application for a passport by or on behalf of the child; or
- (e) the alienation or encumbrance of immovable property belonging to the child, including any right to or interest in immovable property.

### **Major decisions involving a child**

**43.** (1) Before a person holding parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child takes any major decision involving the child, that person must give due consideration to any views and wishes expressed –

- (a) by the child, bearing in mind the child's age, maturity and stage of development; and

- (b) by any co-holder of parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child.
- (2) The expression “**major decision involving the child**” for purposes of –
- (a) subsection (1) (a), means any decision –
    - (i) in connection with a matter listed in section 42 (5);
    - (ii) affecting contact between the child and a co-holder of parental responsibilities and rights;
    - (iii) regarding the assignment of parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child to a parent-substitute in terms of section 38; or
    - (iv) which is likely to change significantly, or to have an adverse effect on, the child’s living conditions, education, health, personal relations with a parent or family member or, generally, the child’s well-being; and
  - (b) subsection (1) (b), means any decision which is likely to change significantly, or to have a significant adverse effect on, the co-holder’s exercise of parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child.

#### **Care of child by persons not holding parental responsibilities and rights**

**44.** (1) A person who has no parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child but voluntarily cares for the child either indefinitely, temporarily or partially, including a care-giver who otherwise has no parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child, must, whilst the child is in that person’s care –

- (a) safeguard the child’s health, well-being and development; and
- (b) protect the child from maltreatment, abuse, neglect, degradation, discrimination, exploitation, and any other physical or mental harm or hazards.

(2) A person referred to in subsection (1) may exercise any parental responsibilities and rights reasonably necessary to comply with that subsection, including the right to consent in terms of

section 135 (3) to any medical examination or treatment of the child if such consent cannot reasonably be obtained from the parent or primary care-giver of the child.

(3) A court may limit or restrict the parental responsibilities and rights which a person may exercise in terms of subsection (2).

- (4) A person referred to in subsection (1) may not –
- (a) hold himself or herself out as the biological or adoptive parent of the child; or
  - (b) deceive the child or any other person into believing that that person is the biological or adoptive parent of the child.

### ***Part 3: Parenting plans***

#### **Contents of parenting plans**

45. (1) If the co-holders of parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child are experiencing difficulties in exercising their responsibilities and rights, those persons, before seeking the intervention of a court, must first seek to agree on a parenting plan determining the exercise of their respective responsibilities and rights in respect of the child.

(2) A parenting plan may determine any matter in connection with parental responsibilities and rights, including –

- (a) where and with whom the child is to live;
- (b) the maintenance of the child;
- (c) contact between the child and –
  - (i) any of the parties; and
  - (ii) any other person; and
- (d) guardianship of the child.



(3) A parenting plan must comply with the best interest of the child standard as set out in section 10.

- (4) In preparing a parenting plan the parties may seek –
- (a) the assistance of a family advocate; or
  - (b) mediation through a social worker or other appropriate person.

### **Formalities**

**46.** (1) A parenting plan –

- (a) must be in writing and signed by the parties to the agreement; and
- (b) may be registered with a child and family court registrar or made an order of court if the plan complies with section 45 and subsection (2) of this section.

- (2) An application for registration of a parenting plan must –
- (a) be in the format and contain the particulars prescribed by regulation; and
  - (b) be accompanied by –
    - (i) a copy of the plan; and
    - (ii) a statement by –
      - (aa) a family advocate that the plan was prepared after consultation with the family advocate, if section 45 (4) (a) applies; or
      - (bb) a social worker or other person contemplated in paragraph (b) of section 45(4) that the plan was prepared after mediation by such social worker or such person, if section 45 (4) (b) applies.

### **Amendment or termination of registered parenting plans**

**47.** (1) A registered parenting plan may be amended or terminated only by an order of court on application –

- (a) by the co-holders of the parental responsibilities and rights;

- (b) by the child, acting with leave of the court; or
- (c) in the child's interest, by any other person acting with leave of the court.

(2) Section 41 applies to any application in terms of subsection (1).

#### ***Part 4: Miscellaneous***

##### **Presumption of paternity in respect of child born out of wedlock**

48. If in any legal proceedings at which it has been placed in issue whether any particular person is the father of a child born out of wedlock it is proved by judicial admission or otherwise that that person had sexual intercourse with the mother of the child at any time when that child could have been conceived, that person must, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, be presumed to be the biological father of the child.

##### **Presumption on refusal to submit to taking of blood samples**

49. If in any legal proceedings at which the paternity of a child has been placed in issue it is adduced in evidence or otherwise that any party to those proceedings has refused to submit himself or herself, or the child, to the taking of a blood sample in order to carry out scientific tests relating to the paternity of the child, it must be presumed, until the contrary is proved, that such refusal is aimed at concealing the truth concerning the paternity of the child.

##### **Effect of subsequent marriage of parents on children**

50. (1) A child born of parents who marry each other after the birth of the child must for all purposes be regarded as a child born of parents married at the time of his or her birth.

(2) Subsection (1) applies despite the fact that the parents could not have legally married each other at the time of conception or birth of the child.

**Rights of children born of voidable marriages**

**51.** (1) The rights of a child conceived or born of a voidable marriage shall not be affected by the annulment of that marriage.

(2) No voidable marriage may be annulled until the relevant court has inquired into and considered the safeguarding of the rights and interests of a child of that marriage.

(3) Section 6 of the Divorce Act, 1979 (Act No. 70 of 1979), and section 4 of the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act, 1987 (Act No. 24 of 1987), with the necessary changes as the context may require, apply in respect of such a child as if the proceedings in question were proceedings in a divorce action and the annulment of the marriage were the granting of a decree of divorce.

(4) Section 8 (1) and (2) of the Divorce Act, 1979 (Act No. 70 of 1979), with the necessary changes as the context may require, apply to the rescission or variation of a maintenance order, or an order relating to the care or guardianship of, or access to, a child, or the suspension of a maintenance order or an order relating to access to a child, made by virtue of subsection (3) of this section.

- (5) A reference in any legislation –
- (a) to a maintenance order or an order relating to the care or guardianship of, or access to, a child in terms of the Divorce Act, 1979 (Act No. 70 of 1979), must be construed as a reference also to a maintenance order or an order relating to the care or guardianship of, or access to, a child in terms of that Act as applied by subsection (3);
  - (b) to the rescission, suspension or variation of such an order in terms of the Divorce Act, 1979, must be construed as a reference also to the rescission, suspension or variation of such an order in terms of that Act as applied by subsection (4).

(6) For purposes of this Act, the father of a child conceived in a voidable marriage where such marriage has been annulled is regarded to be in the same position as the father of a child who has divorced the mother of that child.

### **Rights of children conceived by artificial insemination**

**52.** (1) (a) Whenever the gamete or gametes of any person other than a married person or his or her spouse have been used with the consent of both such spouses for the artificial insemination of one spouse, any child born of that spouse as a result of such artificial insemination must for all purposes be regarded to be the child of those spouses as if the gamete or gametes of those spouses were used for such artificial insemination.

(b) For purpose of paragraph (a) it must be presumed, until the contrary is proved, that both spouses have granted the relevant consent.

(2) Whenever the gamete or gametes of any person have been used for the artificial insemination of a woman with her written consent, any child born of that woman as a result of such artificial insemination must for all purposes be regarded to be the child of that woman.

(3) No right, responsibility, duty or obligation arises between a child born of a woman as a result of artificial insemination and any person whose gamete or gametes have been used for such artificial insemination and the blood relations of that person, except when –

- (a) that person is the woman who gave birth to that child; or
- (b) that person is the husband of such woman at the time of such artificial insemination.

(4) For purposes of this section –

- (a) **“artificial insemination”**, in relation to a woman –
  - (i) means the introduction by other than natural means of a male gamete or gametes into

the internal reproductive organs of that woman;

(ii) means the extraction of female gametes from one woman and the transfer of these gametes into the uterus of another woman, followed by fertilization of these gametes through natural means either *in utero* or *in vivo*;

(iii) means the flushing and transfer of the product of a union of a male and female gamete or gametes which have been brought together outside the human body, in the womb of that woman, or

(iv) means the flushing and transfer of the product of a union of a male and female gamete or gametes which has been created by natural means, either *in utero* or *in vivo*, from one woman to the uterus of another woman, for the purpose of human reproduction; and

(b) “**gamete**” means either of the two generative cells essential for human reproduction.

#### **Access to biographical and medical information concerning genetic parents**

**53.** (1) A child born as a result of artificial insemination or surrogacy is entitled to have access to –

(a) any medical information concerning that child’s genetic parents; and

(b) any biographical information concerning that child’s genetic parents, but not before the child reaches the age of 18 years.

(2) Information disclosed in terms of subsection (1)(a) and (b) may not reveal the identity of the person whose gamete or gametes have been used for such artificial insemination or the identity of the surrogate mother.

(3) The Director-General for Health or any other person specified by regulation may require a person to receive counselling before any information in terms of subsection (1)(a) and (b) is disclosed.

### **Effect of surrogate motherhood agreement on status of child**

**53A.** (1) The effect of a valid surrogate motherhood agreement will be that –

- (a) a child or children born of a surrogate mother in accordance with the agreement is or are for all purposes the child or children of the commissioning parent or parents from the moment of the birth of the child concerned;
- (b) the surrogate mother will be obliged to hand the child over to the commissioning parent or parents as soon as is reasonably possible after the birth;
- (c) the surrogate mother or her husband, partner or relatives will have no rights of parenthood or custody of the child;
- (d) the surrogate mother or her husband, partner or relatives will have no right of access to the child unless provided for in the agreement between the parties;
- (e) subject to section 53B of this Act and the provisions of the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act No. 92 of 1996), no surrogate mother may terminate the agreement and end the pregnancy after the artificial fertilization of the surrogate mother has taken place;
- (f) the child will have no claim for maintenance or of succession against the surrogate mother, her husband or partner or any of their relatives.

(2) Failure to comply with the requirements of the Surrogacy Act, 2002 (Act No.xx of 2002) or the surrogate motherhood agreement will not affect the determination of parenthood under this Act.

### **Termination of surrogate motherhood agreement**

**53B.** (1) A surrogate mother who is also a genetic parent of the child concerned, may, at any time prior to the lapse of a period of sixty days after the birth of the child, terminate the surrogate motherhood agreement by filing written notice with the court.

(2) The court will terminate the order entered pursuant to section xy of the Surrogacy Act, 2002 (Act No. xx of 2002)<sup>1</sup> upon finding, after notice to the parties to the agreement and a hearing, that the surrogate mother has voluntarily terminated the agreement and that she understands the effects of the termination, and the court may issue any other appropriate order if it is in the best interests of the child.

(3) The surrogate mother will incur no liability to the commissioning parents for exercising her rights of termination pursuant to this section, except for compensation for any payments made by the commissioning parents in terms of the Surrogacy Act, 2002 (Act No. xx of 2002).

### **Effect of termination of surrogate motherhood agreement**

**53C.** The effect of the termination of a surrogate motherhood agreement in terms of section 53B of this Act will be that –

- (a) where the agreement is terminated after the child is born any parental rights established in terms of section 1 above will be terminated and will be vested in the surrogate mother and her husband or life-long partner, if any.
- (b) where the agreement is terminated before the child is born, the child is the child of the surrogate mother and her husband or life-long partner, if any, from the moment of the child's birth;
- (c) the surrogate mother and her husband or life-long partner, if any, shall be obliged to accept the obligation of parenthood;
- (d) subject to subsections (1) and (2) above, the commissioning parents will have no rights of parenthood and can only obtain such rights through adoption;
- (e) subject to subsections (1) and (2) above, the child shall have no claim for maintenance or of succession against the commissioning parents or any of their relatives.

---

<sup>1</sup> Such provision to provide that the surrogate motherhood agreement must be in writing and confirmed by the court.

**CHAPTER 6****CHILD AND FAMILY COURTS*****Part 1: Establishment, status and jurisdiction*****Establishment**

**54.** (1) A child and family court is hereby established for –

- (a) each magisterial district determined in terms of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act No. 32 of 1944); and
- (b) each magisterial region determined in terms of that Act.

(2) Child and family courts function under the administrative control of the chief magistrate of the district or the court president of the region.

**Status**

**55.** A child and family court is a court of record with a similar status to that of a magistrate's court.

**Seat of court**

**56.** (1) A child and family court sits –

- (a) at a place within its area designated by the Minister of Justice; and
- (b) in a room which –
  - (i) is located and designed in a manner aimed at putting children at ease;
  - (ii) is conducive to the informality of the proceedings and the active participation of all persons involved in the proceedings; and
  - (iii) may not be a room in which a court of another kind ordinarily sits.

(2) Subsection (1) (b) does not apply if no other room than a court room is available and suitable.



### **Jurisdiction**

**57.** (1) A child and family court has jurisdiction in respect of –

- (a) all matters mentioned in section **58**; and
- (b) all matters in which application is made for an order mentioned in section **59**.

(2) The child and family court that has jurisdiction in a particular matter is –

- (a) the court of the area in which the child involved in the matter is ordinarily resident or happens to be; or
- (b) if more than one child is involved in the matter, the court of the area in which any of those children is ordinarily resident or happens to be.

(3) If there is uncertainty with regard to which court has jurisdiction in a particular matter, the child and family court of the area where the child happens to be at the time of the first referral of the matter to the court has jurisdiction in that matter.

### **Matters court may adjudicate**

**58.** (1) A child and family court may adjudicate any matter involving –

- (a) the care or guardianship of, or contact with, a child;
- (b) the assignment, exercise, restriction, suspension or termination of parental responsibilities or rights;
- (d) paternity of a child;
- (e) artificial procreation of a child, excluding a dispute between contracting parties regarding compensation;
- (f) maintenance and support of a child;
- (g) the provision of –
  - (i) early childhood development services; or
  - (ii) prevention or early intervention services;

- (h) a child in need of care and protection or in especially difficult circumstances;
- (i) maltreatment, abuse, neglect, degradation or exploitation of a child;
- (k) domestic violence affecting a child;
- (l) the protection of a child;
- (m) the temporary safe care of a child;
- (n) alternative care of a child;
- (o) the adoption of a child, including an inter-country adoption;
- (p) the appointment of a parent-substitute;
- (q) the departure, removal or abduction of a child from the Republic;
- (r) a social security grant to or in respect of a child;
- (s) a child and youth care centre, a partial care facility or a shelter or drop-in centre, or any other facility purporting to be a care facility for children;
- (t) the age of majority or the contractual or legal capacity of a child;
- (u) the safeguarding of a child's interest in property;
- (v) any other matter relating to the care, protection or well-being of a child provided for in this Act;  
or
- (w) a delictual claim arising from a matter referred to above.

(2) A child and family court –

- (a) may try or convict a person for non-compliance with an order of a child and family court or contempt of such a court;
- (b) may not try or convict a person in respect of a criminal charge other than in terms of paragraph (a); and
- (c) is bound by the law as applicable to magistrates' courts when exercising criminal jurisdiction in terms of paragraph (a).

**Orders court may make**

- 59.** (1) A child and family court may make the following orders:
- (a) An alternative care order, which includes an order placing a child –
    - (i) in the care of a person designated by the court to be the foster parent of the child;
    - (ii) in the care of a relative designated by the court to be the kinship care-giver of the child;
    - (iii) in the care of a child and youth care centre; or
    - (iv) in temporary safe care;
  - (b) An order placing a child in a child-headed household in the care of the child heading the household under the supervision of an adult person designated by the court;
  - (c) An adoption order which includes an inter-country adoption order;
  - (d) A partial care order instructing the parent or care-giver of the child to make arrangements with a partial care facility to take care of the child during specific hours of the day or night or for a specific period;
  - (e) A shared care order instructing different care-givers or centres to take responsibility for the care of the child at different times or periods;
  - (f) A supervision order, placing a child, or the parent or care-giver of a child, or both the child and the parent or care-giver, under the supervision of a social worker or other person designated by the court;
  - (g) An order subjecting a child, a parent or care-giver of a child, or any person holding parental responsibilities and rights in respect of a child, to –
    - (i) early intervention services;
    - (ii) a family preservation programme; or
    - (iii) both early intervention services and a family preservation programme;
  - (h) A child protection order, which includes an order –
    - (i) that a child remains in, be released from, or returned to the care of a person, subject to conditions imposed by the court;
    - (ii) giving consent to medical treatment of, or to an operation to be performed on, a child;
    - (iii) instructing a parent or care-giver of a child to undergo professional counselling, or to

participate in mediation, a family group conference, or other appropriate problem-solving forum;

- (iv) instructing a child or other person involved in the matter concerning the child to participate in a professional assessment;
- (v) instructing a hospital to retain a child who on reasonable grounds is suspected of having been subjected to abuse or deliberate neglect, pending further inquiry;
- (vi) instructing a person to undergo a specified skills development, treatment or rehabilitation programme where this is necessary for the protection or well-being of a child;
- (vii) instructing a person who has failed to fulfil an obligation towards a child to appear before the court and to give reasons for the failure;
- (viii) instructing an organ of state to assist a child in obtaining access to a public service to which the child is entitled, failing which, to appear through its representative before the court and to give reasons for the failure;
- (ix) instructing that a person be removed from a child's home;
- (x) limiting access of a person to a child or prohibiting a person from contacting a child;
- (xi) allowing a person to contact a child on the conditions as specified in the court order;
- (xii) directing that a person's name be listed in or removed from –
  - (aa) the National Child Protection Register; or
  - (bb) any other record concerning child abusers; or
- (xiii) instructing the return of a child to South Africa from abroad;
- (i) A parental responsibilities and rights order, which includes an order –
  - (i) assigning some or all parental responsibilities or rights in respect of a child to any person;
  - (ii) extending any parental responsibilities or rights which any person has in respect of a child;
  - (iii) suspending or restricting a person's capacity to exercise any parental responsibilities

or rights in respect of a child;

- (iv) terminating a person's parental responsibilities or rights in respect of a child: Provided that a parent may not be deprived of the right to have contact with a child except when contact with the child is not in the child's best interest;
  - (v) restoring a person's parental responsibilities or rights in respect of a child; or
  - (vi) instructing a person to sign a parental responsibilities and rights undertaking in respect of a child.
- (j) A contribution order, or a maintenance order in terms of the Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act No. 99 of 1998);
  - (k) An order granting damages or compensation to or by a child arising from a matter referred to in section **58** (1) (v) or (w);
  - (l) An order instructing a person to carry out an investigation in terms of section **67**;
  - (m) Any other order which a child and family court may make in terms of any other provision of this Act.

(2) A child and family court may withdraw, suspend or amend an order made in terms of subsection (1), or replace such an order with a new order.

### **Competence of child and family district court**

**60.** A child and family district court is a court of first instance in –

- (a) any uncontested case concerning –
  - (i) a matter which a child and family court may adjudicate in terms of section **58**; or
  - (ii) an application for an order which a child and family court may make in terms of section **59**; or
- (b) any contested case concerning –
  - (i) a matter which a child and family court may adjudicate in terms of section **58** and which is referred to it by the child and family court registrar, but excluding a matter mentioned

in section **61** (2); or

- (ii) an application for an order which a child and family court may make in terms of section **59** and which is referred to it by the registrar, but excluding an application for an order that may be made in a matter mentioned in section **61** (2).

### **Competence of child and family regional court**

**61.** (1) A child and family regional court is –

- (a) a court of first instance in any contested case concerning –
  - (i) a matter mentioned in subsection (2);
  - (ii) any other matter which a child and family court may adjudicate in terms of section **58** and which is referred to that regional court by the child and family court registrar;
  - (iii) an application for an order that may be made in a matter mentioned in subsection (2);
  - (iv) any other application for an order a child and family court may make in terms of section **59** and which is referred to that regional court by the registrar; or
  - (v) any matter or issue referred to it by a child and family district court in terms of section **62**; and
- (b) a court of appeal or review in respect of all judgements and orders made by a child and family district court within its region.

(2) A child and family regional court is a court of first instance, to the exclusion of a child and family district court, in contested cases concerning the following matters, including orders that may be made in those matters:

- (a) a matter with an international dimension or implication, including –
  - (i) the adoption of a child by a foreigner;
  - (ii) the cross-border abduction of a child; or
  - (iii) child trafficking across national borders;
- (b) an issue involving sexual abuse of a child by a parent or care-giver;

- (c) a dispute arising from the artificial procreation of a child;
- (d) a contested paternity issue;
- (e) a dispute involving a parental responsibility or right in respect of a child or the restriction, suspension or termination of such responsibility or right;
- (f) a dispute involving the determination of the capacity of a child –
  - (i) to contract; or
  - (ii) to consent to a marriage; and
- (g) the safeguarding of a child's interest in property.

### **Referral of matters to child and family regional court**

**62.** (1) A child and family district court hearing a contested matter may stop its proceedings concerning that matter, or any specific issue in the matter, and refer the matter, or that issue, to the child and family regional court having jurisdiction in the area if it is of the opinion that the matter, or that issue, should be heard by the child and family regional court because of –

- (a) the complexity of the matter or that issue;
- (b) the implications of any order that may be made in the matter or that issue; or
- (c) any uncertainty about its jurisdiction in the matter or that issue.

(2) Before it refers a matter, or any issue in the matter, in terms of subsection (1) to the child and family regional court, a child and family district court may –

- (a) take any steps necessary to safeguard and protect a child from any impending harm; and
- (b) make an appropriate interim order.

(3) If a matter, or any issue in the matter, is referred in terms of subsection (1), the record of the proceedings in the child and family district court concerning the matter or that issue –

- (a) must be transferred to the child and family regional court; and
- (b) may be used by the regional court in its hearing of the case.

### **Referral of matters to other courts**

**63.** (1) A child and family regional court hearing a matter may stop its proceedings concerning that matter, or any specific issue in the matter, and refer the matter, or that issue, to the High Court if it is of the opinion that the matter, or that issue, should be heard by the High Court because of –

- (a) the complexity of the matter or that issue;
- (b) the implications of any order that may be made in the matter or that issue; or
- (c) any uncertainty about its jurisdiction in the matter or that issue.

(2) A child and family regional or district court hearing a matter may stop its proceedings concerning that matter, or any specific issue in the matter, and refer the matter, or that issue, to another child and family court or to a magistrate's court if it is of the opinion that –

- (a) the matter, or that issue, should be heard by that other court because of any uncertainty about its jurisdiction in the matter or that issue; or
- (b) justice would be served by such referral and that it would be in the best interest of the child to do so.

(3) Before it refers a matter, or any issue in the matter, in terms of subsection (1) or (2), the child and family court may –

- (a) take any steps necessary to safeguard and protect a child from imminent harm; and
- (b) make an appropriate interim order.

(4) If a matter, or any issue in the matter, is referred in terms of subsection (1) or (2), the record of the proceedings in the child and family court concerning the matter or that issue –

- (a) must be transferred to the High Court or that other court; and
- (b) may be used by the High Court or that other court in its hearing of the case.



### **Referral of matters by other courts to child and family court**

**64.** (1) A court, other than a child and family court, hearing a matter in which the interests of a child are directly affected, may stop or suspend its proceedings concerning that matter, or any specific issue in the matter, and order that the matter, or that issue, be referred to a child and family court for a decision if –

- (a) justice would be served by such referral; and
- (b) it would be in the best interest of the child to do so.

(2) An issue in a matter before a criminal court may not be referred to a child and family court in terms of subsection (1) without the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions.

### **General powers**

**65.** (1) A child and family court may –

- (a) make any order it is empowered to make in terms of this Act;
- (b) grant interdicts and auxiliary relief;
- (c) extend, withdraw, suspend, vary or review any of its orders;
- (d) impose or vary deadlines with respect to any of its orders;
- (e) make appropriate orders as to costs in matters before the court;
- (f) consult with a child or other party in chambers after recording the reasons for such consultation; or
- (g) have a person removed from the court and provide written reasons for the removal.

(2) A child and family court may for the purposes of this Act estimate the age of a person who appears to be a child in the prescribed manner.

### **Lay-forum hearings**

**66.** (1) A child and family court may, before it decides a matter or an issue in a matter, order

a lay forum hearing for an attempt to settle the matter or issue out of court, which may include –

- (a) mediation by a family advocate, a social worker or other professionally qualified person;
- (b) a family group conference contemplated in section 97; or
- (c) mediation by a traditional authority.

(2) Before ordering a lay forum hearing, the court must take into account all relevant factors, including –

- (a) the vulnerability of the child;
- (b) the ability of the child to participate in the proceedings;
- (c) the power relationships within the family; and
- (d) the nature of any allegations made by parties in the matter.

### **Inquiries and investigations**

**67.** (1) A child and family court may, subject to section 174(6), before it decides a matter, order a person –

- (a) to carry out an inquiry or further investigation that may assist the court in deciding the matter; and
- (b) to report to the court.

(2) An inquiry or further investigation must be carried out –

- (a) in accordance with any procedures prescribed by regulation; and
- (b) subject to any directions and conditions determined in the court order.

(3) The court order may authorise a designated social worker or person authorised to conduct the inquiry or further investigation to enter any premises mentioned in the court order, either alone or in the presence of a police officer, and on those premises –

- (a) remove a child in terms of sections **168** and **169**;
- (b) question any person;
- (c) record any information by any method; and
- (d) carry out any specific instruction of the court.

(4) The court may authorise a police officer accompanying the designated social worker or person authorised to conduct the inquiry or further investigation to, by force, if necessary –

- (a) conduct any search;
- (b) question any person;
- (c) demand the name, address and identification number of any person on or residing or suspected to be residing on those premises;
- (d) record any information by any method;
- (e) seize any item which, on reasonable suspicion, is involved in any offence which has been or is being committed in terms of this Act;
- (f) arrest any person, and
- (g) carry out any specific instruction of the court.

## **Appeals**

**68.** (1) Any party involved –

- (a) in a matter before a child and family district court may appeal against a decision of the court to the child and family regional court having jurisdiction in the area or to the High Court; or
- (b) in a matter before a child and family regional court may appeal against a decision of the court to the High Court.

(2) An appeal in terms of subsection (1) must be noted and prosecuted as if it were an appeal against a civil judgment of a magistrate's court, subject to section **58** (2) (c).

***Part 2: Composition*****Composition**

**69.** (1) A child and family court consists of –

- (a) a child and family magistrate; or
- (b) a panel composed of –
  - (i) a child and family magistrate; and
  - (ii) one or more assessors.

(2) A child and family court must sit as a panel if the child and family magistrate designated to hear a matter considers the engagement of an assessor or assessors with appropriate expertise for the case necessary or desirable –

- (a) in the best interest of the child involved in the matter;
- (b) given the circumstances of the matter or the nature of any issue in the matter or any issue that is likely to arise in the course of the hearing; or
- (c) to facilitate communication between the court and the child or any other party.

(3) In considering the engagement of an assessor or assessors, the child and family magistrate must take into account all relevant factors, including –

- (a) the cultural, social and linguistic environment from which the child originates or in which the child grew up;
- (b) the physical, mental and emotional development and the educational background of the child;
- (c) the cultural, social and linguistic background of a party in the matter;
- (d) the complexity of any issue in the matter or any issue that is likely to arise in the course of the hearing; and
- (e) the implications of any order that is sought or is likely to be made at the conclusion of the hearing.

(4) A child and family magistrate must record the reasons why an assessor or assessors

have not been engaged in a specific matter.

(5) Section 34 of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act No. 32 of 1944), and the rules issued in terms of this Act, apply to a person engaged as an assessor in terms of this Act.

### **Qualifications of child and family magistrates**

**70.** (1) Only the following persons may be child and family court magistrates:

- (a) a person appointed in terms of section 72 (1) as a child and family court magistrate; or
- (b) any existing magistrate assigned by the Minister of Justice to be a child and family court magistrate.

(2) A person referred to in subsection (1) (a) must have –

- (a) a qualification in law specified by regulation;
- (b) a sound knowledge of –
  - (i) child and family law;
  - (ii) child and family court procedures; and
  - (iii) the resources available for the social development of children;
- (c) a basic understanding of child development, psychology and family relationships; and
- (d) the linguistic skills and ability to communicate effectively with dysfunctional families and traumatised children.

### **Qualifications of assessors**

**71.** (1) A person may be engaged as an assessor in a matter only if –

- (a) that person is qualified in terms of section 70 to be a child and family magistrate; or
- (b) the name of that person appears on the list compiled in terms of section 72 (3).

(2) A person referred to in subsection (1) (b) must have –

- (a) the qualifications or experience in social work prescribed by regulation; or
- (b) the linguistic skills and ability to communicate effectively with dysfunctional families and traumatised children.

### **Appointment of child and family magistrates and assessors**

**72.** (1) The Minister of Justice must appoint, on the recommendation of the Magistrates' Commission, a sufficient number of persons complying with section 70 (2) as child and family magistrates.

(2) The Magistrates Act, 1993 (Act No. 90 of 1993), read with such changes as the context may require, applies with regard to the conditions of service, remuneration, vacation of office and discharge of a person appointed in terms of subsection (1).

(3) The Minister of Justice acting with the concurrence of the Minister must compile a list of persons that may be engaged as assessors in matters before the child and family courts.

(4) A person engaged as an assessor in a matter before a child and family court is entitled to the remuneration and allowances prescribed by regulation, if that person is not employed in a full-time capacity in the service of the state.

### **Oath of office**

**73.** (1) A person may be engaged as a child and family magistrate or an assessor only after that person has taken an oath or made an affirmation in the form prescribed by regulation.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to a magistrate in terms of the Magistrates Courts' Act, 1944 (Act No. 32 of 1944).

### **Training of child and family magistrates and assessors**

**74.** The Minister of Justice, acting on the advice of the Minister, may establish training courses for child and family magistrates and assessors.

## ***Part 3: Court proceedings***

### **Procedural rules**

**75.** (1) The Minister of Justice may, subject to subsections (2) and (3), by notice in the *Government Gazette* –

- (a) make rules to regulate the proceedings of child and family courts, including –
  - (i) the issuing and serving of summonses, subpoenas, notices and other process in connection with such proceedings; and
  - (ii) the execution of court orders;
- (b) amend or repeal rules made in terms of paragraph (a).

(2) The provisions of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944, (Act No. 32 of 1944) and the rules made in terms of that Act, read with such changes as the context may require, apply, subject to the other provisions of this Act, to a child and family court in so far as those provisions relate to –

- (a) the issue and service of process;
- (b) the appearance in court of advocates and attorneys;
- (c) the appointment and powers of assessors;
- (d) the execution of court orders;
- (e) contempt of court; and
- (f) penalties for –
  - (i) non-compliance with court orders;
  - (ii) obstruction of the execution of judgements; and
  - (iii) contempt of court.

(3) Rules made in terms of subsection (1) must be designed to avoid adversarial procedures and include rules concerning –

- (a) appropriate questioning techniques for –
  - (i) children in general;
  - (ii) children with intellectual or psychiatric difficulties or with hearing or other physical disabilities which complicate communication;
  - (iii) traumatised children; and
  - (iv) very young children; and
- (b) the use of specially qualified or trained interpreters.

### **Who may approach court**

**76.** Except where otherwise provided in this Act, any person, including a child, may bring a matter which falls within the jurisdiction of a child and family court, to a child and family court registrar for referral to a child and family court.

### **Legal representation**

**77.** (1) A person who is a party in a matter before a child and family court is entitled to appoint a legal representative of his or her own choice and at his or her own expense.

(2) If a person who is a party in a matter does not appoint a legal representative in terms of subsection (1) that person may apply to the appropriate authority to be represented by –

- (a) a family advocate; or
- (b) a child and family law practitioner whose name appears on the Family Law Roster and instructed by the Legal Aid Board in accordance with the Legal Aid Act, 1969 (Act No. 22 of 1969).

(3) The child and family court magistrate may assist an unrepresented party in the



proceedings before the court with the presentation of that party's case.

### **Legal representation of children**

**78.** (1) Notwithstanding the provisions of section 77, a child involved in a matter before a child and family court is entitled to legal representation.

(2) (a) A child may appoint a legal representative of own choice and at own expense to represent the child in such matter.

(b) If a legal representative appointed in terms of paragraph (a), does not serve the interests of the child in the matter or serves the interests of any other party in the matter, the court must terminate the appointment.

(3) If no legal representative is appointed in terms of subsection (2) (a), the court must inform the parent or care-giver of the child or a person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child, if present at the proceedings, and the child, if the child is capable of understanding, of the child's right to legal representation.

(4) If no legal representative is appointed in terms of subsection (2) (a) after the court has complied with subsection (3), or if the court has terminated the appointment of a legal representative in terms of subsection (2)(b), the court may, subject to subsection (5), order that legal representation be provided for the child at the expense of the state.

(5) The court must order that legal representation be provided for the child at the expense of the state if –

- (a) it is requested by the child;
- (b) it is recommended in a report by a social worker or an adoption social worker;
- (c) it appears or is alleged that the child has been abused or deliberately neglected;

- (d) any recommendation of a social worker who has investigated the circumstances of the child that the child be placed in alternative care, is contested by –
  - (i) the child;
  - (ii) a parent or care-giver of the child;
  - (iii) a person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child; or
  - (iv) a would-be adoptive parent, foster parent or kinship care-giver of the child;
- (e) two or more adults are applying in separate applications for the placement of the child with them;
- (f) any other party besides the child is or is to be legally represented at the hearing;
- (g) the court has terminated the appointment of a legal representative in terms of subsection (2)(b);
- (h) in any other situation where it appears that the child will benefit substantially from representation either in regard to the proceedings themselves or in regard to achieving the best possible outcome for the child; or
- (i) substantial injustice would otherwise result.

(6) The court must record its reasons if it declines to issue an order in terms of subsections (4) or (5).

- (7) A child who must be represented at state expense must be represented by –
- (a) a family advocate;
  - (b) a child and family law practitioner whose name appears on the Family Law Roster and who is instructed by the senior family advocate of the area; or
  - (c) the child and family court registrar, if it is an urgent matter which does not allow for the appointment of a person referred to in paragraph (a) or (b).

(8) If the court makes an order in terms of subsection (4), the child and family court

registrar must, subject to subsection (7)(c), request the senior family advocate of the area to instruct a family advocate or a legal practitioner on the Family Law Roster, to represent the child.

### **Attendance at proceedings**

- 79.** Proceedings of a child and family court are closed and may be attended only by –
- (a) a person performing official duties in connection with the work of the court or whose presence is otherwise necessary for the purpose of the proceedings;
  - (b) the child involved in the matter before the court and any other party in the matter;
  - (c) the person in whose control the child is;
  - (d) a person who has been instructed in terms of section **80** by the child and family court registrar to attend those proceedings;
  - (e) the legal representative of a person who is entitled to legal representation;
  - (f) a witness in the matter, while that witness appears before the court;
  - (g) a family member of the child who obtained the court's permission to be present, other than a family member who is present in terms of paragraph (b), (c) or (d);
  - (h) a person who obtained permission to be present from the registrar for purposes of training or research; and
  - (i) a designated social worker managing the case.

### **Compulsory attendance of persons involved in proceedings**

**80.** (1) The child and family court registrar may, by written notice, request a party in a matter before a child and family court, a family member of a child involved in the matter or a person who has another interest in the matter, to attend the proceedings of the child and family court.

(2) The person in whose control the child is must ensure that the child attends those proceedings except if the registrar or the court directs otherwise.

**Rights of persons to adduce evidence, question witnesses and produce argument**

**81.** The following persons have the right to adduce evidence in a matter before a child and family court, and, with the permission of the child and family magistrate, to question or cross-examine a witness or to address the court in argument:

- (a) a child involved in the matter;
- (b) a parent of the child;
- (c) a person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
- (d) a care-giver of the child;
- (e) a person whose rights may be affected by an order that may be made by the court in those proceedings; and
- (f) a person who the court decides has a sufficient interest in the matter.

**Witnesses**

**82.** (1) The clerk of a child and family court must summon a person to appear as a witness in a matter before the court to give evidence or to produce a book, document or other written instrument on request by –

- (a) the child and family magistrate presiding in the matter;
- (b) the child and family court registrar;
- (c) a person whose rights may be affected by an order that may be made by the court in those proceedings; or
- (d) the legal representative of a person mentioned in paragraph (c).

(2) A summons mentioned in subsection (1) must be served on the witness as if it were a summons to give evidence or to produce a book, document or other written instrument at a criminal trial in a magistrate's court.

(3) Sections 188 and 189 of the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act No. 51 of 1977), read

with such changes as the context may require, apply to a person who has been summoned in terms of subsection (1) or required by a child and family magistrate presiding to give evidence.

(4) A person summoned in terms of subsection (1) (a) or (b) and who complied with the summons, is entitled to an allowance from state funds equal to that determined for witnesses summoned to appear in criminal trials in a magistrate's court.

(5) A person summoned in terms of subsection (1) (c) or (d) is not entitled to an allowance from state funds except if the child and family magistrate presiding in the matter so orders.

### **Conduct of proceedings**

**83.** (1) The child and family magistrate presiding in a matter before a child and family court controls the conduct of the proceedings, and may –

- (a) call or allow any person present at the proceedings to give evidence or to produce a book, document or other written instrument;
- (b) elicit any information from or question that person;
- (c) allow an assessor or the child and family court registrar to question or cross-examine that person; or
- (d) to the extent necessary to resolve any factual dispute which is directly relevant in the matter, allow that person to be questioned or cross-examined by –
  - (i) the child involved in the matter;
  - (ii) the parent of the child;
  - (iii) a person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
  - (iv) a care-giver of the child;
  - (v) a person whose rights may be affected by an order that may be made by the court in those proceedings; or
  - (vi) the legal representative of a person who is entitled to a legal representative in those

proceedings.

(2) If a child is present at the proceedings, the court may order any person present in the room where the proceedings take place to leave the room if such order would be in the best interest of that child.

(3) Child and family court proceedings must be conducted in an informal manner and, as far as possible, in a relaxed and non-adversarial atmosphere which is conducive to attaining the co-operation of everyone involved in the proceedings.

### **Participation of children**

**84.** (1) The child and family magistrate presiding in a matter before a child and family court must –

- (a) allow a child involved in the matter to express a view and preference in the matter if the court finds that the child, given the child's age, maturity and stage of development, is able to participate meaningfully in the proceedings and the child chooses to do so;
- (b) record the reasons if the court finds that the child is unable to participate meaningfully in the proceedings or is unwilling to express a view or preference in the matter; and
- (c) stop the questioning or cross-examination of a child if the court finds that it is not in the best interests of the child.

(2) A child who is a party or a witness in a matter before a child and family court may be questioned through an intermediary as provided for in section **170A** of the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act No. 51 of 1977) if the court finds that this would be in the best interests of that child.

(3) The court –

- (a) may, at the outset or at any time during the proceedings, order that the matter, or any issue in

the matter, be disposed of separately and in the absence of the child, if it is in the best interest of the child; and

- (b) must record the reasons for any order in terms of paragraph (a).

### **Professional reports ordered by court**

**85.** (1) A child and family court may for the purposes of deciding a matter before it, or any issue in the matter, order, at state expense if necessary –

- (a) that a child or other person involved in the matter must be examined by a medical practitioner or assessed by a psychologist or other professional person; or
- (b) that an investigation must be carried out by a family advocate or a social worker to establish the circumstances of –
  - (i) the child;
  - (ii) the parents or a parent of the child;
  - (iii) a person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
  - (iv) a care-giver of the child;
  - (v) the person in whose control the child is; or
  - (vi) any other relevant person.

(2) A person who carried out an examination or investigation in terms of subsection (1) may be required by the court to present the findings of the examination or investigation to the court by –

- (a) testifying before the court; or
- (b) submitting a written report to the court subject to section 86 (2) and (3).

### **Evidence**

**86.** (1) A child and family court may, when appropriate and subject to this Act and the rules of the child and family court –

- (a) allow hearsay evidence provided such evidence is relevant;

- (b) allow evidence of previous similar conduct provided such evidence is relevant; and
- (c) dispense with any rule of evidence as applicable to proceedings in a court of law.

(2) A written report purported to be compiled and signed by a medical practitioner, psychologist, family advocate, social worker or other professional person, who on the face of the report formed an authoritative opinion in respect of a child, or the circumstances of a child, involved in a matter before a child and family court, or in respect of another person involved in the matter, or the circumstances of such other person, is on its mere production to the child and family court hearing the matter admissible as evidence of the facts stated in the report.

(3) If a person's rights are prejudiced by a report referred to in subsection (2) the court must –

- (a) disclose the contents of the report to that person if that person is present at the proceedings; and
- (b) give that person the opportunity –
  - (i) to question or cross-examine the author of the report in regard to a matter arising from the report; or
  - (ii) to refute any statement contained in the report.

### **Questions of law**

**87.** If at any stage of proceedings before a child and family regional court it appears to the court that any question of law relevant to the matter before it ought to be decided by the High Court or the Constitutional Court, it may –

- (a) either at the request of a party to the proceedings or on its own initiative, allow that party to apply, or request a family advocate to apply, within a period determined by the court, to the High Court or the Constitutional Court for leave to bring the question before the High Court or the Constitutional Court;



- (b) make any interim order it finds necessary; and
- (c) suspend the proceedings pending the decision of the High Court or the Constitutional Court.

### **Decisions**

- 88.** (1) All questions of fact in a matter before a child and family court are decided –
- (a) by the child and family magistrate presiding in the matter, if the child and family magistrate sits –
    - (i) without an assessor or assessors; or
    - (ii) with one assessor and there is a difference of opinion; or
  - (b) by the majority of the panel, if the child and family magistrate sits with two assessors.
- (2) (a) All questions of law in a matter before a child and family court, and all questions as to whether a question before the court is a question of fact or a question of law, are decided by the child and family magistrate presiding in the matter.
- (b) If the child and family magistrate sits with an assessor or assessors, the child and family magistrate may –
- (i) adjourn the hearing in respect of a question referred to in paragraph (a); and
  - (ii) sit alone for the hearing and decision of that question.
- (3) A child and family court must give and record reasons for its decisions and findings.

### **Adjournments**

- 89.** (1) The proceedings of a child and family court may be adjourned only –
- (a) on good cause shown, taking into account the best interest of the child;
  - (b) for a period of not more than 30 days at a time; and
- (2) A child and family magistrate may excuse any person from appearing at adjournment

proceedings.

### **Monitoring of court orders**

**90.** (1) A child and family court may monitor –

- (a) compliance with an order made by it in a matter; or
- (b) the circumstances of a child following an order made by it.

(2) To monitor compliance with an order made by a child and family court or the circumstances of a child following an order, the court –

- (a) when making that order, may order –
  - (i) any person involved in the matter to appear before it at any future date; or
  - (ii) that reports by a specified social worker be submitted to the court within a specified period or from time to time as specified in the order;
- (b) at any time after making an order or when a report of non-compliance mentioned in subsection (4) is referred to it, may call or recall any person involved in the matter to appear before it.

(3) When a person appears before the court in terms of subsection (2) the court may –

- (a) inquire whether the order has been or is being complied with, and if not, why the order has not been complied with or is not being complied with;
- (b) confirm, vary or withdraw the order; or
- (c) enforce compliance of the order, if necessary through a criminal prosecution in a magistrate's court or in terms of section 58 (2).

(4) Any person may report any alleged non-compliance with an order of a child and family court, or any alleged worsening of the circumstances of a child following a court order, to the child and family court registrar, who must deal with the matter in accordance with section 94.

### **Protection of court case records**

- 91.** No person has access to child and family court case records, except –
- (a) for the purpose of performing official duties in terms of this Act;
  - (b) in terms of an order of court if the court finds that such access would not compromise the best interest of the child;
  - (c) for the purpose of a review or appeal; or
  - (d) for the purpose of *bona fide* research or the reporting of cases in law reports, provided the provisions of section 102 are complied with.

### ***Part 4: Child and family court registrars***

#### **Appointment**

- 92.** (1) The Minister must in accordance with legislation governing the public service appoint –
- (a) a person as the child and family court registrar for –
    - (i) each region within which a child and family regional court has been established; and
    - (ii) each district within which a child and family district court has been established; and
  - (b) so many additional child and family court registrars and support staff as may be needed.
- (2) Additional child and family court registrars perform their functions in terms of this Act subject to the directions of the child and family court registrar appointed for the area.

#### **Qualifications**

- 93.** A child and family court registrar must have –
- (a) the qualifications specified by regulation;
  - (b) a sufficient understanding of the needs and stages of development of children;
  - (c) mediation skills; and
  - (d) a sufficient knowledge of legal measures, processes and resources available for the protection of children.

### **Screening of matters**

**94.** (1) A child and family court registrar must –

- (a) receive all matters brought to or referred to a child and family court;
- (b) determine in respect of each matter whether it –
  - (i) may be brought before a child and family court;
  - (ii) requires a pre-hearing conference or further investigation before it is brought before a child and family court;
  - (iii) should not first be referred to a lay forum for an attempt to settle the matter out of court, which may include –
    - (aa) mediation by a family advocate, a social worker or other professionally qualified person;
    - (bb) a family group conference as provided for in section 97; or
    - (cc) mediation by a tribal authority; or
  - (iv) should not first be referred to a child and family court magistrate in chambers.

(2) If the registrar determines that a matter requires further investigation before it is brought before a child and family court, the registrar must –

- (a) designate a person to carry out the investigation; and
- (b) determine the issue to be investigated.

(3) Before determining that a matter should be referred to a lay forum, the registrar must take into account all relevant factors, including –

- (a) the vulnerability of the child;
- (b) the ability of the child to participate in the lay forum proceedings;
- (c) the power relationships within the family; and
- (d) the nature of any allegations made by parties in the matter.

- (3) The court hearing the matter may –
  - (a) adjourn the matter for a period not exceeding 14 days at a time; and
  - (b) order that the child, pending decision of the matter, must –
    - (i) remain in temporary safe care at the place where the child is kept;
    - (ii) be transferred to another place in temporary safe care;
    - (iii) remain with the person under whose control the child is;
    - (iv) be put under the control of a family member or other relative of the child; or
    - (v) be placed in temporary safe care.
  
- (4) If the court finds that the child is in need of care and protection, the court may make an appropriate order in terms of section **175**, taking into account section **164**.
  
- (5) If the court finds that the child is not in need of care and protection, the court must –
  - (a) make an order that the child, if the child is in temporary safe care, be returned to the person in whose control the child was before the child was put in temporary safe care; or
  - (b) decline to make an order, if the child is not in temporary safe care.
  
- (6) When deciding the question of whether a child is a child in need of care and protection in terms of subsection (1), the court must have regard to a report of a social worker which report must be in the prescribed format.

### **Orders when child is found to be in need of care and protection**

- 175.** (1) If a child and family court finds that a child is in need of care and protection, the court may make any order which is in the best interest of the child, which may be or include an order –
- (a) referred to in section **59**;
  - (b) confirming that the person under whose control the child is may retain control of the child, if

- the court finds that that person is a suitable person to provide for the safety and well-being of the child;
- (c) that the child be returned to the person under whose control the child was before the child was placed in temporary safe care, if the court finds that that person is a suitable person to provide for the safety and well-being of the child;
  - (d) that the person under whose control the child was make arrangements for the child to be taken care of in a partial care facility, if the court finds that the child became in need of care and protection because the person under whose control the child was lacked the time to care for the child;
  - (e) that an emergency court grant be paid to the child to provide for the basic needs of the child until the person under whose control the child is becomes able to provide for those basic needs, if the court finds that the child became in need of care and protection because the person under whose control the child was and the person who is legally obliged to maintain the child lacked the means to care for the child;
  - (f) if the child has no parent or care-giver or has a parent or care-giver but that person is unable or unsuitable to care for the child, that the child be placed in –
    - (i) court-ordered kinship care, if the child has a relative who is able, suitable and willing to be entrusted with the care of the child;
    - (ii) foster care with a suitable foster parent;
    - (iii) foster care with a group of persons or an organisation operating a collective foster care scheme;
    - (iv) temporary safe care, pending an application for the adoption of the child;
    - (v) shared care where different care-givers or centres alternate in taking responsibility for the care of the child at different times or periods; or
    - (vi) a child and youth care centre designated in terms of section 177 which provides a residential care programme suited to the child's needs;
  - (g) if the child lives in a child-headed household, that the child must remain in that household

subject to section **234**;

- (h) that the child be placed in a facility designated by the court which is managed by an organ of state, or registered, recognised or monitored in terms of legislation, for the care and education of children with disabilities or chronic illnesses, if the court finds that –
  - (i) the child has a physical or mental disability or chronic illness; and
  - (ii) it is in the best interest of the child to be cared for in such facility;
- (i) that the child be sent to a child and youth care centre designated in terms of section **177** which provides a secure care programme suited to the needs of the child, if the court finds –
  - (i) that the parent or care-giver cannot control the child; or
  - (ii) that the child displays criminal behaviour;
- (j) that the child receive appropriate treatment or attendance, if needs be at state expense, if the court finds that the child is in need of medical, psychological or other treatment or attendance;
- (k) that the child be admitted as an inpatient or outpatient to an appropriate facility, if the court finds that the child is in need of treatment for addiction to a dependence-producing substance; or
- (l) interdicting a person from maltreating, abusing, neglecting or degrading the child, or from having any contact with the child, if the court finds that –
  - (i) the child has been or is being maltreated, abused, neglected or degraded by that person;
  - (ii) the relationship between the child and that person is detrimental to the well-being or safety of the child; or
  - (iii) the child is exposed to a substantial risk of imminent harm.

(2) The court which makes an order may order that the child concerned be kept in temporary safe care until such time as effect can be given to the court's order.

- (3) An order made by the court in terms of subsection (1) –
  - (a) is subject to such conditions as the court may determine which, in the case of the placement

of a child in terms of subsection (1) (f) (i), (ii) or (iii), may include a condition –

- (i) rendering the placement of the child subject to supervision by a social worker or other person designated by the court; or
  - (ii) requiring the person in whose care the child has been placed, to co-operate with the supervising social worker or other person or to comply with any requirement laid down by the court, failing which the court may reconsider the placement; and
- (b) may be reconsidered by a child and family court at any time, and be confirmed, withdrawn or amended as may be appropriate.
- (4) If a court finds that a child is not in need of care and protection the court may nevertheless issue an order referred to in subsection (1) in respect of the child, excluding a placement order.

#### **Court orders to be aimed at securing stability in the child's life**

**176.** (1) Before a child and family court gives an order in terms of section **175** for the removal of the child from the care of the child's parent or care-giver, the court must –

- (a) obtain and consider a report by a social worker on the conditions of the child's life, which must include –
  - (i) an assessment of the developmental, therapeutic and other needs of the child;
  - (ii) details of family preservation services that have been considered or attempted; and
  - (iii) a documented permanency plan taking into account the child's age and developmental needs aimed at achieving stability in the child's life and containing the particulars prescribed by regulation; and
- (b) consider the best way of securing stability in the child's life, including whether such stability could be secured by –
  - (i) leaving the child in the care of the parent or care-giver under the supervision of a social worker, provided that the child's safety and well-being must receive first priority;
  - (ii) placing the child in alternative care for a short period to allow for the reunification of



the child and the parent or care-giver with the assistance of a social worker;

- (iii) placing the child in alternative care with or without terminating parental responsibilities and rights of the parent or care-giver;
- (iv) making the child available for adoption; or
- (v) issuing instructions as to the evaluation of progress made with the implementation of the permanency plan at specified intervals.

(2) A very young child who has been abandoned by its parent(s) must be made available for adoption with the minimum possible delay except when this is not in the best interest of the child.

(3) When issuing an order involving the removal of the child from the care of the child's parent or care-giver, the court may include in the court order instructions as to the implementation of the permanency plan for the child.

### **Placement of children in child and youth care centres**

**177.** (1) A child and family court may issue an order placing a child in the care of a child and youth care centre only if another option is not appropriate.

(2) If a child and family court decides that a child should be placed in the care of a child and youth care centre, the court must –

- (a) determine the residential care programme or programmes best suited for the child; and
- (b) order that the child be placed in a child and youth care centre offering that particular residential care programme or programmes.

(3) The MEC for social development in the relevant province must place the child in a child and youth care centre offering the residential care programme or programmes which the court has determined for the child, taking into account –

- (a) the developmental, therapeutic, educational and other needs of the child;
- (b) the permanency plan for the child which was considered by the court, and any instructions issued by the court with regard to the implementation of the permanency plan;
- (c) any other instructions of the court;
- (d) the distance of the centre from the child's family or community;
- (e) the safety of the community and other children in the centre, in the case of a child in need of secure care; and
- (f) any other relevant factors.

(4) The MEC must, as a general rule, select a centre offering the programme ordered by the court which is located as close as possible to the child's family or community.

#### **Duration and extension of orders**

**178.** (1) An order made by a child and family court in terms of section **175** –

- (a) lapses on expiry of –
  - (i) two years from the date the order was made; or
  - (ii) such shorter period for which the order was made; and
- (b) may be extended –
  - (i) by a child and family court for a period of not more than two years at a time; or
  - (ii) in terms of section **179**, in the case of supervised or alternative care.

(2) Subject to section **196**, no court order referred to in subsection (1) extends beyond the date on which the child in respect of whom it was made reaches the age of 18 years.

#### **Extension of placement orders by MEC for social development**

**179.** (1) An order of a child and family court placing a child under supervised or alternative care may be extended by the MEC for social development following a process prescribed by regulation.

- (2) Such a process must provide for –
  - (a) consultation with –
    - (i) the child;
    - (ii) the parent and any other person who has parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
    - (iii) where appropriate, the management of the centre where the child is placed; and
    - (iv) any alternative care-giver of that child.
  - (b) written reasons to be given to the child, the parent, such other person, the management of the centre, and alternative care-giver for any decision by the MEC for social development to extend or not to extend the order; and
  - (c) an appeal against such decision to a child and family court by –
    - (i) by the child, the parent, such other person, the management of the centre or alternative care-giver; or
    - (ii) any social worker who has an interest in the matter.

### **Regulations**

**180.** The Minister may make regulations in terms of section 354 prescribing –

- (a) the particulars which permanency plans must contain;
- (b) the manner in, and time-intervals at which, permanency plans must be evaluated; and
- (c) procedures for determining whether a child has been abandoned; and
- (d) any other matter that may be necessary to facilitate the implementation of this Chapter.

## **CHAPTER 12**

### **CONTRIBUTION ORDERS**

#### **Issue of contribution orders**

**181.** (1) A child and family court may make an order instructing a respondent to pay a sum of money or a recurrent sum of money –

(a) as a contribution towards the maintenance or treatment of, or the costs resulting from the other special needs of a child –

(i) placed in alternative care; or

(ii) temporarily removed by order of the court from the child's family for treatment, rehabilitation, counselling or another reason; or

(b) as a short-term emergency contribution towards the maintenance or treatment of, or the costs resulting from the other special needs of a child in urgent need.

(2) A contribution order takes effect from the date on which it is made unless the court orders that it takes effect from an earlier or later date.

(3) A child and family court may vary, suspend or rescind a contribution order or revive the order after it has been rescinded.

(4) If a court other than the court which made a contribution order varies, suspends, rescinds or revives the order in terms of subsection (3), the registrar of the first-mentioned court must immediately inform the clerk of the last mentioned court of such variation, suspension, rescission or revival.

### **Jurisdiction**

**182.** (1) A contribution order may be made, varied, suspended, rescinded or revived by the child and family court of the area in which –

(a) the respondent is ordinarily resident, carries on business or is employed; or

(b) the child involved in the matter is ordinarily resident or happens to be.

(2) A provisional contribution order may be made by a child and family court having jurisdiction in terms of subsection (1) (b) against a respondent resident in any country which is a “proclaimed country” within the meaning of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act No. 80 of 1963), or a “designated country” within the meaning of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders (Countries in Africa) Act, 1989 (Act No. 6 of 1989).

### **Effect of contribution orders**

**183.** (1) A contribution order and a provisional contribution order have the effect of a maintenance order and a provisional maintenance order in terms of the Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act No. 99 of 1998), and the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act No. 80 of 1963), as may be appropriate.

(2) Sections 31 and 40 of the Maintenance Act, 1998, read with such changes as the context may require, apply to a person who refuses or fails to comply with a contribution order.

### **Payments to be made to person determined by court**

**184.** A contribution order must instruct the respondent to pay the sum stated therein to the clerk of the child and family court or to such other person as the court may determine.

### **Attachment of wages of respondents**

**185.** (1) A child and family court which has made a contribution order against a respondent may

—

(a) order the employer of the respondent —

- (i) to deduct the amount of the contribution which that respondent has been ordered to pay, from the respondent’s wages, salary or remuneration; and
- (ii) to pay that amount to the clerk of the court or to any other person specified in the order; or

- (b) vary, suspend or rescind such an order or revive the order after it has been rescinded.

(2) The employer must promptly pay any amount deducted under an order in terms of subsection (1) to the clerk of the child and family court or to such other person as is specified in the order.

### **Change of residence or work by respondent**

**186.** (1) A respondent against whom a contribution order is in force must –

- (a) give notice, in writing, to the clerk of the child and family court which made the order of any change in that person's residential address or place of work; and
- (b) state in that notice the new residential address or the name and address of the new employer.

## **CHAPTER 13**

### **CHILDREN IN ALTERNATIVE CARE**

#### **Definitional provision**

**187.** A child is in alternative care if the child has been placed –

- (a) in foster care;
- (b) in court-ordered kinship care;
- (c) in the care of a child and youth care centre following an order of a court in terms of this Act or the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act No. 51 of 1977); or
- (d) in temporary safe care.

#### **Free and subsidised state services**

**188.** A child in alternative care is entitled to –

- (a) free basic education in state schools;

- (b) subsidised school uniforms, shoes and stationary;
- (c) free basic health care;
- (d) subsidised public transport; and
- (e) exemption from payment of any fees when applying for official documents from any organ of state.

### **Leave of absence**

**189.** (1) Leave of absence may, subject to such limitations and conditions as may be prescribed by regulation, be granted to a child in alternative care –

- (a) by the management of a child and youth care centre in whose care the child has been placed;
- (b) by the person in whose care the child has been placed, but if the child has been placed in the care of such a person under the supervision of a social worker, leave of absence may be granted by that person only with the approval of the social worker; and
- (c) by the head of social development in the relevant province, in the case of a child in temporary safe care.

(2) (a) The management, person referred to in subsection (1), social worker or the head of social development in the province –

- (i) may at any time cancel any leave of absence granted in terms of subsection (1); and
- (ii) must cancel such leave if the MEC for social development in the province so directs.

(b) In the case of foster care, the supervising social worker may at any time cancel any leave of absence granted in terms of subsection (1).

(c) When a child's leave of absence has been cancelled, the management, person referred to in subsection (1), social worker or the head of social development must request the child to return to the child and youth care centre or person, or to the place where the child is in temporary

safe care.

### **Children absconding from alternative care**

**190.** (1) Any police officer, social worker or authorised officer may without a warrant apprehend a child in alternative care who –

- (a) has absconded from the child and youth care centre or person in whose care or temporary safe care that child has been placed; or
- (b) has been granted leave of absence by the child and youth care centre or person in whose care or temporary safe care that child has been placed and who on cancellation or expiration of such leave of absence fails to return to that centre or person.

(2) A child so apprehended –

- (a) must without delay be brought before a child and family court magistrate; and
- (b) may, until brought before a child and family court magistrate, be kept in temporary safe care.

(3) When the child is brought before a child and family court magistrate, the magistrate must –

- (a) order that the child be put in the temporary safe care of a child and youth care centre or appropriate facility or person determined by the magistrate and kept there until the proceedings in terms of this section are completed and any order made or action taken in terms of this section is given effect to;
- (b) inquire into the reasons why the child absconded from, or failed to return to, the relevant child and youth care centre or person, and may for this purpose question the child; and
- (c) order that the child –
  - (i) be returned to that centre or person;
  - (ii) may not be returned to that centre or person pending any action by the MEC for social development in the relevant province in terms of subsection (5), if the magistrate is of



opinion that there are good reasons why the child should not be returned to that centre or person; or

(iii) be placed in another form of alternative care.

(4) The child and family court magistrate must –

- (a) report to the MEC for social development in the relevant province the result of an inquiry in terms of subsection (3); and
- (b) notify the MEC of any order made in terms of subsection (3) (c).

(5) When an order has been made in terms of subsection (3) (c) (ii) the MEC may, after consideration of the report of the child and family court magistrate and such inquiry as the MEC may consider necessary –

- (a) deal with the child in terms of section **191, 193 or 195**; or
- (b) order that the child be returned to the child and youth care centre or person in whose care or temporary safe care that child has been placed.

### **Transfer of children in alternative care**

**191.** (1) The MEC for social development in the relevant province may, subject to subsection (4), by order in writing transfer a child in alternative care from the child and youth care centre or person in whose care or temporary safe care that child has been placed to any other child and youth care centre or person. The MEC may not transfer a child to a child and youth care centre in another province without the permission of the MEC for social development in that other province.

(2) An order issued by the MEC in terms of subsection (1) must be regarded as having varied the court order in terms of which the child was placed in alternative care.

(3) (a) If the MEC transfers a child in terms of subsection (1) to the care of the child's parent, guardian or former care-giver under the supervision of a social worker, the order must specify

the requirements with which the child and that parent, guardian or former care-giver must comply.

(b) If any requirement referred to in paragraph(a) is breached or not complied with, the social worker concerned may bring the child before a child and family court, which may, after an inquiry, vary the order issued by the MEC or make a new order in terms of section 175.

(4) Before the MEC issues an order in terms of subsection (1), a social worker designated by the MEC must consult –

- (a) the child;
- (b) the parent or primary care-giver of the child, if available;
- (c) the child and youth care centre or person in whose care or temporary safe care that child has been placed; and
- (d) the child and youth care centre or person to whom the child is to be transferred.

(5) If the MEC transfers a child from a secure care child and youth care centre to a less restrictive child and youth care centre or to the care of a person, the MEC must be satisfied that the transfer will not be prejudicial to other children,

(6) No order in terms of subsection (1) may be carried out without ratification by a child and family court if the child is transferred –

- (a) from the care of a person to a child and youth care centre; or
- (b) from the care of a child and youth care centre to a secure care or more restrictive child and youth care centre.

### **Change in residential care programmes**

**192.** (1) The MEC for social development in the relevant province may, subject to subsection

(3), determine that –

- (a) a child in a child and youth care centre be released from a residential care programme;
- (b) another residential care programme be applied to such a child; or
- (c) an additional residential care programme be applied to such a child.

(2) To give effect to subsection (1), the MEC may transfer the child to another child and youth care centre or to a person in terms of section **191**.

(3) No determination in terms of subsection (1) may be carried out without ratification by a child and family court if that determination requires the application to the child of a residential care programme –

- (a) which includes the secure care of the child; or
- (b) which is more restrictive than the child's current programme.

#### **Removal of children who are already in alternative care**

**193.** (1) A child and family magistrate or the MEC for social development in the relevant province may, in the best interest of a child, at any time whilst the child is in alternative care issue a notice directing that the child, pending any action in terms of subsection (3) –

- (a) be removed from the child and youth care centre or person in whose care or temporary safe care the child is; and
- (b) be put in temporary safe care at a place specified in the notice.

(2) The child and family court magistrate issuing a notice of removal in terms of subsection (1) must submit a report to the MEC for social development in the relevant province on the reasons for the notice.

(3) The MEC must, within six months from the date on which a child has been moved and

put in temporary safe care in terms of subsection (1), and after such inquiry as the MEC may consider necessary –

- (a) deal with the child in terms of section **191** or **195**; or
- (b) order that the child be returned to the child and youth care centre or person in whose care or temporary care the child was immediately before the subsection (1) notice was issued.

### **Provisional transfer from alternative care**

**194.** (1) The MEC for social development in the relevant province may, in the best interest of a child, at any time whilst the child is in alternative care issue a notice directing that the child be provisionally transferred from alternative care into another form of care that is not more restrictive, as from a date specified in the notice, for a trial period of not more than six months.

- (2) A notice of provisional transfer in terms of subsection (1) may be issued only after –
  - (a) procedures prescribed by regulation have been followed –
    - (i) to assess the best interest of the child; and
    - (ii) to reunify the child with the child’s family, if applicable; and
  - (b) a report on such assessment and reunification has been submitted to and considered by the MEC.

- (3) A notice of provisional transfer is subject to the condition that –
  - (a) the provisional transfer must be managed under the supervision of a social worker to establish and test the feasibility of -
    - (i) reunification of the child with the child’s family;
    - (ii) integration into an alternative family; or
    - (iii) a transfer to another child and youth care centre or any other form of placement;
  - (b) the MEC may at any time revoke the provisional transfer; and
  - (c) the MEC must revoke the transfer if the child and the social worker so requests.

(4) The MEC may at the end of, or at any time during, the trial period transfer the child from alternative care in terms of section **195**.

(5) The notice of provisional transfer shall be considered proof of eligibility for any form of state support which would have been payable if the transfer had been permanent.

#### **Permanent discharges from alternative care**

**195.** (1) The MEC for social development in the relevant province may, in the best interest of a child, at any time whilst the child is in alternative care, issue a notice directing that the child be discharged from alternative care as from a date specified in the notice.

- (2) A notice of discharge in terms of subsection (1) may be issued only after –
  - (a) procedures prescribed by regulation have been carried out –
    - (i) to assess the best interest of the child; and
    - (ii) to reunify the child with the child's family, if applicable; and
  - (b) a report on such assessment and reunification has been submitted to and considered by the MEC.

(3) A notice of discharge relieves the child and youth care centre or person in whose care or temporary safe care that child has been placed, from any further responsibilities in relation to the child.

#### **Discharges from alternative care after reaching age of 18 years**

**196.** (1) A child placed in alternative care, is entitled, after having reached the age of 18 years, to continue staying in that care until the end of the year in which that person reached the age of 18 years.

(2) An MEC for social development may on application by a person placed as a child in alternative care, allow that person to remain in that care until the end of the year in which that person reaches the age of 21 years if –

- (a) the current alternative care-giver is willing and able to care for that person; and
- (b) the continued stay in that care is necessary to enable that person to complete his or her education or training.

#### **Death of children in alternative care**

**197.** (1) If a child in alternative care dies, the management of the child and youth care centre or person in whose care the child has been placed must within 24 hours of the child's death report such death to the Children's Protector.

(2) The Children's Protector must in terms of section **325** investigate the circumstances of the child's death if there are allegations or indications that the child died because of abuse or neglect.

## **CHAPTER 14**

### **FOSTER CARE AND CARE BY RELATIVES**

#### **Definitional provision**

**198.** (1) A child is in foster care if the child has in terms of an order of a child and family court or in terms of section **194** or **195** been placed in the care of a person who is not the parent or guardian of the child, but foster care excludes the placement of a child –

- (a) in court-ordered kinship care;
- (b) in temporary safe care; or
- (c) in the care of a child and youth care centre.

(2) A child is in court-ordered kinship care if the child has in terms of an order of a child and family court been placed in the care of a relative who is not the parent or guardian of the child, but court-ordered kinship care excludes the placement of a child in the temporary safe care of a relative.

### ***Part 1: Foster care and court-ordered kinship care***

#### **Initial proceedings**

**199.** Before a child and family court places a child in foster care or kinship care, the court must comply with Part 2 of Chapter 11 to the extent that the provisions of that Part are applicable to the particular case.

#### **Prospective foster parents or kinship care-givers**

**200.** (1) A prospective foster parent or kinship care-giver must be –

- (a) a fit and proper person to be entrusted with the foster care or kinship care of the child;
- (b) willing and able to undertake, exercise and maintain the responsibilities of such care; and
- (c) properly assessed by a social worker for compliance with paragraphs (a) and (b).

(2) A person unsuitable to work with children is not a fit and proper person to be entrusted with the foster care or kinship care of a child.

#### **Determination of placement of children in foster care**

**201.** (1) Before a child and family court places a child in foster care in terms of section 175, the court must consider a report by a social worker about –

- (a) the cultural, religious and linguistic background of the child; and
- (b) the availability of a suitable person with a similar background to that of the child who is willing and able to provide foster care or kinship care to the child.

(2) A social worker must, in the case of a refugee or undocumented immigrant child, make inquiries with the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees or a service agency working in a relevant refugee community to identify suitable persons who are willing and able to provide foster care or kinship care to the child.

(3) A child may be placed in the foster care of a person from a different cultural, religious and linguistic background to that of the child, but only if –

- (a) there is an existing bond between that person and the child; or
- (b) a suitable and willing person with a similar background is not readily available to provide foster care or kinship care to the child.

#### **Number of children to be placed in foster or kinship care per household**

**202.** (1) Not more than six children may be placed in foster care or kinship care with a single person or two persons sharing a common household, except where –

- (a) the children are siblings or related; or
- (b) the court considers this for any other reason to be in the best interest of all the children.

(2) More than six children may be placed in foster care in terms of a collective foster care scheme which provides for the children to be grouped in houses accommodating not more than six children per house or such other number of children per house as the court may determine.

#### **Duration of kinship care orders and stable foster care placements**

**203.** (1) A child and family court may despite section 178(1)(a) and after having considered the need for creating stability in the child's life, issue a kinship care order for more than two years, or extend such an order for more than two years at a time, if –

- (a) the child has been abandoned by the biological parents;
- (b) the child's biological parents are deceased;



- (c) there is for any other reason no purpose in attempting reunification between the child and the child's biological parents; and
- (d) it is in the best interest of the child.

(2) A child and family court may despite section **178(1)(a)**, after a child has been in foster care for more than two years and after having considered the need for creating stability on the child's life, order that-

- (a) no further social worker supervision is required for that placement;
- (b) no further social worker reports are required in respect of that placement; and
- (c) the foster care placement subsists until the child turns 18 years, unless otherwise directed.

### **Reunification of child with biological parents**

**204.** (1) If a child and family court placing a child in foster care or kinship care is of the view that reunification between the child and the child's biological parents is possible and in the best interest of the child, the court must issue the placement order subject to conditions referred to in section **175 (3)** (a) which provide for a social worker to facilitate such reunification.

(2) If the child has not been reunited with the child's biological parents two months before the expiry of the initial court order or any extension of the order, the social worker appointed to facilitate the reunification must submit a report to the child and family court –

- (a) explaining why the child was not reunited with the biological parents; and
- (b) recommending any steps that may be taken to stabilise the child's life.

(3) The child and family court considering the report may –

- (a) order that the social worker must continue facilitating the reunification;
- (b) order the termination of the reunification services if there are no prospects of reunification;

- (c) terminate the services of the social worker with respect to the child;
- (d) terminate some or all of the parental responsibilities and rights of the biological parents; or
- (e) assign additional parental responsibilities and rights to the foster parent or kinship care-giver.

### **Responsibilities and rights of foster parents and kinship care-givers**

**205.** (1) The foster parent or kinship care-giver of a child has those parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child as set out in –

- (a) the order of the child and family court placing the child in the foster care or kinship care of that foster parent or kinship care-giver;
- (b) an order of the child and family court amending the initial order;
- (c) an order of court in terms of section **35**;
- (d) a parenting plan between the parent or guardian of the child and the foster parent or kinship care-giver in terms of Part **3** of Chapter **5**; or
- (e) any applicable provisions of this Act.

(2) An order of the child and family court may give parental rights and responsibilities to a foster parent or kinship care-giver in addition to those normally necessary for a foster parent or kinship care-giver if –

- (a) the child has been abandoned;
- (b) the child is an orphan; or
- (c) family reunification is not in the best interest of the child.

(3) A child and family court may in terms of section **90** monitor the suitability of the placement of a child in foster care or court-ordered kinship care.

### **Termination of foster care and court-ordered kinship care**

**206.** (1) Foster care and court-ordered kinship care may be terminated by a child and family court only if it is in the best interest of the child.

- (2) Before terminating the foster care or court-ordered kinship care of a child, the court must take into account all relevant factors, including –
- (a) the bond that exists between the child and the child’s biological parent, if the biological parent reclaims care of the child;
  - (b) the bond that developed between –
    - (i) the child and the foster parent or kinship care-giver; and
    - (ii) the child and the family of the foster parent or kinship care-giver; and
  - (c) the prospects of achieving permanency in the child’s life by –
    - (i) returning the child to the biological parent;
    - (ii) allowing the child to remain permanently in foster care with the foster parent or in court-ordered kinship care with the kinship care-giver;
    - (iii) placing the child in any other alternative care; or
    - (iv) adoption of the child.

## ***Part 2: Informal kinship care arrangements***

### **Responsibilities and rights of relatives in terms of informal kinship care arrangements**

- 207.** (1) A relative caring for a child in terms of an informal kinship care arrangement –
- (a) has the parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child –
    - (i) as provided for in section **44** and any other provisions of this Act; and
    - (ii) as a court may assign to that relative in terms of section **35**; and
  - (b) may on behalf of the child’s parent or guardian –
    - (i) consent to medical treatment of or an operation on the child in terms of section **135** (3);
 or
    - (ii) assist the child in terms of section **135** (2) (b) to consent to such operation;
  - (c) may on behalf of the child, apply to any organ of state for any grant or other aid in respect of

which the child may qualify, including a social security grant;

- (d) may guide and discipline the child;
- (e) may consent to the child going on journeys, including educational, cultural, sports and holiday excursions; and
- (f) may perform such other acts as may be prescribed by regulation.

(2) A relative caring for a child in terms of an informal kinship care arrangement may exercise the responsibilities and rights referred to in subsection (1) only to the extent that care of the child is not provided by the parent, guardian or other person to whom parental rights and responsibilities in respect of the child has been assigned.

(3) Consent or assistance in terms of subsection (1) (b) may only be given or provided with the written authority of the parent or guardian except if –

- (a) the child –
  - (i) has been abandoned by the parent or guardian; or
  - (ii) is an orphan; or
- (b) the whereabouts of the parent or guardian are unknown.

### **Termination of informal kinship care arrangements**

**208.** An informal kinship care arrangement may at any time be terminated by –

- (a) the parent or guardian of the child reclaiming his or her right to care for the child, except when a child and family court orders otherwise;
- (b) the relative caring for the child in terms of the arrangement; or
- (c) the child and family court on application by the child or any person with an interest in the care of the child.

### **Regulations**

**209.** The Minister may make regulations in terms of section **354** –

- (a) regulating the establishment, functioning and management of collective foster care schemes;
- (b) prescribing minimum norms and standards to which collective foster care schemes, and any foster care programmes provided in terms of such schemes, must comply;
- (c) prescribing any other matter that may be necessary to facilitate the implementation of this Chapter.

## **CHAPTER 15**

### **CHILD AND YOUTH CARE CENTRES**

#### **Definitional provision**

**210.** (1) A child and youth care centre is a facility for the provision of residential care to more than six children outside the child's family environment in accordance with a residential care programme or programmes suited for the children in the facility, but excludes –

- (a) a partial care facility;
- (b) a shelter or drop-in centre;
- (c) a boarding school;
- (d) a school hostel or other residential facility attached to a school; or
- (e) any other establishment which is maintained mainly for the tuition or training of children (other than an establishment which is maintained for children ordered by a court to receive tuition or training).

(2) A child and youth care centre must offer a therapeutic programme designed for the residential care of children outside the family environment, which may be or include a programme designed for –

- (a) the reception, care and bringing-up of children otherwise than in their family environment;
- (b) the reception, care and bringing-up of children on a shared basis with the parent or other person

- having parental responsibilities;
- (c) the reception and temporary safe care of children pending their placement;
- (d) the reception and temporary safe care of children to protect them from harm or neglect;
- (e) the reception and temporary safe care of children for the purpose of –
  - (i) observing and assessing those children;
  - (ii) providing counselling and other treatment to them; or
  - (iii) assisting them to reintegrate with their families and the community;
- (f) the reception and voluntary temporary safe care of children in terms of section **171**;
- (g) the reception and care of, and the provision of tuition or training to, children ordered by a court to receive tuition or training;
- (h) the reception and secure care of children awaiting trial or sentence;
- (i) the reception and secure care of children with behavioural and emotional difficulties, for the purpose of providing counselling, tuition and training to them;
- (j) the reception, secure care and training of children in terms of an order under –
  - (i) the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act No. 51 of 1977); or
  - (ii) section **175** (1) (i) or **191** of this Act; or
- (k) the reception and care of children for any other purpose that may be prescribed by regulation.

(3) A child and youth care centre may in addition to its residential care programme or programmes, offer the following services:

- (a) the provision of appropriate care, tuition and training to children with physical or mental disabilities or chronic illnesses, including HIV/AIDS;
- (b) the treatment of children for addiction to dependence producing substances; or
- (c) any other service that may be prescribed by regulation.

### **Strategies to ensure sufficient provision of child and youth care centres**

**211.** (1) The Minister must include in the national policy framework referred to in section **5** a

comprehensive national strategy aimed at ensuring the establishment of an appropriate spread of child and youth care centres throughout the Republic providing the required range of residential care programmes in the various regions.

- (2) The MEC or *municipality*<sup>1</sup> must –
  - (a) maintain a record of all available child and youth care centres in its area; and
  - (b) plan strategies for the establishment of an appropriate spread of child and youth care centres in its area providing the required range of residential care programmes.
- (3) The MEC or *municipality* must implement subsection (2) in accordance with, and subject to any limitations as may be determined in, the national policy framework referred to in section 5.

### ***Part 1: Establishment and registration of child and youth care centres***

#### **Establishment of child and youth care centres by organs of state**

**212.** (1) The Minister, an MEC for social development, a *municipality* acting within its own statutory functions may establish and operate child and youth care centres, provided that any such centre –

---

1 Note: “Child care facilities” appears in Part B of Schedule 4 of the Constitution, and as such forms part of the matters in respect of which the legislative competence of Parliament and the provincial legislatures is limited. In terms of section 156 (1) of the Constitution municipalities have executive authority in respect of and “the right to administer” these matters. The right to administer child care facilities would include the establishment and administration of a registration system as provided for in this chapter of the Bill. While section 156 (1) of the Constitution read with section 155 (7) allows Parliament to “regulate” the exercise by municipalities of their executive authority referred to in section 156 (1), municipalities cannot be excluded from establishing or administering such facilities.

Departmental practice and the Project Committee maintain that the administration of **residential care facilities** (e.g. children’s homes) should not be a municipal competency and would prefer that the establishment and administration of such centres be dealt with at provincial level. These aspects are covered fully in the report (Par. 18.5.2). To highlight the issue, the word ‘municipality’ is placed in italic font.

- (a) is managed and maintained in accordance with this Act; and
  - (b) complies with –
    - (i) the minimum norms and standards mentioned in section **227**; and
    - (ii) the structural, safety, health and other requirements of the municipality of the area in which the child and youth care centre is or is to be situated.
- (2) A child and youth care centre may be established by –
- (a) the Minister only with the concurrence of the Minister of Finance; and
  - (b) an MEC for social development only with the concurrence of the member of the Executive Council who is responsible for finance in the province.

**Existing government children’s homes, places of safety, secure care facilities, schools of industries and reform schools**

- 213.** (1) As from the date on which section **212** takes effect –
- (a) an existing state operated children’s home established or deemed to have been established in terms of the Child Care Act must be regarded as having been established in terms of section **212** as a child and youth care centre providing a residential care programme mentioned in section **210** (2) (a);
  - (b) an existing state operated place of safety established or deemed to have been established in terms of the Child Care Act must be regarded as having been established in terms of section **212** as a child and youth care centre providing residential care programmes mentioned in section **210** (2) (c) and (d);
  - (c) an existing state operated secure care facility established or deemed to have been established in terms of the Child Care Act must be regarded as having been established in terms of section **212** as a child and youth care centre providing a residential care programme mentioned in section **210** (2) (h);
  - (d) an existing school of industries established or deemed to have been established in terms of the



Union Education Act, 1917, must be regarded as having been established in terms of section **212** as a child and youth care centre providing a residential care programme mentioned in section **210** (2) (g);

- (e) an existing reform school established or deemed to have been established in terms of the Union Education Act, 1917, must be regarded as having been established in terms of section **212** as a child and youth care centre providing a residential care programme mentioned in section **210** (2) (j); and
- (f) the facilities mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (e) of this subsection continue to be administered by the organ of state which administered them immediately before that date, but the President, at any future date, may by proclamation assign the administration of the facilities mentioned in paragraphs (d) and (e) to the Minister.

(2) Until the administration of the facilities mentioned in subsection (1) (d) and (e) are assigned to the Minister, the Cabinet member responsible for education must in relation to those facilities and the children in those facilities perform the functions vested in an MEC for social development in terms of this Act.

### **Establishment of child and youth care centres by other persons**

**214.** (1) Any person or organisation may establish or operate a child and youth care centre provided that the centre –

- (a) is registered with the relevant provincial department of social development;
- (b) is managed and maintained in accordance with this Act and any conditions subject to which the centre is registered; and
- (c) complies with the minimum norms and standards mentioned in section **227**.

(2) Subsection (1) also applies to a child and youth care centre established in terms of section **212** if the operation and management of the centre have been contracted out to a private person.

### **Existing registered children's homes**

**215.** As from the date on which section **214** takes effect an existing privately operated children's home registered or deemed to be registered in terms of the Child Care Act, must be regarded as having been registered in terms of section **214** as a child and youth care centre providing a residential care programme mentioned in section **210** (2) (a).

### **Notices of enforcement**

**216.** (1) A provincial head of social development or a *municipality* may by way of a written notice of enforcement instruct –

- (a) a person or organisation operating an unregistered child and youth care centre –
  - (i) to stop operating that centre; or
  - (ii) to apply for registration in terms of section **217** within a period specified in the notice;
 or
- (b) a person or organisation operating a registered child and youth care centre otherwise than in accordance with the provisions of this Act or any conditions subject to which the registration was issued, to comply with those provisions or conditions.

(2) A person or organisation operating an unregistered child and youth care centre and who is instructed in terms of subsection (1) (a) (ii) to apply for registration within a specified period, may despite the provisions of section **214** be given permission by the provincial head of social development to continue operating the centre during that period and, if that person applies for registration, until that person's application has been finalised.

### **Application for registration or renewal of registration**

**217.** (1) An application for registration of a child and youth care centre referred to in section **214**, or for the renewal of such a registration, must –

- (a) be lodged with the MEC for social development in the relevant province in accordance with a procedure prescribed by regulation;<sup>2</sup>
- (b) contain the particulars prescribed by regulation; and
- (c) be accompanied by –
  - (i) a certified copy of the constitution or founding document of the child and youth care centre;
  - (ii) a certificate issued by the municipality in which the child and youth care centre is or is to be situated certifying that the premises in which the centre is or is to be accommodated complies with all structural, safety, health and other requirements of the municipality;
  - (iii) any documents that may be prescribed by regulation; and
  - (iv) such fee as may be prescribed by regulation.

(2) An applicant must provide such additional information relevant to the application as the MEC for social development may determine.

(3) An application for the renewal of registration must be made at least 90 days before the registration is due to expire, but the MEC for social development may allow a late application on good cause shown.

### **Consideration of applications**

**218.** (1) The MEC for social development must –

- (a) consider an application for registration or for the renewal of a registration, and either refuse the application or, having regard to subsection (2), grant the registration or renewal with or without conditions; and

---

<sup>2</sup> The vesting of the registration system in the provincial Departments for social development goes beyond the mere regulation of municipal executive power and falls within the constitutional constraint on Parliament set out in section 151(4) of the Constitution. See note 2 above.

- (b) issue to the applicant a certificate of registration or renewal of registration on a form prescribed by regulation if the application is granted.

(2) When deciding an application, the MEC for social development must take into account all relevant factors, including whether –

- (a) the child and youth care centre complies with –
  - (i) the minimum norms and standards mentioned in section 227; and
  - (ii) the structural, safety, health and other requirements of the municipality in which the child and youth care centre is or is to be situated;
- (b) the applicant is a fit and proper person to operate a child and youth care centre;
- (c) the applicant has the necessary skills, funds and resources available to operate the child and youth care centre; and
- (d) each person employed at or engaged in the child and youth care centre is a fit and proper person to assist in operating a child and youth care centre.

(3) A person unsuitable to work with children is not a fit and proper person to operate or assist in operating a child and youth care centre.

(4) The MEC for social development must consider a report of a social worker before deciding an application for registration or renewal of registration.

### **Conditional registration**

**219.** The registration or renewal of the registration of a child and youth care centre may be granted on such conditions as the MEC for social development may determine, including conditions –

- (a) specifying the type of residential care programme or programmes that may or must be provided in terms of the registration;
- (b) stating the period for which the registration will remain valid; and

- (c) providing for any other matters that may be prescribed by regulation.

### **Amendment of registration**

**220.** The MEC for social development in the relevant province may on application by the holder of a registration of a child and youth care centre, amend the registration by written notice to that person.

### **Cancellation of registration**

**221.** (1) The MEC for social development in the relevant province may cancel the registration of a child and youth care centre by written notice to the registration holder if –

- (a) the centre is not maintained in accordance with –
  - (i) the minimum norms and standards mentioned in section **227**;
  - (ii) any structural, safety, health and other requirements of the municipality in which the child and youth care centre is situated;
  - (iii) any organisational development plan established for the centre in terms of section **229**;
 or
  - (iv) any other requirements of this Act;
- (b) any condition subject to which the registration or renewal of registration was issued is breached;
- (c) the registration holder or the management of the centre contravenes or fails to comply with a provision of this Act;
- (d) the registration holder becomes a person who is not a fit and proper person to operate a child and youth care centre; or
- (e) a person who is not a fit and proper person to assist in operating a child and youth care centre is employed at or involved in activities at the centre.

(2) A person unsuitable to work with children is not a fit and proper person to operate or assist in operating a child and youth care centre.

(3) The MEC for social development may in the case of the cancellation of a registration in terms of subsection (1) (a), (b), (c) or (e) –

- (a) suspend the cancellation for a period to allow the registration holder to correct the cause of the cancellation; and
- (b) reinstate the registration if the registration holder corrects the cause of the cancellation within that period.

(4) The Director-General, a provincial head of social development or a *municipality* may assist a registration holder to comply with the minimum norms and standards mentioned in section 227, or any structural, safety, health and other requirements of the municipality in which the child and youth care centre is situated, or any provisions of the organisational development plan established for the centre in terms of section 229, where the cancellation was due to a failure to comply with those norms and standards, requirements or plan.

(5) The cancellation of a registration which has not been suspended takes effect from a date specified in the notice referred to in subsection (1), which may not be earlier than 90 days from the date on which that notice was given, except if –

- (a) the MEC for social development and the holder of the registration agree on an earlier date; or
- (b) the safety or protection of the children in the centre requires an earlier date.

### **Voluntary closure of child and youth care centres**

**222.** The holder of a registration of a child and youth care centre may close the centre by –

- (a) giving written notice to the MEC for social development in the relevant province; and
- (b) surrendering the certificate of registration to the MEC for social development for cancellation.

### **Children in child and youth care centres to be closed**

**223.** If a child and youth care centre is to be closed in terms of section **221** or **222** every child placed in that centre must be dealt with in terms of section **191**.

### **Appeals against and reviews of certain decisions**

**224.** An applicant aggrieved by a decision of an MEC for social development in terms of section **218** or **219**, or a registration holder aggrieved by a decision of an MEC for social development in terms of section **221**, may –

- (a) lodge an appeal with the Minister against that decision; or
- (b) apply to a child and family court or other court to review that decision.

## ***Part 2: Operation and management of child and youth care centres***

### **Management boards**

**225.** (1) Each child and youth care centre must have a management board consisting of no fewer than six and no more than nine members.

- (2) The members of a management board are appointed by –
  - (a) the Minister, in the case of a child and youth care centre which is operated by the Minister;
  - (b) the MEC for social development in the relevant province, in the case of a child and youth care centre which is operated by the province;
  - (c) *the relevant municipality, in the case of a child and youth care centre which is operated by the municipality; and*
  - (d) the registration holder in accordance with a procedure prescribed by regulation, in the case of a privately operated child and youth care centre.

- (3) No person unsuitable to work with children may be appointed or continue to serve as

a member of a management board.

(4) A management board functions in terms of the regulations, and may exercise the powers and must perform the duties conferred on it in terms of this Act.

### **Managers and staff of child and youth care centres**

**226.** (1) The person or organisation operating a child and youth care centre must appoint or designate –

- (a) a person as the manager of the centre; and
- (b) a sufficient number of staff or other appropriate persons to assist in operating the centre.

(2) A person may be appointed or designated in terms of subsection (1) only after following an interview process prescribed by regulation.

(3) No person unsuitable to work with children may be appointed or designated in terms of subsection (1) or continue to serve at a child and youth care centre.

(4) The number of staff appointed or designated must be in accordance with any staff-to-children ratios that may be –

- (a) prescribed by regulation; or
- (b) required in the conditions of registration of the centre.

### **Minimum norms and standards**

**227.** (1) The management of a child and youth care centre must take all reasonable steps to ensure that the centre complies with the minimum norms and standards as prescribed.

### **Management system**

**228.** A child and youth care centre must be managed –



- (a) in accordance with –
  - (i) a system of management that allows for a division of responsibilities between the management board and the manager of the centre, and an appropriate interaction in the exercise of those responsibilities, as may be prescribed by regulation;
  - (ii) the organisational development plan established for the centre in terms of its quality assurance process; and
  - (iii) any other requirements of this Act; and
- (b) in a way that is conducive to implementing the residential care programme or programmes offered at the centre.

### **Quality assurance process**

**229.** (1) The provincial head for social development must ensure that a quality assurance process is carried out in accordance with the regulations every three years in respect of each child and youth care centre.

(2) The management board of a child and youth care centre must without delay after completion of the quality assurance process, submit a copy of the organisational development plan established for the centre in terms of the quality assurance process, to –

- (a) the MEC for social development in the province; and
- (b) the Children's Protector.

## ***Part 3: Miscellaneous***

### **Regulations**

**230.** The Minister may in terms of section 354 make regulations prescribing –

- (a) the procedure to be followed and the fees to be paid in connection with the lodging and consideration of –

- (i) applications for registration of child and youth care centres;
  - (ii) applications for renewal or amendment of such registrations; and
  - (iii) objections to applications made in terms of sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii);
- (b) the matters with which applicants must comply before, during or after the lodging of their applications;
- (c) consultation processes that must be followed in connection with such applications;
- (d) any additional factors that must be taken into account when deciding such applications;
- (e) the procedure to be followed and the fees to be paid in connection with the lodging and consideration of appeals in terms of this Chapter;
- (f) the format and contents of registration certificates;
- (g) methods and procedures to enforce compliance with registration conditions;
- (h) matters in connection with the physical attributes, operation and management of child and youth care centres, including the setting of minimum norms and standards in this regard;
- (i) matters in connection with residential care programmes provided at child and youth care centres, including the setting of minimum norms and standards for –
  - (i) the core components of such programmes; and
  - (ii) the implementation of such programmes;
- (j) the provision of programmes at child and youth care centres to meet the developmental, therapeutic and recreational needs of children;
- (k) an assessment of and the formulation of an individual developmental and permanency plan for each child;
- (l) the powers and duties of the management boards of child and youth care centres;
- (m) the composition of management boards, which may include representation for staff and residents;
- (n) matters relating to members of management boards, including –
  - (i) appointment procedures;
  - (ii) qualifications for membership;

- (iii) term of office;
- (iv) filling of vacancies; and
- (v) suspension or termination of membership;
- (o) matters relating to the functioning of management boards, including –
  - (i) designation and functions of presiding members;
  - (ii) the convening and conduct of meetings;
  - (iii) quorums; and
  - (iv) the appointment and functioning of committees of a board;
- (p) matters relating to training, minimum qualifications and experience for staff of child and youth care centres;
- (q) matters relating to the responsibilities of, and interaction between, the management board and the staff and residents of a child and youth care centre;
- (r) the reporting responsibilities of management boards and staff towards the department, person or organisation operating the child and youth care centre;
- (s) the format of the constitution or founding document of a child and youth care centre and the matters to be regulated in such constitution or founding document;
- (t) the rights of children in child and youth care centres;
- (u) management, disciplinary and other practices in child and youth care centres;
- (v) matters in connection with quality assurance processes and organisational development plans established in terms of such processes for child and youth care centres, including –
  - (i) the composition of teams to conduct internal and independent assessments;
  - (ii) the qualifications of team members and the remuneration payable to members of independent teams;
  - (iii) the manner in which internal and independent assessments must be conducted;
  - (iv) the core components of organisational development plans;
  - (v) the implementation, revision and amendment of such plans;
  - (vi) the monitoring of implementation and reporting of violations of such plans; and

- (vii) the qualifications, functions and remuneration of mentors appointed to oversee the implementation of such plans;
- (viii) the role of the Children's Protector in monitoring child and youth care centres;
- (w) any other matter that may facilitate the implementation of this Chapter.

## **CHAPTER 16**

### **CHILDREN IN ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT CIRCUMSTANCES**

#### **Definitional provision**

**231.** (1) Children in especially difficult circumstances are –

- (a) children affected by malnutrition;
- (b) children affected by HIV/AIDS;
- (c) children with disabilities;
- (d) children with chronic illnesses;
- (e) children who are subject to exploitative labour practices;
- (f) children living or working on the streets;
- (g) children in child-headed households; and
- (h) children who are subject to commercial sexual exploitation.

(2) This Chapter may not be read as limiting the application of Chapter 11 in respect of a child within any of the above categories who is in need of care and protection.

#### **Strategies concerning children in especially difficult circumstances to be included in national policy framework**

**232.** (1) The Minister must include in the national policy framework referred to in section 5 a comprehensive national strategy aimed at identifying, assisting and promoting the best interest of children in especially difficult circumstances, which must –

- (a) include strategies aimed at –
  - (i) combating malnutrition among children and providing malnourished children or children at risk of malnutrition access to sufficient and appropriate food, including emergency measures for children whose survival is at stake;
  - (ii) encouraging orphaned, abandoned or impoverished children or children affected by HIV/AIDS or other chronic illnesses to remain in their homes or communities and discouraging such children from abandoning their education to live and work on the streets;
  - (iii) identifying child-headed households and supporting their functioning in the community;
  - (iv) assisting children with disabilities or chronic illnesses to have access to educational, rehabilitation and health care services and empowering them to develop their self-reliance and potential;
  - (v) empowering parents or care-givers of children with disabilities or chronic illnesses to care for their children in the home environment and educating parents or care-givers of such children on matters affecting their children;
  - (vi) combating exploitative labour practices and rehabilitating children subjected to such practices;
  - (vii) preventing children from leaving their home environment to live and work on the streets;
  - (viii) providing street children with access to basic nutrition, basic health care services and shelter, including drop-in centres and halfway homes;
  - (ix) providing outreach programmes for and counselling to street children, rehabilitating them and reunifying them with their families;
  - (x) integrating street children into the education system, or into a system that includes both

- education and other services to meet the needs of street children;
- (xi) educating children not to become involved in prostitution and pornography or from being sexually abused;
- (xii) providing children who are subject to commercial sexual exploitation with access to basic nutrition, basic health care services and shelter, including drop-in centres and halfway homes; and
- (xiii) providing outreach programmes for and counselling to children who are subject to commercial sexual exploitation;
- (xiv) providing impoverished children free access to primary and basic health care services, including at shelters and drop-in centres and through the use of mobile clinics;
- (xv) providing incentives for private sector health care institutions to provide impoverished children access to their services; and
- (xvi) providing impoverished children with free primary and secondary education;
- (b) set out the responsibilities of and participating roles for municipalities and provincial organs of state in the development and implementation of programmes and projects giving effect to those strategies; and
- (c) promote the engagement of non-governmental organisations in the development and implementation of programmes and projects giving effect to those strategies.

### **Preventative measures against malnutrition**

**233.** (1) The MEC for social development, in consultation with the MEC for Health, must take appropriate steps to combat malnutrition amongst children in the province in order to increase the rate of child survival.

(2) To increase the rate of child survival and to combat malnutrition, both the Minister and the MECs for social development, in consultation with the Minister and MECs for Health, must initiate programmes providing for a package of services comprising supplementary nutrition,

immunization, health and referral services for children below six years of age, as well as feeding schemes and health check-up, immunization and supplementary nutrition for pregnant and lactating women.

(3) The programmes referred to in subsection (2) may include assistance to non-governmental organisations providing food, shelter, clothes, skills development, child care and health promotion services.

### **Child-headed households**

**234.** (1) A provincial head of social development may recognise a household as a child-headed household if –

- (a) the parent or primary care-giver of the household is terminally ill or has died because of AIDS or another cause;
- (b) no adult family member is available to provide care for the children in the household; and
- (c) a child has assumed the role of primary care-giver in respect of a child or children in the household.

(2) A child-headed household must function under the general supervision of an adult designated by –

- (a) a child and family court; or
- (b) an organ of state or non-governmental organisation determined by the provincial head of social development.

(3) The adult person referred to in subsection (2) –

- (a) may collect and administer for the child-headed household any social security grant or other grant or assistance to which the household is entitled; and
- (b) is accountable to the child and family court, or the provincial department of social development,

or to another organ of state or a non-governmental organisation designated by the provincial head of social development, for the administration of any money received on behalf of the household.

(4) The adult person referred to in subsection (2) may not take any decisions concerning such household and the children in the household without consulting –

- (a) the child at the head of the household; and
- (b) given the age, maturity and stage of development of the other children, also those other children.

(5) The child heading the household may, subject to the supervision and advice of the adult person referred to in subsection (2), take all day-to-day decisions relating to the household and the children in the household as if that child was an adult primary care-giver.

(6) A child-headed household may not be excluded from any aid, relief or other programme for poor households provided by an organ of state in the national, provincial or local sphere of government solely by reason of the fact that the household is headed by a child.

### **Municipal monitoring and support of children in especially difficult circumstances**

**235.** Each metropolitan and local municipality must –

- (a) determine and keep the statistics prescribed by regulation of the estimated total number of –
  - (i) child-headed households in its area;
  - (ii) lost and abandoned children in its area;
  - (iii) street children in its area;
  - (iv) children with disabilities and chronic illnesses in its area; and
  - (v) children subjected to commercial sexual exploitation in its area;
- (b) regularly monitor the location and socio-economic conditions of those households and of each of those categories of children;



- (c) at least once every three years make a needs analysis prescribed by regulation of those households and each of those categories of children;
- (d) submit at intervals prescribed by regulation the statistics required by regulation in respect of those households and each of those categories of children to organs of state specified by regulation; and
- (e) apply those statistics and the needs analysis for purposes of budgeting and the provision of services, including access to basic nutrition, shelter, health care and social services.

#### **Schools to assist in identifying certain children in especially difficult circumstances**

**236.** The principal of a public or private school must on a confidential basis –

- (a) identify children who are frequently absent from school because of being in need of care and protection;
- (b) take all reasonable steps to assist them in returning to school or to discourage them from leaving school; and
- (c) submit the names and addresses of those children to the provincial head of social development.

#### **Consent to medical treatment and operations**

**237.** (1) If a medical practitioner or nurse considers any medical treatment or operation necessary in the interest of the health of a street child or a child in a child-headed household, the superintendent of a hospital or other person designated by the superintendent may on behalf of the child's parent or guardian –

- (a) consent to such medical treatment or operation in terms of section **135** (3); or
- (b) assist the child in terms of section **135** (2) (b) to consent to such operation.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply in respect of the medical treatment of a child who is at least 12 years of age and is of sufficient maturity and has the mental capacity to consent to such treatment in terms of section **135** (2) (a).

(3) A child's age may for the purpose of subsection (3) be estimated by the relevant superintendent or the other designated person.

### **Reunification of street children with their families**

**238.** A social worker facilitating the reunification of a street child with the child's family must –

- (a) investigate the causes why the child left the family home;
- (b) address those causes and take precautionary action to prevent a recurrence; and
- (b) provide counselling to both the child and the family before and after reunification.

### **Child pornography on the Internet**

**239.** An Internet service provider operating in the Republic must take all reasonable steps to block access through its server to sites providing child pornography on the Internet.

### **Children subject to exploitative labour practices**

**240.** (1) No person may –

- (a) employ a child who is under the age of 15 years;
- (b) force a child to perform labour for that or any other person, whether for reward or not; or
- (c) encourage, induce or force a child, or allow a child, to perform labour that –
  - (i) is inappropriate for a person of that child's age; or
  - (ii) places at risk the child's well-being, education, physical or mental health, or spiritual, moral or social development.

(2) Subsection (1) (a) does not prevent the performance of labour by a child, whether for reward or not –

- (a) subject to the Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act No. 75 of 1997), in an advertisement, in sport or in an artistic or cultural event, provided that such engagement does

not place the child's well-being, education, physical or mental health or spiritual, moral or social development at risk; or

- (b) in work which is carried out within the framework of a programme registered in terms of the Non Profit Organisations Act, 1997 (Act No. 71 of 1997), and that is designed to promote personal development and vocational training.

(3) The Minister must take all reasonable steps to assist in ensuring the enforcement of the prohibition on illegal child labour, including steps providing for the confiscation in terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act No. 121 of 1998), of assets acquired through the use of illegal child labour.

#### **Provincial monitoring of children subject to exploitative labour practices**

**241.** The MEC for social development in consultation with the MEC for labour must –

- (a) conduct an annual survey in respect of –
  - (i) the number of children who are subject to exploitative labour practices in the province; and
  - (ii) the economic sectors in which the children are involved;
- (b) submit the statistics prescribed by regulation in respect of such children to an organ of state specified by regulation; and
- (c) plan and allocate resources for the extrication of children from labour and related services.

#### **Child labour defined**

**242.** In this Act child labour refers to any situation where the child provides labour in exchange for payment and includes –

- (a) any situation where the child provides labour but somebody else receives remuneration on the child's behalf;
- (b) any situation where the child provides labour as an assistant to somebody else and his or her

labour is deemed to be the labour of that other person for the purposes of payment;

- (c) any situation where the child's labour is used for gain by any individual or institution whether or not the child benefits directly or indirectly; and
- (d) any situation where there is in existence a contract for services where the party providing the services is a child whether the person using the services does so directly or by agent.

### **Regulations**

**243.** The Minister may make regulations in terms of section **354** concerning –

- (a) adult supervision of child-headed households;
- (b) the administration of grants paid to child-headed households;
- (c) the implementation of outreach programmes and the establishment, registration and management of drop-in centres, shelters and halfway homes for street children, including children who are subject to commercial sexual exploitation;
- (d) any other matter that may be necessary to facilitate the implementation of this Chapter.

## **CHAPTER 17**

### **SHELTERS AND DROP-IN CENTRES**

#### **Definitional provision**

**244.** (1) A shelter is a facility located at a specific place which is managed for the purpose of providing basic services, including overnight accommodation and food, to children, including street children, who voluntarily attend the facility but who are free to leave.

(2) A drop-in centre is a facility located at a specific place which is managed for the purpose of providing basic services, excluding overnight accommodation, to children, including street children, who voluntarily attend the facility but who are free to leave.

### **Shelters and drop-in centres to be registered**

**245.** Any person or organisation may establish or operate a shelter or drop-in centre provided that the shelter or drop-in centre –

- (a) is registered with the municipality in which that shelter or drop-in centre is situated;
- (b) is managed and maintained in accordance with any conditions subject to which the shelter or drop-in centre is registered; and
- (c) complies with –
  - (i) the minimum norms and standards mentioned in section **250**; and
  - (ii) the structural, safety, health and other requirements of the municipality.

### **Existing shelters**

**246.** As from the date on which section **245** takes effect an existing shelter registered in terms of the Child Care Act, must be regarded as having been registered as a shelter in terms of section **245**.

### **Notices of enforcement**

**247.** (1) A municipality or the provincial head of social development may by way of a written notice of enforcement instruct –

- (a) a person or organisation operating an unregistered shelter or drop-in centre –
  - (i) to stop operating that shelter or drop-in centre; or
  - (ii) to apply for registration in terms of section **245** within a period specified in the notice;
 or
- (b) a person or organisation operating a registered shelter or drop-in centre otherwise than in accordance with the conditions subject to which the registration was issued, to comply with those conditions.

(2) A person or organisation operating an unregistered shelter or drop-in centre and who is instructed in terms of subsection (1) (a) (ii) to apply for registration within a specified period may,

despite the provisions of section 245, be given permission by the municipality or the provincial head of social development to continue operating the shelter or drop-in centre during that period and, if that person applies for registration, until that person's application has been finalised.

### **Application for registration and renewal of registration**

**248.** (1) An application for registration or conditional registration of a shelter or drop-in centre or for the renewal of a registration must –

- (a) be lodged, in accordance with a procedure prescribed by regulation, with the municipality in which the facility is or will be situated;
- (b) contain the particulars prescribed by regulation; and
- (c) be accompanied by –
  - (i) any documents that may be prescribed by regulation; and
  - (ii) such fee as may be prescribed by regulation.

(2) An applicant must provide such additional information relevant to the application as the municipality may determine.

(3) An application for the renewal of registration must be made at least 90 days before the registration is due to expire, but the municipality may allow a late application on good cause shown.

### **Consideration of applications**

**249.** (1) The municipality must –

- (a) consider an application for registration or conditional registration or for the renewal of a registration, and either reject the application or, having regard to subsection (2), grant the registration or renewal with or without conditions; and
- (b) issue to the applicant a certificate of registration, conditional registration or renewal of registration on a form prescribed by regulation if the application is granted.

(2) When considering an application, the municipality must take into account all relevant factors, including whether –

- (a) the shelter or drop-in centre complies with –
  - (i) the minimum norms and standards mentioned in section **250**; and
  - (ii) the structural, safety, health and other requirements of the municipality;
- (b) the applicant is a fit and proper person to operate a shelter or drop-in centre;
- (c) the applicant has the necessary skills, funds and resources available to operate the shelter or drop-in centre; and
- (d) each person employed or engaged in the shelter or drop-in centre is a fit and proper person to assist in operating a shelter or drop-in centre.

(3) A person unsuitable to work with children is not a fit and proper person to operate or assist in operating a shelter or drop-in centre.

(4) The municipality must consider a report of a social worker before deciding an application for registration, conditional registration or renewal of registration.

### **Minimum norms and standards**

**250.** (1) Premises used as a shelter or drop-in centre must have –

- (a) a safe area for the children to play;
- (b) adequate space and ventilation;
- (c) safe drinking water;
- (d) hygienic and adequate toilet facilities;
- (e) access to disposal of refuse services or other adequate means of disposal of refuse generated at the shelter or drop-in centre; and
- (f) a hygienic area for the preparation of food for the children.

- (2) Premises used as a shelter must, in addition, have –
  - (a) safe sleeping facilities; and
  - (b) staff available at the shelter around the clock.

**Conditional registration**

**251.** The registration or renewal of the registration of a shelter or drop-in centre may be granted on such conditions as the municipality may determine, including conditions –

- (a) specifying the type of services that may or must be provided in terms of the registration;
- (b) stating the period for which the registration will remain valid; and
- (c) providing for any other matters that may be prescribed by regulation.



### **Cancellation of registration**

**252.** (1) A municipality may cancel the registration of a shelter or drop-in centre by written notice to the registration holder if –

- (a) the shelter or drop-in centre is not maintained in accordance with –
  - (i) the minimum norms and standards mentioned in section **250**; and
  - (ii) any other requirements of this Act;
- (b) any condition subject to which the registration or renewal of registration was issued is breached or not complied with;
- (c) the registration holder or the management of the shelter or drop-in centre contravenes or fails to comply with any provision of this Act;
- (d) the registration holder becomes a person who is not a fit and proper person to operate a shelter or drop-in centre; or
- (e) a person who is not a fit and proper person to assist in operating a shelter or drop-in centre is employed at or engaged in operating the shelter or drop-in centre.

(2) A person unsuitable to work with children is not a fit and proper person to operate or assist in operating a shelter or drop-in centre.

(3) The municipality may in the case of the cancellation of a registration in terms of subsection (1) (a), (b), (c) or (e) –

- (a) suspend the cancellation for a period to allow the registration holder to correct the cause of the cancellation; and
- (b) reinstate the registration if the registration holder corrects the cause of the cancellation within that period.

(4) A municipality may assist a registration holder to comply with the minimum norms and standards mentioned in section **250**.

### **Appeals against and revisions of certain decisions**

**253.** An applicant aggrieved by a decision of a municipality in terms of section **249** or **251**, or a registration holder aggrieved by a decision of a municipality in terms of section **252**, may –

- (a) lodge an appeal with the MEC for social development against that decision; or
- (b) apply to a child and family court or other court, to review that decision.

### **Role of municipalities**

**254.** (1) A municipality must –

- (a) maintain a record of all available shelters and drop-in centres in its area; and
- (b) conduct regular inspections of shelters and drop-in centres in its area to enforce the provisions of this Act.

(2) A municipality's integrated development plan must include strategies for the provision of shelters and drop-in centres in its area, which must include measures –

- (a) facilitating the establishment of sufficient shelters and drop-in centres in its area;
- (b) prioritising those types of shelters and drop-in centres most urgently required; and
- (c) facilitating the identification and provision of suitable premises.

### **Death of children in shelters or drop-in centres**

**255.** (1) If a child dies on the premises of a shelter or drop-in centre or following an occurrence at the shelter or drop-in centre, the person operating the shelter or drop-in centre must within 24 hours of the child's death report such death to the Children's Protector.

(2) The Children's Protector must in terms of section **326** investigate the circumstances of the child's death if there are allegations or indications that the child died because of abuse or neglect.

### **Regulations**

**256.** The Minister may make regulations in terms of section **354** concerning –

- (a) the procedure to be followed and the fees to be paid in connection with the lodging and consideration of applications for registration in terms of this Chapter and for the renewal of such registrations;
- (b) the different services that may be provided in terms of such registrations;
- (c) the procedure to be followed and the fees to be paid in connection with the lodging and consideration of appeals in terms of this Chapter;
- (d) the management of shelters and drop-in centres;
- (e) any other matter that may be necessary to facilitate the implementation of this Chapter.

## **CHAPTER 18**

### **ADOPTIONS**

#### **Children who may be adopted**

**257.** Any child may be adopted provided –

- (a) the adoption is in the best interest of the child; and
- (b) the provisions of this Chapter are complied with.

#### **Persons who may adopt a child**

**258.** (1) A child may be adopted –

- (a) jointly by –
  - (i) a husband and wife;
  - (ii) partners in a permanent domestic conjugal life-partnership; or
  - (iii) other persons sharing a common household and forming a family unit;
- (b) by a widower, widow, divorced or unmarried person;
- (c) by a married person whose spouse is the parent of the child or by a person whose permanent domestic conjugal life-partner is the parent of the child ;

- (d) by the biological father of a child born out of wedlock;
- (e) by the foster parent or parents of the child; or
- (f) by the kinship care-giver of the child.

(2) A prospective adoptive parent or parents must be –

- (a) fit and proper to be entrusted with full parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child;
- (b) willing and able to undertake, exercise and maintain those responsibilities and rights;
- (c) over the age of 18 years; and
- (d) properly assessed by an adoption social worker for compliance with paragraphs (a) and (b).

(3) A person unsuitable to work with children is not a fit and proper person to adopt a child.

(4) (a) The foster parent or kinship care-giver of a child has the right to be considered as a prospective adoptive parent when the child becomes available for adoption.

(b) The foster parent or kinship care-giver of a child, must be regarded as having elected not to apply for the adoption of the child if that foster parent or kinship care-giver fails to apply for the adoption of the child within 30 days after a notice calling on that foster parent or kinship care-giver to do so has been served on that foster parent or kinship care-giver by the child and family court registrar.

(5) A relative of a child other than a kinship care-giver who, prior to the adoption, has given notice to the child and family court registrar that he or she is interested in adopting the child, has the right to be considered as a prospective adoptive parent when the child becomes available for adoption.

### **Consent to adoption**

**259.** (1) A child may be adopted only if consent for the adoption has been given by –

- (a) each parent of the child, whether the parents are married or not;
- (b) any other person who holds guardianship in respect of the child; and
- (c) the child, if the child is of an age, maturity and stage of development to understand the implications of –
  - (i) being adopted; and
  - (ii) the consent given.

(2) Subsection (1) (a) and (b) excludes a parent or person referred to in section **261**, and a child may be adopted without the consent of such a parent or person.

(3) If the parent of a child wishes the child to be adopted by a particular person or persons, the parent must state the name of that person or persons in the consent: Provided that the eligibility as an adoptive parent or parents of such person or persons must be determined by the court in terms of section **258**(2).

- (4) Consent referred to in subsection (1) and given –
  - (a) in the Republic, must be –
    - (i) signed by the consenting person in the presence of a child and family court registrar;
    - (ii) verified by the registrar in a manner prescribed by regulation; and
    - (iii) filed by the registrar pending an application for the adoption of the child; or
  - (b) outside the Republic, must be –
    - (i) signed by the consenting person in the presence of a person prescribed by regulation;
    - (ii) verified in a manner and by a person prescribed by regulation; and
    - (iii) submitted to and filed by a child and family court registrar pending an application for the adoption of the child

(5) The court may condone any deficiency in the provision of a consent given outside the Republic in that the consent –

- (a) was not signed in the presence of a person prescribed by regulation; or
- (b) was not verified in a manner or by a person prescribed by regulation.

(6) A parent of a child or a person referred to in subsection (1) (b) who has consented to the adoption of the child may withdraw the consent within 60 days after having signed the consent, after which the consent is final.

### **Freeing orders**

**260.** (1) The court, on application by the Department, a designated child protection organization or an adoption social worker, may issue an order freeing a parent or person whose consent to the adoption of the child is required in terms of section **259** from parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child pending the adoption of the child.

(2) The parent or person whose consent to the adoption of the child is required in terms of section **259** must support an application for a freeing order in terms of subsection (1).

(3) A freeing order in terms of subsection (1) must authorise a designated child protection organisation or an individual to exercise parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the child pending the adoption of the child.

- (4) A freeing order lapses if –
- (a) the court refuses to grant an application for the adoption of the child;
  - (b) the order is terminated by the court on the ground that it is no longer in the best interest of the child; or
  - (c) the parent or person who gave consent withdraws consent for the adoption of the child in

terms of section **259** (6).

(5) A freeing order relieves a parent or person from the duty to contribute to the maintenance of the child pending the adoption, unless otherwise ordered by the court.

### **When consent not required**

**261.** (1) The consent of a parent of the child or any other person who has parental responsibilities or rights in respect of the child is not necessary for the adoption of the child, if that parent or person –

- (a) is incompetent to give consent due to mental illness;
- (b) has abandoned the child, or if the whereabouts of that parent or person cannot be established, or if the identity of that parent or person is unknown;
- (c) has abused or deliberately neglected the child, or has allowed the child to be abused or deliberately neglected;
- (d) has consistently failed to fulfil his or her parental responsibilities towards the child during the last 12 months;
- (e) has been divested by an order of court of the right to consent to the adoption of the child; or
- (f) has failed to respond to a notice referred to in section **263** within 30 days of service of the notice.

(2) If the parent referred to in subsection (1) is the biological father of the child, consent for the adoption is also not necessary if –

- (a) that person is not married to the child's mother or was not married to her at the time of conception or at any time thereafter, and has not acknowledge in a manner set out in subsection (3) that he is the biological father of the child;
- (b) the child was conceived from an incestuous relationship between that person and the mother;
- (c) the child was conceived as a result of the rape of the mother for which that person was

convicted; or

- (d) a child and family court, following an allegation by the mother, makes a finding, on a balance of probabilities, that the child was conceived as a result of the rape of the mother by that person.

(3) A person referred to in subsection (2) (a) can for the purposes of that subsection acknowledge that he is the biological father of a child in any of the following ways:

- (a) by giving a written acknowledgment that he is the biological father or the child either to the mother or the child and family court registrar before the child reaches the age of six months;
- (b) by voluntarily paying maintenance in respect of the child;
- (c) by paying damages in terms of customary law; or
- (d) by causing particulars of himself to be entered in the registration of birth of the child in terms of section 10 (1) (b) or section 11 (4) of the Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1992 (Act No. 51 of 1992).

(4) A child and family court may on a balance of probabilities make a finding as to the existence of a ground on which a parent or person is excluded in terms of this section from giving consent for the adoption of a child.

### **Gathering of information for proposed adoptions**

**262.** (1) When a child becomes available for adoption, the child and family court registrar must take all reasonable steps to establish –

- (a) the name and address of each person whose consent for the adoption is required in terms of section **259**; and
- (b) the name and address of any person whose consent would have been necessary had it not been for section **261**, and the ground on which such person's consent is not required.



(2) A person who has consented to the adoption of a child in terms of section **259**, and who wants the court to dispense with any other person's consent on a ground set out in section **261**, must submit a statement to that effect to the registrar.

(3) A child and family court registrar may request the Director-General: Home Affairs to disclose any information contained in the registration of birth of a child, including the identity and other particulars of a person who has acknowledge being the father or the mother of the child.

(4) If a social worker involved in the proposed adoption of a child obtains information regarding the identity and whereabouts of a person whose consent for the adoption is necessary in terms of section **259** or whose consent for the adoption would have been necessary had it not been for section **261**, the social worker must without delay submit a report containing that information to the registrar.

#### **Notice to be given of proposed adoptions**

**263.** (1) When a child becomes available for adoption, the child and family court registrar must without delay serve a notice on each person whose consent, on information available to the registrar, is in terms of section **259** required for the adoption.

(2) The notice must –

- (a) inform the person whose consent is sought of the proposed adoption of the child; and
- (b) request that person either to consent to, or to withhold consent for, the adoption, or, if that person is the biological father of the child with whom the mother is not married, request him to consent to or withhold consent for the adoption, or to apply in terms of section **264** for the adoption of the child.

(3) If a person on whom a notice in terms of subsection (1) has been served fails to comply

with a request contained in the notice within 30 days, that person must be regarded as having consented to the adoption.

### **Application for adoption orders**

**264.** (1) An application for the adoption of a child must –

- (a) be made to a child and family court in a manner prescribed by regulation;
- (b) be accompanied by an assessment referred to in section **258** (2) (d); and
- (c) contain such particulars as may be prescribed by regulation.

(2) When an application for the adoption of a child is brought before a child and family court, the child and family court registrar must submit to the court –

- (a) any consents for the adoption of the child filed with a child and family court registrar in terms of section **259** (4);
- (b) any information established by a child and family court registrar in terms of section **262** (1);
- (c) any written responses to requests in terms of section **263** (2);
- (d) a report on any failures to respond to those requests; and
- (e) any other information that may assist the court or as may be prescribed by regulation.

(3) An applicant has no access to any documents lodged with the court by other parties except with the permission of the court.

### **Consideration of adoption applications**

**265.** (1) When considering an application for the adoption of a child, the court must take into account all relevant factors, including –

- (a) the religious and cultural background of –
  - (i) the child;
  - (ii) the child's parent or parents; and

- (iii) the prospective adoptive parent or parents;
- (b) all reasonable preferences expressed by a parent and stated in the consent; and
- (c) a report in a format prescribed by regulation on the proposed adoption by –
  - (i) a social worker in the service of the Department or a provincial department of social development; or
  - (ii) an adoption social worker.

(2) A child and family court considering an application may make an order for the adoption of a child only if –

- (a) the adoption would be in the best interest of the child;
- (b) the prospective adoptive parent or parents comply with section **258**;
- (c) consent for the adoption has been given in terms of section **259**, subject to section **266**;
- (d) no such consent has been withdrawn in terms of section **259** (6); and
- (e) section **258** (4) has been complied with, in the case of an application for the adoption of a child in foster care or kinship care by a person or persons other than the child's foster parent or kinship care-giver.

### **Unreasonable withholding of consent**

**266.** (1) If a parent or person referred to in section **259** (1) withholds consent for the adoption of a child, a child and family court may despite the absence of such consent grant an order for the adoption of the child if the court finds that –

- (a) consent has unreasonably been withheld; and
- (b) the adoption is in the best interest of the child.

(2) In determining whether consent is being withheld unreasonably, the court must take into account all relevant factors, including –

- (a) the nature of the relationship during the last two years between the child and the person

withholding consent, and any findings by a court in this respect; and

- (b) the prospects of a sound relationship developing between the child and the person withholding consent in the immediate future.

### **Effects of adoption order**

**267.** (1) An adoption order, except when otherwise provided in the order, terminates –

- (a) all parental responsibilities and rights any person, including a parent, step-parent or partner in a domestic conjugal life-partnership, had in respect of the child immediately before the adoption;
- (b) all claims to contact with the child by any relative of a person referred to in paragraph (a); and
- (c) all rights and responsibilities the child had in respect of a person referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) immediately before the adoption;
- (d) any previous order made in respect of the placement of the child; and
- (e) any order made in terms of section 290 of the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act No. 51 of 1977), in respect of the child.

(2) An adoption order –

- (a) confers full parental responsibilities and rights in respect of the adopted child upon the adoptive parent or parents as referred to in section **258**(1);
- (b) confers the surname of the adoptive parent on the adopted child, except when otherwise provided in the order;
- (c) does not prohibit any marriage or sexual intercourse between the child and any other person, except the adoptive parent, which would have been permitted had the child not been adopted; or
- (d) does not permit any marriage or sexual intercourse between the child and any other person which would have been prohibited had the child not been adopted;
- (e) does not affect any rights to property the child acquired before the adoption.

(3) An adopted child must for all purposes be regarded as the child of the adoptive parent and an adoptive parent must for all purposes be regarded as the parent of the adopted child.

### **Rescission of adoption orders**

**268.** (1) A child and family court may rescind an adoption order on application by –

- (a) the adopted child;
- (b) a parent of the adopted child or other person who had parental responsibilities or rights in respect of the child immediately before the adoption;
- (c) the adoptive parent or parents of the child; or
- (d) a child and family court registrar.

(2) Any application in terms of subsection (1) must be lodged within a reasonable time not exceeding two years from the date of the adoption.

### **Grounds for rescission of adoption orders**

**269.** (1) A child and family court may rescind an adoption order but only if –

- (a) rescission of the order is in the best interest of the child; or
- (b) subsection (2) or (3) applies.

(2) An adoption order may be rescinded if –

- (a) the child at the time of the adoption suffered from –
  - (i) mental illness;
  - (ii) a congenital disorder; or
  - (iii) an injury of a serious nature;
- (b) the adoptive parent or parents were ignorant of that fact at the time of adoption; and
- (c) the adoptive parent or parents acted with reasonable care by having the child examined as soon as the child's condition became apparent.

- (3) An adoption order may be rescinded if –
- (a) the applicant is the parent of the child whose consent was required for the adoption order to be made, but whose consent was not obtained; or
  - (b) at the time of making the adoption order the adoptive parent or parents did not qualify in terms of section **258** for obtaining the order of adoption.

### **Notice of application for rescission**

**270.** Notice of an application for rescission of an adoption order must be given to –

- (a) the child concerned;
- (b) the adoptive parent or parents of that child, if any other person brings the application;
- (c) all persons who have consented or objected to the adoption in terms of section **259**, if the child or the adoptive parent or parents bring the application;
- (d) the Central Authority in the case of an inter-country adoption; and
- (e) any other person who the court finds has a sufficient interest in the matter.

### **Effects of rescission**

**271.** (1) As from the date on which the rescission of an adoption order takes effect –

- (a) section **267** (2) and (3) no longer applies in respect of the child concerned; and
- (b) all responsibilities, rights and other matters terminated by section **267** (1) in respect of the child are restored.

(2) When rescinding an adoption order the court may –

- (a) make an appropriate placement order in respect of the child concerned; or
- (b) order that that child be kept in temporary safe care until an appropriate placement order can be made.

### **Recording of adoption in births register**

**272.** (1) After an adoption order has been made by a child and family court in respect of a child whose birth has been registered in the Republic, the adoptive parent or parents of the child must apply in terms of any applicable legislation to the Director-General: Home Affairs to record the adoption and any change of surname of the child in the births register.

- (2) An application in terms of subsection (1) must be accompanied by –
- (a) the relevant adoption order;
  - (b) the birth certificate of the child; and
  - (c) a fee prescribed in terms of any applicable legislation, if any.

### **Registration of birth and recording of adoption of child born outside Republic**

**273.** (1) After an adoption order has been made by a child and family court in respect of a child born outside the Republic, the adoptive parent or parents of the child must apply in terms of any applicable legislation to the Director-General: Home Affairs to register the birth of the child and to record the adoption of the child in the births register.

- (2) An application in terms of subsection (1) must be accompanied by –
- (a) the relevant adoption order;
  - (b) the birth certificate of the adopted child or, if the birth certificate is not available –
    - (i) other documentary evidence relating to the date of birth of the child; or
    - (ii) a certificate signed by a child and family magistrate specifying the age or estimated age of the child;
  - (c) the birth registration form prescribed by regulation, completed as far as possible and signed by the adoptive parent or parents; and
  - (d) a fee prescribed in terms of any applicable legislation, if any.

**Adoption register**

**274.** (1) A person designated by the Director-General as the adoption registrar must keep a register of –

- (a) the registration numbers allocated to records of adoption cases;
- (b) the personal details of adopted children, their parents and adoptive parents, and other personal details as may be prescribed by regulation;
- (c) particulars of successful appeals against and rescissions of adoption orders; and
- (d) all other information in connection with adoptions as may be prescribed by regulation.

(2) A child and family court registrar must –

- (a) keep record of all adoption cases by a child and family court, including all adoption orders issued by the court, in the manner prescribed by regulation;
- (b) as soon as is practicable after an adoption order has been issued, forward the adoption order, a copy of the record of the adoption inquiry, and other documents relating to the adoption as may be prescribed by regulation, to the adoption registrar; and
- (c) in the case of an inter-country adoption, forward copies of such documents to the Central Authority.

**Access to adoption register**

**275.** (1) The information contained in the adoptions register may not be disclosed to any person, except –

- (a) to an adopted child after the child has reached the age of 18 years;
- (b) to the adoptive parent of an adopted child after the child has reached the age of 18 years;
- (c) to the biological parent or a previous adoptive parent of an adopted child after the child has reached the age of 18 years, but only if the adoptive parent and the adopted child give their consent in writing;
- (d) for research or any official purposes subject to conditions determined by the Director-General;



or

- (e) by an order of court, if the court finds that such disclosure is in the best interest of the adopted child.

(2) The Director-General may require a person to receive counselling before disclosing any information contained in the adoptions register to that person in terms of subsection (1) (a), (b), (c) or (e).

### **No consideration in respect of adoptions**

**276.** (1) No person may –

- (a) give or receive, or agree to give or receive, any consideration, in cash or in kind, for the adoption of a child in or outside the Republic;
- (b) procure or assist in procuring a child for the purposes of adoption in or outside the Republic;
- (c) place or arrange the placement of a child for the purposes of adoption in or outside the Republic; or
- (d) induce a person to give up a child for adoption in or outside the Republic.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to –

- (a) the biological mother of a child receiving compensation for –
  - (i) loss of earnings due to pregnancy;
  - (ii) medical expenses incurred in connection with her pregnancy, birth of the child and follow-up treatment;
  - (iii) expenses incurred for counselling; or
  - (iv) any other expenses as may be prescribed by regulation;
- (b) a lawyer receiving reasonable fees and expenses for legal services provided in connection with an adoption;
- (c) the Central Authority receiving prescribed fees;
- (d) a designated child protection organization accredited in terms of section 116 to provide

- adoption services, receiving the prescribed fees declared to the Director-General;
- (e) an organ of State; or
- (f) any other persons as may be prescribed by regulation.

**Only certain persons allowed to provide adoption services**

**277.** (1) No person may provide adoption services except –

- (a) a social worker in the service of the Department or a provincial department for social development;
- (b) a designated child protection organisation accredited in terms of section **116** to provide adoption services;
- (c) an adoption social worker; or
- (d) the Central Authority in the case of inter-country adoptions.

(2) A welfare organisation referred to in section **117** which was lawfully engaged in providing adoption services when this section took effect, may despite subsection (1) continue with such services for a period of five years without being accredited in terms of section **278** to provide adoption services, but must within that period apply for such accreditation in terms of section **278**.

**Accreditation of social workers and designated child protection organisations to perform adoption work**

**278.** (1) The Director-General may in terms of a process prescribed by regulation accredit –

- (a) a social worker in private practice as an adoption social worker to provide adoption services; and
- (b) a designated child protection organisation to provide adoption services.

(2) The Director-General must keep a register of all adoption social workers and designated child protection organisations accredited to perform adoption services.

### **Advertising**

**279.** (1) No person may publish or cause to be published in any form or by any means an advertisement dealing with the placement or adoption of a specific child.

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply in respect of –
- (a) the publication of a notice in terms of this Act or a court order;
  - (b) the publication of a notice authorised by the Director-General;
  - (c) an advertisement by a designated child protection organization accredited to provide adoption services for purposes of recruitment, according to prescribed guidelines;
  - (d) an announcement of an adoption placement or an adoption; or
  - (e) other forms of advertisements specified by regulation.

### **Regulations**

**280.** The Minister may make regulations in terms of section 354 –

- (a) prescribing procedures for determining whether a child has been abandoned by a parent or other person who has parental responsibilities in respect of the child;
- (b) determining procedures to be followed to locate persons whose whereabouts are unknown for obtaining their consent to adoptions;
- (c) prescribing procedures for determining the age of a child;
- (d) determining procedures for payment for adoption services undertaken by persons or organizations to prevent conflict of interests from arising;
- (e) prescribing advertising guidelines for recruitment purposes;
- (f) prescribing any other matter that may be necessary to facilitate the implementation of this Chapter.

## **CHAPTER 19**

### **INTER-COUNTRY ADOPTIONS**

### **Purposes of this Chapter**

**281.** The purposes of this Chapter are –

- (a) to give effect to the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption;
- (b) to give effect to certain bilateral arrangements for inter-country adoption; and
- (c) generally to regulate inter-country adoptions.

### **Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption to have force of law**

**282.** (1) The Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption is in force in the Republic and its provisions are law in the Republic.

(2) The ordinary law of the Republic applies to an adoption to which the Convention applies but, where there is a conflict between the ordinary law of the Republic and the Convention, the Convention prevails.

### **Central Authority**

**283.** (1) The Director-General is the Central Authority for the Republic for the purposes of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption.

(2) The Director-General must perform the functions assigned by the Convention to Central Authorities.

(3) On application in terms of section **278**, the Director-General may accredit a designated child protection organisation to perform inter-country adoption services, and approve an adoption practice, provided the prescribed requirements are met.

(4) The Director-General may contract with designated child protection

organisations accredited in terms of section 278 to perform inter-country adoption services according to approved adoption practices.

(5) Subject to subsection (4), only the Director-General may receive fees and make the necessary payments in respect of inter-country adoptions.

### **Delegation of functions**

**284.** (1) When the Minister so authorises, the Central Authority of the Republic may in terms of section 357 delegate any powers or duties of the Central Authority under the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption to a person in the public service with the rank of director or higher.

(2) When the Minister so authorises, any powers or duties of the Central Authority in terms of Articles 15 to 21 of the Convention may, to the extent determined by the Minister, be performed by –

- (a) another organ of state; or
- (b) a designated child protection organisation accredited in terms of section 278 to perform inter-country adoption services.

### **Authority for South African adoption organisations to act in convention countries**

**285.** The Central Authority may authorise a designated child protection organisation accredited in terms of section 278 to perform inter-country adoption services, to act in a convention country.

### **Authority for adoption agencies of convention countries to act in Republic**

**286.** If authorised by the Central Authority, an adoption agency accredited in a convention

country may perform inter-country adoption services in the Republic.

### **Access to information**

**287.** Subject to section **275**, read with such changes as the context may require, the Central Authority may disclose to an adult who, as a child, was adopted in accordance with the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption, any information in the records of the Central Authority concerning that adult's origin.

### **Report on person lodging application for inter-country adoption**

**288.** (1) If a person referred to in section **258** wishes to adopt a child from a convention country or a prescribed overseas jurisdiction, the Central Authority or the principal officer of a designated child protection organisation accredited in terms of section **278** to perform inter-country adoption services must –

- (a) prepare a report that complies with article 15 of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption or the terms of the bilateral or multilateral agreement, as the case may be; and
- (b) submit the report to the child and family court which is to consider the adoption application in terms of section **265**, read with such changes as the context may require.

(2) When submitting a report in terms of subsection (1) to the court, the principal officer of the designated child protection organisation must at the same time submit a copy of the report to the Central Authority.

(3) The Central Authority must send a copy of the report and the court order to the Central Authority of the convention country or the prescribed overseas jurisdiction, as the case may be.

### **Inter-country adoption of children from other countries**

**289.** (1) A person habitually resident in the Republic who wishes to adopt a child habitually resident in a convention country or a prescribed overseas jurisdiction, may apply to a child and family court for an order for the adoption of the child.

(2) After considering the report prepared in terms of section **288**, the court may make an order for the adoption of a child if the requirements of sections **258** and **265** are complied with and the court is satisfied that –

- (a) the child is in the Republic;
- (b) the child is not prevented from residing permanently in the Republic –
  - (i) under a law of the Republic; or
  - (ii) because of an order of a court of the Republic;
- (c) the arrangements for the adoption of the child are in accordance with the requirements of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption or the relevant bilateral or multilateral agreement, as the case may be;
- (d) the Central Authority of the convention country or the relevant prescribed overseas jurisdiction, as the case may be, has agreed to the adoption of the child; and
- (e) the Central Authority of the Republic has agreed to the adoption of the child.

### **Inter-country adoption of children from the Republic**

**290.** (1) A person habitually resident in a convention country or a prescribed overseas jurisdiction and who wishes to adopt a child habitually resident in the Republic may apply to the child and family court for an order for the adoption of the child.

(2) The court may make an order for the adoption of the child if the requirements of sections **258** and **265** are complied with and the court is satisfied that –

- (a) the child is in the Republic;

- (b) the child is not prevented from leaving the Republic –
  - (i) under a law of the Republic; or
  - (ii) because of an order of a court of the Republic;
- (c) the arrangements for the adoption of the child are in accordance with the requirements of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption or the relevant bilateral or multilateral agreement, as the case may be;
- (d) the Central Authority of the convention country or the relevant prescribed overseas jurisdiction, as the case may be, has agreed to the adoption of the child; and
- (e) the Central Authority of the Republic has agreed to the adoption of the child.

#### **Issue of adoption compliance certificate**

**291.** If the court has made an order for the adoption of a child in terms of section **289** or **290**, the Central Authority may issue an adoption compliance certificate.

#### **Recognition of inter-country adoptions**

**292.** (1) The adoption in a convention country of a child habitually resident in that convention country by a person habitually resident in the Republic shall be recognised in the Republic if an adoption compliance certificate issued in that country is in force for the adoption.

(2) The adoption in a convention country of a child habitually resident in that convention country by a person habitually resident in another convention country shall be recognised in the Republic if an adoption compliance certificate issued in the convention country where the adoption was granted is in force for the adoption.

(3) Subsections (1) and (2) do not apply if a declaration is made in terms of section **296**.



### **Effect of recognition of adoption**

**293.** (1) If the adoption of a child is recognised in terms of section **292**, the adoption has in the Republic the effects as set out in section **267**.

(2) If the laws of the convention country where the adoption was granted do not provide that the adoption of the child terminates the legal relationship between the child and the individuals who, immediately before the adoption, were the child's parents, section **267** of this Act does not apply to the adoption unless –

- (a) an order is made in terms of section **295**; or
- (b) a decision is made in the convention country to convert the adoption in accordance with article 27 of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply if a declaration is made in terms of section **296**.

### **Evidential value of adoption compliance certificate**

**294.** Subject to section **296**, an adoption compliance certificate is evidence, for the purposes of the laws of the Republic, that the adoption to which the certificate relates –

- (a) was agreed to by the Central Authorities of the countries mentioned in the certificate; and
- (b) was carried out in accordance with the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption and the laws of the countries mentioned in the certificate.

### **Order terminating legal relationship between child and parents**

**295.** If the laws of a convention country do not provide that the adoption of a child terminates the legal relationship between the child and the persons who, immediately before the adoption, were the child's parents, a child and family court may, on application by any of the

parties to an adoption in that convention country, make an order terminating the legal relationship between the child and those persons, if –

- (a) the child was or is habitually resident in that convention country;
- (b) the child was adopted by a person who is habitually resident in the Republic;
- (c) an adoption compliance certificate issued in the convention country is in force for the adoption;
- (d) the child is allowed to enter the Republic and to reside permanently in the Republic; and
- (e) in the case of a refugee child, sufficient provision is made for the child to retain and foster ties with his or her family, tribe, and country of origin.

**Refusal to recognise inter-country adoption or Article 27 decisions contrary to public policy**

**296.** (1) A child and family court may on application by the Central Authority make an order declaring that an adoption to which section **292** applies or a decision made in terms of article 27 of the Hague Convention on Inter-country Adoption, may not be recognised in the Republic if the adoption or decision is manifestly contrary to public policy in the Republic, taking into account the best interests of the relevant child.

(2) If a court declares that an adoption or decision referred to in subsection (1) may not be recognised, the adoption or decision has no effect in the Republic.

**Adoption of children from prescribed overseas jurisdiction by South African residents**

**297.** The adoption in a prescribed overseas jurisdiction of a child habitually resident in that overseas jurisdiction by a person habitually resident in the Republic, shall be recognised in the Republic if an adoption compliance certificate issued by a competent authority of that overseas jurisdiction is in force for the adoption.

**Effect of recognition**

**298.** If the adoption of a child is recognised in terms of section **297**, the adoption has the effects as set out in section **267**.

**Evidential value of adoption compliance certificate**

**299.** An adoption compliance certificate issued in a prescribed overseas jurisdiction, or an adoption order certified by a competent authority of such an overseas jurisdiction as having been made in accordance with the law of that country, is evidence, for the purposes of the law of the Republic, that the adoption to which the certificate or order relates was carried out under the law of that overseas jurisdiction.

**Recognition of foreign adoptions other than in convention countries and prescribed overseas jurisdictions**

**300.** (1) This section applies to the adoption of a child whether before or after this section took effect –

- (a) in a country other than the Republic, a convention country or a prescribed overseas jurisdiction, and
- (b) by an adoptive parent or parents who, at the time when the adoption proceedings commenced, were –
  - (i) resident in that country for 12 months or more, or
  - (ii) domiciled in that country.

(2) An adoption to which this section applies has the effects as set out in section **267** if –

- (a) the adoption is in accordance with and has not been rescinded under the law of the country in which the adoption order was made; and
- (b) under the law of that country the adoptive parent or parents –

(i) have parental rights in relation to the child superior to that of the adopted child's biological parent or parents; and

(ii) are generally placed in the position of a parent or parents of the adopted child.

(3) Despite subsection (2), a child and family court, including a court dealing with an application under section 301, may on application by an interested person, refuse to recognise an adoption to which this section applies if the procedure followed, or the law applied, in connection with the adoption –

- (a) involved a denial of natural justice or of a person's fundamental human rights; or
- (b) did not comply with the requirements of substantial justice.

(4) A court that refuses to recognise an adoption may, at the time of refusing or at a later time, give leave to a person to seek an order for the adoption of the child concerned in terms of the provisions of Chapter 18.

(5) In any proceedings before a court, including proceedings under section 301, it must be presumed, unless the contrary appears from the evidence, that an order for the adoption of a child made in a country referred to in subsection (1) complied with subsection (2).

(6) Nothing in this section affects any right that was acquired by, or became vested in, any person before the commencement of this section.

### **Declaration of validity of foreign adoption**

**301.** (1) Any of the parties to an adoption in a country referred in section 300 may apply to a child and family court for a declaration that the order complies with that section.

- (2) In any application in terms of this section, the court may –
- (a) direct that notice of the application be given to such persons (including the Central Authority) as the court thinks fit;
  - (b) direct that any person be made a party to the application; or
  - (c) permit any person having an interest in the matter to intervene in, and become a party to, the proceedings.

(3) If the court makes a declaration in terms of subsection (1), it may include in the declaration such particulars in relation to the adoption, the adopted child and the adoptive parent or parents as the court considers relevant for the declaration.

- (4) A declaration in terms of this section –
- (a) binds the state, whether or not notice was given to the Central Authority; and
  - (b) binds any person –
    - (i) who was a party to the court proceedings or who claimed through such a party;
    - or
    - (ii) to whom notice of the application for the declaration was given;
  - (c) does not affect –
    - (i) the rights of any other person, or
    - (ii) any earlier judgement, order or decree of a court or other body of competent jurisdiction.

(5) A declaration in terms of this section is, upon production by any person in a court, admissible as evidence in any proceedings before the court.

**Prior approval for children to be brought into Republic for adoption**

**302.** (1) Before a child not habitually resident in the Republic is brought into the Republic for adoption, the prospective adoptive parents must obtain the approval of the Central Authority.

- (2) The Central Authority must grant approval provided –
- (a) the biological parent or guardian of the child placing the child for adoption has been provided with information about adoption and the alternatives to adoption;
  - (b) the prospective adoptive parent or parents have been provided with information about the medical, social and cultural history of the child's biological family;
  - (c) a home study of the prospective adoptive parent or parents in accordance with such requirements as may be prescribed by regulation has been carried out and the prospective adoptive parents have been approved as a suitable person or persons for the adoption of the child; and
  - (d) the consents of such persons as are required in the country in which the child is resident have been obtained.

(3) The Central Authority must preserve for the child any information obtained about the medical, social and cultural history of the child's biological family.

(4) The provisions of this section do not apply to a child who is brought into the Republic for adoption by a relative of the child or by a person who will become an adoptive parent jointly with the child's biological parent.

**Prior approval for children to be sent out of Republic for adoption**

**303.** (1) Before a child habitually resident in the Republic is placed for adoption in another country, the prospective adoptive parent or parents must obtain the approval of the

Central Authority or a designated child protection organisation accredited in terms of section 278 to perform inter-country adoption services.

(2) The Central Authority or designated child protection organisation may grant approval only if –

- (a) a home study of the prospective adoptive parent or parents has been carried out in accordance with such requirements as may be prescribed by regulation, and the prospective adoptive parent or parents have been approved as a suitable person or persons for the adoption of the child;
- (b) the consents of such persons as are required in terms of this Act have been obtained; and
- (c) efforts to place the child for adoption with a parent or parents resident in the Republic were unsuccessful during a period of six months from the date on which application for approval was lodged.

(3) This section does not apply to a child habitually resident in the Republic and who is to be placed for adoption outside the Republic with a relative of that child or with a person who will become an adoptive parent jointly with the child's biological parent.

#### **Processing or facilitating inter-country adoption**

**304.** No person may process or facilitate an inter-country adoption otherwise than in terms of this Chapter.

## **CHAPTER 20**

### **CHILD ABDUCTION**

### **Purposes of this Chapter**

**305.** The purposes of this Chapter are –

- (a) to give effect to the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction; and
- (b) to combat parental child abduction.

### **Hague Convention on International Child Abduction to have force of law**

**306.** The Hague Convention on International Child Abduction is in force in the Republic and its provisions are law in the Republic, subject to the provisions of this Act.

### **Central Authority**

**307.** (1) The Director-General is the Central Authority for the Republic for the purposes of the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction.

(2) The Director-General must perform the functions assigned by the Convention to Central Authorities.

### **Delegation of powers and duties**

**308.** When the Minister so authorises, the Central Authority of the Republic may in terms of section 357 delegate any powers or duties of the Central Authority under the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction to a person in the public service with the rank of director or higher.

### **Additional powers of court**

**309.** (1) In ascertaining whether there has been a wrongful removal or retention within the meaning of Article 3 of the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction, a court may, prior to the making of an order for the return of the child, request the Central Authority to provide a report on the domestic circumstances of the child prior to the alleged abduction.



(2) The court may, prior to the making of an order for the return of the child, order interim protective relief for the child, the applicant or the defendant.

(3) The court must, in considering an application in terms of this Chapter for the return of a child, afford that child the opportunity to raise an objection to being returned and in so doing must give due weight to that objection, taking into account the age and maturity of the child.

### **Role of family advocate**

**310.** A family advocate must act on behalf of a child in all applications in terms of Hague Convention on International Child Abduction.

### **Unlawful removal or detention of children**

**311.** (1) No person may without lawful authority or reasonable excuse or otherwise than in the exercise of his or her parental responsibilities or rights –

- (a) remove a child from the control of a person who has lawful control of the child; or
- (b) detain a child with the result that the child is kept out of the control of a person entitled to lawful control of the child.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1) a person must be regarded as detaining a child if that person –

- (a) causes the child to be detained; or
- (b) induces the child to remain with him or her or any other person.

### **Unlawful taking or sending of children out of Republic**

**312.** (1) No person may take or send a child out of the Republic –

- (a) in contravention of an order of a court prohibiting the removal of the child from the

Republic; or

- (b) without consent –
    - (i) obtained in terms of section **39** (5); or
    - (ii) of a court.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) a person must be regarded as –
- (a) taking a child out of the Republic if that person –
    - (i) causes the child to be taken, or in any way assists in taking the child, out of the Republic; or
    - (ii) causes or induces the child to accompany, or to join, him or her or any other person when departing from the Republic; or
  - (b) sending a child out of the Republic if that person causes the child to be sent, or in any way assists in sending the child, out of the Republic.

### **Regulations**

- 313.** The Minister, acting with the concurrence of the Minister of Justice, may in terms of section **289** make regulations –
- (a) to give effect to any provisions of the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction;
  - (b) prescribing fees, and providing for the recovery of any expenditure incurred, in connection with the application of the Convention.

## **CHAPTER 21**

### **TRAFFICKING OF CHILDREN**

#### **Purposes of this Chapter**

- 314.** The purposes of this Chapter are –
- (a) to give effect to the UN Protocol to Prevent Trafficking in Persons;

- (b) to give effect to certain bilateral or multilateral agreements relating to trafficking in children; and
- (c) generally to regulate trafficking in children.

### **UN Protocol to Prevent Trafficking in Persons to have force of law**

**315.** The UN Protocol to Prevent Trafficking in Persons is in force in the Republic and its provisions are law in the Republic, subject to the provisions of this Act.

### **Assistance to children who are victims of trafficking**

**316.** (1) The Director-General, without delay and with due regard to the safety of a child, must –

- (a) facilitate and accept the return of a South African child who is a victim of trafficking;
- (b) at the request of another state that is a party to the UN Protocol to Prevent Trafficking in Persons or to a bilateral or multilateral agreement relating to trafficking in children, verify whether a child who is a victim of trafficking is a national of the Republic or had the right of permanent residency in the Republic;
- (c) issue such travel documents or other authorisations as may be needed to enable a child who is a victim of trafficking to travel to and re-enter the Republic.

(2) Subsection (1) applies to any child who, at the time of entry into the territory of the country to which the child had been trafficked, had permanent residence in South Africa.

### **Trafficking of children prohibited**

**317.** (1) No person may traffic a child for the purpose of –

- (a) commercial sexual exploitation;
- (b) an exploitative labour practice; or
- (c) the removal of body parts.

- (2) If a court finds that the parent or care-giver of a child or any other person who has parental rights in respect of a child, has trafficked the child, the court may –
  - (a) suspend all parental rights of that parent, care-giver or person pending an inquiry by a child and family court; and
  - (b) put that child in temporary safe care pending the placement of the child in alternative care.

## CHAPTER 22

### CHILDREN’S PROTECTOR

#### *Part 1: Appointment, status and function*

#### **Appointment of Children’s Protector**

- 318.** (1) The Minister must appoint a person as the Children’s Protector.
- (2) The Children’s Protector –
- (a) functions separately from the Department; and
  - (b) is a public entity for the purpose of the Public Finance Management Act.

#### **Function**

- 319.** The Children’s Protector must without fear, favour or prejudice monitor the implementation of this Act by –
- (a) organs of state in all spheres of government; and
  - (b) persons and non-governmental organisations involved in the protection and well-being of children.

### **Qualifications**

**320.** (1) The Children's Protector must –

- (a) be a South African citizen;
- (b) be a fit and proper person to hold the office of Children's Protector; and
- (c) have appropriate qualifications and experience in the protection and well-being of children.

(2) The following persons are disqualified from becoming or remaining in the post of, the Children's Protector:

- (a) a person holding office as a member of Parliament, a provincial legislature or a municipal council; or
- (b) a person who has been removed from office in terms of section **323**.

### **Appointment procedure**

**321.** (1) Whenever necessary, the Minister must through advertisements in the media circulating nationally and in each of the provinces, invite nominations for appointment as the Children's Protector.

(2) Any nomination in terms of subsection (1) must be supported by –

- (a) the personal details of the applicant;
- (b) particulars of the applicant's qualifications and experience in the protection and well-being of children; and
- (c) any other information that may be prescribed by regulation.

(3) (a) The Minister must submit all nominations received in terms of subsection (1) to the Speaker of the National Assembly and the Chairperson of the National

Council of Provinces, who must convene a joint sitting of the Portfolio Committee on social development and the Select Committee on social development to consider the nominations and prepare a shortlist of not more than three person for appointment as the Children's Protector.

(b) If an insufficient number of viable nominations were received, the Minister must, before complying with paragraph (a), repeat the process set out in subsection (1).

(4) The joint sitting of the Portfolio Committee and the Select Committee must be conducted in accordance with the Joint Rules of Parliament.

(5) The Minister must consider the shortlist prepared in terms of subsection (3) and either –

- (a) refer the shortlist back to the joint sitting of the Portfolio Committee and the Select Committee for reconsideration; or
- (b) appoint one person as the Children's Protector from the shortlist.

(6) If the Minister refers the shortlist of nominations back to the joint sitting of the Portfolio Committee and the Select Committee, the Committees in joint session must reconsider the shortlist and either confirm the shortlist of nominations or prepare another shortlist from the viable nominations received.

(7) The Minister must appoint a person shortlisted in terms of subsection (6) as the Children's Protector.

### **Term of office and conditions of appointment**

**322.** (1) A person appointed as Children's Protector holds office –

- (a) for a term of five years; and
- (a) on such conditions of service as must be determined by the Minister.

(2) When the term of a person appointed as Children's Protector expires, that person is eligible for re-appointment subject to section 321.

### **Removal from office**

**323.** (1) The Minister may remove the Children's Protector from office on the ground of misconduct, incapacity or incompetence.

(2) The Children's Protector may be removed from office on the ground of misconduct or incompetence only after a finding to that effect has been made by a board of inquiry appointed by the Minister.

### **Filling of vacancy**

**324.** A vacancy in the office of Children's Protector must be filled by following the procedure set out in section 321.

## ***Part 2: Powers and duties***

### **Complaints and reports**

**325.** (1) Any person may lodge a complaint with the Children's Protector about any matter concerning the implementation of this Act.

(2) The Children's Protector must consider a complaint lodged in terms of subsection (1) and may –

- (a) conduct an investigation;
- (b) take any steps that may be necessary to resolve the complaint; or

- (c) refer the complaint to any appropriate authority, including the child and family court registrar.

(3) The Children's Protector must investigate any report made in terms of section **156, 197** or **255**.

### **Inspection of child and youth care centres, partial care facilities, shelters, drop-in centres and other premises**

**326.** (1) The Children's Protector may –

- (a) routinely or on receipt of a complaint referred to in section **325** or of a report referred to in section **156, 197** or **255**, inspect any child and youth care centre, partial care facility or shelter or drop-in centre, whether that centre, facility, shelter or drop-in centre is registered or not; or
- (b) on receipt of a complaint referred to in section **325** or of a report referred to in section **197**, inspect any other premises to which the complaint or report refers.

(2) The Children's Protector may authorise any other person to carry out an inspection in terms of subsection (1) (a) or (b).

(3) When carrying out an inspection, the Children's Protector and any person authorised by the Children's Protector in terms of subsection (2), have all the powers and must comply with all the duties set out in section **352**.

### **Access to information**

**327.** The Director-General, a provincial head of department or a municipality must furnish the Children's Protector with such information in their possession as the Children's Protector may request for the purpose of any investigation in terms of section **325** (2) (a) or (3) or any inspection in terms of section **326** (1) (a) or (b).



### **Reports after investigations and inspections**

**328.** After completion of an investigation in terms of section **325** (2) (a) or (3) or an inspection in terms of section **326** (1) (a) or (b), the Children's Protector must compile a report on the investigation or inspection and submit that report, together with any recommendations, to –

- (a) the Minister;
- (b) the MEC for social development in the province or the municipality concerned, as may be appropriate;
- (c) the child and family court registrar, if action is needed in terms of Chapter **11**; and
- (d) the Director of Public Prosecutions, if the investigation or inspection revealed suspected criminal conduct.

### **General powers**

**329.** The Children's Protector may –

- (a) appoint staff, subject to section **333**;
- (b) obtain, by agreement, the services of any person, including an organ of state, for the performance of a specific act, task or assignment;
- (c) acquire or dispose of any right in or to movable property, or hire any immovable property;
- (d) open and operate its own bank accounts;
- (e) invest any of its money, subject to the Public Finance Management Act;
- (f) insure itself against –
  - (i) any loss, damage or risk;
  - (ii) any liability it may incur in the application of this Act;
- (g) institute or defend any legal action; or
- (h) perform legal acts, including acts in association with or on behalf of any other person

or organ of state.

### **Annual report**

**330.** The Children's Protector must annually compile a report on his or her activities and submit the report to Parliament and each provincial legislature.

## ***Part 3: Administration***

### **Office of the Children's Protector**

**331.** There is an Office of the Children's Protector consisting of –

- (a) the Children's Protector;
- (b) the Deputy Children's Protector, appointed in terms of section **332**;
- (c) staff, appointed in terms of section **333**; and
- (d) persons seconded to the Office in terms of section **334**.

### **Deputy Children's Protector**

**332.** (1) The Children's Protector must appoint a staff member as the Deputy Children's Protector.

(2) The Deputy Children's Protector acts as Children's Protector if –

- (a) the Children's Protector is, for any reason, unable to perform the functions of office;
- or
- (b) the office of Children's Protector is vacant.

### **Employment of staff**

**333.** (1) The Children's Protector must with the concurrence of the Minister determine a staff establishment necessary for the work of the Children's Protector, and may appoint

persons in posts on the staff establishment.

(2) An employee of the Children's Protector is employed subject to the terms and conditions of employment determined by the Children's Protector within the financial limits set by the Minister with the concurrence of the Minister of Finance.

### **Secondment of persons to Office of Children's Protector**

**334.** (1) A person in the service of another organ of state may be seconded to the Office of the Children's Protector by agreement between the Children's Protector and such organ of state.

(2) Persons seconded in terms of subsection (1) perform their duties under the supervision of the Children's Protector.

### **Delegation of powers and duties**

**335.** (1) When necessary for the proper performance of the function mentioned in section 319, the Children's Protector may delegate a power or duty assigned to the Children's Protector in terms of this Act to –

- (a) the Deputy Children's Protector;
- (b) another staff member; or
- (c) a person seconded to the service of the Office of the Children's Protector.

(2) A delegation in terms of subsection (1) –

- (a) is subject to any limitations, conditions and directions which the Children's Protector may impose;
- (b) must be in writing; and
- (c) does not divest the Children's Protector of the responsibility concerning the exercise

of the power or the performance of the duty.

(3) The Children's Protector may confirm, vary or revoke any decision taken in consequence of a delegation in terms of this section, subject to any rights that may have accrued to a person as a result of the decision.

### **Funding**

**336.** The funds of the Children's Protector consists of –

- (a) money appropriated for the purposes of the Children's Protector by Parliament on the vote of the Department;
- (b) donations and other voluntary payments made to the Children's Protector with the approval of the Minister; and
- (c) income derived from proceeds of investments made by the Children's Protector in terms of section 329 (e).

### **Financial accountability**

**337.** The Children's Protector is a public entity for purposes of the Public Finance Management Act (Act No 1 of 1999), and must to that end comply with the provisions of that Act.

## **CHAPTER 23**

### **FUNDING, GRANTS AND SUBSIDIES**

#### ***Part 1: Funding***

**Funds for implementation of this Act to be included in departmental and municipal draft budgets**

**338.** (1) When the Department or a provincial department responsible for social development in a province prepares its draft budget for a coming financial year in terms of the Public Finance Management Act (Act No 1 of 1999), the Department or provincial department must –

- (a) consider and determine its funding requirements for the implementation of this Act; and
- (b) include in the draft budget an amount for this purpose which it considers appropriate.

(2) When a municipality involved in the implementation of this Act prepares its draft budget for a coming financial year in terms of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2002, the municipality must –

- (a) consider and determine its funding requirements for the implementation of this Act; and
- (b) include in the draft budget an amount for this purpose which it considers appropriate.

(3) This section may not be interpreted as limiting a provincial legislature or municipal council in the exercise of its power to appropriate funds for the purpose of the province or municipality as it deems fit.

## ***Part 2: Social security scheme for children***

### **Administration of social security scheme for children**

**339.** (1) The Director-General must establish and administer a social security scheme within the financial resources as may from time to time be available to the Department, for the payment of the following grants and subsidies in respect of children:

- (a) a child grant;
- (b) a foster and court-ordered kinship care grant;
- (c) an informal kinship care grant;
- (d) an adoption grant;

- (e) an emergency court grant;
- (f) a supplementary special needs grant;
- (g) a subsidy to enable children with disabilities to obtain assistive devices;
- (h) fees to non-governmental organisations contracted to the State who, in terms of this Act, carry out services on behalf of the State;
- (i) subsidies to non-governmental organizations performing activities to implement programmes and projects giving effect to this Act;
- (i) a subsidy to encourage the provision of early childhood development services.

(2) All grants, subsidies and fees must be paid in accordance with this Chapter from money as may be appropriated annually by Parliament for the purpose of the social security scheme on the vote of the Department.

(3) The Minister must subject to the other provisions of this Chapter determine

—

- (a) the amount of each grant, subsidy or fee payable during a financial year;
- (b) the period for which and the time when such grant, subsidy or fee is to be paid;
- (c) the eligibility and assessment criteria for each grant or subsidy; and
- (d) appropriate accountability requirements to ensure that a grant, subsidy or fee is utilised for the purpose for which it is paid.

### **Provincial and municipal support in administration of social security scheme**

**340.** (1) The Director-General may –

- (a) by agreement with the provincial head of social development or a municipality assign aspects of the administration of the social security scheme mentioned in section 339 to the province or municipality; and
- (b) to the extent necessary to give effect to the agreement, transfer funds in accordance with

the annual Division of Revenue Act to the province or municipality subject to –

- (i) the Public Finance Management Act; and
- (ii) such conditions as the Director-General may determine or as may be specified in the annual Division of Revenue Act.

(2) It is a condition of the assignment of aspects of the administration of the social security scheme to a province or municipality in terms of subsection (1), that the province or municipality, when giving effect to the assignment, must apply this Act despite any other legislation applicable in the province or municipality relating to grants and subsidies in respect of children.<sup>1</sup>

- (3) This section does not affect the competence of a province or municipality –
  - (a) to administer its own social security schemes for children; or
  - (b) to pay grants or subsidies in respect of children from its own funds.

### **Child grant**

**341.** (1) The child grant is payable on a universal basis in respect of all children in need who are South African citizens and resident in the Republic, and must be paid to the primary care-giver of the child.

(2) The social security scheme mentioned in section **339** must be administered in such a way so as to ensure, in particular, that the child grant –

- (a) reaches child-headed households and other households where children, because of

---

<sup>1</sup> Note: The reason for this provision is that, as an Act constitutionally assigned to the provinces, Parliament cannot amend the Social Assistance Act, 1992, to regulate provincial involvement in the administration of the social security scheme provided for in this Chapter. The best way to get around this problem would be to “neutralise” the Social Assistance Act and to compel provinces to apply this Act in stead. The Social Assistance Act contains a number of very useful provisions which should also apply to this Chapter’s social security scheme, but these provisions could be incorporated into the Children’s Bill by way of regulations. See section 351 in this regard.

poverty, AIDS or chronic illness, are at risk of –

- (i) abandoning their education to take up adult responsibilities in the household;
- or
- (ii) leaving the home environment;
- (b) discourages children from leaving the home environment because of poverty, AIDS or chronic illness;
- (c) encourages children who because of poverty, AIDS or chronic illness have abandoned their education or have left the home environment, to resume their education or to return to their homes;
- (d) assists in enabling indigent parents and care-givers to care for their children in the home environment; and
- (e) assists child and youth care centres –
  - (i) in caring for children in the centre who become chronically ill;
  - (ii) in protecting children with AIDS in the centre from opportunistic infections;
  - and
  - (iii) in providing specialist care for children with disabilities or chronic illnesses in the centre.

#### **Foster and court-ordered kinship care grant**

**342.** (1) The foster and court-ordered kinship care grant is payable in respect of all children who are in foster care or kinship care and are resident in the Republic, and must be paid to –

- (a) the foster parent or kinship care-giver of the child; or
  - (b) if the foster parent or kinship care-giver is not the primary care-giver of the child, to the primary care-giver;
  - (c) the Department or a designated child protection organization in the case of a collective
-



foster care scheme.

(2) The child grant is not payable in respect of a child if the foster and court-ordered kinship care grant is payable in respect of the child.

### **Informal kinship care grant**

**343.** (1) Subject to the means test in terms of section **347**, the informal kinship care grant

—

- (a) is payable in respect of all children who are cared for in terms of informal kinship care arrangements, who are South African citizens and who are resident in the Republic; and
- (b) must be paid to the relative of the child who cares for the child.

(2) The informal kinship care grant is not payable in respect of a child if the child grant is payable and has been claimed or received in respect of the child.

### **Adoption grant**

**344.** (1) Subject to the means test in terms of section **347**, the adoption grant is payable in respect of all adoptive children who are South African citizens and who are resident in the Republic, and must be paid to the adoptive parent of the child.

(2) The adoption grant is payable in addition to the child grant payable in respect of the child.

### **Emergency court grant**

**345.** (1) Subject to the means test in terms of section **347**, the emergency court grant is payable by order of a child and family court in respect of a child who is —

- (a) resident in the Republic; and

(b) at risk of being removed into alternative care because of poverty.

(2) The emergency court grant must be paid to –

(a) the parent of the child; or

(b) if the parent is not the primary care-giver of the child, to the primary care-giver.

(3) The emergency court grant is payable for a maximum period of three months.

(4) The emergency court grant is not payable in respect of a child if the child grant, the foster care grant, the court-ordered kinship care grant, the informal kinship care grant or the adoption grant is payable in respect of the child.

### **Supplementary special needs grant**

**346.** (1) Subject to the means test in terms of section **347**, the supplementary special needs grant is payable in respect of all children who are South African citizens and have –

(a) chronic illnesses, including HIV/AIDS; or

(b) moderate to severe disabilities.

(2) The supplementary special needs grant must be paid to –

(a) the parent of the child; or

(b) if the parent is not the primary care-giver of the child, to the primary care-giver.

(3) The supplementary special needs grant is payable in addition to any other grant payable in respect of the child.

(4) Payment of a subsidy in respect of assistive devices does not preclude the payment of a supplementary special needs grant.

(5) The supplementary special needs grant is payable only after the degree of the child's chronic illness or disability has been assessed in terms of objective prescribed assessment procedures and criteria.

### **Means testing**

**347.** (1) The court-ordered kinship care grant, the informal kinship care grant, the adoption grant, the emergency court grant, or the supplementary special needs grant is payable only if –

- (a) the gross annual income of the recipient of the grant is less than an amount prescribed by regulation; and
- (b) the value of the net assets of the recipient does not exceed an amount prescribed by regulation.

(2) Different income and net asset values may be prescribed for different grants.

### **Subsidies for assistive devices**

**348.** (1) Subject to the means test in terms of section **347**, a subsidy to enable children with disabilities to obtain assistive devices of a kind prescribed by regulation, is payable in respect of children with disabilities who are South African citizens and resident in the Republic.

(2) The subsidy must, on submission of an invoice substantiating the purchase of an assistive device, be paid to –

- (a) the primary care-giver of the child, if the primary care-giver has paid the purchase price; or
- (b) the supplier, if the purchase price has not yet been paid.

**Subsidies or fees payable to designated child protection organisations engaged in implementing this Act**

**349.** (1) A subsidy or fee to promote the implementation of programmes and projects giving effect to this Act, including the national policy framework mentioned in section 5, is payable to all designated child protection organisations contracted to the state to assist in implementing such programmes and projects.

(2) In respect of children in child and youth care centres, the subsidy is payable in respect of each child in such facility in addition to the programme funding relating to the overall functioning of the centre.

**Proof of eligibility for grants and subsidies**

**350.** A person claiming a grant or subsidy in terms of this Chapter must at the time of the application or claim supply proof –

- (a) in the case of an individual, that that individual and the child in respect of whom the grant is claimed –
  - (i) are South African citizens; and
  - (ii) are resident in the Republic; and
- (b) in the case of a child and youth care centre, that –
  - (i) that centre is registered with the provincial department of social development in terms of section 214; and
  - (ii) the child in respect of whom the grant is claimed, is a South African citizen and resident in the centre; and
- (c) in the case of other designated child protection organisations, that that organisation is contracted to the state to implement programmes and projects giving effect to this Act.

**Regulations**

- 351.** The Minister may make regulations in terms of section **354** prescribing –
- (a) the manner in which the social security scheme referred to in section **339** must be administered;
  - (b) the manner in which and the places where persons may claim grants, subsidies or fees referred to in section **339**;
  - (c) the manner in which and the places where persons may receive payment of grants, subsidies or fees;
  - (d) the circumstances in which grants, subsidies or fees may be paid and the conditions that must be complied with for payment;
  - (e) the assessment procedure and criteria to be used for the consideration of grants or subsidies;
  - (f) the amounts of the grants, subsidies or fees payable;
  - (g) measures –
    - (i) to ensure proper financial management of the social security scheme and any grants made in terms of the scheme; and
    - (ii) to prevent fraudulent claims;
  - (h) minimum norms and standards for service delivery by designated child protection organisations in receipt of subsidies or fees engaged in implementing this Act;
  - (i) in the case of children in a child and youth care centre, the manner in which per capita and programme funding is to be determined;
  - (j) the stopping or suspension of the payment of grants or subsidies to persons who –
    - (i) have become ineligible for such grants or subsidies; or
    - (ii) do not utilise a grant or subsidy for the purpose for which it is paid;
  - (k) the recovery of payments from ineligible persons or persons not utilising a grant or subsidy for the purpose for which it is paid;
  - (l) the manner in which and the conditions on which appeals may be lodged against decisions of the Director-General in terms of this Chapter;

- (m) any matter dealt with in the Social Assistance Act, 1992 (Act No. 59 of 1992), concerning payments in respect of children, which is not covered in this Chapter; and
- (n) any other matter concerning the administration of the social security scheme referred to in section 339.

## **CHAPTER 24**

### **ENFORCEMENT OF THIS ACT**

#### **Inspection of child and youth care centres, partial care facilities, shelters and drop-in centres**

**352.** (1) A child and family court magistrate or a person authorised by the Director-General, a provincial head of social development or a municipality, may enter any child and youth care centre, partial care facility, shelter or drop-in centre or any place which on reasonable suspicion is being used as an unregistered child and youth care centre, partial care facility, shelter or drop-in centre, in order –

- (a) to inspect that centre, facility, shelter or place and its management; or
- (b) to observe or interview any child, or cause a child to be examined or assessed by a medical officer, social worker, psychologist or psychiatrist.

(2) (a) An identity card prescribed by regulation must be issued to each person authorised in terms of subsection (1).

(b) When inspecting such a centre, facility, shelter or place, a person authorised in terms of subsection (1) must, on demand, produce such identity card.

(3) A child and family court magistrate or a person authorised in terms of subsection (1) may for the purposes of that subsection –

- (a) determine whether the centre, facility, shelter or place complies with –
  - (i) the minimum norms and standards referred to in section **151, 227, or 250** applicable to it;
  - (ii) other minimum norms and standards as may be prescribed by regulation;
  - (iii) any structural, safety, health and other requirements of the municipality; and
  - (iv) the provisions of this Act;
- (b) require a person to disclose information, either orally or in writing, and either alone or in the presence of a witness, about any act or omission which, on reasonable suspicion, may constitute an offence in terms of this Act, or a breach of a provision of this Act or of a condition of registration, and require that any disclosure be made under oath or affirmation;
- (c) inspect, or question a person about, any record or document that may be relevant for the purpose of paragraph (b);
- (d) copy any record or document referred to in paragraph (c), or remove such record or document to make copies or extracts;
- (e) require a person to produce or deliver to a place specified by the child and family magistrate or authorised person, any record or document referred to in paragraph (c) for inspection;
- (f) inspect, question a person about, and if necessary remove, any article or substance which, on reasonable suspicion, may have been used in the commission of an offence in terms of this Act or in breaching a provision of this Act or of a condition of registration;
- (g) record information by any method, including by taking photographs or making videos; or
- (h) exercise any other power or carry out any other duty that may be prescribed by regulation.

(4) A child and family magistrate or person authorised in terms of subsection (1) must –

(a) provide a receipt for any record, document, article or substance removed in terms of subsection (2) (d) or (f); and

(b) return anything removed within a reasonable period unless seized for the purpose of evidence.

(5) (a) A child and family court magistrate must submit a report to the MEC for social development on any inspection carried out by that magistrate in terms of this section.

(b) A person authorised in terms of subsection (1) must submit a report to the Director-General, the provincial head of social development or a municipality, as may be appropriate, on any inspection carried out by that person in terms of this section.

## **Offences**

**353.** (1) A person is guilty of an offence if that person –

(a) commits an act in contravention of the prohibition set out in section **19** (3);

(b) contravenes a provision of section **44** (4), **102**, **108**, **124** (1), **130** (1), (2) or (3), **133**, **277** (1), **279**, **311**, **312** or **317** (1);

(c) fails to comply with a provision of section **80** (2), **130** (5), or **143**;

(d) fails to comply with a request in terms of section **80** (1);

(e) misappropriates money for which that person is accountable in terms of section **234** (3);

(f) fails to comply with section **107** (1), **146** (1), **214** (1) or **245** (1) after that person has been instructed by way of a notice of enforcement in terms of section **109**, **148**, **216** or **247** to comply with the relevant section;

(g) fails to stop operating an unregistered child and youth care centre, partial care facility, shelter or drop-in centre after that person has been instructed by way of a notice of



enforcement in terms of section **148, 216 or 247** to stop operating that child and youth care centre, partial care facility, shelter or drop-in centre;

(h) fails to stop providing early childhood development services after that person has been instructed by way of a notice of enforcement in terms of section **109** to stop providing those services;

(i) directly or indirectly counsels, induces or aids any child to whom leave of absence has been granted in terms of section **189**, not to return to the child and youth care centre or person in whose care or temporary safe care that child has been placed, or prevents the child from returning to that centre or person after the expiration of the period of leave or after the cancellation of such leave;

(j) hinders or obstructs –

(i) a police officer or designated social worker in the execution of a warrant issued in terms of section **169 (2)**;

(ii) a police officer, social worker or authorised officer when removing a child to temporary safe care in terms of section **170 (1)**;

(k) hinders or interferes with a person in the execution of official duties in terms of section **352**;

(l) fails to comply with a request of a person in the execution of official duties in terms of section **352** or furnishes false or misleading information to such a person when complying with such a request; or

(m) falsely professes to be a person authorised in terms of section **352** or an assistant of such a person.

(2) A person unfit to work with children is guilty of an offence if that person –

(a) operates or assists in any way in operating a partial care facility, child and youth care centre or a shelter or drop-in centre;

(b) assumes the foster care, kinship care or temporary safe care of a child; or

(c) applies for the foster care, kinship care, temporary safe care or adoption of a child.

(3) A parent or care-giver of a child is guilty of an offence if that parent or care-giver –

- (a) abuses or deliberately neglects the child;
- (b) abandons the child.

(4) A person who is legally liable to maintain a child is guilty of an offence if that person, while able to do so, fails to provide the child with adequate food, clothing, lodging, and medical aid.

(5) A person who is the owner, lessor, manager, tenant or occupier of any premises on which the commercial sexual exploitation of a child has occurred, is guilty of an offence if that person, within a reasonable of gaining information of that occurrence, fails to report the occurrence to the South African Police Service.

(6) A person convicted of an offence in terms of subsection (1), (2), (3), (4) or (5) is liable to a fine as may be determined in terms of applicable legislation, or to imprisonment for a period not exceeding ten years, or to both such fine and such imprisonment.

## **CHAPTER 25**

### **ADMINISTRATION OF ACT**

#### **Regulations**

**354.** (1) The Minister may make regulations prescribing –

- (a) any matter referred to in sections **112, 144, 180, 209, 230, 256, 280, 313 and 351**;
- (b) any matter that may be prescribed by regulation in terms of this Act;

- (c) codes of ethical practice for persons operating, and assisting in the operation of, child and youth care centres, partial care facilities, shelters and drop-in centres;
- (d) procedures for the interview of persons to be employed or engaged in child and youth care centres, partial care facilities, shelters and drop-in centres;
- (e) any other matter that may facilitate the implementation of this Act.

(2) Regulations made in terms of subsection (1) may –

- (a) apply –
  - (i) generally throughout the Republic or only in a specified area or category of areas;
  - (ii) generally to all persons or only to a specified category of persons; or
  - (iii) generally to all child and youth care centres, partial care facilities or shelters or drop-in centres or only to a specified category of such centres, facilities, shelters or drop-in centres; or
- (b) differentiate between different –
  - (i) areas or categories of areas;
  - (ii) persons or categories of persons; or
  - (iii) child and youth care centres, partial care facilities or shelters or drop-in centres or categories of such centres, facilities, shelters or drop-in centres.

(3) Regulations made in terms of subsection (1) may provide that any person who contravenes or fails to comply with a provision thereof is guilty of an offence and liable on conviction to –

- (a) imprisonment for a period not exceeding two years;
- (b) an appropriate fine; or
- (c) both a fine and imprisonment.

### **Delegation of powers and duties by Minister**

**355.** (1) The Minister may delegate any power or duty assigned to the Minister in terms of this Act to –

- (a) the Director-General;
- (b) an MEC responsible for social development, by agreement with the MEC; or
- (c) any organ of state, by agreement with that organ of state.

(2) A delegation in terms of subsection (1) –

- (a) is subject to any limitations, conditions and directions which the Minister may impose;
- (b) must be in writing;
- (c) may include the power to sub-delegate; and
- (d) does not divest the Minister of the responsibility concerning the exercise of the power or the performance of the duty.

(3) The Minister may confirm, vary or revoke any decision taken in consequence of a delegation or sub-delegation in terms of this section, subject to any rights that may have accrued to a person as a result of the decision.

(4) The Minister may –

- (a) not delegate a power or duty –
  - (i) to make regulations; or
  - (ii) to publish notices in the *Government Gazette*;
- (b) at any time withdraw a delegation.

### **Delegation of powers and duties by MECs for social development**

**356.** (1) An MEC for social development may delegate any power or duty assigned to

the MEC in terms of this Act to –

- (a) the provincial head of social development; or
- (b) any organ of state, by agreement with that organ of state.

(2) A delegation in terms of subsection (1) –

- (a) is subject to any limitations, conditions and directions which the MEC may impose;
- (b) must be in writing;
- (c) may include the power to sub-delegate; and
- (d) does not divest the MEC of the responsibility concerning the exercise of the power or the performance of the duty.

(3) The MEC may confirm, vary or revoke any decision taken in consequence of a delegation or sub-delegation in terms of this section, subject to any rights that may have accrued to a person as a result of the decision.

(4) The MEC may –

- (a) not delegate a power or duty to publish notices in the *Government Gazette*; and
- (b) at any time withdraw a delegation.

### **Delegation of powers and duties by Director-General and provincial heads of social development**

**357.** (1) The Director-General or a provincial head of social development may delegate any power or duty assigned to him or her in terms of this Act to –

- (a) an official in the public service;
- (b) any organ of state, by agreement with that organ of state.

- (2) A delegation in terms of subsection (1) –
- (a) is subject to any limitations, conditions and directions which the Director-General or the provincial head may impose;
  - (b) must be in writing;
  - (c) may include the power to sub-delegate, in the case of a delegation in terms of subsection (1) (b); and
  - (d) does not divest the Director-General or the provincial head of the responsibility concerning the exercise of the power or the performance of the duty.

- (3) The Director-General or the provincial head may –
- (a) confirm, vary or revoke any decision taken in consequence of a delegation or sub-delegation in terms of this section, subject to any rights that may have accrued to a person as a result of the decision; and
  - (b) at any time withdraw a delegation.

### **Outsourcing of services**

**358.** (1) The Minister or an MEC for social development in a province may, subject to the national policy framework referred to in section 5, by agreement with a designated child protection organisation or other appropriate person, assign the provision of any service that may or must be provided in terms of this Act, to that organisation or person.

(2) The Minister or MEC may delegate to such organisation or person such powers and duties in terms of this Act as may be required for the proper performance of the service.

(3) Section 355 or 356, as may be appropriate, and read with such changes as the context may require, applies in respect of any delegation in terms of subsection (2).

**Limitation of liability**

**359.** No organ of state, organisation or person is liable to any person and on any ground in respect of anything done in good faith in the administration of this Act or the exercise of a power or function conferred, assigned, delegated or imposed in terms of this Act.

**CHAPTER 26****MISCELLANEOUS MATTERS****Repeal of legislation**

**360.** The legislation referred to in the second column of Schedule 4 is hereby amended to the extent indicated in the third column of the Schedule.

**Transitional matters**

**361.** (1) Any thing done in terms of legislation repealed in terms of section 360 which can be done in terms of a provision of this Act, must be regarded as having been done in terms of that provision of this Act.

(2) (a) Despite section 360, a children's court designated in terms of section 4 (2) of the Children's Act 1960 (Act No. 33 of 1960), or section 5 of the Child Care Act, continues to function until it is abolished by the Minister of Justice by notice in the *Gazette*.

(b) Until it is abolished, a children's court referred to in paragraph (a) functions as if it were a child and family court established in terms of this Act, except that cases which were pending on the date on which section 360 takes effect must be disposed of in terms of the legislation applicable to such court immediately before that date.

**Short title and commencement**

**362.** (1) This Act is called the Children's Act, 2002, and takes effect on a date fixed by

the President by proclamation.

(2) Different dates may be determined in terms of subsection (1) for different provisions of this Act.



**SCHEDULE 1****CONVENTION COUNTRIES AND PRESCRIBED FOREIGN JURISDICTIONS**

<b>Column A: Convention countries</b>	<b>Column B: Prescribed foreign jurisdictions</b>

**SCHEDULE 2**

---

**HAGUE CONVENTION ON PROTECTION OF CHILDREN AND CO-OPERATION IN  
RESPECT OF INTERCOUNTRY ADOPTION (29 May 93)**

---

**(Table of Contents)**

- [PREAMBLE](#)
  - [CHAPTER I - SCOPE OF THE CONVENTION](#)
  - [CHAPTER II - REQUIREMENTS FOR INTERCOUNTRY ADOPTIONS](#)
  - [CHAPTER III - CENTRAL AUTHORITIES AND ACCREDITED BODIES](#)
  - [CHAPTER IV -- PROCEDURAL REQUIREMENTS IN INTERCOUNTRY ADOPTION](#)
  - [CHAPTER V -- RECOGNITION AND EFFECTS OF THE ADOPTION](#)
  - [CHAPTER VI -- GENERAL PROVISIONS](#)
  - [CHAPTER VII -- FINAL CLAUSES](#)
- 

- The States signatory to the present Convention,
  - Recognizing that the child, for the full and harmonious development of his or her personality, should grow up in a family environment, in an atmosphere of happiness, love and understanding,
  - Recalling that each State should take, as a matter of priority, appropriate measures to enable the child to remain in the care of his or her family of origin,
  - Recognizing that intercountry adoption may offer the advantage of a permanent family to a child for whom a suitable family cannot be found in his or her State of origin,
  - Convinced of the necessity to take measures to ensure that intercountry adoptions are made in the best interests of the child and with respect for his or her fundamental rights, and to prevent the abduction, the sale of, or traffic in children,
  - Desiring to establish common provisions to this effect, taking into account the principles set forth in international instruments, in particular the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child, of 20 November 1989, and the United Nations Declaration on Social and Legal Principles relating to the Protection and Welfare of Children, with Special Reference to Foster Placement and Adoption Nationally and Internationally (General Assembly Resolution 41/85, of 3 December 1986),
  - Have agreed upon the following provisions -
-

## CHAPTER I - SCOPE OF THE CONVENTION

### Article 1

- The objects of the present Convention are -
- (a) to establish safeguards to ensure that intercountry adoptions take place in the best interests of the child and with respect for his or her fundamental rights as recognized in international law;
- (b) to establish a system of co-operation amongst Contracting States to ensure that those safeguards are respected and thereby prevent the abduction, the sale of, or traffic in children;
- (c) to secure the recognition in Contracting States of adoptions made in accordance with the Convention.

### Article 2

- (1) The Convention shall apply where a child habitually resident in one Contracting State ('the State of origin') has been, is being, or is to be moved to another Contracting State ('the receiving State') either after his or her adoption in the State of origin by spouses or a person habitually resident in the receiving State, or for the purposes of such an adoption in the receiving State or in the State of origin.
- (2) The Convention covers only adoptions which create a permanent parent-child relationship.

### Article 3

- The Convention ceases to apply if the agreements mentioned in [Article 17, sub-paragraph c](#), have not been given before the child attains the age of eighteen years.

## CHAPTER II - REQUIREMENTS FOR INTERCOUNTRY ADOPTIONS

### Article 4

- An adoption within the scope of the Convention shall take place only if the competent authorities of the State of origin -
- (a) have established that the child is adoptable;
- (b) have determined, after possibilities for placement of the child within the State of origin have been given due consideration, that an intercountry adoption is in the child's best interests;
- (c) have ensured that
  - (1) the persons, institutions and authorities whose consent is necessary for adoption, have been counselled as may be necessary and duly informed of the effects of their consent, in particular whether or not an adoption will result in the termination of the legal relationship between the child and his or her family of origin,
  - (2) such persons, institutions and authorities have given their consent freely, in the required legal form, and expressed or evidenced in writing,

- (3) the consents have not been induced by payment or compensation of any kind and have not been withdrawn, and
  - (4) the consent of the mother, where required, has been given only after the birth of the child; and
- (d) have ensured, having regard to the age and degree of maturity of the child, that
  - (1) he or she has been counselled and duly informed of the effects of the adoption and of his or her consent to the adoption, where such consent is required,
  - (2) consideration has been given to the child's wishes and opinions,
  - (3) the child's consent to the adoption, where such consent is required, has been given freely, in the required legal form, and expressed or evidenced in writing, and
  - (4) such consent has not been induced by payment or compensation of any kind.

#### **Article 5**

- An adoption within the scope of the Convention shall take place only if the competent authorities of the receiving State -
- (a) have determined that the prospective adoptive parents are eligible and suited to adopt;
- (b) have ensured that the prospective adoptive parents have been counselled as maybe necessary; and
- (c) have determined that the child is or will be authorized to enter and reside permanently in that State.

---

### **CHAPTER III - CENTRAL AUTHORITIES AND ACCREDITED BODIES**

#### **Article 6**

- (1) A Contracting State shall designate a Central Authority to discharge the duties which are imposed by the Convention upon such authorities.
- (2) Federal States, States with more than one system of law or States having autonomous territorial units shall be free to appoint more than one Central Authority and to specify the territorial or personal extent of their functions. Where a State has appointed more than one Central Authority, it shall designate the Central Authority to which any communication may be addressed for transmission to the appropriate Central Authority within that State.

#### **Article 7**

- (1) Central Authorities shall co-operate with each other and promote co-operation amongst the competent authorities in their States to protect children and to achieve the other objects of the Convention.
- (2) They shall take directly all appropriate measures to -
  - (a) provide information as to the laws of their States concerning adoption and other

general information, such as statistics and standard forms;

- o (b) keep one another informed about the operation of the Convention and, as far as possible, eliminate any obstacles to its application.

#### **Article 8**

- Central Authorities shall take, directly or through public authorities, all appropriate measures to prevent improper financial or other gain in connection with an adoption and to deter all practices contrary to the objects of the Convention.

#### **Article 9**

- Central Authorities shall take, directly or through public authorities or other bodies duly accredited in their State, all appropriate measures, in particular to -
- (a) collect, preserve and exchange information about the situation of the child and the prospective adoptive parents, so far as is necessary to complete the adoption;
- (b) facilitate, follow and expedite proceedings with a view to obtaining the adoption;
- (c) promote the development of adoption counselling and post-adoption services in their States;
- (d) provide each other with general evaluation reports about experience with intercountry adoption;
- (e) reply, in so far as is permitted by the law of their State, to justified requests from other Central Authorities or public authorities for information about a particular adoption situation.

#### **Article 10**

- Accreditation shall only be granted to and maintained by bodies demonstrating their competence to carry out properly the tasks with which they may be entrusted.

#### **Article 11**

- An accredited body shall -
- (a) pursue only non-profit objectives according to such conditions and within such limits as may be established by the competent authorities of the State of accreditation;
- (b) be directed and staffed by persons qualified by their ethical standards and by training or experience to work in the field of intercountry adoption; and
- (c) be subject to supervision by competent authorities of that State as to its composition, operation and financial situation.

#### **Article 12**

- A body accredited in one Contracting State may act in another Contracting State only if the competent authorities of both States have authorized it to do so.

#### **Article 13**

- The designation of the Central Authorities and, where appropriate, the extent of their

functions, as well as the names and addresses of the accredited bodies shall be communicated by each Contracting State to the Permanent Bureau of the Hague Conference on Private International Law.

---

## **CHAPTER IV -- PROCEDURAL REQUIREMENTS IN INTERCOUNTRY ADOPTION**

### **Article 14**

- Persons habitually resident in a Contracting State, who wish to adopt a child habitually resident in another Contracting State, shall apply to the Central Authority in the State of their habitual residence.

### **Article 15**

- (1) If the Central Authority of the receiving State is satisfied that the applicants are eligible and suited to adopt, it shall prepare a report including information about their identity, eligibility and suitability to adopt, background, family and medical history, social environment reasons for adoption, ability to undertake an intercountry adoption, as well as the characteristics of the children for whom they would be qualified to care.
- (2) It shall transmit the report to the Central Authority of the State of origin.

### **Article 16**

- (1) If the Central Authority of the State of origin is satisfied that the child is adoptable, it shall --
  - (a) prepare a report including information about his or her identity, adoptability, background, social environment, family history, medical history including that of the child's family, and any special needs of the child;
  - (b) give due consideration to the child's upbringing and to his or her ethnic, religious and cultural background;
  - (c) ensure that consents have been obtained in accordance with [Article 4](#); and
  - (d) determine, on the basis in particular of the reports relating to the child and the prospective adoptive parents, whether the envisaged placement is in the best interests of the child.
- (2) It shall transmit to the Central Authority of the receiving State its report on the child, proof that the necessary consents have been obtained and the reasons for its determination on the placement, taking care not to reveal the identity of the mother and the father if, in the State of origin, these identities may not be disclosed.

### **Article 17**

- Any decision in the State of origin that a child should be entrusted to prospective adoptive parents may only be made if --

- (a) the Central Authority of that State has ensured that the prospective adoptive parents agree;
- (b) the Central Authority of the receiving State has approved such decision, where such approval is required by the law of that State or by the Central Authority of the State of origin;
- (c) the Central Authorities of both States have agreed that the adoption may proceed; and
- (d) it has been determined, in accordance with [Article 5](#), that the prospective adoptive parents are eligible and suited to adopt and that the child is or will be authorized to enter and reside permanently in the receiving State.

#### **Article 18**

- The Central Authorities of both States shall take all necessary steps to obtain permission for the child to leave the State of origin and to enter and reside permanently in the receiving State.

#### **Article 19**

- (1) The transfer of the child to the receiving State may only be carried out if the requirements of [Article 17](#) have been satisfied.
- (2) The Central Authorities of both States shall ensure that this transfer takes place in secure and appropriate circumstances and, if possible, in the company of the adoptive or prospective adoptive parents.
- (3) If the transfer of the child does not take place, the reports referred to in Articles 15 and 16 are to be sent back to the authorities who forwarded them.

#### **Article 20**

- The Central Authorities shall keep each other informed about the adoption process and the measures taken to complete it, as well as about the progress of the placement if a probationary period is required.

#### **Article 21**

- (1) Where the adoption is to take place after the transfer of the child to the receiving State and it appears to the Central Authority of that State that the continued placement of the child with the prospective adoptive parents is not in the child's best interests, such Central Authority shall take the measures necessary to protect the child, in particular --
  - (a) to cause the child to be withdrawn from the prospective adoptive parents and to arrange temporary care;
  - (b) in consultation with the Central Authority of the State of origin, to arrange without delay a new placement of the child with a view to adoption or, if this is not appropriate, to arrange alternative long-term care; an adoption shall not take place until the Central Authority of the State of origin has been duly informed concerning the new prospective adoptive parents;
  - (c) as a last resort, to arrange the return of the child, if his or her interests so require.

- (2) Having regard in particular to the age and degree of maturity of the child, he or she shall be consulted and, where appropriate, his or her consent obtained in relation to measures to be taken under this Article.

## **Article 22**

- (1) The functions of a Central Authority under this Chapter may be performed by public authorities or by bodies accredited under [Chapter III](#), to the extent permitted by the law of its State.
- (2) Any Contracting State may declare to the depositary of the Convention that the functions of the Central Authority under Articles 15 to 21 may be performed in that State, to the extent permitted by the law and subject to the supervision of the competent authorities of that State, also by bodies or persons who --
  - (a) meet the requirements of integrity, professional competence, experience and accountability of that State; and
  - (b) are qualified by their ethical standards and by training or experience to work in the field of intercountry adoption.
- (3) A Contracting State which makes the declaration provided for in paragraph 2 shall keep the Permanent Bureau of the Hague Conference on Private International Law informed of the names and addresses of these bodies and persons.
- (4) Any Contracting State may declare to the depositary of the Convention that adoptions of children habitually resident in its territory may only take place if the functions of the Central Authorities are performed in accordance with paragraph 1.
- (5) Notwithstanding any declaration made under paragraph 2, the reports provided for in Articles 15 and 16 shall, in every case, be prepared under the responsibility of the Central Authority or other authorities or bodies in accordance with paragraph 1.

---

## **CHAPTER V -- RECOGNITION AND EFFECTS OF THE ADOPTION**

### **Article 23**

- (1) An adoption certified by the competent authority of the State of the adoption as having been made in accordance with the Convention shall be recognized by operation of law in the other Contracting States. The certificate shall specify when and by whom the agreements under [Article 17, sub-paragraph c](#), were given.
- (2) Each Contracting State shall, at the time of signature, ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, notify the depositary of the Convention of the identity and the functions of the authority or the authorities which, in that State, are competent to make the certification. It shall also notify the depositary of any modification in the designation of these authorities.



**Article 24**

- The recognition of an adoption may be refused in a Contracting State only if the adoption is manifestly contrary to its public policy, taking into account the best interests of the child.

**Article 25**

- Any Contracting State may declare to the depositary of the Convention that it will not be bound under this Convention to recognize adoptions made in accordance with an agreement concluded by application of [Article 39, paragraph 2](#).

**Article 26**

- (1) The recognition of an adoption includes recognition of
  - (a) the legal parent-child relationship between the child and his or her adoptive parents;
  - (b) parental responsibility of the adoptive parents for the child;
  - (c) the termination of a pre-existing legal relationship between the child and his or her mother and father, if the adoption has this effect in the Contracting State where it was made.
- (2) In the case of an adoption having the effect of terminating a pre-existing legal parent-child relationship, the child shall enjoy in the receiving State, and in any other Contracting State where the adoption is recognized, rights equivalent to those resulting from adoptions having this effect in each such State.
- (3) The preceding paragraphs shall not prejudice the application of any provision more favourable for the child, in force in the Contracting State which recognizes the adoption.

**Article 27**

- (1) Where an adoption granted in the State of origin does not have the effect of terminating a pre-existing legal parent-child relationship, it may, in the receiving State which recognizes the adoption under the Convention, be converted into an adoption having such an effect --
  - (a) if the law of the receiving State so permits; and
  - (b) if the consents referred to in [Article 4, sub-paragraphs c and d](#) , have been or are given for the purpose of such an adoption.
- (2) [Article 23](#) applies to the decision converting the adoption.

---

**CHAPTER VI -- GENERAL PROVISIONS**
**Article 28**

- The Convention does not affect any law of a State of origin which requires that the adoption of a child habitually resident within that State take place in that State or which prohibits the child's placement in, or transfer to, the receiving State prior to adoption.

**Article 29**

- There shall be no contact between the prospective adoptive parents and the child's parents or any other person who has care of the child until the requirements of [Article 4, sub-paragraphs a to c](#), and [Article 5, sub-paragraph a](#), have been met, unless the adoption takes place within a family or unless the contact is in compliance with the conditions established by the competent authority of the State of origin.

#### **Article 30**

- (1) The competent authorities of a Contracting State shall ensure that information held by them concerning the child's origin, in particular information concerning the identity of his or her parents, as well as the medical history, is preserved.
- (2) They shall ensure that the child or his or her representative has access to such information, under appropriate guidance, in so far as is permitted by the law of that State.

#### **Article 31**

- Without prejudice to [Article 30](#), personal data gathered or transmitted under the Convention, especially data referred to in Articles 15 and 16, shall be used only for the purposes for which they were gathered or transmitted.

#### **Article 32**

- (1) No one shall derive improper financial or other gain from an activity related to an intercountry adoption.
- (2) Only costs and expenses, including reasonable professional fees of persons involved in the adoption, may be charged or paid.
- (3) The directors, administrators and employees of bodies involved in an adoption shall not receive remuneration which is unreasonably high in relation to services rendered.

#### **Article 33**

- A competent authority which finds that any provision of the Convention has not been respected or that there is a serious risk that it may not be respected, shall immediately inform the Central Authority of its State. This Central Authority shall be responsible for ensuring that appropriate measures are taken.

#### **Article 34**

- If the competent authority of the State of destination of a document so requests, a translation certified as being in conformity with the original must be furnished. Unless otherwise provided, the costs of such translation are to be borne by the prospective adoptive parents.

#### **Article 35**

- The competent authorities of the Contracting States shall act expeditiously in the process of adoption.

#### **Article 36**

- In relation to a State which has two or more systems of law with regard to adoption applicable in different territorial units --
- (a) any reference to habitual residence in that State shall be construed as referring to habitual residence in a territorial unit of that State;
- (b) any reference to the law of that State shall be construed as referring to the law in force in the relevant territorial unit;
- (c) any reference to the competent authorities or to the public authorities of that State shall be construed as referring to those authorized to act in the relevant territorial unit;
- (d) any reference to the accredited bodies of that State shall be construed as referring to bodies accredited in the relevant territorial unit.

#### **Article 37**

- In relation to a State which with regard to adoption has two or more systems of law applicable to different categories of persons, any reference to the law of that State shall be construed as referring to the legal system specified by the law of that State.

#### **Article 38**

- A State within which different territorial units have their own rules of law in respect of adoption shall not be bound to apply the Convention where a State with a unified system of law would not be bound to do so.

#### **Article 39**

- (1) The Convention does not affect any international instrument to which Contracting States are Parties and which contains provisions on matters governed by the Convention, unless a contrary declaration is made by the States Parties to such instrument.
- (2) Any Contracting State may enter into agreements with one or more other Contracting States, with a view to improving the application of the Convention in their mutual relations. These agreements may derogate only from the provisions of Articles 14 to 16 and 18 to 21. The States which have concluded such an agreement shall transmit a copy to the depositary of the Convention.

#### **Article 40**

- No reservation to the Convention shall be permitted.

#### **Article 41**

- The Convention shall apply in every case where an application pursuant to [Article 14](#) has been received after the Convention has entered into force in the receiving State and the State of origin.

#### **Article 42**

- The Secretary General of the Hague Conference on Private International Law shall at regular

intervals convene a Special Commission in order to review the practical operation of the Convention.

---

## **CHAPTER VII -- FINAL CLAUSES**

### **Article 43**

- (1) The Convention shall be open for signature by the States which were Members of the Hague Conference on Private International Law at the time of its Seventeenth Session and by the other States which participated in that Session.
- (2) It shall be ratified, accepted or approved and the instruments of ratification, acceptance or approval shall be deposited with the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Kingdom of the Netherlands, depositary of the Convention.

### **Article 44**

- (1) Any other State may accede to the Convention after it has entered into force in accordance with [Article 46, paragraph 1](#).
- (2) The instrument of accession shall be deposited with the depositary.
- (3) Such accession shall have effect only as regards the relations between the acceding State and those Contracting States which have not raised an objection to its accession in the six months after the receipt of the notification referred to in [sub-paragraph b of Article 48](#). Such an objection may also be raised by States at the time when they ratify, accept or approve the Convention after an accession. Any such objection shall be notified to the depositary.

### **Article 45**

- (1) If a State has two or more territorial units in which different systems of law are applicable in relation to matters dealt with in the Convention, it may at the time of signature, ratification, acceptance, approval or accession declare that this Convention shall extend to all its territorial units or only to one or more of them and may modify this declaration by submitting another declaration at any time.
- (2) Any such declaration shall be notified to the depositary and shall state expressly the territorial units to which the Convention applies.
- (3) If a State makes no declaration under this Article, the Convention is to extend to all territorial units of that State.

### **Article 46**

- (1) The Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiration of three months after the deposit of the third instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval referred to in [Article 43](#).
- (2) Thereafter the Convention shall enter into force --

- (a) for each State ratifying, accepting or approving it subsequently, or acceding to it, on the first day of the month following the expiration of three months after the deposit of its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession;
- (b) for a territorial unit to which the Convention has been extended in conformity with [Article 45](#), on the first day of the month following the expiration of three months after the notification referred to in that Article.

#### **Article 47**

- (1) A State Party to the Convention may denounce it by a notification in writing addressed to the depositary.
- (2) The denunciation takes effect on the first day of the month following the expiration of twelve months after the notification is received by the depositary. Where a longer period for the denunciation to take effect is specified in the notification, the denunciation takes effect upon the expiration of such longer period after the notification is received by the depositary.

#### **Article 48**

- The depositary shall notify the States Members of the Hague Conference on Private International Law, the other States which participated in the Seventeenth Session and the States which have acceded in accordance with [Article 44](#), of the following --
- (a) the signatures, ratifications, acceptances and approvals referred to in [Article 43](#);
- (b) the accessions and objections raised to accessions referred to in [Article 44](#);
- (c) the date on which the Convention enters into force in accordance with [Article 46](#);
- (d) the declarations and designations referred to in Articles 22, 23, 25 and 45;
- (e) the agreements referred to in [Article 39](#);
- (f) the denunciations referred to in [Article 47](#).
- In witness whereof the undersigned, being duly authorized thereto, have signed this Convention.
- Done at The Hague, on the \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_ 19 \_\_\_, in the English and French languages, both texts being equally authentic, in a single copy which shall be deposited in the archives of the Government of the Kingdom of the Netherlands, and of which a certified copy shall be sent, through diplomatic channels, to each of the States Members of the Hague Conference on Private International Law at the date of its Seventeenth Session and to each of the other States which participated in that Session.

### SCHEDULE 3

---

## HAGUE CONVENTION ON THE CIVIL ASPECTS OF INTERNATIONAL CHILD ABDUCTION

---

- **(Table of Contents)**

- PREAMBLE
- CHAPTER I: SCOPE OF THE CONVENTION
- CHAPTER II: CENTRAL AUTHORITIES
- CHAPTER III: RETURN OF CHILDREN
- CHAPTER IV: RIGHTS OF ACCESS
- CHAPTER V: GENERAL PROVISIONS
- CHAPTER VI: FINAL CLAUSES

- 
- The States signatory to the present Convention, Firmly convinced that the interests of children are of paramount importance in matters relating to their custody, Desiring to protect children internationally from the harmful effects of their wrongful removal or retention and to establish procedures to ensure their prompt return to the State of their habitual residence, as well as to secure protection for rights of access,
  - Have resolved to conclude a Convention to this effect, and have agreed upon the following provisions -
  - **CHAPTER I - SCOPE OF THE CONVENTION**
  - *Article 1*
  - The objects of the present Convention are -
    - a. to secure the prompt return of children wrongfully removed to or retained in any Contracting State; and
    - b. to ensure that rights of custody and of access under the law of one Contracting State are effectively respected in other Contracting States.
  - *Article 2*
  - Contracting States shall take all appropriate measures to secure within their territories the implementation of the objects of the Convention. For this purpose they shall use the most expeditious procedures available.
  - *Article 3*

- The removal or the retention of a child is to be considered wrongful where -
- a. it is in breach of rights of custody attributed to a person, an institution or any other body, either jointly or alone, under the law of the State in which the child was habitually resident immediately before the removal or retention;
- and
- b. at the time of removal or retention those rights were actually exercised, either jointly or alone, or would have been so exercised but for the removal or retention.
- The rights of custody mentioned in sub-paragraph a above, may arise in particular by operation of law or by reason of a judicial or administrative decision, or by reason of an agreement having legal effect under the law of that State.
- **Article 4**
- The Convention shall apply to any child who was habitually resident in a Contracting State immediately before any breach of custody or access rights.
- The Convention shall cease to apply when the child attains the age of 16 years.
- **Article 5**
- For the purposes of this Convention -
- a. 'rights of custody' shall include rights relating to the care of the person of the child and, in particular, the right to determine the child's place of residence;
- b. 'rights of access' shall include the right to take a child for a limited period of time to a place other than the child's habitual residence.
- **CHAPTER II - CENTRAL AUTHORITIES**
- **Article 6**
- A Contracting State shall designate a Central Authority to discharge the duties which are imposed by the Convention upon such authorities.
- Federal States, States with more than one system of law or States having autonomous territorial organizations shall be free to appoint more than one Central Authority and to specify the territorial extent of their powers. Where a State has appointed more than one Central Authority, it shall designate the Central Authority to which applications may be addressed for transmission to the appropriate Central Authority within that State.
- **Article 7**
- Central Authorities shall co-operate with each other and promote co-operation amongst the competent authorities in their respective States to secure the prompt return of children and to achieve the other objects of this Convention.
- In particular, either directly or through any intermediary, they shall take all appropriate measures -

- a. to discover the whereabouts of a child who has been wrongfully removed or retained;
- b. to prevent further harm to the child or prejudice to interested parties by taking or causing to be taken provisional measures;
- c. to secure the voluntary return of the child or to bring about an amicable resolution of the issues;
- d. to exchange, where desirable, information relating to the social background of the child;
- e. to provide information of a general character as to the law of their State in connection with the application of the Convention;
- f. to initiate or facilitate the institution of judicial or administrative proceedings with a view to obtaining the return of the child and, in a proper case, to make arrangements for organizing or securing the effective exercise of rights of access;
- g. where the circumstances so require, to provide or facilitate the provision of legal aid and advice, including the participation of legal counsel and advisers;
- h. to provide such administrative arrangements as may be necessary and appropriate to secure the safe return of the child;
- i. to keep other each other informed with respect to the operation of this Convention and, as far as possible, to eliminate any obstacles to its application.
- **CHAPTER III - RETURN OF CHILDREN**
- *Article 8*
- Any person, institution or other body claiming that a child has been removed or retained in breach of custody rights may apply either to the Central Authority of the child's habitual residence or to the Central Authority of any other Contracting State for assistance in securing the return of the child.
- The application shall contain -
  - a. information concerning the identity of the applicant, of the child and of the person alleged to have removed or retained the child;
  - b. where available, the date of birth of the child;
  - c. the grounds on which the applicant's claim for return of the child is based;
  - d. all available information relating to the whereabouts of the child and the identity of the person with whom the child is presumed to be.
- The application may be accompanied or supplemented by -
  - e. an authenticated copy of any relevant decision or agreement;
  - f. a certificate or an affidavit emanating from a Central Authority, or other competent authority of the State of the child's habitual residence, or from a qualified person, concerning the relevant law of that State;



- g. any other relevant document.
- ***Article 9***
- If the Central Authority which receives an application referred to in Article 8 has reason to believe that the child is in another Contracting State, it shall directly and without delay transmit the application to the Central Authority of that Contracting State and inform the requesting Central Authority, or the applicant, as the case may be.
- ***Article 10***
- The Central Authority of the State where the child is shall take or cause to be taken all appropriate measures in order to obtain the voluntary return of the child.
- ***Article 11***
- The judicial or administrative authorities of Contracting States shall act expeditiously in proceedings for the return of children.
- If the judicial or administrative authority concerned has not reached a decision within six weeks from the date of commencement of the proceedings, the applicant or the Central Authority of the requested State, on its own initiative or if asked by the Central Authority of the requesting State, shall have the right to request the Central Authority of the requested State, that Authority shall transmit the reply to the Central Authority of the requesting State, or to the applicant, as the case may be.
- ***Article 12***
- Where a child has been wrongfully removed or retained in terms of Article 3 and, at the date of the commencement of the proceedings before the judicial or administrative authority of the Contracting State where the child is, a period of less than one year has elapsed from the date of the wrongful removal or retention, the authority concerned shall order the return of the child forthwith.
- The judicial or administrative authority, even where the proceedings have been commenced after the expiration of the period of one year referred to in the preceding paragraph, shall also order the return of the child, unless it is demonstrated that the child is now settled in its new environment.
- Where the judicial or administrative authority in the requested State has reason to believe that the child has been taken to another State, it may stay the proceedings or dismiss the application for the return of the child.
- ***Article 13***
- Notwithstanding the provisions of the preceding Article, the judicial or administrative authority of the requested State is not bound to order the return of the child if the person, institution or other body which opposes its return establishes that -

- a. the person, institution or other body having the care of the person of the child was not actually exercising the custody rights at the time of removal or retention, or had consented to or subsequently acquiesced in the removal or retention; or
- b. there is a grave risk that his or her return would expose the child to physical or psychological harm or otherwise place the child in an intolerable situation.
- The judicial or administrative authority may also refuse to order the return of the child if it finds that the child objects to being returned and has attained an age and degree of maturity at which it is appropriate to take account of its views.
- In considering the circumstances referred to in this Article, the judicial and administrative authorities shall take into account the information relating to the social background of the child provided by the Central Authority or other competent authority of the child's habitual residence.
- ***Article 14***
- In ascertaining whether there has been a wrongful removal or retention within the meaning of Article 3, the judicial or administrative authorities of the requested State may take notice directly of the law of, and of judicial or administrative decisions, formally recognized or not in the State of the habitual residence of the child, without recourse to the specific procedures for the proof of that law or for the recognition of foreign decisions which would otherwise be applicable.
- ***Article 15***
- The judicial or administrative authorities of a Contracting State may, prior to the making of an order for the return of the child, request that the applicant obtain from the authorities of the State of the habitual residence of the child a decision or other determination that the removal or retention was wrongful within the meaning of Article 3 of the Convention, where such a decision or determination may be obtained in that State. The Central Authorities of the Contracting States shall so far as practicable assist applicants to obtain such a decision or determination.
- ***Article 16***
- After receiving notice of a wrongful removal or retention of a child in the sense of Article 3, the judicial or administrative authorities of the Contracting State to which the child has been removed or in which it has been retained shall not decide on the merits of rights of custody until it has been determined that the child is not to be returned under this Convention or unless an application under the Convention is not lodged within a reasonable time following receipt of the notice.
- ***Article 17***

- The sole fact that a decision relating to custody has been given in or is entitled to recognition in the requested State shall not be a ground for refusing to return a child under this Convention, but the judicial or administrative authorities of the requested State may take account of the reasons for that decision in applying this Convention.
- **Article 18**
- The provisions of this Chapter do not limit the power of a judicial or administrative authority to order the return of the child at any time.
- **Article 19**
- A decision under this Convention concerning the return of the child shall not be taken to be determination on the merits of any custody issue.
- **Article 20**
- The return of the child under the provision of Article 12 may be refused if this would not be permitted by the fundamental principles of the requested State relating to the protection of human rights and fundamental freedoms.
- **CHAPTER VI - RIGHTS OF ACCESS**
- **Article 21**
- An application to make arrangements for organizing or securing the effective exercise of rights of access may be presented to the Central Authorities of the Contracting States in the same way as an application for the return of a child.
- The Central Authorities are bound by the obligations of co-operation which are set forth in Article 7 to promote the peaceful enjoyment of access rights and the fulfillment of any conditions to which the exercise of such rights may be subject. The Central Authorities shall take steps to remove, as far as possible, all obstacles to the exercise of such rights. The Central Authorities, either directly or through intermediaries, may initiate or assist in the institution of proceedings with a view to organizing or protecting these rights and securing respect for the conditions to which the exercise of these rights may be subject.
- **Chapter v - general provisions**
- **Article 22**
- No security, bond or deposit, however described, shall be required to guarantee the payment of costs and expenses in the judicial or administrative proceedings falling within the scope of this Convention.
- **Article 23**
- No legalization or similar formality may be required in the context of this Convention.
- **Article 24**
- Any application, communication or other document sent to the Central Authority of the

requested State shall be in the original language, and shall be accompanied by a translation into the official language or one of the official languages of the requested State or, where that is not feasible, a translation into French or English.

- However, a Contracting State may, by making a reservation in accordance with Article 42, object to the use of either French or English, but not both, in any application, communication or other document sent to its Central Authority.
- *Article 25*
- Nationals of the Contracting States and persons who are habitually resident within those States shall be entitled in matters concerned with the application of this Convention to legal aid and advice in any other Contracting State on the same conditions as if they themselves were nationals of and habitually resident in that State.
- *Article 26*
- Each Central Authority shall bear its own costs in applying this Convention.
- Central Authorities and other public services of Contracting States shall not impose any charges in relation to applications submitted under this Convention. In particular, they may not require any payment from the applicant towards the costs and expenses of the proceedings or, where applicable, those arising from the participation of legal counsel or advisers. However, they may require the payment of the expenses incurred or to be incurred in implementing the return of the child.
- However, a Contracting State may, by making a reservation in accordance with Article 42, declare that it shall not be bound to assume any costs referred to in the preceding paragraph resulting from the participation of legal counsel or advisers or from court proceedings, except insofar as those costs may be covered by its system of legal aid and advice.
- Upon ordering the return of a child or issuing an order concerning rights of access under this Convention, the judicial or administrative authorities may, where appropriate, direct the person who removed or retained the child, or who prevented the exercise of rights of access, to pay necessary expenses incurred by or on behalf of the applicant, including travel expenses, any costs incurred or payments made for locating the child, the costs of legal representation of the applicant, and those of returning the child.
- *Article 27*
- When it is manifest that the requirements of this Convention are not fulfilled or that the application is otherwise not well founded, a Central Authority is not bound to accept the application. In that case, the Central Authority shall forthwith inform the applicant or the Central Authority through which the application was submitted, as the case may be, of its reasons.

- *Article 28*
- A Central Authority may require that the application be accompanied by a written authorization empowering it to act on behalf of the applicant, or to designate a representative so to act.
- *Article 29*
- This Convention shall not preclude any person, institution or body who claims that there has been a breach of custody or access rights within the meaning of Article 3 or 21 from applying directly to the judicial or administrative authorities of a Contracting State, whether or not under the provisions of this Convention.
- *Article 30*
- Any application submitted to the Central Authorities or directly to the judicial or administrative authorities of a Contracting State in accordance with the terms of this Convention, together with documents and any other information appended thereto or provided by a Central Authority, shall be admissible in the courts or administrative authorities of the Contracting States.
- *Article 31*
- In relation to a State which in matters of custody of children has two or more systems of law applicable in different territorial units -
  - a. any reference to habitual residence in that State shall be construed as referring to habitual residence in a territorial unit of that State;
  - b. any reference to the law of the State of habitual residence shall be construed as referring to the law of the territorial unit in that State where the child habitually resides.
- *Article 32*
- In relation to a State which in matters of custody of children has two or more systems of law applicable to different categories of persons, any reference to the law of that State shall be construed as referring to the legal system specified by the law of that State.
- *Article 33*
- A State within which different territorial units have their own rules of law in respect of custody of children shall not be bound to apply this Convention where a State with a unified system of law would not be bound to do so.
- *Article 34*
- This Convention shall take priority in matters within its scope over the Convention of 5 October 1961 concerning the powers of authorities and the law applicable in respect of the protection of minors, as between Parties to both Conventions. Otherwise the present Convention shall not restrict the application of an international instrument in force between

the State of origin and the State addressed or other law of the State addressed for the purposes of obtaining the return of a child who has been wrongfully removed or retained or of organizing access rights.

- ***Article 35***

- This Convention shall apply as between Contracting States only to wrongful removals or retentions occurring after its entry into force in those States.
- Where a declaration has been made under Article 39 or 40, the reference in the preceding paragraph to a Contracting State shall be taken to refer to the territorial unit or units in relation to which this Convention applies.

- ***Article 36***

- Nothing in this Convention shall prevent two or more Contracting State, in order to limit the restrictions to which the return of the child may be subject, from agreeing among themselves to derogate from any provision of this Convention which may imply such a restriction.

- **CHAPTER VI - FINAL CLAUSES**

- ***Article 37***

- The Convention shall be open for signature by the States which were Members of the Hague Conference on Private International Law at the time of its Fourteenth Session.
- It shall be ratified, accepted or approved and the instruments of ratification, acceptance or approval shall be deposited with the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Kingdom of the Netherlands.

- ***Article 38***

- Any other State may accede to the Convention. The instrument of accession shall be deposited with the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Kingdom of the Netherlands.
- The Convention shall enter into force for a State acceding to it on the first day of the third calendar month after the deposit of its instrument of accession.
- The accession will have effect only as regards the relations between the acceding State and such Contracting States as will have declared their acceptance of the accession. Such a declaration will also have to be made by any Member State ratifying, accepting or approving the Convention after an accession. Such declaration shall be deposited at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Kingdom of the Netherlands; this Ministry shall forward, through diplomatic channels, a certified copy to each of the Contracting States.
- The Convention will enter into force as between the acceding State and the State that has declared its acceptance of the accession on the first day of the third calendar month after the deposit of the declaration of acceptance.

- ***Article 39***

- Any State may, at the time of signature, ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, declare that the Convention shall extend to all the territories for the international relations of which it is responsible, or to one or more of them. Such a declaration shall take effect at the time the Convention enters into force for that State.
- Such declaration, as well as any subsequent extension, shall be notified to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Kingdom of the Netherlands.
- **Article 40**
- If a Contracting State has two or more territorial units in which different systems of law are applicable in relation to matters dealt with in this Convention, it may at the time of signature, ratification, acceptance, approval or accession declare that this Convention shall extend to all its territorial units or only to one or more of them and may modify this declaration by submitting another declaration at any time.
- Any such declaration shall be notified to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Kingdom of the Netherlands and shall state expressly the territorial units to which the Convention applies.
- **Article 41**
- Where a Contracting State has a system of government under which executive, judicial and legislative powers are distributed between central and other authorities within that State, its signature or ratification, acceptance or approval of, or accession to this Convention, or its making of any declaration in terms of Article 40 shall carry no implication as to the internal distribution of powers within that State.
- **Article 42**
- Any State may, not later than the time of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, or at the time of making a declaration in terms of Article 39 or 40, make one or both of the reservations provided for in Article 24 and Article 26, third paragraph. No other reservations shall be permitted.
- Any State may at any time withdraw a reservation it has made. The withdrawal shall be notified to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Kingdom of the Netherlands. The reservation shall cease to have effect on the first day of the third calendar month after the notification referred to in the preceding paragraph.
- **Article 43**
- The Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the third calendar month after the deposit of the third instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession referred to in Articles 37 and 38.
- Thereafter the Convention shall enter into force -
- 1. for each State ratifying, accepting, approving or acceding to it subsequently, on the first day

of the third calendar month after the deposit of its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession;

- 2. for any territory or territorial unit to which the Convention has been extended in conformity with Article 39 or 40, on the first day of the third calendar month after the notification referred to in that Article.
- **Article 44**
- The Convention shall remain in force for five years from the date of its entry into force in accordance with the first paragraph of Article 43 even for States which subsequently have ratified, accepted, approved it or acceded to it.
- If there has been no denunciation, it shall be renewed tacitly every five years.
- Any denunciation shall be notified to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Kingdom of the Netherlands at least six months before the expiry of the five year period. It may be limited to certain of the territories or territorial units to which the Convention applies.
- The denunciation shall have effect only as regards the State which has notified it. The Convention shall remain in force for the other Contracting States.
- **Article 45**
- The Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Kingdom of the Netherlands shall notify the States Members of the Conference, and the States which have acceded in accordance with Article 38, of the following -
  - 1. the signatures and ratifications, acceptances and approvals referred to in Article 37;
  - 2. the accession referred to in Article 38;
  - 3. the date on which the Convention enters into force in accordance with Article 43;
  - 4. the extensions referred to in Article 39;
  - 5. the declarations referred to in Articles 38 and 40;
  - 6. the reservations referred to in Article 24 and Article 26, third paragraph, and the withdrawals referred to in Article 42;
  - 7. the denunciation referred to in Article 44. In witness whereof the undersigned, being duly authorized thereto, have signed this Convention.
- Done at The Hague, on the 25th day of October, 1980, in the English and French languages, both texts being equally authentic, in a single copy which shall be deposited in the archives of the Government of the Kingdom of the Netherlands, and of which a certified copy shall be sent, through diplomatic channels, to each of the States Members of the Hague Conference on Private International Law at the date of its Fourteenth Session.



## SCHEDULE 4

### TEXT OF THE UN PROTOCOL TO PREVENT TRAFFICKING IN PERSONS

**Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, Especially Women and Children, Supplementing the United Nations Convention Against Transnational Organized Crime, G.A. res. 55/25, annex II, 55 U.N. GAOR Supp. (No. 49) at 60, U.N. Doc. A/45/49 (Vol. I) (2001).**

#### Preamble

*The States Parties to this Protocol,*

*Declaring* that effective action to prevent and combat trafficking in persons, especially women and children, requires a comprehensive international approach in the countries of origin, transit and destination that includes measures to prevent such trafficking, to punish the traffickers and to protect the victims of such trafficking, including by protecting their internationally recognized human rights,

*Taking into account* the fact that, despite the existence of a variety of international instruments containing rules and practical measures to combat the exploitation of persons, especially women and children, there is no universal instrument that addresses all aspects of trafficking in persons,

*Concerned* that, in the absence of such an instrument, persons who are vulnerable to trafficking will not be sufficiently protected,

*Recalling* General Assembly resolution 53/111 of 9 December 1998, in which the Assembly decided to establish an open-ended intergovernmental ad hoc committee for the purpose of elaborating a comprehensive international convention against transnational organized crime and of discussing the elaboration of, inter alia, an international instrument addressing trafficking in women and children,

*Convinced* that supplementing the United Nations Convention against Transnational Organized Crime with an international instrument for the prevention, suppression and punishment of trafficking in persons, especially women and children, will be useful in preventing and combating that crime,

*Have agreed as follows:*

#### **I. General provisions**

##### *Article 1*

*Relation with the United Nations Convention against Transnational Organized Crime*

1. This Protocol supplements the United Nations Convention against Transnational Organized Crime. It shall be interpreted together with the Convention.

2. The provisions of the Convention shall apply, *mutatis mutandis*, to this Protocol unless otherwise provided herein.

3. The offences established in accordance with article 5 of this Protocol shall be regarded as offences established in accordance with the Convention.

## *Article 2*

### *Statement of purpose*

The purposes of this Protocol are:

- (a) To prevent and combat trafficking in persons, paying particular attention to women and children;
- (b) To protect and assist the victims of such trafficking, with full respect for their human rights; and
- (c) To promote cooperation among States Parties in order to meet those objectives.

## *Article 3*

### *Use of terms*

For the purposes of this Protocol:

- (a) "Trafficking in persons" shall mean the recruitment, transportation, transfer, harbouring or receipt of persons, by means of the threat or use of force or other forms of coercion, of abduction, of fraud, of deception, of the abuse of power or of a position of vulnerability or of the giving or receiving of payments or benefits to achieve the consent of a person having control over another person, for the purpose of exploitation. Exploitation shall include, at a minimum, the exploitation of the prostitution of others or other forms of sexual exploitation, forced labour or services, slavery or practices similar to slavery, servitude or the removal of organs;
- (b) The consent of a victim of trafficking in persons to the intended exploitation set forth in subparagraph (a) of this article shall be irrelevant where any of the means set forth in subparagraph (a) have been used;
- (c) The recruitment, transportation, transfer, harbouring or receipt of a child for the purpose of exploitation shall be considered "trafficking in persons" even if this does not involve any of the means set forth in subparagraph (a) of this article;
- (d) "Child" shall mean any person under eighteen years of age.

*Article 4**Scope of application*

This Protocol shall apply, except as otherwise stated herein, to the prevention, investigation and prosecution of the offences established in accordance with article 5 of this Protocol, where those offences are transnational in nature and involve an organized criminal group, as well as to the protection of victims of such offences.

*Article 5**Criminalization*

1. Each State Party shall adopt such legislative and other measures as may be necessary to establish as criminal offences the conduct set forth in article 3 of this Protocol, when committed intentionally.

2. Each State Party shall also adopt such legislative and other measures as may be necessary to establish as criminal offences:

(a) Subject to the basic concepts of its legal system, attempting to commit an offence established in accordance with paragraph 1 of this article;

(b) Participating as an accomplice in an offence established in accordance with paragraph 1 of this article; and

(c) Organizing or directing other persons to commit an offence established in accordance with paragraph 1 of this article.

**II. Protection of victims of trafficking in persons***Article 6**Assistance to and protection of victims of trafficking in persons*

1. In appropriate cases and to the extent possible under its domestic law, each State Party shall protect the privacy and identity of victims of trafficking in persons, including, inter alia, by making legal proceedings relating to such trafficking confidential.

2. Each State Party shall ensure that its domestic legal or administrative system contains measures that provide to victims of trafficking in persons, in appropriate cases:

(a) Information on relevant court and administrative proceedings;

(b) Assistance to enable their views and concerns to be presented and considered at appropriate stages of criminal proceedings against offenders, in a manner not prejudicial to the rights of the defence.

3. Each State Party shall consider implementing measures to provide for the physical, psychological and social recovery of victims of trafficking in persons, including, in appropriate cases, in cooperation with non-governmental organizations, other relevant organizations and other elements of civil society, and, in particular, the provision of:

- (a) Appropriate housing;
- (b) Counselling and information, in particular as regards their legal rights, in a language that the victims of trafficking in persons can understand;
- (c) Medical, psychological and material assistance; and
- (d) Employment, educational and training opportunities.

4. Each State Party shall take into account, in applying the provisions of this article, the age, gender and special needs of victims of trafficking in persons, in particular the special needs of children, including appropriate housing, education and care.

5. Each State Party shall endeavour to provide for the physical safety of victims of trafficking in persons while they are within its territory.

6. Each State Party shall ensure that its domestic legal system contains measures that offer victims of trafficking in persons the possibility of obtaining compensation for damage suffered.

#### *Article 7*

##### *Status of victims of trafficking in persons in receiving States*

1. In addition to taking measures pursuant to article 6 of this Protocol, each State Party shall consider adopting legislative or other appropriate measures that permit victims of trafficking in persons to remain in its territory, temporarily or permanently, in appropriate cases.

2. In implementing the provision contained in paragraph 1 of this article, each State Party shall give appropriate consideration to humanitarian and compassionate factors.

#### *Article 8*

##### *Repatriation of victims of trafficking in persons*

1. The State Party of which a victim of trafficking in persons is a national or in which the person had the right of permanent residence at the time of entry into the territory of the receiving State Party shall facilitate and accept, with due regard for the safety of that person, the return of that person without undue or unreasonable delay.

2. When a State Party returns a victim of trafficking in persons to a State Party of which that person is a national or in which he or she had, at the time of entry into the territory of the receiving State Party, the right of permanent residence, such return shall be with due regard for the

safety of that person and for the status of any legal proceedings related to the fact that the person is a victim of trafficking and shall preferably be voluntary.

3. At the request of a receiving State Party, a requested State Party shall, without undue or unreasonable delay, verify whether a person who is a victim of trafficking in persons is its national or had the right of permanent residence in its territory at the time of entry into the territory of the receiving State Party.

4. In order to facilitate the return of a victim of trafficking in persons who is without proper documentation, the State Party of which that person is a national or in which he or she had the right of permanent residence at the time of entry into the territory of the receiving State Party shall agree to issue, at the request of the receiving State Party, such travel documents or other authorization as may be necessary to enable the person to travel to and re-enter its territory.

5. This article shall be without prejudice to any right afforded to victims of trafficking in persons by any domestic law of the receiving State Party.

6. This article shall be without prejudice to any applicable bilateral or multilateral agreement or arrangement that governs, in whole or in part, the return of victims of trafficking in persons.

### **III. Prevention, cooperation and other measures**

#### *Article 9*

##### *Prevention of trafficking in persons*

1. States Parties shall establish comprehensive policies, programmes and other measures:

- (a) To prevent and combat trafficking in persons; and
- (b) To protect victims of trafficking in persons, especially women and children, from revictimization.

2. States Parties shall endeavour to undertake measures such as research, information and mass media campaigns and social and economic initiatives to prevent and combat trafficking in persons.

3. Policies, programmes and other measures established in accordance with this article shall, as appropriate, include cooperation with non-governmental organizations, other relevant organizations and other elements of civil society.

4. States Parties shall take or strengthen measures, including through bilateral or multilateral cooperation, to alleviate the factors that make persons, especially women and children, vulnerable to trafficking, such as poverty, underdevelopment and lack of equal opportunity.

5. States Parties shall adopt or strengthen legislative or other measures, such as educational, social or cultural measures, including through bilateral and multilateral cooperation, to discourage the demand that fosters all forms of exploitation of persons, especially women and children, that leads to trafficking.

#### *Article 10*

##### *Information exchange and training*

1. Law enforcement, immigration or other relevant authorities of States Parties shall, as appropriate, cooperate with one another by exchanging information, in accordance with their domestic law, to enable them to determine:

(a) Whether individuals crossing or attempting to cross an international border with travel documents belonging to other persons or without travel documents are perpetrators or victims of trafficking in persons;

(b) The types of travel document that individuals have used or attempted to use to cross an international border for the purpose of trafficking in persons; and

(c) The means and methods used by organized criminal groups for the purpose of trafficking in persons, including the recruitment and transportation of victims, routes and links between and among individuals and groups engaged in such trafficking, and possible measures for detecting them.

2. States Parties shall provide or strengthen training for law enforcement, immigration and other relevant officials in the prevention of trafficking in persons. The training should focus on methods used in preventing such trafficking, prosecuting the traffickers and protecting the rights of the victims, including protecting the victims from the traffickers. The training should also take into account the need to consider human rights and child- and gender-sensitive issues and it should encourage cooperation with non-governmental organizations, other relevant organizations and other elements of civil society.

3. A State Party that receives information shall comply with any request by the State Party that transmitted the information that places restrictions on its use.

#### *Article 11*

##### *Border measures*

1. Without prejudice to international commitments in relation to the free movement of people, States Parties shall strengthen, to the extent possible, such border controls as may be necessary to prevent and detect trafficking in persons.

2. Each State Party shall adopt legislative or other appropriate measures to prevent, to the extent possible, means of transport operated by commercial carriers from being used in the commission of offences established in accordance with article 5 of this Protocol.

3. Where appropriate, and without prejudice to applicable international conventions, such measures shall include establishing the obligation of commercial carriers, including any transportation company or the owner or operator of any means of transport, to ascertain that all passengers are in possession of the travel documents required for entry into the receiving State.

4. Each State Party shall take the necessary measures, in accordance with its domestic law, to provide for sanctions in cases of violation of the obligation set forth in paragraph 3 of this article.

5. Each State Party shall consider taking measures that permit, in accordance with its domestic law, the denial of entry or revocation of visas of persons implicated in the commission of offences established in accordance with this Protocol.

6. Without prejudice to article 27 of the Convention, States Parties shall consider strengthening cooperation among border control agencies by, inter alia, establishing and maintaining direct channels of communication.

#### *Article 12*

##### *Security and control of documents*

Each State Party shall take such measures as may be necessary, within available means:

(a) To ensure that travel or identity documents issued by it are of such quality that they cannot easily be misused and cannot readily be falsified or unlawfully altered, replicated or issued; and

(b) To ensure the integrity and security of travel or identity documents issued by or on behalf of the State Party and to prevent their unlawful creation, issuance and use.

#### *Article 13*

##### *Legitimacy and validity of documents*

At the request of another State Party, a State Party shall, in accordance with its domestic law, verify within a reasonable time the legitimacy and validity of travel or identity documents issued or purported to have been issued in its name and suspected of being used for trafficking in persons.

### **IV. Final provisions**

#### *Article 14*

##### *Saving clause*

1. Nothing in this Protocol shall affect the rights, obligations and responsibilities of States and individuals under international law, including international humanitarian law and international human rights law and, in particular, where applicable, the 1951 Convention and the 1967 Protocol relating to the Status of Refugees and the principle of non-refoulement as contained therein.

2. The measures set forth in this Protocol shall be interpreted and applied in a way that is not discriminatory to persons on the ground that they are victims of trafficking in persons. The interpretation and application of those measures shall be consistent with internationally recognized principles of non-discrimination.

#### *Article 15*

##### *Settlement of disputes*

1. State Parties shall endeavour to settle disputes concerning the interpretation or application of this Protocol through negotiation.

2. Any dispute between two or more States Parties concerning the interpretation or application of this Protocol that cannot be settled through negotiation within a reasonable time shall, at the request of one of those States Parties, be submitted to arbitration. If, six months after the date of the request for arbitration, those States Parties are unable to agree on the organization of the arbitration, any one of those States Parties may refer the dispute to the International Court of Justice by request in accordance with the Statute of the Court.

3. Each State Party may, at the time of signature, ratification, acceptance or approval of or accession to this Protocol, declare that it does not consider itself bound by paragraph 2 of this article. The other States Parties shall not be bound by paragraph 2 of this article with respect to any State Party that has made such a reservation.

4. Any State Party that has made a reservation in accordance with paragraph 3 of this article may at any time withdraw that reservation by notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

#### *Article 16*

##### *Signature, ratification, acceptance, approval and accession*

1. This Protocol shall be open to all States for signature from 12 to 15 December 2000 in Palermo, Italy, and thereafter at United Nations Headquarters in New York until 12 December 2002.

2. This Protocol shall also be open for signature by regional economic integration organizations provided that at least one member State of such organization has signed this Protocol in accordance with paragraph 1 of this article.

3. This Protocol is subject to ratification, acceptance or approval. Instruments of ratification, acceptance or approval shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United



Nations. A regional economic integration organization may deposit its instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval if at least one of its member States has done likewise. In that instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval, such organization shall declare the extent of its competence with respect to the matters governed by this Protocol. Such organization shall also inform the depositary of any relevant modification in the extent of its competence.

4. This Protocol is open for accession by any State or any regional economic integration organization of which at least one member State is a Party to this Protocol. Instruments of accession shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations. At the time of its accession, a regional economic integration organization shall declare the extent of its competence with respect to matters governed by this Protocol. Such organization shall also inform the depositary of any relevant modification in the extent of its competence.

#### *Article 17*

##### *Entry into force*

1. This Protocol shall enter into force on the ninetieth day after the date of deposit of the fortieth instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, except that it shall not enter into force before the entry into force of the Convention. For the purpose of this paragraph, any instrument deposited by a regional economic integration organization shall not be counted as additional to those deposited by member States of such organization.

2. For each State or regional economic integration organization ratifying, accepting, approving or acceding to this Protocol after the deposit of the fortieth instrument of such action, this Protocol shall enter into force on the thirtieth day after the date of deposit by such State or organization of the relevant instrument or on the date this Protocol enters into force pursuant to paragraph 1 of this article, whichever is the later.

#### *Article 18*

##### *Amendment*

1. After the expiry of five years from the entry into force of this Protocol, a State Party to the Protocol may propose an amendment and file it with the Secretary-General of the United Nations, who shall thereupon communicate the proposed amendment to the States Parties and to the Conference of the Parties to the Convention for the purpose of considering and deciding on the proposal. The States Parties to this Protocol meeting at the Conference of the Parties shall make every effort to achieve consensus on each amendment. If all efforts at consensus have been exhausted and no agreement has been reached, the amendment shall, as a last resort, require for its adoption a two-thirds majority vote of the States Parties to this Protocol present and voting at the meeting of the Conference of the Parties.

2. Regional economic integration organizations, in matters within their competence, shall exercise their right to vote under this article with a number of votes equal to the number of their

member States that are Parties to this Protocol. Such organizations shall not exercise their right to vote if their member States exercise theirs and vice versa.

3. An amendment adopted in accordance with paragraph 1 of this article is subject to ratification, acceptance or approval by States Parties.

4. An amendment adopted in accordance with paragraph 1 of this article shall enter into force in respect of a State Party ninety days after the date of the deposit with the Secretary-General of the United Nations of an instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval of such amendment.

5. When an amendment enters into force, it shall be binding on those States Parties which have expressed their consent to be bound by it. Other States Parties shall still be bound by the provisions of this Protocol and any earlier amendments that they have ratified, accepted or approved.

#### *Article 19*

##### *Denunciation*

1. A State Party may denounce this Protocol by written notification to the Secretary-General of the United Nations. Such denunciation shall become effective one year after the date of receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General.

2. A regional economic integration organization shall cease to be a Party to this Protocol when all of its member States have denounced it.

#### *Article 20*

##### *Depositary and languages*

1. The Secretary-General of the United Nations is designated depositary of this Protocol.

2. The original of this Protocol, of which the Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish texts are equally authentic, shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned plenipotentiaries, being duly authorized thereto by their respective Governments, have signed this Protocol.

**SCHEDULE 5****LEGISLATION REPEALED**

<b>No. and year</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Extent of repeal</b>
93 of 1962	General Law Further Amendment Act	Section 1
57 of 1972	Age of Majority Act	The whole
74 of 1983	Child Care Act	The whole
82 of 1987	Children's Status Act	The whole
133 of 1993	Prevention of Family Violence Act	Section 4
192 of 1993	Guardianship Act	The whole
72 of 1996	Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction Act	The whole
86 of 1997	Natural Fathers of Children born out of Wedlock Act	The whole

(4) If the matter involves alleged child abuse, the alleged perpetrator may not be present at, or participate in the proceedings of, the lay forum except if the alleged perpetrator has acknowledged, and has accepted responsibility for, that abuse.

### **Referral of matters to child and family courts**

**95.** (1) If a child and family court registrar determines that a matter may be brought before a child and family court, that registrar must in accordance with sections **60** or **61** refer the matter either to –

- (a) the child and family district court; or
- (b) the regional child and family court registrar for a decision whether the matter should be heard by the child and family regional court.

(2) If a regional child and family court registrar determines that a matter may be brought before a child and family court, that registrar must in accordance with sections **60** or **61**, refer the matter either to –

- (a) the child and family regional court; or
- (b) the child and family district court.

## ANNEXURE B

<b>WORKSHOPS, CONFERENCES, CONSULTATIVE MEETINGS, ETC</b>	<b>BRIEFINGS, LECTURES, DISCOURSES, ETC</b>
Department of Social Development Flagship programme: Pretoria, 20 March 2001	Paper presented at Reunite International Conference: Justice College, Pretoria, 25-26 January 2001
SAYSTOP (South African Young Offenders Project) workshop: Cape Town, 23 April 2001	Paper presented at First Pan African Conference on Human Trafficking: Nigeria, 19-23 February 2001
Meeting with CHILDS: Pretoria, 4 May 2001	Researcher presented paper at Social Assistance workshop: Cape Town, 7-8 March 2002
Consultative meetings with officials from the Department of Social Development: Pretoria, 26 June 2001, 13 July 2001	Paper presented at workshop on children affected by HIV/AIDS: Boystown, Johannesburg, 25 July 2001
Workshop on HIV/AIDS, National Children's Forum: Cape Town, 24 August 2001	Paper presented at child legislation workshop: Kopanong, 9-12 October 2001
Workshop on Early Childhood Development (ECD): School of Education, Wits University, 5 September 2001	Researcher presented paper at conference on children in need of special protection: Baragwanath Hospital, 20 February 2002
Second World Congress against Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children: Yokohama, Japan, 17-20 December 2001	Paper presented at conference on corporal punishment: SAHRC, Kopanong, 20-23 February 2002
Child protection workshop, SA National Council for Child and Family Welfare: Parktown, 7 February 2002	Paper presented at workshop for Commissioners of Child Welfare: Centurion Lake, 6 March 2002
Workshop on "Hearing Children's Voices": ACCESS, Cape Town, 19 February 2002	Briefing of the DG: Social Development: Pretoria, 9 April 2001
Consultative meeting on an African –Europe Action Plan on combating trafficking in human beings, especially women and children: Pretoria, 28 February 2002	Briefing of the Portfolio Committee on Social Development: Parliament, 16 May 2001
ECPAT International Conference on Commercial Sexual Exploitation of Children: Johannesburg, 3-6 March 2002	Briefing of the Chairperson of the Portfolio Committee on Social Development: Parliament, 30 August 2001
Miller du Toit Conference on Changing Legal Definitions of the Family: Cape Town, 25 -27 March 2002	Briefing of the DG: Social Development, Cape Town: 26 September 2001
Study visit by the Malawi Law Reform Commission on child rights law reforms, 22 – 26 April 2002	Briefing of the Portfolio Committee on Social Development: Parliament, 11 March 2002
Workshop on the content of the Children's Bill, Willow Park Conference Centre, 18 and 24 September 2002	Briefing of the Unaccompanied Minors Network: Pretoria, 29 January 2002, 28 March 2002
Third Gordon's Bay workshop on the Children's Bill, 29 - 30 October 2002	Briefing of the SA Nasionale Vrouefederasie: Pretoria, 11 February 2002
Workshop on mediation in family Law, Centre for Conflict Resolution, UCT Hidding Hall Campus, 1 November 2002	Briefing of the Portfolio Committee on Social Development, Parliament, 24 April 2002
National Children's Day Conference, Willow Park Conference Centre, Benoni, 2 November 2002	Presentation to the North West Provincial Programme of Action Steering Committee, Potchefstroom, 14 May 2002
	Briefing of the Gauteng Legislature, 27 September 2002